新概念英语名师导学系列

大家网
TopSage.com

新概念英语
名师精讲笔记

第四册

一线教学名师
全力出击

一线名师，担当主编；
授课精华，倾情奉献；
一本在手，考试无忧；
真题考点，一网打尽！

《新概念英语》学习胜经
New Concept Bible

攻克
大学四级、六级，考研，新托福115，PETS4、5级，剑桥通用英语证书FCE，雅思7.5

商务印书馆
The Commercial Press

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

新概念英语名师导学系列

新概念英语名师精讲笔记

（第四册）

新东方名师编写组

商　务　印　书　馆
2010 年 · 北京

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语名师精讲笔记.第四册/新东方名师编写组编.—北京:商务印书馆,2010
(新概念英语名师导学系列)
ISBN 978-7-100-07050-8

Ⅰ.新… Ⅱ.北… Ⅲ.英语—自学参考资料 Ⅳ.H31

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2010)第052613号

所有权利保留。
未经许可,不得以任何方式使用。

新概念英语名师精讲笔记
(第 四 册)
新东方名师编写组

商 务 印 书 馆 出 版
(北京王府井大街36号 邮政编码 100710)
商 务 印 书 馆 发 行
北 京 瑞 古 冠 中 印 刷 厂 印 刷
ISBN 978-7-100-07050-8

2010年6月第1版　　开本 787×1092 1/16
2010年6月北京第1次印刷　　印张 21¾
定价:29.80元

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

前　言

可以说我对于英语学习的兴趣是被《新概念英语》这套书激发出来的。由于课文本身很有趣，所以尽管觉得吃力，我却没有产生任何厌倦情绪。我用了两个多月的时间，就把第二册到第四册的200多篇课文生吞活剥地学完了。我的朋友、现任新东方教育科技集团常务副总裁周成刚，就是在没日没夜地模仿了《新概念英语》的朗读后，获得了一口标准的伦敦口音，最后被英国BBC广播公司看中，变成了BBC的记者和节目主持人。

——新东方教育科技集团董事长兼总裁俞敏洪

对于那些对《新概念英语》的学习有详细计划安排的人来说，在最短时间内打下良好的基础并顺利进入下一阶段的学习，是他们最期望达到的目标。当然，这也是我们新概念英语名师导学系列丛书的编者们努力的动因和方向。在丛书的编写中，我们很重视这种连贯性和内在的互联性。所以，在脉络清楚的情况下，您能在一开始的英语学习中就因体验到无数前辈总结的经典而受益。

在英语学习中，你有没有觉得很无助的时候？尽管身边有热心的老师，亲爱的同学，你自己也有着良好的记忆力和学习能力，但你是否有时候还是会觉得课时短暂，瞬间记忆能力欠缺呢？你有十二分的热情，可是你还是不能达到学习目标，你是不是在困惑？总是会有各种小念头浮上脑际，偶尔也会觉得怎么自己没有老师那么精通课本？……不要紧，就让这本辅导书来帮助你解决这些问题吧！你不会再冥思苦想、一筹莫展了，因为她像一本专门为《新概念英语》第四册量身定做的辞典，更像一个不可多得的良师益友，随时陪伴在你左右。

《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》第四册最大的特色是学习板块清晰，知识全面，与课本完全同步，虽然不能作为一位名师当面教授课程，但她几乎把课堂上名师所要传授给同学们的知识点全部囊括其中了。她也像是一位最优秀的学生所做的详细的听课笔记。可以说，她是你学习《新概念英语》过程中不可或缺的一本重要的辅导用书。

这本书是每课一个章节，每一章节按：(一)重点和难点；(二)词汇；(三)课文详解；(四)核心语法等四个板块进行组织编排的。清晰醒目，让同学们在拿到这本书的那一刻就会对《新概念英语》第四册的内容和学习步骤有个如大纲般清晰的了解。根据老师们多年的课堂教学经验和教学步骤进行学习，你就可以以尽可能少的投入获得尽量多的知识，这是其他辅导丛书所无法比拟的。我们相信，这本书清晰的脉络将会带给你十足的学习热情和信心。

综上所述，对于为参加中考或公共英语一级和准备系统学习《新概念英语》教材的读者来说，这套《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》辅导丛书还是非常必要的。本书的主要特点在于：

- 强大的编写阵容，编写人员全部由新东方英语教师担任。
- 丰富的课文内容，多样的讲解形式。
- 七大板块的编排，形式科学、全面，设计合理，难易适中。
- 重点难点突出，有助于掌握课文要点，提高学习效率。
- 使用方便，既可自学，也可在课堂上使用。

基于以上特点，我们在本书的编写上考虑到按一般课时的讲解安排，使学生做到有条不紊、循序渐进地学完《新概念英语》第四册课本。

由于时间仓促，书中的不妥之处在所难免，敬请广大读者和英语同仁不吝批评指正。

编　者

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

目　　录

Lesson 1　Finding fossil man …… 1
Lesson 2　Spare that spider …… 5
Lesson 3　Matterhorn man …… 13
Lesson 4　Seeing hands …… 21
Lesson 5　Youth …… 25
Lesson 6　The sporting spirit …… 33
Lesson 7　Bats …… 38
Lesson 8　Trading standards …… 43
Lesson 9　Royal espionage …… 48
Lesson 10　Silicon valley …… 54
Lesson 11　How to grow old? …… 61
Lesson 12　Banks and their customers …… 65
Lesson 13　The search for oil …… 70
Lesson 14　The Butterfly Effect …… 84
Lesson 15　Secrecy in industry …… 93
Lesson 16　The modern city …… 105
Lesson 17　A man-made disease …… 110
Lesson 18　Porpoises …… 114
Lesson 19　The stuff of dreams …… 120
Lesson 20　Snake poison …… 124
Lesson 21　Williams S. Hart and the early "Western" film …… 133
Lesson 22　Knowledge and progress …… 138
Lesson 23　Bird flight …… 143
Lesson 24　Beauty …… 147
Lesson 25　Non-auditory effects of noise …… 161
Lesson 26　The past life of the earth …… 167
Lesson 27　The "Vasa" …… 172
Lesson 28　Patients and doctors …… 176
Lesson 29　The hovercraft …… 182
Lesson 30　Exploring the sea-floor …… 185
Lesson 31　The sculptor speaks …… 189
Lesson 32　Galileo reborn …… 193
Lesson 33　Education …… 198
Lesson 34　Adolescence …… 206
Lesson 35　Space odyssey …… 211
Lesson 36　The cost of government …… 215
Lesson 37　The process of ageing …… 219

www.TopSage.com

Lesson 38 Water and the traveller ······ 224
Lesson 39 What every writer wants ······ 228
Lesson 40 Waves ······ 234
Lesson 41 Training elephants ······ 239
Lesson 42 Recording an earthquake ······ 245
Lesson 43 Are there strangers in space? ······ 249
Lesson 44 Patterns of culture ······ 254
Lesson 45 Of men and galaxies ······ 259
Lesson 46 Hobbies ······ 264
Lesson 47 The great escape ······ 269
Lesson 48 Planning a share portfolio ······ 277
《新概念英语》(第四册)课后习题答案 ······ 289

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 1 Finding fossil man

本节重点和难点

- 并列定语从句

本课词汇

fossil ['fɔsl] *n.* 化石

【词组】fossil botany 古植物学，植物化石学/fossil fuel（煤、石油、天然气等）矿物燃料/fossil ivory（史前时期海象或猛犸的）化石牙/fossil oil（石油的旧称）矿油/fossil remains（动物的）化石遗体/living fossil 活化石

fossil man ['fɔslˌmæn] *n.* 化石人

recount [ri'kaunt] *vt.* 描述

saga ['sɑːgə] *n.* 萨迦（中世纪的北欧传说）；英雄传奇

legend ['ledʒənd] *n.* 传说

migration [mai'greiʃn] *n.* 迁居，移居

【辨析】immigration 是移居到说话人所在的国家里；emigration 是离开说话人所在的国家移居到别处去；migration 是单纯的迁移、移动，没有明显的方向性。

anthropologist [ˌænθrə'pɔlədʒist] *n.* 人类学家

ancestor ['ænsestə] *n.* 祖先

Polynesin [ˌpɔli'niziən] *adj.* 波利尼西亚的

Indonesia [ˌində'niːziə] *n.* 印度尼西亚

archaeologist [ˌɑːki'ɔlədʒist] *n.* 考古学家

flint [flint] *n.* 火石

rot [rɔt] *v.* (使)腐烂

课文详解

1. We can read of things that happened 5,000 years ago in the Near East, where people first learned to write.

【译文】我们从书籍中可以读到 5 000 年前近东发生的事情，那里的人最早学会了写字。

【用法】that 引导定语从句修饰 things，where 引导非限定性定语从句说明了前面的地点状语 in the Near East“在近东地区”。

2. But there are some parts of the world where even now people cannot write.

【译文】但直到现在，世界上仍有些地方，人们还不会书写。

【辨析】part，part of

(1) part 表示“部分”时是可数名词，可以指人、事、物等的部分或局部。用单数时前面的不定冠词可以省略，表示“……的一部分”时，后面常跟介词 of，即 part of。如：There is but one China and Taiwan is part of China. 只有一个中国，台湾是中国的一部分。

(2) part of 是“……的一部分”之意，单纯的 part of 后面只接单数名词，集合名词，因此

www.TopSage.com

part of the students 应改为：some of the students。如：Part of the road is rough. 部分路面很不平。当 part of 前面有形容词修饰语时，后面可接复数名词，前面可加冠词；当 part of 前没有形容词修饰语时，通常不加冠词。如：A small part of the garden is covered with grass. 花园的一部分被草覆盖了。

(3) 当 part of 用作主语时，其谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 of 后面的名词：名词是单数，动词就用单数；名词是复数，动词就用复数；如果是集合名词，视其意义而定动词单复数形式。如：Part of his money was gone. 他的一部分钱丢了。

3. The only way that they can preserve their history is to recount it as sagas—legends handed down from one generation of storytellers to another.

【译文】他们保存历史的唯一方法是将历史当作传说讲述，由讲述人一代接一代地将史实描述为传奇故事口传下来。

【用法】

(1) 此句中，that 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 way (方式，方法)。way 为先行词的定语从句有三种表达方式：一种由 that 引导，还可以由 in which 引导或省略关系词。如：The way that we finally got the ball from the hole is very simple. 也可以说：The way (in which) we finally got the ball from the hole is very simple.

(2) to recount it as sagas 放在系动词后作表语，it 指历史。

(3) legends 作 sagas 同位语，其后的 handed down... another 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 legends。

(4) hand down 亦作 hand on 或 pass down，意思是"传给(后人)"，均与 to 连用。如：We should hand down the revolutionary tradition from generation to generation. 我们应该把革命系统一代代传下去。

(5) from one... to another (...)从……到……。在此短语中，one 后所跟内容与 another 后所跟内容相同。由于语义明确，因此通常将 another 后所跟内容省略。如文中那样，在 another 后省略了 generation of storytellers。

4. These legends are useful because they can tell us something about migrations of people who lived long ago, but none could write down what they did.

【译文】这些传说是很有用的，因为它们能告诉我们以往人们迁居的情况。但是，没有人能把他们当时做的事情记载下来。

【用法】

(1) because 引导原因状语从句，在这个从句中又含有一个 who 引导的定语从句修饰 people，后一个分句中 what 引导了一个宾语从句作 write down 的宾语。

(2) ... but none could write down what they did.

none 没有，代词。既可用来指人，也可用来指物；既可用来指可数名词，也可用来指不可数名词。它往往受 of 引导的介词短语的限制，of 后可接可数名词或不可数名词。当 of 后为可数名词且在句中作主语时，其谓语动词多用复数，虽也可用单数；但为不可数名词时，其谓语动词只能用单数，如：None of the drivers have/has turned up. 司机们一个都没来。/None of the money was ever recovered. 一点钱都没有找回来。

此外，none of 后的名词或代词只能用于指 3 个以上的人或物，不能用来指两个以下的人或物。注意 none 与 no one 在使用中的不同：no one 中的 no 为形容词，one 为代词，多用来指人，其意为 not even one (连一个人也不/没有)，因此语气较 none 要强。此

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

外，其后不能使用 of 引导的介词短语。用其作主语时，谓语动词只能用单数，如：No one was killed in the battle. 在那次战斗中没有一个人牺牲。

在简略答语中，none 用来回答对数量的提问（即由 how many/how much 引导的疑问句），而 no one 用来回答对"谁"的提问（即由 who 引导的疑问句）。比较：

How many books are there on the desk?
桌子上有多少本书？
None.
一本也没有。

Who is in the room?
谁在屋子里？
No one.
没人。

write down 写下，记下，动词＋副词型短语，如：Make sure that you write down every word the speaker says. 务必把讲话人讲的每句话都记下来。/You'd better write down the address before you forget it. 你最好把地址写下来，免得忘了。

5. Anthropologists wondered where the remote ancestors of the Polynesian peoples now living in the Pacific Islands came from.

【译文】人类学家过去不清楚如今生活在太平洋诸岛上的波利尼西亚人的祖先来自何方。

【用法】people 此处意为"民族，种族"（可数名词）。例如：The Chinese are a hard-working people. 中国人是勤劳的民族。动词词组 come from 意为"来自，出生于"，无被动语态。形容词 remote 此处的含义为"遥远的；寂静的"。例如：remote stars 遥远的星星；a remote village 远离尘嚣的村落。

6. The sagas of these people explain that some of them came from Indonesia about 2,000 years ago.

【译文】当地人的传说却告诉人们：其中有一部分是约在 2,000 年前从印度尼西亚迁来的。

【用法】动词 explain 通常与 to，about 连用，含义为"说明；阐明"。例如：He tried to explain to me about what he had said. 他努力想解释他的话的意思。[习惯用语]explain away 辩解，辩护；explain oneself 为自己的行为作说明（或解释），把自己的意思解释清楚。

7. But the first people who were like ourselves lived so long ago that even their sagas, if they had any, are forgotten.

【译文】但是，和我们相似的原始人生活的年代太久远了，因此，有关他们的传说即使有，如今也失传了。

【用法】

(1) who 引导的定语从句修饰 the first people。

(2) so... that 引导结果状语从句，表示"如此……以至于……"。如：There are so many people in the hall that I can't go in. 大厅里有这么多人，以致于我无法进入。

(3) if they had any 如果有的话，用作插入语，承上，any 后省略了 sagas。

8. So archaeologists have neither history nor legends to help them to find out where the first 'modern men' came from.

【译文】于是，考古学家们既缺乏历史记载，又无口头传说来帮助他们弄清最早的"现代人"是哪里来的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】neither... nor... 既不……也不……。

(1) 为表示选择的关联连词，用来连接两个在语法功能上相同、在结构上对称的并列成分。用于连接并列主语时，谓语动词形式需同最邻近的主语(即 nor 后的主语)保持一致，如：Neither you nor she is wrong. 你和她都没有错。

(2) neither... nor... 只用于肯定句式中表达否定意义。用 neither... nor... 连接两个结构平行的句子(即将 neither 和 nor 分别置于两个句子的首位)时，主、谓语需倒装，如：The water is neither cold nor hot. 这水既不冷也不热。/Neither has he heard from her yet nor will he do so before long. 他至今未收到她的来信，最近也不会收到。

9. Fortunately, however, ancient men made tools of stone, especially flint, because this is easier to shape than other kinds.

【译文】然而，幸运的是，远古人用石头制作了工具，特别是用燧石，因为燧石较之其他石头更易成形。

【用法】句中"fortunately"为独立成分，类似用法还有：happily, luckily, etc.，有时还可说成：fortunately for sb. 结构。例如：Happily (for him), his second mother was kind to him. 幸运的是，他的继母对他很好。

10. They may also have used wood and skins, but these have rotted away.

【译文】他们也可能用过木头和兽皮，但这类东西早已腐烂殆尽。

【用法】句中 may have done 结构表示对过去事情的肯定推测，还可用 must/might have done，详见语法精析。请注意副词 also 的用法：一般放在 be 动词后，行为动词前；位于由两部分或两部分以上动词组成的谓语结构中时，放在第一个助动词后。例如：I am also hungry. 我也饿了。/He has also known the news. 他也已经知道这个消息了。

11. Stone does not decay, and so the tools of long ago have remained when even the bones of the men who made them have disappeared without trace.

【译文】石头是不会腐烂的，因此，尽管制造这些工具的人的骨头早已荡然无存，但远古时代的石头工具却保存了下来。

【用法】so 引导结果状语从句，when 引导的时间状语从句中含有一个 who 引导的定语从句。

核心语法

➡并列定语从句

所谓并列定语从句，是指两个或两个以上的定语从句通过并列连词 and, but, or 连接，来共同修饰同一个先行词。请看例句：

Greater expense does not always equal a better gift. I would much rather receive a gift that was unique or that I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than something that cost a lot of money but that I didn't need or want. I would much rather receive something that made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than something that cost a lot but that I will just throw in my closet and forget about.(礼物并不是价格越高就越贵重，我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的，或是我知道朋友为我精心准备的，而不是花费很多却不是我所想要或需要的。我希望的是能够让我开心、让我回味过去时光、或是适合我口味的礼物，而不是价格不菲、看完之后随手就扔到储藏室、抛在脑后的礼物。)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 2 Spare that spider

本节重点和难点

- 关系代词的用法
- 关系副词的用法
- 限制性和非限制性定语从句

本课词汇

beast [biːst] *n.* 兽,牲畜;凶残的人
census ['sensəs] *n.* 调查,普查
acre ['eikə] *n.* 英亩
content ['kɔntent] *n.* 内容,目录
　　[kən'tent] *adj.* 满足的

课文详解

1. Why, you may wonder, should spiders be our friends?

【译文】你可能会觉得奇怪,为什么蜘蛛会成为我们的朋友呢?

【用法】

(1) 情态动词 should 表示惊奇或怀疑等感情色彩,通常译成"竟然"、"怎么会"等。例如:It is strange that he should be our teacher. 真奇怪,他竟然是我们的老师。/Should he come tomorrow? 他明天怎么会来?

(2) you may wonder 作插入语使用。

2. Insects would make it impossible for us to live in the world; they would devour all our crops and kill our flocks and herds, if it were not for the protection we get from insect-eating animals.

【译文】要不是人类受一些食虫动物的保护,昆虫就会使我们无法在地球上生存下去,它们会吞食我们的全部庄稼,杀死我们成群的牛羊。

【用法】

(1) 该句是典型的 if 引导的与过去情况相反的条件句的虚拟语气。例如:

a. You would have missed the train if you had not hurried.

b. If the flowers had been planted earlier, they would have been in bloom for the garden party last week.

c. If he had not been promoted, he would never have remained with the company.

注意:

对现在虚拟⇨if+过去时,I would do...

对过去虚拟⇨if+过去完成时,I would have done...

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

对将来虚拟⇨if+should/were to do，I would do...

(2) if it were not for...可看作是固定结构，意思为"要不是……"。

(3) we get from insect-eating animals 为省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句，修饰 the protection。由于 the protection 在定语从句中充当逻辑上的宾语，这个时候可以省略关系代词 that。

3. We owe a lot to the birds and beasts who eat insects but all of them put together kill only a fraction of the number destroyed by spiders.

【译文】我们要十分感激那些吃昆虫的鸟和兽，然而把它们所杀死的昆虫全部加在一起也只相当于蜘蛛所消灭的一小部分。

【用法】

(1) who eat insects 为定语从句，修饰先行词 the birds and beasts。

(2) the number destroyed by spiders 中的 destroyed by spiders 为动词的过去分词作后置定语。the number 和动词 destroy 为逻辑上的动宾关系。

(3) owe...to...为……感激……，把……归功于……。此短语中的 to 为介词，因此其后应使用名词、代词等，而不能使用动词不定式。此外，动词 owe 通常不用于进行时态，如：If I have improved in any way，I owe it all to my wife. 如果说我有一些进步，完全归功于我的妻子。

4. Spiders never do the least harm to us or our belongings.

【译文】蜘蛛丝毫不危害我们和我们的财物。

【用法】

(1) never... the least...

least 与 never，not，no，without 等否定词连用，以加强否定语气，具有相同用法的形容词还有 slightest，remotest，faintest 等：

I haven't the least idea where she is. 我根本不知道她在哪儿。

He didn't have the slightest interest in what you had said. 他对你所说的话丝毫不感兴趣。

I haven't the faintest idea how that happened. 我一点都不知道那事是怎么发生的。

I haven't the remotest idea where he is. 我根本不知道他在哪里。

(2) do harm to sb./sth. 与 do sb./sth. harm 均表示"对某人/某物造成损害"。其中 do 为双宾语动词，harm 为不可数名词。当直接宾语(harm)置于 do 后时，在 harm 与间接宾语之间需使用介词 to，如：It does more harm to you than good. 这对你害多益少。/ Smoking does harm to one's health. 吸烟有害健康。

5. Spiders are not insects，as many people think，nor even nearly related to them.

【译文】与许多人认为的相反，蜘蛛不是昆虫，甚至与昆虫一点联系都没有。

【用法】

(1) as many people think 为定语从句，先行词为前面整个句子，as 为关系代词，译为"正如，就像"，as 引导的定语从句可放句首、句中及句尾。如：Rose as you know，is a good girl. = Rose is a good girl，as you know. = As you know，Rose is a good girl. 正如你所知道的，罗丝是个好姑娘。

(2) nor even nearly related to them 甚至几乎与它们毫无关系。这是一个由 nor 引导的省略句，省略了 are spiders。完整的句子为：nor are spiders even nearly related to them

www.TopSage.com

(注意,使用完整句子表达时,由于否定词用于句首,因此主语同谓语动词需构成倒装形式)。当上下文语义明确时,nor 后经常使用省略形式。

6. One can tell the difference almost at a glance, for a spider always has eight legs and an insect never more than six.

【译文】人们几乎一眼就能看出二者的差异,因为蜘蛛都是 8 条腿,而昆虫的腿从不超过 6 条。

【用法】

(1) at a glance 固定词组,意思为"立刻,(只)看一眼"。

(2) for 这里为连词,表示原因,引导原因状语从句。

7. How many spiders are engaged in this work on our behalf?

【译文】有多少蜘蛛正在为了我们而忙碌着?

【用法】

(1) on behalf of 或 on someone's behalf 代表(某人),引申为"为了……的利益"。
On behalf of my roommates and myself I thank you. 我代表室友和我自己向您表示感谢。/Ken is not present, so I shall accept the prize on his behalf. 肯不在场,因此我将代表他领奖。/My lawyer is acting on my behalf and also on behalf of my mother. 我的律师将代理我,也代理我的母亲,处理一切事务。

(2) 动词词组 be engaged in sth. 意为"从事于,忙于"。如:We are engaged in looking for jobs. 我们正忙于找工作。

8. One authority on spiders made a census of the spiders in a grass field in the south of England.

【译文】一位研究蜘蛛的权威对英国南部一块草坪上的蜘蛛作了一次调查。

【用法】

(1) on 意为"关于"或"在……方面"。例如:This article is on law. 这篇文章是关于法律的。

(2) make a census of 固定词组,意思为"对……作调查"。

9. ... that is something like 6,000,000 spiders of different kinds on a football pitch.

【译文】这就是说,在一个足球场上约有 600 万只不同种类的蜘蛛。

【用法】something like (=about)修饰具体的数字时表示"大约,大概",其他情况下则表示"有点像"的意思:It cost something like ten dollars. 这花了大约十美元。/We have something like two hundred people studying here. 在我们这里学习的人大概有二百人。/Your coat is something like mine. 你的大衣有点像我的。

10. Spiders are busy for at least half the year in killing insects.

【译文】蜘蛛至少有半年忙于吃昆虫。

【用法】该句的基本结构为 be busy in doing sth.,其中 in 可省略,意为"忙于……"。如:We are busy in doing our homework. 我们正忙于做作业。

11. It is impossible to make more than the wildest guess at how many they kill.

【译文】他们消灭了多少昆虫,我们简直无法猜测。

【用法】

(1) It 为形式主语,其后的动词不定式短语 to make... kill 为逻辑主语。

(2) make a guess at sth. 猜测某事;make a wild guess at sth. 不着边际地猜测某事。

(3) more than 意为"万分,非常,无以名状"。如:We were more than happy to see you. 见

www.TopSage.com

到你我们非常高兴。

(4) how many they kill 是一个名词性从句，作介词 at 的宾语。

12. It has been estimated that the weight of all the insects destroyed by spiders in Britain in one year would be greater than the total weight of all the human beings in the country.

【译文】据估计，在英国蜘蛛在一年里消灭的昆虫的重量超过了这个国家人口的总重量。

【用法】句子中的 It 为形式主语，其后的连词 that 引导的从句即 that the weight of... in the country 为逻辑主语。英语中，某些动词（如 believe, estimate, know, say 等）后可以跟随由 that 或 whether 引导的宾语从句。如文中的句子，变成主动语态为：People have estimated that the weight of... in the country. 变成被动语态时，这类由 that 或 whether 引导的宾语从句可提前作主语而整句变为：That the weight of... in the country has been estimated. 由于此类被动语态的主语往往太长，为使全句保持平衡，常常使用形式主语 it 代替 that 或 whether 从句，而将该从句置于用了被动语态的动词之后，如：It was not known whether he was in the classroom. 不知道他是否还在教室。本例句中 whether 引导的从句为逻辑主语，而 it 为形式主语。文中 destroyed by spiders in Britain in one year 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 insects。

核心语法

一、关系代词的用法

1. 引导定语从句的关系代词有：

先行词指人：who, whom;

先行词指物：which;

先行词指人或物均可：that, whose。

下面一一详细介绍这些词的用法。

先看两个简单句：

The woman is a famous dancer and she lives next door. 这位女士是一名著名的舞蹈演员，她就住在我家隔壁。

上述两个简单句有一个"重复元素"：这里的 she 就指代 the woman，两句之间有个交叉点，而通过这个交叉点建立起两句之间的关系，所以定语从句也称为关系从句(relative clause)。我们现在要用 she lives next door 来作定语修饰 the woman，以告诉对方哪个 woman 是舞蹈演员。而在定语从句中，代指人的关系词用 who。前面说过关系词既有代词的作用又还起着连词的作用，因此，上句可改写成：The woman is a famous dancer who lives next door. 而定语从句一般紧跟在它所修饰的名词后边。因此，上句又可进一步改写成：The woman who lives next door is a famous dancer. 到此，一个标准的定语从句制造完毕！关系词 who 既指代 the woman，同时又在从句中作成分——从句的主语。

更多例句：

a. Friendship is a very difficult thing. It is hard to handle. It creates many different problems. In fact I would say that friendship is as hard to handle as love is, or even marriage. Of course I am not talking about easy-come-easy-go friendship. I'm talking about friends who care deeply about each other, who support each other, who make life worth living. I'm talking about friends who you can share almost everything with.

b. Anger is a thief who steals away the nice moments.

c. He who is not handsome at twenty, nor strong at thirty, nor rich at forty, nor wise at

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

fifty, will never be handsome, strong, rich, or wise. 一个人若 20 岁不俊美、30 岁不健康、40 岁不富有、50 岁不明智，那么他将永远不会拥有这些。

d. There is this difference between happiness and wisdom: the person who thinks himself the happiest man really is so; but the person who thinks himself the wisest is generally the greatest fool. 幸福与智慧区别于此：认为自己是最为幸福的，他真的就最幸福；而认为自己最智慧的，却往往是最大的傻瓜。

e. The world is a book, and those who do not travel read only one page. 世界犹如一本书，而那些从不出门旅行的人仅仅读了这本书的一页。

2. who 和 whom 的区别

(1) who 在定语从句中可作主语、宾语或表语，但 who 之前不可用介词(如不能说 with who，而是 with whom)。

a. I like the people who I work with. 我很喜欢同我一起工作的那些人。(who 作介词 with 的宾语。)

b. I like the people with whom I work.

c. I'm talking about friends who you can share almost everything with. 我说的是那些可以分享一切的朋友。

d. I'm talking about friends with whom you can share almost everything.

e. I think you should stay faithful to the person who you're married to. 我认为你应该对你的配偶忠诚。

f. I think you should stay faithful to the person to whom you're married.

(2) whom 在定语从句中不能作主语，但可作宾语或表语。

a. A rich person is not one who has the most, but is one who needs the least. (不用：... one whom has...)一个富有的人，不是因为他拥有最多，而是因为他需要最少。

b. Only the people ________ have the patience to do simple things perfectly will acquire the skill to do difficult things easily. (只有有耐心圆满完成简单工作的人，才能够轻而易举地完成困难的事。)

A. whom　　　　B. who

正确答案：B

3. 表示人或物的所有关系，我们用 whose。它的作用就如同物主代词 my, your, her, his, their, our 一样，whose 后边要接名词。whose 既可指人也可指物。"whose + 名词"在从句中可作主语、动词宾语或介词宾语。

请看例句：

I know a friend. His brother is a pop singer. 可以把这两个简单句改写成一个复合句：I know a friend whose brother is a pop singer. whose 代替了 his，指人 friend。又如：These children sit in a schoolroom. Its windows are all broken. 改写成：These children sit in a schoolroom whose windows are all broken. whose 代替了 its，指物 schoolroom。

a. When I looked through the window, I saw a girl whose beauty took my breath away. (作主语，whose 指人 a girl)

b. It was a meeting whose importance I did not realize at the time. (作动词宾语，whose 指事物a meeting)

c. Atlas (in Greek mythology) was a kneeling man on whose shoulders the world rested. (作介词宾语，whose 指人 a kneeling man)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. 先行词指物，用关系代词 which

We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses. 同样道理，我们用 which 代替 they，来指代 sentences，告诉对方我们正在学习什么类型的句子。

We are studying sentences which contain adjective clauses. 我们正在学习带有形容词从句的句子。

which 可以指代单个名词：

a. Anger is a wind which blows out the lamp of the mind. 愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。

b. Perhaps it is human to appreciate little that which we have and to long for that which we have not. 或许"不惜已获，贪求不得"是人类的共同弱点吧。(先行词是 that，which 指单个词。)

which 可以指代一个短语：

c. He likes climbing mountains, which is a good exercise. (先行词是主句的一部分 climbing mountains。)

which 可以指代前面整个句子：

d. Tom was late.

That surprised me.

Tom was late, which surprised me.

e. He tore up my photo, which upset me. (主句 He tore up my photo 作 which 的先行词。)

f. She wore her swimming things in the office, which shocked her boss a great deal.

g. He ran all the way from the station, which I thought was incredible(难以置信).

5. that 可以指代人，也可以指代物

that 既可指人，也可指物；that 不用在非限制性定语从句中；that 不能用于介词后边，这同 who 一样。

The world ________ we live is made up of matter.

A. in which B. in that C. which

正确答案：A

上句也可以说成：

The world that/which we live in is made up of matter.

在下列情况中最好用 that：(重点记忆)

(1) 当先行词既有人又有物时，用 that。

The writer and his novels that the article deals with are quite familiar to us.

(2) 先行词为指物的 all, little, few, much, none, the first 时，用 that。

a. All that glitters is not gold.

b. This book contains little that is useful.

c. There is not much that can be done.

d. As long as you stand up to the difficulties, there are none that cannot be overcome. 只要你勇敢地去面对困难，就没有什么克服不了的！

(3) 先行词是不定代词 something, anything, nothing, everything 时，一般用 that。

a. Is there anything that I can do for you?

b. Greater expense does not always equal a better gift. I would much rather receive a gift that was unique or that I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than something that cost a lot of money but that I didn't need or want. I would much rather receive something that made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than something that cost a lot but that I will just throw in

www.TopSage.com

my closet and forget about.（礼物并不是价格越贵就越好，我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的，或是我知道朋友为我精心准备的，而不是花费很多却不是我所想要或需要的。我希望的是能够让我开心、让我回味过去的时光、或是适合我口味的礼物，而不是价格不菲、看完之后随手就扔到储藏室、抛在脑后的礼物。）

(4) 先行词被 any, only, all, every, no, some, much, few, little, 序数词，最高级，the only, the one, the very, the right, the last 修饰时，用 that。

a. Tell us all things that you know.

b. There is no difficulty (that) they can't overcome.

c. The only thing that we should do is find our way home.

d. The very problem that I want to solve is like this.

e. He is the only man ________ can speak four foreign languages in our company.

A. that B. which C. who D. whom

正确答案：A

6. 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省去

上述关系代词 who, whom, which, that 若在定语从句中用作宾语，我们往往可以省去关系代词。例如：

a. Tina likes the present which I gave her for her birthday.

b. Tina likes the present that I gave her for her birthday.

c. Tina likes the present I gave her for her birthday.

d. I like the people who I work with.

e. I like the people I work with.

f. I'm talking about friends who you can share almost everything with.

g. I'm talking about friends you can share almost everything with.

二、关系副词的用法

在英语中，引导定语从句的关系副词主要有 when, where, why, 它们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语。

1. when 的用法

(1) 先行词指时间

when 引导限制性和非限制性定语从句，其先行词须是表示时间的名词，如 day, year, time 等。when 可用 on which 来替换。

a. I'll never forget the day when I met you.

b. I'll never forget the day on which I met you.

c. April Fool's Day is that special day of the year when you should play a joke on someone! Children's favorites are to put salt in the sugar bowl for Dad's morning coffee or put chalk on a desk chair at school so the teacher gets a white backside! But remember, if you play a joke after 12 noon, you are the April Fool!

d. We will put off the outing until next week, when we won't be so busy.

e. March 10, 1876 was the day when (=on which) the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.

f. The day may soon come when we don't bother to go to office but just work at home.

(2) 关系副词 when 在从句中作时间状语

当心：表示时间的先行名词，若定语从句不是缺状语，而是缺少主语或宾语，要用 which 或 that 来引导，因为用 when 来引导定语从句的前提条件是：when 在其引导的定语从句中作时间状语。

www.TopSage.com

a. The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm. (which 作主语)那天开始的时候还是晴空万里，后来却下起了暴风雨。

b. I'll never forget the time which I spent on campus. (which 作 spent 的宾语)

c. I'll never forget the day when we first met in the park. (when 作时间状语，修饰 met)

2. where 的用法

(1) where 的先行词指地点

where 引导定语从句，其先行词必须是表示地点的名词，如 place，house 等。

a. —Since you work in the theater, can't you get me a free ticket now and then?

— Certainly if you bring me a few notes now and then from the bank where you work!

——既然你在剧院工作，你能否时常给我拿一些免费的票？

——没问题，只要你能在你工作的那家银行时常给我拿出一些"票子"!

b. Do you know any place where I can buy Clint's grammar book?

c. Do you know any place at which I can buy Clint's grammar book?

d. This is the town where (= in which) I spent my childhood.

e. This is the restaurant where I often have my breakfast.

(2) 关系副词 where 在从句中作地点状语

当心：与 when 类似，并非凡是先行词表示地点的名词，都得由 where 来引导定语从句，这得看关系词在从句中充当的成分。where 在定语从句中作地点状语，若定语从句缺主语或宾语，要用 which 或 that 引导定语从句。

a. This is the town where I spent my childhood.

b. This is the town which I told you about before. (which 作 about 的宾语)

c. The library where students often study was on fire last night.

d. The library, which was built in the 1930's, needs to be renovated.

e. One of the places which I want to visit someday is Tibet. (which 作 visit 宾语)

3. why 的用法

用来表原因，只引导限制性定语从句，先行词是 reason 等表示原因的名词。

This is the reason why I didn't come here. (此处 why = for which)

三、限制性和非限制性定语从句

英语中的定语从句有限制性和非限制性之分。二者在形式上的区别是：限制性定语从句的关系词和先行词之间不用逗号分开，而非限制性定语从句则有逗号分开。这种在形式上的有逗号或没有逗号并不是随意的，换句话说，二者更重要的是在意义上有区别。

1. that 引导的限制性定语从句

All that is needed is a continuous supply of the basic necessities of life. (四级真题)

全部所需要的是不间断地供给生活必需品。

World trade patterns are indicative of the important economic issues that confront the world today. 世界贸易的模式反映着当今世界所面临的重大经济问题。 (托福真题)

2. which 引导的非限制性定语从句

Sturgeons are prized for their blackish roe, which when salted and served as an appetizer is called caviar. 鲟鱼以其暗黑色的鱼卵而被珍视，加盐之后用作餐前开胃小吃的这种鱼卵叫鱼子酱。 (托福真题)

The American Academy of Poets, which was founded in the 1930's, provides financial assistance to support working poets. 成立于 20 世纪 30 年代的美国诗人协会为有工作的诗人提供经济上的帮助。 (托福真题)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 3 Matterhorn man

本节重点和难点

- 关系词
- 特殊关系代词的用法
- "介词+关系代词"的用法

本课词汇

Matterhorn ['mætəhɔːn] *n.* (山名)马特霍恩山峰

alpinist ['ælpinist] *n.* 登山运动员

pioneer [ˌpaiə'niə] *v.* 开辟,倡导;*n.* 先锋,开辟者

summit ['sʌmit] *n.* 顶峰

attain [ə'tein] *vt.* 到达

perilous ['periləs] *adj.* 危险的,冒险的

shudder ['ʃʌdə] *v.* 不寒而栗

court [kɔːt] *n.* 法庭,法院;球场;院子;宫廷,朝廷 *vt.* 追求

solitary ['sɔlətri] *adj.* 唯一的

impoverish [im'pɔvəriʃ] *vt.* 使贫困

flea-ridden *adj.* 布满跳蚤的

wash down 吞下

coarse [kɔːs] *adj.* 粗糙的,粗劣的;粗俗的,粗鲁的

【词组】coarse cloth 粗布料/a coarse hand 粗糙的手/coarse laughter 粗野的笑声

boast [bəust] *n.* 自夸,大话 *v.* 自恃有

【词组】make a boast of 夸耀,自夸/boast about/of 夸耀

parishioner [pə'riʃənə] *n.* 教区居民

shepherd ['ʃepəd] *n.* 牧羊人

linen ['linin] *n.* 亚麻布床单

the Alps [ælps] *n.* 阿尔卑斯山脉

课文详解

1. Modern alpinists try to climb mountains by a route which will give them good sport, and the more difficult it is, the more highly it is regarded.

【译文】现代登山运动员总想找一条能够给他们带来运动乐趣的路线来登山。他们认为,道路越艰险越带劲。

【用法】

(1) try to do sth. 意思为"努力做某事",注意其和 try doing sth. (尝试做某事,试着做某事)的区别,例如:

He tried to focus, but in vain. 他努力集中精力,但只是徒劳。

He tried finishing the work. 他试着完成这项工作。

(2) which will give them good sport 为 which 引导的定语从句,修饰 route。

(3) the more difficult..., the more highly... 为形容词/副词比较级结构 the more..., the more...(越……越……)的典型用法,用来表示两个变化的发生。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. In the pioneering days, however, this was not the case at all.

【译文】然而，在登山运动的初期，全然不是这种情况。

【用法】

(1) In the pioneering days 在初创时期，这里指登山运动的初创期。

(2) This is not the case. 意为"情况并非如此"。

3. The early climbers were looking for the easiest way to the top, because the summit was the prize they sought.

【译文】早期登山者所寻找的是通往山顶的最方便的途径，因为顶峰才是他们寻求的目标。

【用法】

(1) early 这里的意思为"早期的"。

(2) look for 意思为"寻找"，指寻找的动作；而 find 指的是寻找的结果，意思为"找到"，例如：
I have been looking for it everywhere, but I didn't find it. 我已经到处找了，但是没有找到。

(3) the easiest way to the top 中，介词 to 的意思为"通往……，去往……"。

(4) they sought 为省略了 that 的定语从句，修饰 prize。当先行词在定语从句中充当动词或介词的宾语时，可以省略关系代词。

4. It is true that during their explorations they often faced difficulties and dangers of the most perilous nature, equipped in a manner which would make a modern climber shudder at the thought, but they did not go out of their way to court such excitement.

【译文】确实，在探险中他们经常遇到惊心动魄的困难和危险，他们装备之简陋足以使现代登山者一想起来就胆战心惊。但是，他们并非故意寻求这种刺激。

【用法】

(1) It 在句子中作形式主语，that 引导的从句（从 that 至 at the thought）作句子的逻辑主语，true 为表语。equipped 构成的过去分词短语表示句子主语 they 的状态，补全应为 they were equipped in a manner... 。equipped in a manner... at the thought 为过去分词短语，作原因状语，修饰 faced，意即"由于/因为以足以使现代登山者一想起来就胆战心惊的简陋装备武装自己"。

(2) face 面对，遇到，与 be faced with（面对）相比，前者更强调动作，而后者则更注重状态。

(3) be equipped 通常与 with 搭配。例如：They are equipped with the best machines. 他们配备最好的机器。

(4) go out of the/one's way to do 表示：①"特地干（make a special effort），不怕麻烦（地）干（take the trouble to do）"；②"故意地干（by intention）"：She always goes out of her way to take good care of her mother. 她总是不辞辛劳地照顾母亲。/It was good of you to go out of your way to meet us at the station. 感谢您特地到车站来接我们。/Please don't go out of your way for us. 请不要为我们特意去麻烦了。

5. They had a single aim, a solitary goal—the top!

【译文】他们只有一个目的，唯一的目标——顶峰！

【用法】就语法而言，a solitary goal 同 the top 均为 a single aim 的同位语。这里使用了语义重复法，以达到加强语意的目的。破折号引出被强调部分。

【解析】aim, purpose, object, goal

(1) aim 指明确表示某人希望发生的事以及为实现该事而付出的努力或精力的方向。如一个很清醒地确定自己希望达到的目标并决定对此作出实际行动的人就可以被说成

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

具有生活中的目标(aim)。如:What's your aim in life? 你的人生目标是什么?

(2) purpose 表示决心很大的决断,如一个希望最充分地运用自己能力或机遇的人就可以被说成具有生活中的目标(purpose)。如:For what purpose do you want it? 你要它有何目的?

(3) object 是指存在于事物(things)中的目的,含有较强的具体的意味。如:What is your object in studying English? 你学英文的目的何在?

不过以上三个词,有时没有严格的区别,可以通用。如:What is his object (aim, purpose) in doing that? 他做那事的目的是什么?

(4) goal 一般是表示人们从事某件事情和事业的最终目的。如:赛跑的终点,射击比赛的靶子等。这种目标一旦达到,努力也往往就停止了。如:He studied hard at college so that he could reach his goal of being a good teacher. 他在大学里刻苦学习,目的是为了将来当一名好老师。

6. It is hard for us to realize nowadays how difficult it was for the pioneers.

【译文】我们今天很难想象昔日的登山先驱们多么艰苦。

【用法】

(1) nowadays 意为"现在",含有与过去或将来比较之意。例如:Nowadays people eat a lot of meat. 现在人们吃很多肉(言外之意过去人们不吃很多肉)。

(2) It is hard to realize...

"It is+形容词+for someone to do"表示"某人干某事是……";"It is+形容词+to do"则不表明某人,仅指"干某事……":It was easier for the detective to watch her. 那个侦探就更容易监视她。/It was easier to watch her. 监视她就更容易。/It is impossible for us to finish all this work in two hours. 我们在两个小时内完成所有这些工作是不可能的。

7. Except for one or two places such as Zermatt and Chamonix, which had rapidly become popular, Alpine villages tended to be impoverished settlements cut off from civilization by the high mountains.

【译文】除了泽曼特和夏蒙尼等一两个很快出了名的地方外,阿尔卑斯山区的小村几乎全是高山环抱、与世隔绝的穷山僻壤。

【用法】

(1) except for 作为固定词组,意思也是"除……之外"。但它通常可置于句首,表示"不同于一般情况的例外情况",先说明基本情况,然后在细节上加以修正,从而引述出一个相反的原因以修正主要意思。其特点是前后没有相互对称的同类格,并且只能与表示陈述语气的动词连用。如:Except for a few spelling mistakes, your composition is good. 你的作文很好,只是有几个拼写错误。

(2) such as 像……一样。当 such 同 as 分开使用时,如把文中 one or two places such as 写成 one or two such places as 时,其作用相当于 like(像),表示举例。因此文中的 such as Zermatt and Chamonix 可被视为定语,修饰 places。

(3) which had rapidly become popular 为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句,修饰 Zermatt and Chamonix。

(4) cut off from civilization by the high mountains 为动词的过去分词作后置定语,修饰 settlements。由于 settlements 与动词词组 cut off 为逻辑上的动宾关系,所以这里采用 cut 的过去分词形式来修饰 settlements。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

8. Such inns as there were generally dirty and flea-ridden; the food simply local cheese accompanied by bread often twelve months old, all washed down with coarse wine.

【译文】那里的小客栈一般都很脏,而且跳蚤猖獗。食物是当地的干酪和通常存放了一年之久的面包,人们就着劣质酒吞下这种食物。

TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) Such inns as there were 那里(所有)的小客栈。在此短语中,as 为关系代词,引导定语从句,修饰 inns。the food... coarse wine 为 Such inns... flea-ridden 的并列句。由于上下文语义明确并且为使句子简练,在该并列句 food 后省略了谓语动词 was。all... wine 可视为一个独立结构,表示伴随状况,all 为该独立结构中的逻辑主语。对此句进行分析时,应注意句中标点符号的使用(在两个并列句中使用了分号;第 2 个分句中使用了逗号)。

(2) accompanied by bread often twelve months old 是动词的过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰 cheese。cheese 和动词 accompany 为逻辑上的动宾关系。

(3) bread often twelve months old 中 often twelve months old 为名词 bread 的后置定语。

9. Often a village boasted no inn at all, and climbers found shelter wherever they could—sometimes with the local priest(...), sometimes with shepherds or cheese-makers.

【译文】山谷里常常没有小客栈,登山者只好随遇而安。有时同当地牧师住在一起(……),有时同牧羊人或制奶酪的人住在一起。

【用法】wherever they could 为 wherever 引导的地点状语从句。

10. For men accustomed to eating seven-course dinners and sleeping between fine linen sheets at home...

【译文】对于习惯了一顿饭吃 7 道菜、睡亚麻细布床单的人来说……

【用法】

(1) accustomed to eating seven-course dinners and sleeping between fine linen sheets at home 为动词的过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰 men。动词 accustom 和名词 men 之间为逻辑上的动宾关系。

(2) be accustomed to sth. /doing sth. 固定用法,意思为"习惯于……",其中 to 为介词,后面接名词或动名词。与其意思相同的结构为 get used to sth. /doing sth. 和 be used to sth. / doing sth.。注意 be used to 与 used to 的区别。used to do sth. 表示过去的习惯性动作或经常做的动作。例如:

He used to go to school by bus. 他过去坐公交车去上学。

He is used to the bad circumstances. 他已经习惯了周围恶劣的环境。

She is accustomed to doing exercises every morning. 她已经习惯了每天早上锻炼。

核心语法

一、关系词

1. 关系词的特点

定语从句总是由一定的关系词(尽管有时将其省去)来连接的,关系词在定语从句中起两个作用:

(1) 连词作用:将定语从句与句子的其余部分连接起来。

(2) 代词作用:用来重复指代其前面的先行词,且在定语从句中作句子成分。

2. 关系词的分类

www.TopSage.com

关系词可分为关系代词和关系副词，具体请看下表：

语法作用	可用于限制性及非限制性定语从句	用于限制性定语从句
主 语	who which	that
宾 语	who/whom which that 或省略 that	
所有关系	whose/of which	
限定性	which	
状 语	when where	why

从上面的表格得知：

(1) that 和 why 只引导限制性定语从句。

(2) 关系代词：关系代词在从句中可充当主语、宾语或表语。其中 whose 一定要与名词连用，表示所属关系。which 可单独引导定语从句，也可用作限定词与名词连用。

who、whom → 指人

which → 指物

that、whose → 指人或指物

(3) 关系副词：关系副词只充当状语：when 表时间，where 表地点，why 表原因。

注意：how 不可以作为表示方式的关系副词。在英语中，若表示方式，我们用以下句型：

the way in which...(that 省略)

a. During the 1940's science and engineering had an impact on the way music reached its audience and even influenced the way in which it was composed.

b. You know the old golden rule, "Care for others the way you would like them to care for you."

此外，英文中尚有特殊关系代词：as、what、than、but，这是我们重点讨论的内容。

二、特殊关系代词的用法

1. 常见关系代词

常见的引导定语从句的关系代词及其用法我们在这里简单介绍一下。

指代人用 who，whom。在从句中作主语不用 whom。

Students who cheat on exams will poison the atmosphere of the college. 在考试中作弊的学生会影响学校的校风。

在介词后边不能用 who，而只能用 whom。

The girl with whom you work is his girl friend. 和你一起工作的那个女孩是他的女朋友。

下面我们重点介绍 as，what，than，but 这四个特殊关系词的用法。

2. as 的用法

(1) as 引导的限制性定语从句只是用在一些固定的结构中，即只能用在 such，the same，as，so 的后面。请看例句：

a. He'll repeat such points as are discussed in the book.

b. Such a student as works hard will be sure to succeed.

c. He tried to make as few mistakes as he could avoid.

d. He is not the same playboy as we knew.

e. The instrument is not such an instrument as I saw on the exhibition.

f. He is not such a man ________ would leave his work half done.

A. who　　B. whom　　C. as　　D. that

正确答案：C

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) as引导的非限定性定语从句可位于句首,而which不能这样用。

a. As is known, the whale is not fish but a mammal. 众所周知,鲸不是鱼类,而是哺乳类动物。(as指的是the whale is not fish but a mammal整个句子。)

b. ________ is known to the world, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

(四级真题)

A. That　　B. Which　　C. As　　D. It

正确答案:C

c. ________ might be expected, the response to the question was very mixed.

(四级真题)

A. As　　B. That　　C. Which　　D. What

正确答案:A

(3) as和which都可引导非限定性定语从句,代替前面整个句子。

a. He married her, as/which was natural.

b. He was late for school, which/as is often the case.

但因为as引导的定语从句有"正好……","就像……","由……而知"的含义,所以,当主句和从句内容上一致时,或者说从句内容是顺着主句意思说下来时,用as;若主句和从句内容上不一致,或从句的内容对主句的内容起反对、排斥、否定等消极的作用时,则多用which。试分析比较如下:

a. The young man cheated his friend of much money, which was disgraceful.

b. She has married again, as was expected/which was unexpected.

c. The elephant is like a snake, which is not right.

d. The gentleman admires Mrs. Brown, which surprised me.

e. She is very careful, as her work shows. 她很细心,这从她的工作中就可看得出来。

3. what用法

what作为关系代词,用法很特殊,它是先行词和关系代词的结合体(我们姑且就把它称之为"缩合关系词")。它的一般含义可理解为:the things that、all that。

具体用法有以下三点:

(1) what前不能有先行词。

what包括一个关系代词及其"先行词"。所以,what前面不能再有先行词的出现。换句话说,如果句中已有先行词,就一定不能再用what引导定语从句。如:我们不能说:You can have everything what you like.

All ________ is a continuous supply of the basic necessities of life.　　(四级真题)

A. what is needed　　B. the things needed　　C. for our needs　　D. that is needed

正确答案:D

(2) what单独使用。

此时,what作关系代词,可表示物,也可表示人。

a. She is not what she used to be. (She is not the girl that she used to be.)

b. Show me what you have written. (Show me the things that you have written.)

c. He is not what he was a few years ago. (what指人:the man that)

我们注意到以上句中what前均没有先行词。

(3) what+名词。

此时,what作关系形容词,结构是"what +名词",意为"所有的……,尽可能多的……"。

a. I will give you what help I can. (我会尽可能地帮你。)

b. What money I have has been given to you. =All the money that I have... 我身上所

www.TopSage.com

有的钱都给了你了。

c. Lend me what reference books you have on the subject. = Lend me all the reference books that you have on the subject. 请把你所有的有关这个研究专题的参考书借给我。

以上是 what 最基本的两条用法，其中"what 前不能有先行词出现"是正确使用 what 的一个前提。凡是由 what 引导的定语从句均可改为"特定的先行词 + 关系代词 that"。这说起来较为简单，但在实际使用过程中又较为复杂，有时难以判断 what 之前到底是有还是没有"先行词"。

4. than 作关系代词的用法（考研常考题）

用法特点：

(1) than 可作关系代词引导定语从句，在从句中一般作主语。

(2) than 前面的主句需有形容词比较级形式。

a. Don't drink more wine than is good for health. 不要饮酒过量。适量饮酒有益于健康。

b. Don't give him more money than is needed, since money will burn a hole in his pocket. 不要多给他钱，他需要多少就给多少，因为他有钱就花。

c. Today we know a great deal more about the sea than was known in ancient times. 与古时候的人们比起来，今天的我们对海洋知识有更多的了解。

d. There ought to be less anxiety over the perceived risk of getting cancer than ________ in the public today.

A. exists B. exist C. existing D. existed

分析：这里的 than 指 anxiety，所以选 A。

译文：人们不应该像如今这样担心害怕患上癌症。

than 也可在从句中作宾语：

e. For now, however, it does appear that the economy can sustain a higher growth rate than most people thought impossible just a year or two ago. In that limited respect, at least, we appear to be in a "New Economy". 不过，目前我们的经济确实实现了持续的、较快的增长，该增长率在一、两年前是绝大多数人认为不可能实现的。所以，仅此而言，我们正处于一个"新经济时代"。

f. He soon found it easy to make much more money by thieving than his father had done by a lifetime of honest work. 很快他就发现，通过盗窃所挣的钱比他老爸一辈子辛勤劳作所挣的要多得多。

5. but 的用法

用法特点：

(1) but 作关系代词，相当于 that... not, who... not, whom... not，在句中作主语或宾语，可指人也可指物。

(2) 尽管定语从句形式上肯定，但在意义上是否定的。

(3) 常与具有否定意义的主句连用。

(4) 通常只引导限制性定语从句。

a. There is no man but errs. (= There is no man who doesn't err. but 作主语) 人必犯错。

b. There are very few but admire his talents. (= There are very few who don't admire his talents. but 作主语) 很少有人不赞赏他的才干。

c. There are very few people in this club but he knows. (= There are very few people in this club whom he doesn't know. but 作宾语)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

三、"介词十关系代词"的用法

我们常常碰到定语从句的关系代词(主要是 which, whom 或 whose)前带有介词或介词短语的情况,这些介词什么时候不要,什么时候必须加,以及究竟用什么介词,这些问题对于学习者来说是有一定难度的。

下面根据我个人的研究总结出三条规律:

1. 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词

这些线索可以是:

(1) 定语从句中的动词。这是主要线索,所选介词需与动词搭配。(最常见)

a. The buzzard (秃鹰) can watch high in the sky the ground for signs of the waste and the dead animals on which it feeds. (或... animals which it feeds on.)秃鹰可以从高空中往地上搜寻它们要吃的垃圾和动物尸体。

b. It was luck again, according to Nina, that brought her the role in Mute Wife for which she is best known. 尼娜认为,这次她又是幸运地在《哑巴妻子》这部芭蕾舞剧中担任角色,她正是以此剧目最为出名。

c. This is the shop of which I often speak to you. 这就是我常常向你提起的那个店铺。

d. He is the man on whom I think you can depend. 我认为你可以依靠他,他这人是靠得住的。

e. The goals for which he had fought all his life no longer seemed important to him 他毕生为之奋斗的目标现在对他来说似乎并不重要了。

f. Let me say how grateful I am to all those who supported me and supported the cause for which we have fought. (from Al Gore's Concession Speech)

g. We must preserve the freedoms for which,our ancestors fought.

(2) 定语从句中的形容词。所选介词与形容词构成短语。(比较常见)

a. They will pass along their fresh impressions to the youth groups in which they are active. 他们回来后会把自己对国外的印象与同组的其他成员进行交流。

b. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those with which we are familiar on land. 据我们推测,这些水底声音的意义同我们所熟悉的陆地上的声音的意义相似。

c. Dolphins might be trained to cooperate with fishermen and help them by finding, tracking, herding, or even catching fish... in all of which activities dolphins are expert. 可以训练海豚来与渔民们合作,帮他们找到或是跟踪鱼群,或把鱼聚集成群,甚至是捕鱼,这些活动都是海豚所擅长的。

d. He referred me to some reference books with which I am not very familiar. 他让我参考的几本书我一本也不熟悉。

(3) 定语从句中的名词。所选介词要求与名词搭配,如:attention to。(较少用)

I am sending you an inquiry, to which your prompt attention is highly appreciated. 兹寄去询价单一张,望尽快办理,不胜感激。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 4 Seeing hands

本节重点和难点

- 过去分词作宾语补足语

本课词汇

solid ['sɔlid] *adj.* 坚实的
safe [seif] *n.* 保险柜
Ulyanovsk [uː'ljɑːnɔːfsk] (地名)乌里扬诺夫斯克
commission [kə'miʃən] *n.* 委员会
opaque [əu'peik] *adj.* 不透明的
lotto ['lɔtəu] *n.* 一种有编号的纸牌
slipper ['slipə] *n.* 拖鞋
blindfold ['blaindfəuld] *adj.* 被蒙住眼睛的

课文详解

1. Several cases have been reported in Russia recently of people who can read and detect colours with their fingers, and even see through solid doors and walls.

【译文】俄罗斯最近报道了几个事例,有人能用手指看书识字和辨认颜色,甚至能透过厚实的门和墙看到东西。

【用法】

(1) 本句中介词短语 of people who can read and detect colours with their fingers, and even see through solid doors and walls 为 cases 的后置定语。由于这个介词短语太长,若直接置于 cases 之后,影响整个句子的主语和谓语的衔接,所以将其置于整个句子的最后,以避免"头重脚轻"。这句话其实应该是 Several cases of people who can read and detect colours with their fingers, and even see through solid doors and walls have been reported in Russia recently.

(2) who can read and detect colours with their fingers 为 who 引导的定语从句,修饰 people。

(3) see through 此处意为"透过……看见",该词组本意为"识破,看穿(借口,谎言等);不被愚弄;使支撑,提供帮忙直至……结束为止"。如:He has enough money to see him through a year abroad. 他有足以供他在国外维持一年的钱。

2. One case concerns an eleven-year-old schoolgirl, Vera Petrova, who has normal vision but who can also perceive things with different parts of her skin, and through solid walls.

【译文】其中有一例谈到有一个名叫维拉·彼托洛娃的 11 岁女学生。她的视力与常人一样,但她还能用皮肤的不同部位辨认东西,甚至看穿坚实的墙壁。

【用法】

(1) Vera Petrova 为 girl 的同位语。who 为关系代词,引导一个非限定性定语从句。and

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

through solid walls 就语法而言与 with different parts of her skin 一样，并列作状语，修饰 perceive。

(2) concern 的含义为"关于；对……有关系"。如：Attend to what concerns you. 注意与你有关的事物。/This concerns us deeply. 这事对我们关系极大。

(3) 名词 vision 的含义为"视力，视觉；看法"。如：He has very little vision in his left eye. 他左眼的视力很差。/He is a man of vision. 他是个有眼力的人。

(4) see，make out and perceive

① see 指一般意义下的"看到"，也是最常用的动词：It is so dark I can not see anything. 天那么黑，我什么都看不见。/Who else did you see? 你还看到谁了？/A tall man is standing in front of me and I can't see anything. 我前面站着一个高个子，我什么也看不到。

② make out(＝see or recognize with difficulty or effort)表示需要经过努力才能看清楚或辨认出，即其动作要比 see 的动作更困难。make out 较为口语化：The room was so dark that it was impossible to make anything out. 屋里太暗，什么也看不清。/He could make out a ship in the distance. 他隐约看见远处有一艘船。

③ perceive 除了"看"之外还暗示"看清楚，辨认出"；另外，它还可以表示用感官"察觉"或用大脑"领悟"：I perceived a change in his behaviour. 我看到他的行为有变化。/Did you perceive a red colour or a blue colour? 你看到的是红色还是蓝色？/I can't perceive any difference between these coins. 我看不出这些硬币有什么不同。

3. One day she came into his office and happened to put her hands on the door of a locked safe.

【译文】一天，她走进爸爸的办公室，偶然把手放在一个锁着的保险柜的门上。

【用法】

(1) 句中 happen to 意为"碰巧……"，后接动词原形。如：She happened to go out when I came to see her. 我去看她时，她碰巧出去了。

注意：happen to be doing 表示"碰巧正在做某事"；happen to have done 表示"碰巧已经做了某事"。

(2) locked 这里为形容词化的动词过去分词，可以直接作为形容词使用，意思为"锁上的"。类似的词有：broken，amazed，surprised，interested 等。

(3) safe 这里为名词，意思为"保险柜"。

4. Suddenly she asked her father why he kept so many old newspapers locked away there，and even described the way they were done up in bundles.

【译文】她突然问父亲为什么把这么多旧报纸锁在柜子里，还说了报纸捆扎的情况。

【用法】

(1) kept so many old newspapers locked away there 为 to keep sth. done 的典型用法。在此结构中，done(动词的过去分词形式)，即文中 locked away there 为宾语 sth.，即文中 so many old newspapers 的补足语。they were done up in bundles 为定语从句，修饰 way，其间是省略了关系代词 that。way 作先行词时，其后定语从句前的关系代词通常可以省略。

(2) 短语 lock away 意为"锁好，藏好；锁藏起来；监禁"。如：Although the jewels were locked away in a strong box，the thief stole them without any difficulty. 尽管珠宝锁在一个保险箱内，窃贼还是毫不费力地把它们偷走了。

www.TopSage.com

(3) do... up 此短语根据上下文可表达多种意义，本文中表示"捆"、"包"之意。此外，还可以用来表达"把……扣/扎好"、"把……收拾好"、"使……打扮好"、"使……破产"等含义，如：This skirt does up at the back. 这条裙子是从后面扣的。/She did her hair up in a bun. 她把头发盘在头上。/Miss Ann came to the party all done up in her best dress. 安小姐穿着最好的衣服来参加聚会。/I've been done up by that dirty trick. 我被那个卑鄙的诡计弄得倾家荡产。

5. Vera's curious talent was brought to the notice of a scientific research institute in the town of Ulyanovsk, near where she lives, and in April she was given a series of tests by...

【译文】维拉的特异功能引起了她家附近一个科研单位的注意。四月里，……对她进行了一系列的测试。

【用法】

(1) bring... to the notice of 固定搭配，意思为"使……注意到……"。

(2) where she lives 这里为地点状语从句，其用法相当于一个表示地点的名词。所以，near where she lives 与 near school 类似。

(3) a series of 固定词组，意思为"一系列，许多"。

(4) talent 名词，意思为"才能，才干，天分"，在这里指生来即有的超群的天分或能力。

6. ...stranger still, by moving her elbow over a child's game of Lotto she was able to describe the figures and colours printed on it;... wearing stockings and slippers, to make out with her foot the outlines and colours of a picture hidden under a carpet.

【译文】更为奇怪的是，她把肘部在儿童玩的"罗托"纸牌上移动一下，便能说出印在纸牌上的数字和颜色。还有一次，她穿着长筒袜子和拖鞋，能用脚识别出藏在地毯下面的一幅画的轮廓和颜色。

【用法】

(1) stranger still 更为奇怪的是，插入语，促使读者对下文更加注意。

(2) by moving... of Lotto（通过）在儿童玩的"罗托"纸牌上挪动肘部，介词短语，作方式状语，修饰 was able to describe。

(3) printed on it 在它上面印着的，过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 figures and colours。

(4) wearing stockings and slippers（在）穿着长筒袜和拖鞋（时），现在分词短语，作时间状语，修饰 make out。承上，在 make out 前省略了 she was able。为保持句子的平衡，将使用正常语序时应置后的方式状语（with her foot）提到了 make out 的宾语 the outlines and... carpet 之前。在该宾语中，hidden under a carpet 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 picture。

(5) make out 可以用来表示多种意义，但本文中为"辨认出"之意，再如：I can't make out his handwriting. 我认不出他的字迹。/It was dark, and we could not make out who was coming along the road. 天黑了，我们看不出走在路上的是谁。

7. ...indeed, except when blindfold she lacked the ability to perceive things with her skin.

【译文】事实上，如果不蒙上双眼她的皮肤就不再具有识别物体的能力。

【用法】when 与 blindfold 之间省略了 she was。在某些从句中，当从句中的主语与主句中的主语相一致且从句主语的谓语为系动词时，可将从句中的主语和其后的系动词省略（如文中形式）。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. It was also found that although she could perceive things with her fingers this ability ceased the moment her hands were wet.

【译文】 同时还发现，尽管她能用手指识别东西，但她的手一旦弄湿，这种功能便会立即消失。

【用法】

(1) 这里 it 为形式主语，真正的主语为 that 引导的从句：that although she could perceive things with her fingers this ability ceased the moment her hands were wet。由于 that 引导的从句过于长，若将其直接作为句子的主语，句子的前半部分太长，影响句子主、谓之间的衔接，所以引入了形式主语 it，以避免"头重脚轻"。

(2) the moment her hands were wet 为 the moment 引导的时间状语从句，这里 the moment 可看作是一个连词，意思为"一……就……"。类似用法的还有：immediately、directly、the first time 和 the first sight 等。例如：

She left immediately she finished her job. 刚完成她的工作，她就走了。

The moment I saw you I was in love with you. 我一看见你，就爱上了你。

另外，还有许多表示"一……就……"的结构：no sooner... than..., hardly... when..., scarcely... when..., rarely... when...。例如：

No sooner had I arrived home than the telephone rang. 我刚到家，电话就响了。

I could hardly finish my paper when the bell rang and the exam was over. 我刚刚完成我的试卷，考试结束的铃声就响了。

核心语法

➡过去分词作宾语补足语

作宾语补足语的过去分词大多数来自及物动词，强调被动或完成。其前的谓语动词多是感觉动词和使役动词，如：

1. 用在 keep, make, get, have 等表示"致使"的使役动词之后。

She had her hair cut down yesterday. 她昨天剪了头发。

2. 用在 see, hear, find, feel, notice 等表示"感觉和心理状态"的动词之后。

He felt his face lost before his classmates. 他觉得在同学面前丢面子了。

3. 用在 like, want, wish, order 等表示"希望、要求"等意义的动词之后。

She doesn't wish such questions discussed in class. 她不希望在课堂上讨论这样的问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 5 Youth

本节重点和难点

被动语态

- 被动语态的构成
- 被动语态的用法
- 静态被动形式

本课词汇

leave [liːv] *n.* 许可，准许；准假，假期

【词组】 ask for a leave 请假

fundamentals [ˌfʌndəˈmentlz] *n.* 基本原则

glorious [ˈglɔːriəs] *adj.* 光辉灿烂的

splendid [ˈsplendid] *adj.* 灿烂的

rub [rʌb] *n.* 难题

identity [aiˈdentiti] *n.* 身份

dreary [ˈdriəri] *adj.* 沉闷的

commitment [kəˈmitmənt] *n.* 信奉

mean [miːn] *adj.* 吝啬，小气

social climber [ˌsəuʃl-ˈklaimə] *n.* 追求更高社会地位的人，向上爬的人

devotion [diˈvəuʃən] *n.* 热爱

cosmtic [ˈkɔzmik] *adj.* 宇宙的

suburban [səˈbəːbən] *adj.* 见识不广的，偏狭的

conceited [kənˈsiːtid] *adj.* 自高自大的

【辨析】 proud、arrogant、conceited

这三个词都有"骄傲"的意思，proud 用途最广泛，兼有好坏两种意思，可以指"自尊"，也可以指应有的待遇和重视。arrogant 常用于贬义。conceited 意为"自负的"、"自大的"，着重对自己的本领和作为有优越感。

presumptuous [priˈzʌmptʃuəs] *adj.* 自以为是的，放肆的

fatuous [ˈfætʃuəs] *adj.* 愚蠢的

cliche [ˈkliːʃei] *n.* 陈词滥调

课文详解

1. People are always talking about "the problem of youth".

【译文】 人们总是在谈论"青年问题"。

【用法】 are always talking about 总是谈论。always 常同进行时态连用表明说话人所说话语中包含的感情色彩（如厌倦等）。

2. If there is one—which I take leave to doubt—then it is older people who create it, not the young themselves.

【译文】 如果这个问题存在的话——请允许我对此持怀疑态度——那么，这个问题是由老年人而不是青年人造成的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) one 指代前句中 the problem of youth(青年问题);doubt(怀疑)的内容应为 there is the question of youth。破折号后为强调句型,强调 older people,意为"是老年人造成了这个问题"。which I take leave to doubt 前后使用破折号分开,作插入语。it is...who...为强调句,强调部分也可以用 that 连接。not the young themselves 承上省略了 it is 及其后的定语从句(完整部分为:it is not the young themselves who create it)。

(2) take leave to do sth. 冒昧做某事,擅自做某事,如:

I take leave to consider the matter settled. 请原谅我认为此事已解决了。

take leave to do sth. 为惯用语,leave 后的动词不定式中常用 doubt,question 等动词,而作直接宾语的 sth. 常为 it,that 或 story 这类代词或名词。

3. Let us get down to fundamentals and agree that the young are after all human beings—people just like their elders.

【译文】让我们来认真研究一些基本事实:承认青年人和他们的长辈一样也是人。

【用法】

(1) 句中破折号部分为 human beings 的同位语,即年轻人是与他们的老一辈一样的人。the young 为"年轻人",用作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式,类似结构还 the old(老年人);the poor(穷人)等等。

(2) get down to sth. 认真处理某事,认真做某事。短语中的 to 为介词,其后使用名词、代词或动名词形式,如:

I really must get down to my studies. I've been lazy too long.

我真得安下心来学习了,我懒散的时间太长了。

When we get down to details,the plan seems possible.

当我们认真研究具体细节时,发现这项计划似乎是可行的。

(3) after all 毕竟,终归,终究。介词短语,在句子中作状语,用来加强语气,多用于肯定句中,如:

After all,he has done something good for you. 他毕竟还是为你做了一些好事。

After all it is not so hard as it looks. 它毕竟不像看上去那么难。

4. There is only one difference between an old man and a young one:the young man has a glorious future before him and the old one has a splendid future behind him:and maybe that is where the rub is.

【译文】老年人和青年人只有一个区别:青年人有光辉灿烂的前景,而老年人的辉煌已成为过去。问题的症结恐怕就在这里。

【用法】

(1) one 这里为代词,代指"man"。

(2) maybe 为副词,意思为"也许,大概",表示推测。注意 maybe 与 may be 的区别:may be 为情态动词后加动词 be 构成的结构,而 maybe 是一个单词,表示可能性,一般位于句首。例如:

She may be the girl who I love. 她也许是我爱的女孩。

Maybe she is the girl who I love. 她也许是我爱的女孩。

(3) that is where the rub is 这就是问题所在。用来引起读者对所述内容加以注意的话语,从而形成对所述内容的强调。表示相似意思的短语还有 there's/lies the rub, that's

www.TopSage.com

the rub, the rub is that, the rub lies in (doing) sth. 等。如：

There's the rub, for it is a claim that can be neither wholly admitted nor wholly dismissed.

那就是问题之所在，因为它是一个既不能完全接受又不能完全放弃的主张。

5. When I was a teenager, I felt that I was just young and uncertain—that I was a new boy in a huge school, and I would have been very pleased to be regarded as something so interesting as a problem.

【译文】我十几岁时，总感到自己年轻，有些事拿不准——我是一所大学里的一名新生，如果我当时真的被看成像一个问题那样有趣，我会感到很得意的。

【用法】

(1) that I was just young and uncertain 和 that I was a new boy in a huge school 都是 that 引导的宾语从句，前者充当动词 feel 的宾语。

(2) I would have been very pleased to be regarded as something so interesting as a problem 使用了与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，这种虚拟语气是由于与过去事实相反引人的。其基本结构是：if 引导的条件句中谓语动词用"had＋过去分词"，而主句谓语动词用"would/should/could/might＋have＋过去分词"，例如：

If I had known that a bit ealier, there wouldn't have been such a quarel between us.

如果我早一点知道的话，我们之间就不会吵架了。

If there hadn't had such a fierce storm, we might have lived a happy life here.

如果没有发生这么凶猛的暴风雨，我们在这里应该过得很幸福。

另外，上面的结构中可以省略 if 或把 if 引导的状语从句省略，这时与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的结构可以写成：条件句中谓语动词用"had＋过去分词"并且前置，而主句谓语动词用"would/should/could/might＋have＋过去分词"，本句就是使用的这种形式，例如：

Had I known that a bit ealier, there wouldn't have been such a quarel between us.

如果我早一点知道的话，我们之间就不会吵架了。

(3) something 为不定代词，因此作定语修饰的形容词 interesting 需放其后。

6. For one thing, being a problem gives you a certain identity, and that is one of the things the young are busily engaged in seeking.

【译文】因为这至少使我得到了某种承认，这正是年轻人所热衷追求的。

【用法】

(1) 动名词短语，在句子中作主语。that 为指示代词，指代 being a... identity。the young are busily engaged in seeking 为定语从句，与 one of the things 之间省略了关系代词 that/which。

(2) for one thing 首先，用来引出某事的原因，如：

I prefer badminton to squash. It's not so tiring for one thing. 与壁球相比，我更喜欢羽毛球，主要是它没有那么累。

有时构成 for one thing,..., and for another (thing)...（一则……，再则……）这样的结构，如：

For one thing, he drinks; for another, he likes gambling. 一则他酗酒，二则他喜欢赌博。

(3) being a problem 成/作为一个问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

7. They have an air of freedom, and they have not a dreary commitment to mean ambitions or love of comfort.

TopSage.com

【译文】他们无拘无束，他们既不追逐卑鄙的名利，也不贪图生活的享受。

【用法】

(1) have an/the air of 有……模样，呈现……景象，如：

He has an air of a scholar. 他有学者风度。

She has an air of superiority. 她流露出高人一等的样子。

The town has an air of prosperity. 这座城镇呈现出繁荣的景象。

(2) have a/the/one's commitment to 信奉，有……的责任/义务，如：

They have a sincere commitment to religion. 他们虔诚地信奉宗教。

It has the commitment to each of the contracting states. 它对每一缔约国承担义务。

We have our commitment to pay the bills on time. 我们有如期付账的义务。

8. ... and they have no devotion to material things.

【译文】他们也不一味追求物质享受。

【用法】have a/the devotion to 对……具有献身精神。to 为介词，后需使用名词、名词性短语或代词，如：

He has an inflexible devotion to an ideal. 他具有对一种理想坚定不移的献身精神。

They have an unselfish devotion to development of human welfare. 他们有为增进人类幸福而献身的无私精神。

9. All this seems to me to link them with life, and the origins of things.

【译文】在我看来，所有这些使他们与生命和万物之源联系在了一起。

【用法】

(1) to me 这里为插入语，意思为"对我来说"，其位置比较灵活。这句话也可以改写为 To me, all this seems to link them with life, and the origins of things。

(2) link... with... 固定搭配，意思为"将……与……联系在一起"。

10. It's as if they were, in some sense, cosmic beings in violent and lovely contrast with us suburban creatures.

【译文】从某种意义上讲，他们似乎是宇宙人，同我们这些凡夫俗子成了强烈而鲜明的对照。

【用法】

(1) as if 好像，似乎。短语连词，如文中那样，当其后引出的方式状语从句表示的情况不是事实而是主观想象或夸大性的比喻时，其从句中的谓语动词(即 were)需用虚拟语气。in some sense 就某种意义上讲/而言，在文中作插入语使用。suburban creatures 为 us 的同位语，对 us 作进一步说明。

(2) in contrast with 与……相比，介词 with 也可用 to 替代，如：

In contrast with/to his brother, he was always considerate in his treatment of others. 与他弟弟相比，他总是能体谅他人。

The white half-length figure stood out plainly in contrast with the dark background. 以黑色背景相衬，白色半身像显得一清二楚。

11. All that is in my mind when I meet a young person. He may be conceited, ill-mannered, presumptuous or fatuous, but I do not turn for protection to dreary clichés about respect for elders—as if mere age were a reason for respect.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】每逢我遇到年轻人，脑子里就想到这些。年轻人也许狂妄自负、举止无理、傲慢放肆、愚昧无知，但我不会用应当尊重长者这一套陈词滥调来为我自己辩护，似乎年长就是受人尊敬的理由。

【用法】

(1) All that is in my mind when I meet a young person 中，句子的主语为代词 that，all 为形容词，修饰 that。其中 that 指代的是后面的句子 He may be. . . 。

(2) turn to 固定词组，意思为“借用……，求助于……”。在这句话中将作为目的状语的介词短语 for protection 前置，放在了 turn 的后面，是因为 turn to 的宾语太长，影响动词和状语之间的衔接。

(3) as if 连词，意思为“好像是……”，由于从句中的内容是假设的、虚拟的，所以从句中的谓语动词应该使用虚拟语气形式，即使用动词的过去式。

12. I accept that we are equals, and I will argue with him, as an equal, if I think he is wrong.

【译文】我认为我和他们是平等的，如果我认为他错了，我就以平等的身份和他们争个明白。

【用法】

(1) 句中的 equal 为名词，含义为“同等物，平等或相同的人”。如：

Few men are his intellectual equals. 在智力上无人比得上他。

(2) 动词 argue 的含义为“辩论，争论”时，常与 with，about 连用；含义为“主张，反对”时，常与 for，against 连用。如：

Don't argue with me; my decision is final. 不要跟我争了；就这么定了。

Arguing about details consumed many hours of the committee's valuable time. 辩论细节花费了委员们好几个小时的宝贵时间。

当介词 with 后指物时，往往表达“用/以……争论”、“以……方式争论”，如：

He argued with much reason. 他辩论得头头是道。

They are arguing with great heat about the justice of the war. 他们正热烈地争论这场战争的正义性。

核心语法

➡被动语态

一、被动语态的构成

1. 被动语态的构成是：be ＋ 过去分词。请看下表：

主 动 句	被 动 句
I clean the window.	The window is cleaned by me.
You clean the window.	The window is cleaned by you.
He cleans the window.	The window is cleaned by him.

被动语态由 be＋过去分词构成；

主动句的主语：I, you, he 变成被动句中 by 的宾语：by me, by you, by him；

主动句的宾语：the window 变成被动句的主语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. 根据时态的不同，被动语态中的 be 动词可以有各种变化：

一般现在时：He cleans the window.

The window is cleaned by him. (is)

现在进行时：He is cleaning the window.

The window is being cleaned by him. (is being)

现在完成时：He has cleaned the window.

The window has been cleaned by him. (has been)

一般过去时：He cleaned the window.

The window was cleaned by him. (was)

过去进行时：He was cleaning the window.

The window was being cleaned by him. (was being)

过去完成时：He had cleaned the window.

The window had been cleaned by him. (had been)

一般将来时：He will clean the window.

The window will be cleaned by him. (will be)

将来完成时：He will have cleaned the window.

The window will have been cleaned by him. (will have been)

完成进行时 (have been doing) 几乎不用被动语态。进行时 (be doing) 也较少用被动语态。

二、被动语态的用法

通常被动语态在使用中是不带 by 短语的，即不给出被动动作的实施者。原因主要有：不知道动作的实施者；谁是实施者并不重要。具体包括：

1. 动作的实施者很明显，因而没有必要提到：

a. The rubbish hasn't been collected. 垃圾没有被清走。

b. Your hand will be X-rayed. 你的手要拍 X 光片。

c. The streets are swept every day. 街道每天都清扫。

2. 不知道谁是或没有必要提及动作的实施者：

a. The President has been murdered. 总统被暗杀了。

b. My car has been moved! 我的车被人挪动过。

c. Rice is grown in many countries. 很多国家种植水稻。

d. The library was built in 1890. 该图书馆于 1890 年建成。

3. 当动作的实施者是泛指人们时：

这样使用的动词有：acknowledge，assume，believe，claim，consider，estimate，feel，find，know，presume，report，say，think 等。

People believe him to be honest. 人们相信他是诚实的。

He is believed to be honest. 相信他是诚实的。

People suspected him of receiving stolen goods. 人们怀疑他接受了赃物。

He was suspected of receiving stolen goods. 他被怀疑接受了赃物。

4. 主动句的主语是不定代词 one，you，they 时：

One/You see this kind of advertisement everywhere.

宜改为：This kind of advertisement is seen everywhere. 这样的广告随处可见。

They are building a new public library in our town.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

宜改为：A new public library is being built in our town. 在我们小镇上正在兴建一个新的公共图书馆。

5. 在主从句中，使用被动语态可避免改换句子主语（这时可以接 by 短语）：

(1) 主动句→被动句

When he arrived home, a detective arrested him.

最好改为：When he arrived home, he was arrested.

When their mother was ill, neighbors looked after the children.

最好改为：When their mother was ill, the children were looked after by neighbors.

(2) 不及物动词没有被动语态

一般来说，能带有宾语的动词才可以有被动语态，因此，不及物动词和系动词是没有被动语态的，而及物动词才可以有被动语态。

He looks fine.（没有被动语态）

He came here last night.（没有被动语态）

(3) 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语

对于双宾语（即句子含有一个直接宾语和一个间接宾语）的被动语态，从理论上讲，可以有两种被动语态形式：

Someone gave me a gift. →I was given a gift.

Someone gave a gift to me. →A gift was given to me.

但是，把间接宾语"人"作为被动句的主语更常用。

三、静态被动形式

I locked the door two minutes ago.

The door was locked by me two minutes ago.

这里的 was locked 强调动作。

Now the door is locked.

这里的 is locked 并没有强调动作，而只是在说明门的状况。这里的 locked 起着形容词的作用，用来描述一种存在的状态而非动作，我们姑且称之为"静态被动形式"。

再比如：

a. Clint broke the window last night.

b. The window was broken last night.（强调动作）这窗户是昨天晚上打碎的。

c. Now the window is broken.（静态被动）现在窗子碎了。

常见的这种静态被动形式有：interested, excited, satisfied, married, disappointed, scared, frightened, worried, lost 等。这种被动语态后面一般不接介词 by，而是用其他介词。

a. I am interested in grammar.

b. I am satisfied with Clint's grammar course.

c. She is married to her teacher.

d. The table is made of wood.

e. Are you scared of snakes? 你怕蛇吗？

四、get 与被动语态

get 可与过去分词连用，即可以构成被动语态：

a. My watch got broken while I was playing with the children.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

b. He got caught by the police because he exceeded the speed limit. 由于超速，他让警察给截住了。

也可以接静态的被动形式，表示主语的状态，这一用法经常使用：

c. I stopped working because I got tired.

d. I got worried because he was two hours late.

e. She is getting dressed to the party and has trouble deciding what clothes to wear.

五、have/get sth. done

我们可以用 have sth. done 或者 get sth. done（主要用在口语中）来表示：

1. 安排别人把事情做好。（主要用法）

a. The roof of Clint's house was damaged in a storm, so he arranged for somebody to repair it. Yesterday a workman came and repaired the roof. Then we can say:

Clint had the roof repaired yesterday. 昨天，Clint 找人把屋顶给修了。

The roof was repaired not by Clint himself, but by the workman.

b. A：Are you going to repair the car yourself? 你打算自己修车？

B：No, I'm going to have it repaired. 不，我打算找人修。

c. I must get my hair cut. =I want someone to cut my hair.

d. You should get/have your bike repaired.

e. If you don't get out of my house, I'll have you arrested. 你要是不给我出去，我就叫人把你抓起来。

2. 谈论发生在自己身上的事。

有时，have sth. done 完全表达另外一种意思。例如：

a. We had all our money stolen while we were on holiday. 度假的时候我们的钱全让人给偷了。

"钱被偷"并不是我们有意去安排的。这一用法往往表示发生在自己身上的事，尤其是意外的、甚至是不幸的事情。

b. I got my car stolen last year. 去年，我的车让人给偷了。

c. Have you ever had your passport stolen? 你护照被偷过吗？

d. Joe had his leg broken in a fight. 在一次打架中，Joe 把腿弄折了。

e. It took me two hours to get the washing done. 花了我两个小时才把衣服洗完。

f. Don't get your plans changed. 别改变你的计划。

总的来说，被动语态是较为简单的。要熟练掌握被动语态的各种时态变化形式。掌握 have sth. done 的句型。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 6 The sporting spirit

本节重点和难点

条件状语从句(1)

- if,unless 引导的条件状语从句
- 其他常用来引导条件状语从句的连词

本课词汇

goodwill ['gudwil] *n.* 友好
cricket ['krikit] *n.* 板球
inclination [ˌinkli'neiʃən] *n.* 意愿
contest ['kɔntest] *n.* 比赛
orgy ['ɔːdʒi] *n.* 无节制,放荡
deduce [di'djuːs] *v.* 推断
competitive [kəm'petitiv] *adj.* 竞争性的
patriotism ['pætriətizəm] *n.* 地方观念,爱国主义
disgrace [dis'greis] *v.* 使丢脸
savage ['sævidʒ] *adj.* 野性的
combative ['kɔmbətiv] *adj.* 好斗的
mimic warfare ['mimik; 'wɔːfɛə] 模拟战争
behavior [bi'heivjə] *n.* 行动,举止
absurd [əb'səːd] *adj.* 荒唐的

课文详解

1. I am always amazed when I hear people saying that sport creates goodwill between the nations, and that if only the common peoples of the world could meet one another at football or cricket, they would have no inclination to meet on the battlefield.

【译文】当我听人们说体育运动可创造国家之间的友谊,还说各国民众若在足球场或板球场上交锋,他们就不愿在战场上残杀的时候,我总是惊愕不已。

【用法】

(1) 这个长句的结构是"主句+when 引导的时间状语从句",而在 when 引导的时间状语从句,又有两个 that 引导的宾语从句,充当 say 的宾语。而在第二个 that 引导的宾语从句中,又有 if 引导的条件状语从句。

(2) that if only... battlefield 作 saying 的宾语从句。其中的复合从属连词 if only(只要)根据实际语境和语义的需要,可用来引导真实性条件状语从句,或如文中那样引导非真实性条件状语从句。could meet 和 would have 是用来表示与现在事实不符的虚拟语气结构。

(3) one another 固定词组,意思为"彼此,互相",指三者或三者以上的"相互"。而 each other 应当用于表达两个个体间的相互关系。

(4) have inclination to do sth. 固定搭配,意思为"具有……的倾向",其中 to 为动词不定式的标志,后面接动词原形。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Even if one didn't know from concrete examples (the 1936 Olympic Games, for instance) that international sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred, one could deduce it from general principles.

【译文】一个人即使不能从具体的事例(例如1936年的奥林匹克运动会)了解到国际运动比赛会导致疯狂的仇恨,也可以从常理中推断出结论。

【用法】

(1) 连词词组 even if(即使)在这里用来引导含虚拟语气的让步状语从句,其主句为 one could...部分。even if 即使,尽管,纵然,它与 even though 表达的语义一样,均作从属连词引导让步状语从句。even if 多在口语中使用,而 even though 多在比较正式的书面语中使用。it 在这里指 that 所引导的宾语从句(即 international... hatred)中的内容。

(2) that international sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred 为 that 引导的宾语从句,充当 know 的宾语。在这句话中将状语 from concrete examples 直接置于 know 之后是为了保证句子的衔接。

(3) orgies of hatred 极度仇恨。deduce... from 从……中判断出,如:The police deduced the exact spot where the murder took place from a few abandoned items scattered around. 警方从几件四处丢弃的物件准确推断出了杀人现场。句中的 from 意为"根据……,凭……"。from concrete examples"根据具体例子",from memory"凭记忆",from principles"根据原则"。

3. Nearly all the sports practised nowadays are competitive.

【译文】现在开展的体育运动几乎都是竞争性的。

【用法】

(1) nearly 程度副词,意思为"几乎",注意 nearly 和 almost 的区别。almost 也是程度副词,意思为"几乎,差不多"。虽然这两个词意思和词性相同,但是它们的用法不同:nearly 只能用于肯定句中,而 almost 既可用于肯定句中,也可以用于否定句中。例如:

The girl nearly/almost died in this accident. 这个女孩在这次事故中差点就送了命。

Almost no person believes him. 几乎没有人相信他。

(2) practised nowadays 为动词的过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰 sports。动词 practise 和名词 sports 为逻辑上的动宾关系,所以这里使用 practise 的过去分词形式。注意 practise 为动词,其名词形式为 practice。类似的有 advise 和 advice。

4. You play to win, and the game has little meaning unless you do your utmost to win.

【译文】参加比赛就是为了取胜,如果不拼命去赢,比赛就没有什么意义了。

【用法】

(1) to win 为动词不定式,这里作目的状语,用来说明做出 play 动作的目的。you 在这里如同前文中的 one 一样,用来泛指"人们"。

(2) have little meaning 没有什么意义。little(没什么,没多少)只能用来修饰不可数名词,表示"基本否定"的含义;表达"基本肯定"的含义(一点,些许)修饰不可数名词时,则需用 a little。

(3) unless 除非,从属连词,引导条件状语从句。unless 引导一般性条件状语从句或该从句带有"附加"意味时,如文中那样,该从句通常置于主句之后。再如:I won't write unless he writes first. 我不会给他写信的,除非他先给我写信。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

想加强该条件状语从句的语气时，也可将其放在主句之前。如：Unless you go with me, I shall not go. 除非你跟我去，不然我就不去。

此外，有时在 unless 后可以使用省略形式。如：I shall not go unless invited. 除非接到邀请，否则我是不会去的。/In this article the word is used in its original sense unless otherwise stated. 在这篇文章里，这个词永远是照本义用，除非另有说明。在第 1 句的 unless 与 invited 之间省略了 I am；在第 2 句的 unless 与 otherwise 之间省略了 it is。应当注意的是，只有当从句使用的主语同主句中的主语一致而且从句主语后使用的是 be 动词时，才能用上述省略形式。

(4) do one's utmost to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事。如：We must do our utmost to fulfil the task. 我们必须尽最大努力来完成这一工作。

5. On the village green, where you pick up sides and no feeling of local patriotism is involved, it is possible to play simply for the fun and exercise:...

【译文】在乡间的草坪上，当你随意组成两个队，并且不涉及任何地方情绪时，那才有可能是单纯为了娱乐和锻炼。

【用法】

(1) where you pick up sides and no feeling of local patriotism is involved 为 where 引导的定语从句，修饰 village green。由于先行词在定语从句中充当逻辑上的地点状语，故使用关系副词 where，此处的 where 也可以用 in which 代替。

先行词为表示地点的名词时，当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的状语时，用关系副词 where，而当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的主语、宾语或表语时，则用关系代词 that 或 which。

She went to the city which is far away from Beijing. 她去了一个离北京很远的城市。

She went to a city that she loved very much. 她去了一个她非常喜欢的城市。

She went to the city where her boyfriend had lived. 她去了她男朋友生活过的城市。

(2) "it is＋形容词＋to do sth."为一个固定结构，意思为"做某事很……"，其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语为动词不定式 to do sth.。例如：

It is disappointing to know that you failed the exam. 知道你没通过考试，真是令人失望。

It is exciting to travel by train. 乘坐火车旅行令人很兴奋。

(3) pick up sides 在这里用来表示"随意组队"之意。pick up 为 gather together 之意。

6. but as soon as the question of prestige arises, as soon as you feel that you and some larger unit will be disgraced if you lose...

【译文】可是一旦涉及到荣誉问题，一旦你想到和某一团体会因你输了而丢脸时……

【用法】

(1) as soon as 相当于一个连词，意思为"一……就……"，用于引导时间状语从句。与其意思相同的词语有 immediately, directly, the moment, the time 等。例如：

I determined to lodge a complaint immediately we arrived. 我决定一到目的地就给铁路部门提意见。

(2) arouse 为及物动词，意思为"激起，引发"。注意 arouse 和 arise 的区别。arise 一般作为不及物动词，意思为"出现，发生"。例如：

Accidents arise from carelessness. 疏忽大意往往会引起事故。

His greedy desires were aroused by money. 金钱激起了他的贪欲。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. At the international level, sport is frankly mimic warfare.

【译文】在国际比赛中，体育简直是一场模拟战争。

【用法】

(1) At the international level 在国际水平上，作状语。根据上下文，如译文所示，可译作“在国际比赛中”。

(2) mimic 这里为形容词，意思为“模仿的，模拟的，假装的”。另外，mimic 也可以作动词使用，注意其过去分词和现在分词的形式分别为 mimicked 和 mimicking。例如：
He mimicked the teacher's voice. 他模仿老师的声音。
Chandler liked to mimic his boss. 钱德勒喜欢模仿他老板的举动。

8. But the significant thing is not the behaviour of the players but the attitude of the spectators; and, behind the spectators, of the nations who work themselves into furies over these absurd contests, and seriously believe—at any rate for short periods—that running, jumping and kicking a ball are tests of national virtue.

【译文】但是，要紧的还不是运动员的行为，而是观众的态度，以及观众身后各个国家的态度。面对着这些荒唐的比赛，参赛的各个国家会如痴如狂，甚至煞有介事地相信——至少在短期内如此——跑跑，跳跳，踢踢球是对一个民族品德素质的检验。

【用法】

(1) behind the spectators 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 the nations。按照正常语序形式应为：the nations behind the spectators who work...，即作定语的介词短语应放在被修饰词之后。这里将其提前，一是使 the nations 之后由 who 引导的定语从句同被修饰词 the nations 保持更紧密的关系，二是对该介词短语起到强调的作用，并使全句有更好的平衡感。此外，起承上作用，在 the nations 前省略了 the attitude，意即“观众背后隐含的国家的态度”。

(2) is not... but... 不是……而是……，并非……而是……。如：I don't want to see you but him. 我不想见你，而是想见他。

(3) 动词 work 在这里被用来表达“使逐渐进入某种状态”之意。表达此含义时，动词 work 后通常使用 adj. /adv. /prep. 或宾语＋adj. /adv. /prep. 结构，如：This little screw has worked (itself) loose. 那个螺丝钉逐渐松了。/He worked himself into a temper. 他越憋火气越大。/They're gradually working round to our point of view. 他们逐渐赞同了我们的观点。

(4) 动词 work 和 believe 作 who 引导的定语从句中的并列谓语。at any rate for short periods 至少在短期内。在文中作插入语使用。介词短语 at any rate 用来表达“任何情况下”、“无论如何”之意，如：At any rate we can go out when it stops raining. 不管怎样，只要雨一停我们就可以出去了。

(5) that running,... national virtue 为跟随在动词 believe 后的宾语从句。

核心语法

➡条件状语从句

1. 真实条件句

(1) 条件从句最常见的引导词是 if 和 unless。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a. If winter comes, can spring be far behind? 如果冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

b. You don't need an umbrella unless it is raining. 如果天没下雨，你就不需要带伞。

c. In politics, if you want someone to make a speech, ask a man; if you want something done, ask a woman. (by Margaret Thatcher)

d. If he's the first thing you think of when you wake up, the only thing you think of when you're awake, and the last thing you think of before you go to bed, then he's really something special.

e. Today if a happy smile comes to you, a happy smile that perhaps you can't explain... it is because at that moment, I am thinking of you, and smiling too.

(2) 其他的连词有：suppose (that), supposing (that), providing/provided (that), so long as, as long as, on condition that 等。

f. A man is not old as long as he is seeking something.

g. So long as you work hard enough, an iron rod can be ground into a needle. 只要功夫深，铁杵磨成针。

h. He will surely finish the job on time ________ he's left to do it in his own way.

(四级真题)

A. in that B. in case C. as far as D. so long as

正确答案：D

3. 其他表示条件意味的句型

(1) 祈使句/省略句＋and... ＝ if 从句＋主句

a. Use your head, and you will find a way. ＝If you use your head, you will find a way.

b. A minute later and we would have missed the train. ＝If we had arrived a minute later, we would have missed the train.

c. Spare the rod and spoil the child. ＝If you spare the rod, you'll spoil the child. 孩子不打不成器。

(2) 祈使句/省略句＋or/or else ＝ unless 从句＋主句

Give it back to me or (else) I'll tell your parents. ＝Unless you give it back to me, I'll tell your parents.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 7 Bats

本节重点和难点

条件状语从句(2)

- if 与 provided/providing 意义上的区别
- 主句和条件从句的时态关系

本课词汇

bat [bæt] *n.* 蝙蝠

strictly ['striktli] *adv.* 明确地

【词组】strictly speaking 严格地说

appreciation [əˌpriːʃi'eiʃən] *n.* 理解

obstruction [əb'strʌkʃən] *n.* 障碍(物)

elapse [i'læps] *v.* 消逝

【辨析】elapse、pass 这两个词都有"过去"的意思。elapse 正式用词,只用于时间的过去和消逝;pass 一般用词,用于人、动物、车船、时间等通过或过去,也用于考试、检查、议案等的通过。

hull [hʌl] *n.* 船体

interval ['intəvl] *n.* 间歇 [同] break, interruption

receipt [ri'siːt] *n.* 收到

【用法】be in receipt of 相当于"have received",意为"收到";on the receipt of 相当于"when one receives"意为"一旦收到……",作"收入、进款"讲时常用复数 receipts。

apparatus [ˌæpə'reitəs] *n.* 仪器

【词组】medical apparatus 医疗器械/remote control apparatus 遥控装置/electric heating apparatus 电暖器/the respiratory apparatus 呼吸器官/the state apparatus 国家机器/the security apparatus 治安机构/the spy apparatus 间谍组织/An automobile is a complicated apparatus. 汽车是台复杂的机器。

【用法】apparatus 作"器具"、"仪器"、"设备"讲时,一般不用复数,而用 pieces of apparatus 表示多件器具。

shoal [ʃəul] *n.* 鱼群

herring ['heriŋ] *n.* 鲱鱼

cod [kɔd] *n.* 鳕鱼

squeak [skwiːk] *n.* 尖叫声

课文详解

1. Not all sounds made by animals serve as language, and we have only to turn to that extraordinary discovery of echo-location in bats to see a case in which the voice plays a strictly utilitarian role.

【译文】动物发出的声音不都是用作语言交际。我们只要看一看蝙蝠回声定位这一极不寻常的发现,就可以探究一下声音在什么情况下有绝对的实用价值。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) Not all sounds made by animals 并非动物发出的所有声音。not all 结构表示部分否定，译为"并非所有的……都……"。修饰可数名词的复数时，谓语动词用复数形式；修饰不可数名词时谓语动词用单数形式。类似表达法还有：Not every＋单数可数名词＋单数谓语；Not each＋单数可数名词＋单数谓语；All... not... 结构等等。如：Not every one can make music. 并非所有的人都能创作音乐。

(2) serve as 作为，用作，如：

He has served the company for fifty years, first as office boy and eventually as managing director. 他为公司干了 50 年，最初当办公室勤杂工，最终当上了总裁。

turn to 求助于，如：

They had to turn to the villagers for help. 他们不得不向村民们求助。

(3) see... role 为动词不定式短语，在句子中作目的状语。在此从句中的 play a... role in 意为"在……方面起……作用"，如：

The local police played an important role in settling the regional conflict. 当地警察在解决地区冲突中起了重要的作用。

2. To get a full appreciation of what this means we must turn first to some recent human inventions.

【译文】要透彻理解这句话的意义，我们应先回顾一下人类最近的几项发明。

【用法】

(1) what this means 为 what 引导的宾语从句，充当介词 of 的宾语，其用法相当于一个名词，所以也可以称之为名词性从句。一般地，以 wh-开头的疑问词都可以引导名词性从句，例如：

I don't know where you have been to. 我不知道你去哪儿了。

Which boy is her boyfriend is still a mystery. 到底谁是她的男朋友还是一个谜。

(2) get an appreciation of sth. 的意思是"对……有个理解，理解……"。

3. Everyone knows that if he shouts in the vicinity of a wall or a mountainside, an echo will come back.

【译文】大家都知道，在墙壁或山腰附近发出喊声，就会听到回声。

【用法】

(1) that 引导一个宾语从句，在此宾语从句中使用了一个由 if 引导的条件状语从句。

(2) in the vicinity of 在……附近，如：Are there any shops in our vicinity? 我们附近有商店吗？/All the ships in the vicinity of the crash joined in the search for survivors. 失事附近的所有船只都加入到对幸存者的搜寻之中。

4. The further off this solid obstruction, the longer time will elapse for the return of the echo.

【译文】固体碍障物越远，回声返回所用时间就越长。

【用法】

(1) 由于语义明确，本句的 obstruction 之后省略了 is。for return of the echo 为介词短语，在本句中作定语，修饰 time。介词短语应紧随被修饰词之后，即 the longer time for the return of the echo....。这里用较短的谓语动词将其分开，主要是出于修辞的需要，使句子保持平衡。

(2) The further off...，the longer time... 是由定冠词 the＋形容词(或副词)比较级＋定冠词

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

the +形容词(或副词)比较级形式的特殊使用方法,表示具有因果关系的"越……,越……"的含义,即当一方有变化时另一方也随之变化,如:The more money you make, the more you spend. 你钱赚得越多,你花得就越多。/The more expensive petrol becomes, the less people drive. 汽油越贵,车就开得越少。

5. So was born the echo-sounding apparatus, now in general use in ships.

【译文】这样就产生了目前各种船舶上普遍应用的回声探测仪。

【用法】

(1) so 这里为副词,意思为"这样,如此",通常放在所修饰的动词后面。当 so 位于句首时,句子要部分倒装,即将助动词和主语倒装,例如:So do I. 我也是。

(2) apparatus 通常指有专门用途的成套的仪表、器械、仪器、装置、设备等。

(3) now in general use in ships 为介词短语作定语修饰 the echo-sounding apparatus,这里相当于一个非限制性定语从句 which are now in general use in ships。

6. Every solid object will reflect a sound, varying according to the size and nature of the object.

【译文】任何固体都反射声音,反射的声音因物体的大小和性质的不同而不同。

【用法】varying according to... the object 为现在分词短语,由于主语 solid object 和动词 vary 之间为逻辑上的主谓关系,所以这里使用 vary 的现在分词形式。

注意:according to (视……而定,依照)介词短语后面应搭配名词,如:Every man will be paid according to his ability. 每个人的工资将依照其能力而定。

In accordance with(与……一致)后亦跟名词或短语,如:In accordance with your orders I sold the boat. 依照你的命令,我把船卖了。

7. A shoal of fish will do this.

【译文】鱼群也反射声音。

【用法】句中的 do this 指 reflect a sound。名词 shoal 的意思是"(鱼)群,一大群(鱼)"。注意"群"的不同用法:a group of people 一群人;a swarm of ants 一群蚂蚁;a litter of pigs 一窝猪,等等。

8. So it is a comparatively simple step from locating the sea bottom to locating a shoal of fish.

【译文】从测定海深到测定鱼群,这一进展比较容易。

【用法】from... to... 为一介词结构表示"从……到……"之意。因为 from 和 to 都是介词,所以后接动名词。

9. With experience, and with improved apparatus, it is now possible not only to locate a shoal but to tell if it is herring, cod, or other well-known fish, by the pattern of its echo.

【译文】根据经验和改进了的仪器,不仅能够确定鱼群的位置,而且可根据鱼群回声的特点分辨出是鲱鱼、鳕鱼,还是人们所熟悉的其他鱼。

【用法】

(1) With experience, and with improved apparatus 为方式状语,其中介词 with 的意思为"用……,使用某种工具"。

(2) not only... but (also)... 固定搭配,意思为"不但……,而且……",其中 also 可以省略。例如:

She is not only my teacher, but (also) a friend of mine. 她不但是我的老师,也是我的一位朋友。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

另外，当 not only 置于句首时，其后的句子要部分倒装，即主语和助动词倒置，例如：

Not only do I know of him, but also know him. 我不但知道他，还了解他。

(3) if it is herring, cod, or other well-known fish 为 if 引导的宾语从句，充当动词 tell 的宾语。其中 if 的意思为"是否"，与 whether 意思相同。注意不要和引导条件状语从句的 if 混淆。例如：

We should find out whether (if) the museum is open. 我们该查明博物馆是不是开门。

Ask if he plans to come to the meeting. 问问他是否要来参加会议。

10. It has been found that certain bats emit squeaks and by receiving the echoes, they can locate and steer clear of obstacles—or locate flying insects on which they feed.

【译文】人们发现，某些蝙蝠能发出尖叫声，并能通过回声来确定并躲开障碍物，或找到它们赖以为生的昆虫。

【用法】

(1) it 为形式主语，而由 that 引导的从句(即从 that 至全句尾)为句子的逻辑主语。

(2) steer clear of 回避，避开，为口语用法，如：

I should steer clear of the fish stew; it's not very nice! 我可不吃焖鱼那道菜，它并不特别好吃！

You'd better steer clear of all those doubtful questions. 你最好回避所有那些可疑/含糊的问题。

(3) feed on 靠……生活，以……为食物，如：

What does this bird feed on? 这鸟吃什么？

Sheep feed mostly on grass. 羊以食草为主。

11. This echo-location in bats is often compared with radar, the principle of which is similar.

【译文】蝙蝠的这种回声定位常常可与雷达相比较，其原理是相似的。

【用法】

(1) compare... with... 用来表达"将……同……相比较"以发现其异同之处。注意它与 compare... to... 在语义上的不同，后者用来表示"将……比作……"，用以说明两者之间的相似之处。

(2) the principle of which is similar 为非限制性定语从句，用来对前文作进一步说明。这里也可以用 whose principle is similar。

核心语法

➡条件状语从句(2)

一、if 与 provided/providing 意义上的区别

provided (that)、providing (that)"倘若"，"条件是"，指人们所希望的条件，而 if 不一定含有这一层意思。换句话说，二者不能完全替换。

a. We can sell a lot of men's shirts, provided (if) your price is highly competitive.

b. We shall cancel the contract if you fail to open the relative L/C before the end of this year.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

在 b 句中 if 不能用 provided 来替换，因为 if 从句的内容并不是讲话人所希望的条件或应该实现的规定。

二、主句和条件从句的时态关系

主句和条件从句的时间关系，取决于实际情况，它们可以在时态上不一致。

a. If you have finished your homework, you can go out and play.

b. If that is what he told you, he was telling lies.

c. If Bill hadn't shown up when you arrived, he won't come in at all this morning.

d. If Paul arrived only yesterday, he will probably not leave before Sunday.

e. I apologize if I ________ you, but I assure you it was unintentional.

A. offend　　B. had offended

C. should have offended　　D. might have offended

正确答案：B

此题是一个错综条件句，从后一句(it was unintentional)的时态我们可看出 if 条件句应是表示过去的条件，且 offend 的动作应该是在 it was unintentional 之前，即过去的过去，用过去完成时。故选 B。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 8 Trading standards

本节重点和难点

直接引语和间接引语(1)

- 直接引语的概念
- 标点符号在直接引语表述中的使用

本课词汇

slaughter ['slɔːtə] *v.* 屠杀

【辨 析】kill、assassinate、butcher、massacre、murder、slaughter、slay

这七个词均可作"杀"解,kill 指以任何一种方式使人、动物或植物死亡;assassinate 多指用武器暗杀知名人士或重要人物;butcher 主要指为了食用而杀死牲畜,也指残忍、野蛮地杀害他人;massacre 指在战争或迫害中,对手无寸铁的人进行大批残酷杀害;murder 多指故意杀害他人的犯罪行为;slaughter 与 butcher 基本同意,但规模要比 butcher 大;slay 多用于报刊或诗歌中,主要指残酷地用武器肆意杀害。

fit [fit] *adj.* 适合

【词组】be fit for 适合于……的/be fit for sb. to do 适合(某人)做/fit sb. for (to do) sth. 使(人)能适合……

【辨析】fit、suit、match

这三个词当动词用都可表示"合适"。fit 通常表示尺寸、大小、形状等合适;suit 表示打扮或颜色是否合适;match 表示质料、颜色等是否搭配。

grace [greis] *v.* 给……增光

tariff ['tærif] *n.* 关税

standard ['stændəd] *n.* 标准

【词组】reach a standard 达到标准/up to (below) standard 达到(未达)标准

【辨析】standard 指被公认为质量、价值、数量、道德水准或智能程度等的比较基础的准则或典范。criterion 指据以判断已经存在的某物的价值、优点或其他品质的准则或测试标准。

dialysis [dai'ælisis] *n.* 分离,分解,透析,渗析

electrocute [i'lektrəkjuːt] *v.* 使触电身亡

eliminate [i'limineit] *v.* 消灭

accord [ə'kɔːd] *n.* 协议

device [di'vais] *n.* 仪器,器械

【词组】labo(u)r-saving (safety) device 省工(安全)装置/try(employ) all kinds of devices 用各种手段

hammer out 推敲

pact [pækt] *n.* 合同,条约,公约

课文详解

1. Chickens slaughtered in the United States, claim officials in Brussels, are not fit to grace European tables.

【译文】布鲁塞尔的官员说,在美国屠宰的鸡不适于用来装点欧洲的餐桌。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) Chickens slaughtered in the United States 中 slaughtered in the United States 为 Chickens 的后置定语。动词 slaughter 与 chickens 为逻辑上的动宾关系,即"鸡是被屠宰的",所以这里使用表示被动的过去分词短语作后置定语。

(2) claim officials in Brussels 为主句,而剩余部分实际为没有引号的直接引语,其主语为 chickens,谓语为 are not。引语整个或部分位于主句前时,主句可全部倒装,如文中那样用"动词+主语"这样的倒装词序,也可以用"主语+动词"这样的词序。

(3) be fit to do sth. 适合做某事,如:

He has recovered from illness quite recently; he is, therefore, not fit to take a long walk. 他的病刚好,所以还不适宜走长路。

He's not fit to tackle such an arduous task. 他不适宜担负这么艰巨的任务。

2. These days, it is differences in national regulations, far more than tariffs, that put sand in the wheels of trade between rich countries.

【译文】当前,是各国管理条例上的差异,而不是关税阻碍了发达国家之间的贸易。

【用法】

(1) 本句是由 it is/was... that/who(m)... 构成的强调句式。这种句式常用来对句子中的某个词或某个短语进行强调。is/was 后为被强调部分,that/who(m)之后为句子的非强调部分。

(2) 在 more than 此短语后,不仅可以跟句子,而且可以跟形容词、副词、动词或名词,其语义往往由于后面跟随的成分的不同而不同。如文那样,其后为名词时,往往表达"不只是"、"不仅仅"之意,如:

A science is more than a large amount of information on some subject.

一门科学不只是有关某门学科的大量资料。

(3) 短语 put sand in the wheels of 的意思是"阻挠"。

3. It is not just farmers who are complaining.

【译文】并不仅仅是农民在抱怨。

【用法】complain 经常与 about 和 to 连用,含义为"抱怨,埋怨;申诉,控告,控诉"。如:

She is always complaining about something to me. 她总是对我抱怨这,抱怨那的。

Our next door neighbor said he'd complain about us to the police if we made any more noise. 我们的隔壁邻居说,如果我们再吵的话,他要向警方投诉。

注意其派生名词的不同含义:complaint *n.* 抱怨,诉苦,叫屈,控告;complainer *n.* 抱怨者,抗议者,控诉人;complainant *n.* [法律]原告。

4. An electric razor that meets the European Union's safety standards must be approved by American testers before it can be sold in the United States, and an American-made dialysis machine needs the EU's okay before it hits the market in Europe.

【译文】一个符合欧洲联盟安全标准的电动剃须刀必须得到美国检测人员的认可,方可在美国市场销售,而美国制造的透析仪也要得到欧盟的首肯才能进入欧洲市场。

【用法】

(1) that meets the... standards 为定语从句,修饰 razor。本句为由并列连词 and 连接的并

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

列句。并列连词 and 两边的分句，采用了相同的句式结构。这样的文体不仅出于语义表达的需要，而且使两种对比条件的相似性更为鲜明，从而有利于读者对作者所要表达的语义进行更好的理解。

(2) 短语 approve of 的意思是“赞成，赞同”。如：

I don't approve of silly people/wasting time. 我不喜欢傻瓜/我不赞成浪费时间。

文中 hit 为动词，意思是“抵达”，即“到达(市场)”。

5. As it happens, a razor that is safe in Europe is unlikely to electrocute Americans.

【译文】碰巧在欧洲使用安全的剃须刀不大可能使美国人触电身亡。

【用法】

(1) As it happens 这里作插入语使用，用来对 a razor... Americans 情况表示强调。

(2) that is safe in Europe 为 that 引导的定语从句，修饰 razor。

(3) be unlikely to do sth. “不可能做……”。如：

It is unlikely for you to go alone. 你不可能自己去。

可用 be likely to do sth. 表示其反义用法“很可能做……”。

6. So, ask businesses on both sides of the Atlantic, why have two lots of tests where one would do?

【译文】因此，大西洋两岸的企业都在问，当一套测试可以解决问题时，为什么需要两套呢？

【用法】

(1) 本句为直接引语的一种表述方法。其中 ask businesses on both sides of the Atlantic 为主句，其采用的是倒装语序，即“动词＋主语”，相当于 businesses on both sides of the Atlantic ask。

(2) where one would do 为 where 引导的状语从句，其中 do 的意思为“足够解决问题”。

7. Politicians agree, in principle, so America and the EU have been trying to reach a deal which would eliminate the need to double-test many products.

【译文】政治家在原则上同意了，因此，美国和欧洲一直在寻求达成协议，以便为许多产品取消双重检查。

【用法】

(1) which would... many products 作定语从句，后置修饰 deal。to double-test many products 为动词不定式短语作定语，后置修饰 need。

(2) in principle 大体上，在原则上/方面。通常用来说明某事物不完全但基本上符合主语的要求，因而可以接受，如：

We are agreed in principle but not in detail. 我们在原则上是一致的，但在细节上不一致。

The two sides have agreed in principle on the time and place of negotiation. 双方原则上(即大体上)同意了谈判的时间和地点。

(3) have been trying 为现在完成进行时态，用来表明动作发生在过去且一直延续到现在，但更强调现在仍然在进行。

8. They hope to finish in time for a trade summit between America and the EU on May 28th.

【译文】他们希望尽早达成协议，为 5 月 28 日举行的美国和欧洲贸易的最高会议作准备。

【用法】hope 为及物动词，但其后不能直接跟名词或代词作宾语，只能跟 that 从句或动词不定式作宾语，如：

www.TopSage.com

大家网

I have been hoping (that) I'd have a chance to read the novel. 我一直希望有机会读到这部小说。
We hope to supply each of them with some fresh vegetable a day. 我们希望每天供应他们每个人一些新鲜蔬菜。

TopSage.com

9. Although negotiators are optimistic, the details are complex enough that they may be hard-pressed to get a deal at all.

【译文】虽然谈判代表持乐观态度，但协议细节如此复杂，他们所面临的困难很可能使他们根本无法取得一致。

【用法】

(1) although 作连词使用，用来引导让步状语从句。如：
Gretchen kept his coat on although it was warm in the room. 尽管屋内很暖，但是格雷琛并没脱掉大衣。

(2) although 的汉语意思是"虽然……但是……"，但在英语结构中，如果一个句子中有了 although 一词，就不能再用 but 了。但是，当 although 连接三个或更多的分句时，可以与 but 连用。如：
Although she was tired, she went to work, but she didn't stay there long. 虽然她很累，但还是去上班了，可她并没在那里呆多久。

(4) that they may be hard-pressed to get a deal at all 为 that 引导的结果状语从句，表示 details are complex 所可能造成的结果。

10. The Americans would happily reach one accord on standards for medical devices and then hammer out different pacts covering, say, electronic goods and drug manufacturing.

【译文】美国人很愿意先就医疗器械的标准达成一个协议，然后推敲出不同的合同，用以涵盖——比如说——电子产品和药品的生产。

【用法】

(1) covering, say, ... manufacturing 为分词短语，这里作定语，修饰 pacts。say 在这里作插入语。

(2) hammer out 通常用来表示"通过不断的或艰苦的努力形成、达成或解决"，如：
They have hammered out an agreement acceptable to both sides. 他们总算达成了一项双方都能接受的协议。
We at last hammered out the differences between us. 我们最终解决了我们之间的分歧。

11. The EU—following fine continental traditions—wants agreement on general principles, which could be applied to many types of products and perhaps extended to other countries.

【译文】欧洲人遵循优良的大陆传统，则希望就普遍的原则取得一致，而这些原则适用于许多不同产品，同时可能延伸到其他国家。

【用法】

(1) which... to other countries 为非限定性定语从句，修饰 principles。在此从句中，由于动词 extended 与 applied 使用同一个主语（即 which），并且使用同样的时态结构，因此可如文中那样，省略其前的 could be。

(2) following fine continental traditions 为现在分词短语作定语修饰 the EU。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡直接引语和间接引语(1)

一、直接引语的概念

直接引语与间接引语都是宾语。一字不改地引述别人的话，叫做直接引语(direct speech)；用说话人自己的话转述别人的话，叫做间接引语(indirect speech)。两种引语皆须由动词引述，这种动词叫做引述动词(reporting verb.)，如 say, tell, ask, declare, remark, reply, think, write 等。直接引语一般皆置于引号之内，第一个词的首字母须大写；间接引语通常在句中以宾语从句的形式出现。如：

(1) He said, "I am learning English."他说，"我正在学英语。"(直接引语)

(2) He said that he was learning English. 他说他正在学英语。(间接引语)

引述动词及其主语可置于直接引语之前、之后或之中。如：

(3) He says, "She will come in the evening."他说，"她晚上来。"(之前)

(4) "I am very grateful," said Fisher gravely. "我非常感谢，"费希尔严肃地说。(之后)

(5) "Henceforth," he explained, "I shall call on Tuesdays." "今后，"他解释说，"我将每星期二来访。"(之中)

引述动词如是一般现在时或一般过去时，而主语为名词时则常可以倒装。如：

(6) "My wife always drinks coffee for breakfast," said John. "我妻子早餐时经常喝咖啡，"约翰说。

二、标点符号在直接引语表述中的使用

1. 在使用直接引语中，应将说话人实际说的话用引号括起来，引号既可为双引号，也可为单引号。将"主语+引述动词"置于句首时，引述动词后需有逗号(美国英语中有时使用冒号)，引语应以大写字母开始，如：

John asked, "Is that you, Bob?"
John asked: "Is that you, Bob?"
约翰问："是你吗，鲍勃？"

2. 将说话人实际说的话置于句首时，在后一引号前应加逗号；但如引用话语为感叹句或问句时，感叹号疑问号之后则无需再使用逗号。当将主语和引述动词置于引语中间时，在前半部分引语所用的后引号前需使用逗号，而后半部分引语的头一个字母无需大写，如：

(1) "It's nice to see you again," Mary said.

"很高兴又一次见到你，"玛丽说。

(2) "You think so?" the inspector asked.

"你是这么想吗？"巡视官问道。

(3) "Where, in this wretched town," John asked, "can I get a taxi?"

"在这个糟糕的城市里，"约翰问，"我到哪儿能叫到一辆出租车呢？"

3. 将像 ask oneself(自问)、think(想)和 wonder(纳闷)这类引述动词用于引述思想时，一般不要求带引号，如：

So that was their little game, he thought.

原来这就是他们耍的小花招，他想。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 9 Royal espionage

本节重点和难点

直接引语和间接引语(2)

- 陈述句在间接引语中的变化
- 感叹句在间接引语中的变化
- 条件陈述句在间接引语中的变化

本课词汇

espionage [ˌespiəˈnɑːʒ] *n.* 间谍活动

Alfred [ˈælfred] 公元 871-899 年间任英国国王

Danish [ˈdeiniʃ] *adj.* 丹麦的;丹麦人的;丹麦语的 *n.* 丹麦人;丹麦语

minstrel [ˈminstrəl] *n.* 中世纪的吟游歌手

harp [hɑːp] *n.* 竖琴

ballad [ˈbæləd] *n.* 民歌

acrobatic [ˌækrəˈbætik] *adj.* 杂技的

conjuring [ˈkʌndʒəriŋ] *n.* 魔术

Athelney [ˈæθəlniː] (地名)阿塞尔纳(英国一个小岛)

Chippenham [ˈtʃipənəm] (地名)切本哈姆(英国一个城市)

thither [ˈðiðə] *adv.* 向那里

Dane [ˈdein] *n.* 丹麦人

slack [slæk] *adj.* 涣散的

conqueror [ˈkɔŋkərə] *n.* 征服者

precaution [priˈkɔːʃən] *n.* 预防,警惕

proceeds [ˈprəusiːdz] *n.* 所得

assemble [əˈsembl] *v.* 集合

trivial [ˈtriviəl] *adj.* 微不足道的

【词组】a trivial matter 琐事/a trivial offence 小过失/a trivial loss 微不足道的损失/consider sth. trivial 认为某事无关紧要

prolonged [prəˈlɔŋd] *adj.* 持久的

commissariat [ˌkɔmiˈsɛəriət] *n.* 军粮供应

harry [ˈhæri] *v.* 骚扰

assail [əˈseil] *v.* 袭击

skirmish [ˈskəːmiʃ] *n.* 小规模战斗

episode [ˈepisəud] *n.* 一个事件,片断

epic [ˈepik] *n.* 史诗

课文详解

1. Alfred the Great acted as his own spy, visiting Danish camps disguised as a minstrel.

【译文】阿尔弗雷德大帝曾亲自充当间谍,他扮作吟游歌手到丹麦军队的营地里侦察。

【用法】

(1) Alfred the Great 阿尔弗雷德大帝,古英国国王,22 岁登王位。在抵抗丹麦人入侵的斗争中,曾先后与丹麦军交战 6 年未尝胜绩。他后来潜匿于阿塞尔纳岛,终于大败丹麦军。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) visiting Danish camps disguised as a minstrel 这个短语中出现了动词的两种分词形式作状语，表示伴随、状态或方式。由于句子的主语 Alfred the Great 与动词 visit 为逻辑上的主谓关系，所以采用具有主动含义的 visiting。相比而言，Alfred the Great 与 disguise 为逻辑上的动宾关系，所以采用具有被动含义的 disguised。例如：

She sat in the chair, amazed. 她坐在椅子里，惊呆了。

When he saw the pile of bills just before him, he couldn't say anything astonished. 当看见他面前的这一堆钞票，他哑口无言，非常震惊。

现在分词作状语时，还可以表示主语正在做另一动作，用来对谓语表示的主要动作加以修饰或作为陪衬，现在分词所表示的动作与谓语表示的动作通常是同步发生的，例如：

She sat in the chair, watching TV programmes. 她坐在椅子里，看着电视节目。

She smiled at me, chewing a gum in her mouth. 她朝着我微笑，嘴里还嚼着口香糖。

(3) act as 常用来表达两种意义：①充当/扮作……的角色；②起……的作用，如：

He acted as the public prosecutor when the case was being heard. 法院审理该案时他担任检察官。

She acted as a woman teacher in the film. 在该片中她扮演一位女教师的角色。

An oar often acts as rudder. 桨常常可以起到舵的作用。

(4) disguise 此处用作动词，意思是"假装，改装；伪装，掩饰"。如：

She disguised herself as a man, but she couldn't disguise her voice.

她假扮成男人，但她改不了声音。

2. In those days wandering minstrels were welcome everywhere.

【译文】当时，浪迹天涯的吟游歌手到处受到欢迎。

【用法】

(1) 短语 in those days 的意思是"当时，在过去的日子里"。

(2) wandering 为 minstrels 的定语，其意思是"吟游歌手"，同样可以说：a visiting scholar(一位访问学者)。

3. Alfred had learned many of their ballads in his youth.

【译文】阿尔弗雷德年轻时学过许多民歌。

【用法】

(1) and 连接了两个并列分句。

(2) 句中 in his youth 的意思是"在他青年时期"，类似说法还有：in his childhood(在他的童年时期)，in his twenties(在他二十几岁时)。

4. While Alfred's little army slowly began to gather at Athelney, the king himself set out to penetrate the camp of Guthrum, the commander of the Danish invaders.

【译文】当阿尔弗雷德人数不多的军队开始在阿塞尔纳慢慢集结时，他亲自潜入丹麦侵略军司令官古瑟罗姆的营地。

【用法】

(1) While 在引导时间状语从句时，强调主句的动作和从句的动作同时进行。the king himself... 中 king 指 Alfred the Great。the commander of the Danish invaders 为 Guthrum 的同位语。

(2) Guthrum 为当时人侵英国的丹麦首领，公元 875 年 5 月被 Alfred the Great 打败后，改

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

信基督教，并认其为教父。

(3) set out 表示“开始”、“着手”、“出发”等含义，其后需使用动词不定式形式，如：
Then they set out to climb the hill. 随后他们开始爬山。
She usually sets out to write her novel at eight at night. 她通常在晚上 8 点钟开始写小说。

(4) 动词 penetrate 的意思是“进入，贯穿，渗入(into，through)”。如：
Rain has penetrated right through his coat. 雨已经渗进他的外衣。

5. These had settled down for the winter at Chippenham：thither Alfred went.

【译文】这些人已在切本哈姆扎下营准备过冬，阿尔弗雷德便来到此地。

【用法】

(1) These 这里指 the Danish invaders。thither Alfred went，这里使用了倒装语序，以使上下文连接更为紧密。thither 意为 to that place(向那里)，旧用法，因为这里描述的是古时发生的事件，作者以此来拉近读者与所发生事件的距离，使之显得更为生动。

(2) settle down 驻扎，这里使用过去完成时态，用来说明该动作为 Alfred 做出 went 动作之前已经完成的动作。

6. They lived well，on the proceeds of raids on neighbouring regions.

【译文】他们靠掠夺附近的地区的的财物过着舒适的生活。

【用法】

(1) on the proceeds of 中的 on 与动词 lived 搭配使用，构成 live on，表示“靠……生活”之意，如：
Their family lived mainly on the earnings of their parents. 他们家主要靠他们父母的收入生活。

(2) neighbouring regions 前的 on 与 raid 搭配使用，用来表示“袭击”之意，如：
Their army made a raid on the enemy coast. 他们的部队突袭了敌方的海岸。

7. There they collected women as well as food and drink，and a life of ease had made them soft.

【译文】他们不仅掠夺吃喝，还抢夺妇女，安逸的生活已使丹麦军队变得软弱无力。

【用法】 ... as well as... 不仅……而且……。这里应当注意的是，在使用此连词时(与使用 not only... but also... 不同)，其侧重点为 as well as 前(即汉语中“而且”后)的内容，如：
You can not expect her to do the homework as well as look after the children. 你不能指望她又照看孩子又做家庭作业。

8. The force there assembled was trivial compared with the Danish horde.

【译文】他集结在那里的军队和丹麦大军相比是微不足道的。

【用法】

(1) there assembled 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 the force。正常语序应为 assembled there。这里的 there 指 Athelney，现将其提前，有对该地点状语进行强调的意味。

(2) assemble 聚集，集结
assemble 指的是为了一定的目的而将分散的人或物集中起来形成一个整体。
gather 是一般用语，指的是将分散的东西聚集在一起。
collect 指的是按计划进行收集整理，其对象一般是物，偶尔也用于人。如：
We all assembled in the main hall to be addressed by the head teacher. 我们集合在大礼堂听校长讲话。

www.TopSage.com

Gather your toys up. 把你的玩具收起来。

The department collects information on political extremists. 这个部门搜集有关政治极端分子的情报。

9. But Alfred had deduced that the Danes were no longer fit for prolonged battle; and that their commissariat had no organization, but depended on irregular raids.

【译文】然而，阿尔弗雷德断定，丹麦人已不再适应持久的战争，他们的军需供应处于无组织状态，只是靠临时抢夺来维持。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的从句作动词 deduced 的宾语。本句冒号后的 and their... raids 起到双重作用：①作动词 deduced 的宾语；②对 Danes were... prolonged battle 作附加说明。

(2) no longer 不再

He no longer smokes. 他不再吸烟了。

(3) be fit for 适应，适合，适宜于。常用来表示资格、能力、条件等适合于某种目的、某项任务、某种情况等。

I don't think she's really fit for the job. 我认为她并不真正适合这项工作。

10. So, faced with the Danish advance, Alfred did not risk open battle but harried the enemy.

【译文】因此，面对丹麦人的进攻，阿尔弗雷德没有贸然同敌人作战，而是采取骚扰敌人的战术。

【用法】

(1) 动词过去分词短语 faced with the Danish advance 用作时间状语，此处提到句首表示强调，可转化成时间状语从句，即 when he was faced with the Danish advance。but 连接两个并列谓语 didn't risk 和 harried，构成 not... but...（不是……而是……）结构。

(2) be faced with 面对。多用来表示一种往往不是出于主语意愿的状态，如：

They were faced with many difficulties which, with the help of their neighbours, they overcame one by one. 他们遭遇到很多困难，但是在邻居们的帮助下，他们把困难一个一个地克服了。

Faced with this new turn of events, we decided to revise our original plan. 面对事态的新变化，我们决定修改原定计划。

11. He was constantly on the move, drawing the Danes after him.

【译文】他的部队不停地移动，牵着敌人的鼻子，让他们跟着他跑。

【用法】

(1) drawing the Danes after him 牵着丹麦人的鼻子而让他们跟着他跑。现在分词短语作结果状语，修饰 was constantly on the move。

(2) be on the move 的意思是"在移动(中)"。

12. His patrols halted the raiding parties: hunger assailed the Danish army.

【译文】他派出巡逻队阻止敌人抢劫，因而饥饿威胁着丹麦军队。

【用法】冒号后的部分为说明语，表示结果，即表示做出 halted raiding parties 动作后所产生的结果。

13. Now Alfred began a long series of skirmishes—and within a month the Danes had surrendered.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

【译文】这时，阿尔弗雷德发起一连串小规模的进攻，结果不出一个月，丹麦人就投降了。

【用法】破折号后引出被强调部分，and... surrendered 表示结果，即表示做出 began a long series of skirmishes 动作后所产生的结果。

TopSage.com

核心语法

➡直接引语和间接引语(2)

一、陈述句在间接引语中的变化

直接引语为陈述句，变为间接引语时常由从属连词 that 引导(口语中可省略)，引述动词常用 say，tell 等。同时，根据主句的要求，间接引语须在人称、时态及其他方面作相应的变化。

1. 人称的变化。如：

(1) The teacher said, "John, you must bring your book to the class." 教师说，"约翰，你必须把你的书带到班上来。"(直接引语)

(2) The teacher told John that he must bring his book to the class. 教师告诉约翰他必须把他的书带到班上来。(间接引语，别人说)

(3) The teacher said that you must bring your book to the class. 教师说你必须把你的书带到班上来。(间接引语，别人对约翰说)

(4) The teacher said that I must bring my book to the class. 教师说我必须把我的书带到班上来。(间接引语，约翰自己说)

2. 指示代词的变化。如：

(1) He said, "I like this book." 他说："我喜欢这本书。"(直接引语)

(2) He said that he liked this book. 他说他喜欢这本书。(间接引语，书在眼前)

(3) He said that he liked that book. 他说他喜欢那本书。(间接引语，书不在眼前)

3. 时间状语的变化。如：

(1) He said, "I saw her yesterday." 他说："我昨天见过她。"

(2) He said that he saw her yesterday. 他说他昨天见过她。(间接引语的主句与直接引语的主句的动作在同一天发生，仍用 yesterday)

(3) He said that he had seen her the day before. 他说他前一天曾见过她。(直接引语的主句的动作发生在间接引语的主句的动作之后，yesterday 改为 the day before，同时改用完成时态)

经常改动的时间状语有：

now—then

ago—before

today—that day

tomorrow—the next day; the following day

yesterday—the day before; the previous day

the day before yesterday—two days before

the day after tomorrow—two days later

4. 地点状语的变化。如：

(1) He said, "I will do it here." 他说："我就在这儿干。"

(2) He said he would do it there. 他就他就在那儿干。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

5. 时态的变化。主句为现在或将来时态时，间接引语的时态不变。如：

(1) He says, "I'm tired." 他说："我累了。"（主句为现在时，直接引语亦为现在时）

(2) He says he is tired. 他说他累了。（间接引语时态不变）

(3) He has said to me, "I'm tired." 他跟我说，"我累了。"（主句为现在完成时，直接引语为一般现在时）

(4) He has said to me he is tired. 他跟我说他累了。（间接引语的时态不变）

(5) He will say, "The boy was lazy." 他将会说："那男孩过去懒惰。"（主句为一般将来时，直接引语为过去时）

(6) He will tell you that the boy was lazy. 他将会告诉你那男孩过去懒惰。（间接引语仍为一般过去时）

二、感叹句在间接引语中的变化

感叹句以间接引语的形式引述的时候是比较少的。如果这样引用，要设法传出原来句子表达的情绪：

"What a lovely garden!" He remarked with admiration that it was such a lovely garden. 他赞叹这花园是多么可爱。

但这一点是不易做到的。用直接引语反而能更好地传出原来的情绪。

三、条件陈述句在间接引语中的变化

只有当条件陈述句的从句为一般现在时而主句为现在将来时时，才使用时态"倒移"的变化方式，其他时态则不变，如：

1. 直接引语：

(1) "If you pass your test, I'll buy you a car," he said.

他说："如果你通过考试，我将给你买辆汽车。"

(2) "If you passed/'d passed your test, I would buy/'d have bought you a car," he said. 他说："要是你通过/那时通过考试，我就给你买辆汽车/了。"

2. 间接引语：

(1) He said that if I passed my test he would buy me a car.

他说如果我通过考试，他将给我买辆汽车。

(2) He said that if I passed/had passed my test he would buy/have bought me a car.

他说要是我通过/那时通过考试，他就给我买辆汽车/了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 10 Silicon valley

本节重点和难点

直接引语和间接引语(3)

- 疑问句在引语中的变化
- 间接引语中带 to 的动词不定式的使用

本课词汇

silicon ['silikən] *n.* 硅

integrated ['intigreitid] *adj.* 综合的

circuit ['sə:kit] *n.* 线路,电路

【用法】short circuit 短路;integrated circuit 集成电路

California [ˌkæli'fɔ:niə] *n.* 加利福尼亚(美国州名)

workstation ['wə:kˌsteiʃən] *n.* 工作站

chip [tʃip] *n.* 芯片,集成电路片,集成块

newsletter ['nju:zˌletə] *n.* 时事通讯

【辨析】bulletin、newspaper、paper、newssheet、newsletter、periodical、journal 这七个词都有"消息"、"报刊"的意思。bulletin 指报纸电台、电视台的简明新闻或最新消息。newspaper 指每日或每周发行的报纸。paper 作"报纸"解时是非正式用语。newssheet 指一两页的小报。newsletter 指给少数人发送的时事通讯、业务通讯。periodical 指期刊,如周刊、月刊,不指日报。journal 也作"定期刊物"解,是术语,比较正式。

Macintosh ['mækintɔʃ] *n.* 苹果机(一种个人电脑)

penalize ['pi:nəlaiz] *v.* 处罚,惩罚

customize ['kʌstəmaiz] *v.* 定制,定做

spawn [spɔ:n] *v.* 引起,酿成

thrive [θraiv] *v.* 兴旺,繁荣

anarchy ['ænəki] *n.* 无政府状态,混乱

oriental [ˌɔri'entl] *n.* 东方人

constitute ['kɔnstitju:t] *v.* 构成

【词组】be constituted of... 由……组成

drove [drəuv] *n.* 群

innovator ['inəveitə] *n.* 发明者

forge [fɔ:dʒ] *v.* 建立关系

【词组】forge friendship/an anchor 铸造友谊/锚

memory-chip *n.* 内存条

AT & T(全称 American Telephone and Telegraph)美国电话电报公司

Kansas ['kænzəs] *n.* 堪萨斯(美国州名)

Missouri [mi'zuəri] *n.* 密苏里(美国州名)

课文详解

1. Technology trends may push Silicon Valley back to the future.

【译文】技术的发展趋势有可能把硅谷重新推向未来。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) trend

vi. trend 是不及物动词，后多与 to，towards 连用，表示“伸向，倾向”。如：

His opinion trends towards yours. 他倾向于你的意见。

n. 用作名词指河流、海岸的走向；也指事物的倾向、趋势、动向等。如：

The trend of the coastline is to the south. 海岸线向南延伸。

Revolution is the main trend in the world today. 当前世界的主要倾向是革命。

(2) 动词词组 push back 的意思是“推向，吞下”，介词 to 表示程度。

2. Carver Mead, a pioneer in integrated circuits and a professor of computer science at the California Institute of Technology, notes there are now workstations that enable engineers to design, test and produce chips right on their desks, much the way an editor creates a newsletter on a Macintosh.

【译文】卡弗·米德——集成电路的一位先驱，加州理工学院的计算机教授——指出，现在有些计算机工作站使工程技术人员可以在他们的办公桌上设计、试验和生产芯片，就像一位编辑在苹果机上编出一份时事通讯一样。

【用法】

(1) a pioneer in ... Technology 为 Carver Mead 的同位语，对其作进一步的说明。there are... on their desks 为动词 notes 后跟随的宾语从句，动词与宾语从句之间省略了连词 that。

(2) that enable... on their desks 为该宾语从句中的定语从句，修饰 workstations。

(3) 在 much the way an editor... on a Macintosh 中，much the way 前省略了介词 in，整个短语在句中作方式状语。在非正式文体中，in the way 中的介词 in 通常被省略。

(4) an editor... on a Macintosh 为定语从句，修饰 the way，其前省略了 that。在非正式情况中，that 通常被用来代替 the way 后的 in which 或 by which，而 that 可以被省略，如：

I don't like the way (that) you talk to me. 我可不喜欢你同我谈话的方式。

Let's go the way (that) we went yesterday. 让我们走我们昨天走的那条路吧。

(5) 介词 in 表示“在……方面”；句中的 a pioneer 和 a professor 指一个人，即 Carver Mead。动词 note 的含义为“指出；特别提到；表明”。如：

The newspaper does not note what happened next. 这家报纸没有说明随后发生的事情。

(6) 动词 enable 为及物动词，含义为“使能够；给予能力；赋予权力”。如：

A bird's wings enable it to fly. 鸟的翅膀使鸟能飞。

3. As the time and cost of making a chip drop to a few days and a few hundred dollars, engineers may soon be free to let their imaginations soar without being penalized by expensive failures.

【译文】由于制造一块芯片的时间已缩短至几天，费用也只有几百美元，因此工程技术人员可能很快就可以充分发挥他们的想象力，而不会因失败而造成经济上的损失。

【用法】

(1) 句中的 As 为从属连词，用来引导原因状语从句，表示“因为”、“由于”。

(2) free *adj.* 自由的，无约束的，不受别人管制的。如：

He felt himself at last absolutely free. 他终于感觉到自己完全自由了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She was free from care. 她没有忧虑。

【辨析】free *adv.* 与 freely *adv.* 的区别

两者都作副词，表“自由地”。free 常表主语或宾语的状态。freely 表动作方式。如：

Let one end of the rope hang free. 把绳子的一端松开吊着。(free 是指绳子吊着的状态)

They talked freely, and it was like old times. 他们毫无拘束地谈话，就像从前一样。(freely 这里是指 in a free way)

4. Mead predicts that inventors will be able to perfect powerful customized chips over a weekend at the office—spawning a new generation of garage start-ups and giving the U. S. a jump on its foreign rivals in getting new products to market fast.

【译文】米德预言发明者可以在办公室用一个周末的时间生产出完美的、功能很强的、按客户需求设计的芯片——造就新一代从汽车间起家的技术人员，在把产品推向市场方面使美国比它的外国对手们抢先一步。

【用法】

(1) predict 后面的 that 从句为宾语从句，充当其宾语。

(2) be able to do sth. 意思为“能够做某事”，强调有做某事的能力，to 为不定式符号。be capable of 后面要用动词的-ing 形式。can 表示主观上认为自己可以做某事，不一定有能力去做。

(3) perfect 这里为及物动词，意思为“使完美，完善”。

(4) spawning a new generation of garage start-ups and giving the U. S. a jump on its foreign rivals in getting new products to market fast 中有两个现在分词短语，在这里充当结果状语。

(5) give sb. sth. 为双宾语结构，其中 sb. 为间接宾语，sth. 为直接宾语。类似用法的动词还有 ask，provide，offer，tell，show 等。

5. "We've got more garages with smart people," Mead observes. "We really thrive on anarchy." And on Asians.

【译文】“我们有更多的汽车间，而那里有许多聪明人，”米德说。“我们确实是靠这种无政府状态发展起来的。”靠的是亚洲人。

【用法】

(1) we've got＝we have got＝we have 意思为“我们有”。

(2) observe 这里是“评述，说”的意思。

(3) thrive on 靠……而繁荣/发展。不及物动词 thrive 的本意是指生物的“繁殖”、“兴旺”，常被引申来表达“繁荣”、“发展”、“生长”之意，如：

Most plants thrive in warm climates. 大多数植物在温暖的气候里生长茂盛。

Babies thrive on their mothers' milk. 婴儿吃母乳长得快。

thrive on 的引申义时常也用来表达不好的意思，如：

Merchants who thrive on smuggling will not end well. 靠走私发迹的商人是不会有好下场的。

(4) And on Asians 意为“靠的是亚洲人”。这里用的是个省略句，可以将其视为前一段最后一句的继续。引号中的 We really thrive on anarchy 为 Mead 的观点。本省略句表达出本文作者不但赞成 Mead 的这一观点，而且还补充进了自己的观点。作者将其另起一段，表明作者对自己观点部分的强调。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. Already, orientals and Asian Americans constitute the majority of the engineering staffs at many Valley firms.

【译文】硅谷许多公司中大多数工程技术人员是东方人和亚裔美国人。

【用法】majority

(1) 用作可数名词时，意思为“(选票中)多得的票数”，常与不定冠词 a 和介词 of 连用“a majority of”不可说“majorities of”或“the majorities of”。如：

He won by a majority of 300. 他超过对方 300 票获胜。

(2) 用作可数名词时，意思为“多数；大多数；过半数”，常与定冠词 the 和介词 of 连用即“the majority of...”，其后的谓语动词取决于 of 之后的名词。如：

The majority of the students were present. 大多数学生出席了。

He believes that his supporters are in the majority. 他相信支持他的人占多数。

(3) 用“the majority”作主语时，其谓语动词既可用单数，也可用复数。如：

The majority (of the people) want (wants) peace. 大多数人要和平。

The majority were (was) in favour of the proposal. 大多数人赞成这个建议。

【辨析】most 和 majority

(1) most 强调“大多数，绝大多数”；the majority of 是指与 small number(少数)相对的“多数”，great majority“大多数”。如：

Most children like sweets. 大多数孩子喜欢吃糖果。

The majority of children like sweets. 多数孩子喜欢吃糖果。

(2) most 是分布名词(distributive)强调个体，majority 是集合名词(collective)强调整体。如：

Most Irish people are Catholics. 大多数爱尔兰人信奉天主教。

The majority of Irish people are Catholics. 爱尔兰人多数是信奉天主教的。(把个别人集合而作为一个整体看待)

7. And Chinese, Korean, Filipino and Indian engineers are graduating in droves from California's colleges.

【译文】中国、韩国、菲律宾和印度的工程师一批批地从加州的大学毕业。

【用法】in droves 一批批，成群地。drove(批，群)为可数名词，通常用其复数表达，如：

People came in droves to buy lottery tickets. 人们成批地来买彩票。

8. As the heads of next-generation start-ups, these Asian innovators can draw on customs and languages to forge tighter links with crucial Pacific Rim markets.

【译文】作为新崛起一代的带头人，亚裔发明家可以凭借他们在习惯和语言上的优势，与关键的太平洋沿岸市场建立起更加牢固的联系。

【用法】

(1) as 为介词，经常可用来表示“作为”、“当做”、“处于某地位或身份”之意，如：

We chose him as our monitor. 我们选他作班长。

Speaking as a beginner, I do have much to learn. 作为一个初学者而言，我的确有很多东西需要学。

(2) start-up 为名词“崛起，崛起的事物”，注意该词的复数形式为 start-ups。英语中复合

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

名词变复数一般情况下将中心词变复数，如：

tea cup→tea cups，boy student→boy students 等。但若该词无中心词，则在词尾加-s，如：grown-up→grown-ups。

(3) draw on 凭借，把……作为来源，如：

The newspaper article draws heavily on gossip. 那家报纸的文章主要以流言蜚语为素材。

(4) forge links with 与……建立联系。动词 forge 的本意为"打造"、"打制"，这里为其比喻用法，再如：

They are now trying hard to forge a new unity in their political party. 他们正尽力在其党内促成新的团结。

9. For instance, Alex Au, a stanford Ph. D. from Hong Kong, has set up a Taiwan factory to challenge Japan's near lock on the memory-chip market.

【译文】比如说，亚历克斯·奥，一位来自香港的斯坦福大学博士，已经在台湾建厂，对日本在内存条市场上近似垄断的局面提出了挑战。

【用法】a Stanford Ph. D. 在这里为同位语，对 Alex Au 作进一步说明。Ph. D. 为 Doctor of Philosophy 的缩写形式。from Hong Kong 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 a Stanford Ph. D. 。

10. Before it becomes a retirement village, Silicon Valley may prove a classroom for building a global business.

【译文】在硅谷变成一个退休村之前，它很可能成为建立全球商业的一个教学场地。

【用法】

(1) before 这里为连词，用于引导时间状语从句。

(2) retirement village 中名词 retirement 为 village 的定语，即名词作定语，类似的用法有：school bus 校车；college students 大学生；night school 夜校。

核心语法

➡直接引语和间接引语(3)

一、疑问句在引语中的变化

直接引语为疑问句，变为间接引语时关联词用 whether，if 或其他疑问词，语序与一般从句相同，be，have 等助动词皆置于主语之后；引述动词常用 say，ask，wonder，inquire 等。直接引语为陈述句时变为间接引语应作各种变化的要求亦同样适用。

1. 直接引语为一般疑问句，变为间接引语时应由 whether 或 if 引导。如：

(1) He said to us，"Are you going away today?"

他对我们说，"你们今天走吗?"(直接引语为一般疑问句)

(2) He asked us whether we were going away that day.

他问我们是否那一天走。(间接引语用 whether 引导)

(3) "Is he your brother?" she said.

"他是你的兄弟吗?"她问。(直接引语为一般疑问句)

(4) She asked if he was my brother.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

她问我他是不是我的兄弟。(间接引语用 if 引导)

2. 直接引语为特殊疑问句,变为间接引语时,其关联词应用疑问代词或疑问副词。如:

(1) "Who will help me finish the job?" she asked.

"谁愿帮我完成这项工作?"她问道。(直接引语为特殊疑问句)

(2) She asked who would help her finish the job.

她问谁愿帮她完成那项工作?(间接引语用疑问代词 who 引导)

(3) "What have you done?" he asked.

"你干什么了?"他问道。(直接引语为特殊疑问句)

He asked what I'd done.

他问我干什么了?(间接引语用疑问代词 what 引导)

(4) "Where is it?" he asked.

"它在哪儿?"他问道。(直接引语为特殊疑问句)

(5) He asked where it was.

他问它在哪儿。(间接引语用疑问副词 where 引导)

(6) "When will he come?" she asked.

"他什么时候来?"她问道。(直接引语为特殊疑问句)

(7) She asked when he would come.

她问他什么时候来。(间接引语用疑问副词 when 引导)

二、间接引语中带 to 的动词不定式的使用

1. 表明祈使语气的动词不定式

(1) 直接引语为祈使句时,在转述为间接引语时,可以用适当的动词+带 to 的动词不定式构成,但应当注意的是,引述动词必须符合祈使句的功能(如要求、告诉、劝告等),如:

直接引语:

She said, "Remember to switch off all the lights."

她说:"记着把所有的灯都关掉。"

间接引语:

She reminded me to switch off all the lights.

她提醒我把所有的灯都关掉。

(2) 直接引语为否定祈使句时,在转述为间接引语时,应当使用适当的动词+not to 不定式构成,如:

She told/asked/warned him not to make a mess in the kitchen.

她叫/要求/警告他别把厨房搞得乱七八糟。

(3) 有时也可以用 be to 来转述,如:

直接引语:

"Wait for me." "等等我。"

间接引语:

He says I am/was to wait for him. 他说我应等他。

2. 疑问词后的动词不定式

(1) Shall I...? Should I...? Do you want me to...? 等表示建议和征询意见情况的直接引语可以使用两种方式转述,如:

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

直接引语：

"Shall/Should I phone her?""我应该给她打电话吗？"

间接引语：

He wanted to know if/whether he should phone her.

他想知道他是否应该给她打电话。

He wanted to know whether to phone her.

他想知道是否应该给她打电话。

(2) 含有疑问词的征询也可以用两种方式转述，如：

直接引语：

"How shall I prepare the sauce?""我应怎么配制调味汁呢？"

间接引语：

He wanted to know how he should prepare the sauce.

他想知道他该怎样配制调味汁。

He wanted to know how to prepare the sauce.

他想知道怎样配制调味汁。

(3) 但是，在 why 或 if 之后不能跟动词不定式。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 11 How to grow old?

本节重点和难点

- 由陈述句构成的名词性从句，要在陈述句句首加上 that

本课词汇

oppress [ə'pres] *v.* 忧郁，压抑

justification [ˌdʒʌstifi'keiʃən] *n.* 正当的理由

justifiably ['dʒʌstifaiəbli] *adv.* 无可非议地

cheat [tʃiːt] *v.* 欺骗

【词组】cheat sb. of/out sth.（向某人）骗取（东西）/cheat sb. into... 诱骗（某人）做……/cheat in (at)... 不老实，作弊，作假

abject ['æbdʒekt] *adj.* 可怜的

ignoble [ig'nəubl] *adj.* 不体面的，可耻的

impersonal [im'pəːsənl] *adj.* 超脱个人感情的

ego ['iːgəu] *n.* 自我

recede [ri'siːd] *v.* 退去

passionately ['pæʃənitli] *adv.* 激昂地

painlessly ['peinlisli] *adv.* 毫无痛苦地

vitality [vai'tæliti] *n.* 精力

weariness ['wiərinis] *n.* 疲惫感

课文详解

1. In the young there is a justification for this feeling.

【译文】青年人有这种感觉是情有可原的。

【用法】

(1) In the young 在年轻人身上。介词＋表示人的名词或代词，即 in sb. 这样的结构，可以表达“在某人身上”这样的概念，如：

In her I see a future leader. 在她身上我看到了一个未来领导者的气质。

That's really an unusual ability in such a young child. 这样年幼的孩子具有这样一种能力的确不寻常。

(2) this feeling 指前一句中所说的 oppressed by the fear of death。

2. Young men who have reason to fear that they will be killed in the battle may justifiably feel bitter in the thought that they have been cheated of the best things that life has to offer.

【译文】有理由害怕自己会死在战场上的年轻人，想到自己被剥夺了生活所能给予的最美好的东西时，感到痛苦，这是可以理解的。

【用法】

(1) 这是一个复合句，主句是一个主系表结构：Young men may justifiably feel bitter。其中主语带着一个 who 引导的定语从句，从句中还包括一个 that 引导的宾语从句。主

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

句表语后面是介词短语充当的状语 in the thought，后面是 that 引导的同位语从句，说明 thought 的内容。

(2) 从句中的 have reason to do sth. 表示"有做某事的理由"，其中的 reason 作为不可数名词使用，其后所跟随的动词不定式作定语，修饰 reason，再如：In view of her behaviour, you had good reason to be suspicious. 就她的行为而言，你完全有理由怀疑她。

(3) that they have been cheated of the best things that has to offer 为 the thought 的同位语从句，具体说明 the thought 的内容。在这个同位语从句中，又有 that 引导的定语从句 that life has to offer，修饰 the best things。注意这里定语从句的关系代词不能用 which 代替。当表示物的名词前面有形容词的最高级修饰时，定语从句的关系代词只能用 that。例如：

This is the most beautiful city that I have even been in. 这是我来过的最美丽的城市。

Tiger is the most dangerous animal that ever exists in the world. 老虎是世界上最凶猛的动物。

3. But in an old man who has known human joys and sorrows, and has achieved whatever work it was in him to do, the fear of death is somewhat abject and ignoble.

【译文】可是老年人已经饱尝了人间的甘苦，一切能做的都做了，如果怕死，就有点儿可怜又可悲了。

【用法】

(1) 句中的 who 为关系代词，引导一定语从句，修饰 an old man。has known 和 has achieved 为 who 的并列谓语。

(2) 在 in sb. to do 这样的结构中，介词 in 通常用来表达"在(性格/能力)中"这一含义，如：

It's not in me to lie. 我(生来)不会说谎。

She doesn't have it in her to break her word. 她不会不遵守诺言。

(3) whatever work it was in him to do 为 whatever 引导的名词性从句，这里充当 achieve 的宾语。whatever 一般用作代词，意思为"无论什么，不管什么"。

4. The best way to overcome it—so at least it seems to me—is to make your interests gradually wider and more impersonal, until bit by bit the walls of the ego recede, and your life becomes increasingly merged in the universal life.

【译文】克服怕死的最好办法——至少在我看来是这样——就是逐渐使自己的兴趣更加广泛，逐渐摆脱个人的狭小圈子，直到自我的围墙一点一点地倒塌下来，自己的生活慢慢地和整个宇宙的生活融合在一起。

【用法】

(1) 这句话中出现了动词不定式的两种不同用法：在 the best way to overcome it 中，动词不定式短语用作 way 的后置定语；to make your interests gradually wider and more impersonal 用作句子的表语。

(2) bit by bit 一点一点地。until bit by bit... the universal life 作状语。

(3) 在 the walls of the ego 中，walls 是暗喻用法，这一短语表示出"像一堵高墙的自我"含义。

(4) becomes increasingly merged in... 逐渐融于……之中。

www.TopSage.com

5. An individual human existence should be like a river—small at first, narrowly contained within its banks, and rushing passionately past boulders and over waterfalls.

【译文】个人的存在应该向一条河流,开始很小,被紧紧地夹在两岸中间,接着热情奔放地冲过岩石,飞下瀑布。

【用法】 like a river 像一条河流,为明喻。破折号后的插入语用来对 river 作进一步说明。此说明语使用了延伸比喻(extended metaphor)的手法,即对原明喻 like a river 所作的延伸说明。

6. Gradually the river grows wider, the banks recede, the waters flow more quietly, and in the end, without and visible break, they become merged in the sea, and painlessly lose their individual being.

【译文】河面渐渐变宽,两岸后撤,河水流得平缓起来,最后连绵不断地汇入大海,毫无痛苦地失去了自我的存在。

【用法】

(1) 与上一句中的 small... waterfalls 相同,这里作者使用的仍然是延伸比喻的手法,是对明喻 like a river 的进一步延伸说明。不同点在于,前一延伸比喻是由一系列短语构成,而本延伸比喻则由一系列短句构成。

(2) 动词 grow 此处为不及物动词,用作连系动词,后跟形容词作表语,如:
He grow tall and thin. 他长得又高又瘦。

7. The man who, in old age, can see his life in this way, will not suffer from the fear of death, since the things he cares for will continue.

【译文】上了年纪的人这样看待生命,就不会有惧怕死亡的心情了,因为自己关心的一切事情都会继续下去。

【用法】

(1) 句中 who... in this way 和 he cares for 为两个定语从句,分别修饰 the man 和 the things。since 因为,由于,从属连词,引导原因状语从句。

(2) 动词词组 suffer from 的意思是"经受(长期不愉快的事,如疾病)",如:
She suffers from headaches. 她经常头疼。

(3) the things he cares for 中 he cares for 为省略了 that 的定语从句,修饰先行词 the things。由于先行词在定语从句中充当 care for 的宾语,所以可以省略关系代词 that。

(4) care for 与 care about
a. care about 表示"对……感兴趣,喜欢;对……在乎(在意);关心",常用在否定句中。如:
I don't care much about music. 我对音乐不感兴趣。
b. care for 表示"喜欢(多用于否定句和疑问句中);照料,照顾;关心"。如:
I don't care very much for going there today. 今天我不太想到那儿去。
He cares very little for himself. 他很少想到自己。

8. And if, with the decay of vitality, weariness increases, the thought of rest will be not unwelcome.

【译文】再者,随着精力的衰退,老年人的疲惫感会增加,有长眠的愿望未尝不是一件好事。

【用法】

(1) with the decay of vitality 随着精力的衰退。介词短语作状语,修饰 increases。这里将其提前是为了对其进行强调。在 the thought of rest 中,用 rest 指 death,使用的是一种称作委婉语(euphemism)的修辞格。这种修辞格常用来取代粗鲁或令人感到不快

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

的话语，使之听起来委婉一些。再如：

It's ten years since her husband passed away. 她丈夫去世已10年了。（句中指 died 的短语 passed away 即为委婉语）

(2) not unwelcome 未尝/并非不是好事。这是由 not＋否定形容词构成的双重否定形式，表达出肯定意义。这里用其表达一种委婉语气。

9. I should wish to die while still at work, knowing that others will carry on what I can no longer do, and content in the thought that what was possible has been done.

【译文】我希望工作到死为止，明白了有人会继续我的未竟事业，想到能做的事都做了，也就坦然了。

【用法】

(1) while 这里为连词，意思为"当……的时候"，用于引导时间状语从句，这里由于句子的主语和动词为"人称代词＋系动词"，可以省略，即：while still at work＝while I am still at work。

(2) knowing that others will carry on what I can no longer do, and content in the thought that what was possible has been done 为两种状语：knowing that others will carry on what I can no longer do 为动词的现在分词短语作原因状语；content in the thought that what was possible has been done 为形容词短语作原因状语。

(3) what I can no longer do 为 what 引导的名词性从句，充当 carry on 的宾语。

(4) that what was possible has been done 为 the thought 的同位语。在这个同位语从句中，其主语为 what 引导的名词性从句。

(5) 这是一个复合句，句中含有两个 that 从句，第一个为 knowing 的宾语从句，第二个为 thought 的同位语从句，表示 thought 的内容。

核心语法

➡用陈述句作成分时，需要在陈述句首加 that 来引导。

1. 陈述句作主语，构成主语从句。

English is difficult.

That English is difficult is not my idea.

有人认为英语很难，我可不这么认为。

2. 陈述句作宾语，构成宾语从句。

Love, not time heals all wounds.

I've learned that love, not time heals all wounds.

我明白了，是爱而不是时间能够治愈一切创伤。

3. 陈述句作表语，构成表语从句。

The child should be sent to school.

My idea is that the child should be sent to school.

我认为这孩子应该送去上学。

4. 陈述句作同位语，构成同位语从句。

He succeeded in the experiment.

The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody.

他试验取得成功，这让大家很高兴。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 12 Banks and their customers

本节重点和难点

由疑问句构成的名词性从句

- 由一般疑问句构成的名词性从句
- 由特殊疑问句构成的名词性从句

本课词汇

current ['kʌrənt] *adj.* 能用的，流行的

【词组】current money 通行货币/current issue(杂志)本期/the current of thought 思想潮流

【辨析】current，modern，present

这三个词都有指现在存在的或流行的意思。modern 与 current 的不同有二：一是 modern 所指时间较长；二是 modern 有合乎时代的意思。present 所指时间往往含有与过去或将来相对的意思。时间跨度可以说明 modern 与其他两个词的不同，例如三个词都常用来修饰 English，modern English 指 16 世纪以后的英语，译作近代英语，而 current English 和 present English 一般都译为现代英语。

account [ə'kaunt] *n.* 账户

cash [kæʃ] *n.* 现金

cheque [tʃek] *n.* 支票

【词组】give sb. a blank cheque 给……全权/pay by cheque 用支票付账

debtor ['detə] *n.* 借方

creditor ['kreditə] *n.* 贷方

obligation [ˌɔbli'geiʃən] *n.* 义务

【词组】be under an (no) obligation (to do sth.)(没)有义务(做某事) place (put) sb. under an (no) obligation(to do sth.)(不)命令某人有义务(做某事)

complication [ˌkɔmpli'keiʃən] *n.* 纠纷

debit ['debit] *v.* 把……记入借方

specimen ['spesimən] *n.* 标本，样本

【例句】The doctor took a specimen of my blood to see if I had a malaria. 医生取了我的血样以确定我是否染上了痢疾。

【辨析】sample、specimen 这两个名词都可以表示"标本"。sample 意为"样品，标本"，指某物的一小部分，能说明整个是怎么样的。specimen 意为"标本，样品"，是指从同类物品中取出，用以供人参观、学习、研究之用的标本。

forge ['fɔːdʒ] *v.* 伪造

adopt [ə'dɔpt] *v.* 采用

facilitate [fə'siliteit] *v.* 使便利

【词组】facilitate housework (a project) 使家务活(工程)容易

【用法】facilitate 作"使容易"时，主语不能由人充当。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. When anyone opens a current account at a bank, he is lending the bank money, repayment of which he may demand at any time, either in cash or by drawing a cheque in favour of another person.

【译文】任何人在银行开一个活期账户，就等于把钱借给了银行，这笔钱他可以随时提取，提取的方式可以是取现金，也可以是开一张以他人为收款人的支票。

【用法】

(1) 句中的 repayment of which 引导的是定语从句，修饰 money，相当于 whose repayment，如：He is the boy, the brother of whom (whose brother) is a soldier. 那个男孩的哥哥是个士兵。repayment of which... 在句中为非限定性定语从句，which 代表前面的 money，而 repayment of which 在此定语从句中作动词 demand 的宾语。

(2) open an account 开一个户头(即账号)。a current account 一个活期户头(即账号)。

(3) in cash 用现金，以现金的方式。draw a cheque 开一张支票。

(4) in favour of 为介词短语，这里用来表示"以……为收款人"之意。在该介词短语之后，通常接人、事物或动名词作宾语。除根据本课课文所表达的上述含义外，此介词短语更常用来表示主语"赞同/支持(某人或某人的建议、意见等)"，无被动含义，有时还用来表示"有利于"的意思，如：Are they in favour of her suggestion? 他们赞成她的建议吗？

2. Primarily, the banker-customer relationship is that of debtor and creditor—who is which depending on whether the customer's account is in credit or is overdrawn.

【译文】银行与储户的关系主要是债务人和债权人的关系。究竟谁是债务人谁是债权人，要看储户的账户是有结余还是透支。

【用法】

(1) 指示代词 that 在这里指代前面的 the relationship，意即 the relationship of debtor and creditor。

(2) depending on... overdrawn 为现在分词短语，同 who is which 一起构成独立主格结构，who is which 是该分词短语的逻辑主语，代表 debtor 或 creditor，意即"谁是债务人而谁是债权人"。

(3) whether... overdrawn 为一个名词性从句，作介词 on 的宾语，其中的 be in credit 表示"有结余"之意。破折号后的整个解说性内容都用来进一步说明其前的句子。

3. But, in addition to that basically simple concept, the bank and its customer owe a large number of obligations to one another.

【译文】但是，除了这一基本的简单的概念外，银行和储户彼此还需承担大量义务。

【用法】

(1) addition 的用法

① 作不可数名词，但是偶尔可用不定冠词，意思为"加法，增加"。如：The sign "+" stands for addition. "+"这符号代表"加法"。/2+2=4 is a simple addition. 2+2=4 是道简单的加法题。

② 作可数名词时作"增加的人或物"解，后面常用介词 to。如：He will be a most valuable addition to our board. 他将是我们委员会里非常宝贵的新增力量。

www.TopSage.com

③ in addition 用于"此外，还"，可单独用于句首(通常以逗号与句子分开)，也可用于句末(可不用逗号与句子分开)。如：In addition, Kipps was taught how to tie up parcels. 此外基普斯还被教如何捆扎包裹。

(2) owe... to... 对……负有……。介词 to 后要接表示人的名词。除根据本课课文表达的这一含义外，还可用其表达诸如"欠……的……"、"把……归功于……"之意，如：He owes $100 to his father. 他欠他父亲 100 美元。/If my child has improved in any way, he should owe it all to his teacher. 如果说我的孩子有了一些进步，完全归功于他的老师。

4. Many of these obligations can give rise to problems and complications but a bank customer, unlike, say, a buyer of goods, cannot complain that the law is loaded against him.

【译文】其中许多义务往往引起问题和纠纷，但是储户不能像货物的买主那样来抱怨法律对自己不利。

【用法】

(1) unlike 为介词，同其后的 a buyer of goods 构成介词短语作 customer 的后置定语。该介词短语中插入的 say 为插入语，表示"比如"、"比方说"之意。

(2) give rise to 引起，导致。在介词 to 后，通常接表示不良结果的词，如：These poor living conditions have given rise to diseases. 这些糟糕的生活条件引起了疾病的发生。

(3) be loaded against 表示"于……不利"。

(4) that the law is loaded against him 为 that 引导的宾语从句，充当 complain 的宾语。

5. When, for example, a customer first opens an account, he instructs the bank to debit his account only in respect of cheques drawn by himself.

【译文】比如，储户首次在银行开户时，嘱咐银行他的存款只能凭他本人签字的支票来提取。

【用法】

(1) for example 比如，例如。这里用作插入语。
drawn by him 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 cheques。

(2) in respect of 为介词短语，常用来表达"关于"、"就……而言"，其后接名词、代词或从句，如：He is senior to me in respect of service. 在工作资历方面，他比我深。/In respect of what you say, there is nothing more that we can say. 就你的发言来讲，我们再没什么可说的了。
该短语在商业用语中还可用来表示"作为"、"根据"之意，如：They should give her $200 in respect of the work she has done. 他们应付给她 200 美元作为她的工作报酬。

6. ...and there is a very firm rule that the bank has no right or authority to pay out a customer's money on a cheque on which its customer's signature has been forged.

【译文】有一条非常严格的规定：银行没有任何权利或理由把储户的钱让伪造储户签名的支票取走。

【用法】

(1) 这里的 that 从句为同位语从句，对 rule 作进一步说明。to pay out... forged 为动词不定式短语，作定语，修饰 right or authority。

(2) pay out"付巨款"。

(3) on a cheque on which... forged 中，which 引导的是定语从句修饰 a cheque。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. It makes no difference that the forgery may have been a very skilled one...

【译文】即使伪造得很巧妙,也不能付款……

【用法】

(1) 这里的代词 it 作形式主语,全句的逻辑主语是后面的 that 从句。

(2) 短语 make no difference 的意思是"没有影响;都一样",还可以说 make much difference "有很大区别;很有关系"。

(3) that 从句中的 may have been,即情态助动词 may+动词的完成时结构,通常用来表示讲话人认为过去发生的事情从目前看来仍抱有可能性,但把握性不大,往往含有怀疑或推测的意味,如:The students may have done their exercises yesterday. 学生们也许昨天做好练习了。/He may have talked with her. 他或许同她谈过了。

8. For this reason there is no risk to the customer in the practice, adopted by banks, of printing the customer's name on his cheques.

【译文】某些银行已采用把储户姓名印在支票上的做法。这种做法对储户毫无风险。

【用法】这里的过去分词短语 adopted by banks 和介词短语 of... cheques 均作 practice 的定语。就正常的句子结构而言,该介词短语应紧随 practice 之后。这里将 adopted by banks 提前是使句子显得更为紧凑。

9. If this facilitates forgery, it is the bank which will lose, not the customer.

【译文】如果因这种做法出现了伪造的话,受损失的将不是储户,而是银行。

【用法】it is the bank which will lose, not the customer 这句话为一个强调句,强调 the bank。强调句型的一般形式为:it is/was+被强调部分+that/who.... 连接词一般用 that,that 没有实际意义,只起语法连接的作用。当被强调部分为人时,连接词也可以用 who/whom;当被强调部分为物时,连接词也可以用 which。

核心语法

➡由疑问句构成的名词性从句

1. 用一般疑问句作成分时,需要先将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常语序,然后在句首加上 whether 或 if(if 只用在宾语从句中)来引导,以保留原句疑问意义。请看例句:

(1) 一般疑问句作主语,构成主语从句

Will he come to my party?

Whether he will come to my party makes no difference to me.

他来不来参加我的聚会对我来说无所谓。

(2) 一般疑问句作宾语,构成宾语从句

Does he need my help?

I don't know if/whether he needs my help.(我不知道他是否需要我的帮助。)

(3) 一般疑问句作表语,构成表语从句

Will people live on the moon someday?

My question is whether people will live on the moon someday.(我的问题是,人类在未来某一天是否真的能生活在月球上。)

(4) 一般疑问句作同位语,构成同位语从句

Is there life on other planets?

www.TopSage.com

Scientists have argued over the question whether there is life on other planets.（科学家们一直就是否有外星人这个问题争论不休。）

2. 用特殊疑问句作成分时，只需要将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常的陈述语序。请看例句：

（1）特殊疑问句作主语，构成主语从句

Why did dinosaurs become extinct?（恐龙为什么会灭绝？）

Why dinosaurs became extinct is still a mystery.（恐龙为什么会灭绝目前还是个未解之谜。）

（2）特殊疑问句作宾语，构成宾语从句

How many letters are there in the English alphabet?（英文字母表中有多少个字母？）

I don't know how many letters there are in the English alphabet.（我不知道英文字母表中有多少个字母。）

（3）特殊疑问句作表语，构成表语从句

What are we badly in need of?（我们目前最需要什么？）

Money is what we are badly in need of.（我们急需的就是钱。）

（4）特殊疑问句作同位语，构成同位语从句

Where could we get the loan?（我们能去哪里弄到这笔贷款？）

There arose the question where we could get the loan.（现在的问题是我们去哪里弄到这笔贷款。）

最后，需要提醒注意的是：（重点理解下列语法概念！）

（1）引导名词从句的常用连词：

连接副词 when，where，why，how 在从句中作状语；

连接代词 who，whom，what 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语；

连接代词 which，whose 在从句中作定语，后面接名词连用。

我们要特别关注这些连词是否在句中充当句子成分。比如，that 不能作任何成分，只起连接作用，后边要接陈述句；what 一定充当从句的主语或宾语；which 和 whose 后边都要接名词，等等。这些都是考试重点。

（2）同位语从句通常是由 that 引导，而很少用 whether，if 以及连接代词或连接副词引导。这是因为我们多是用陈述句来补充名词的内容，而很少用一般疑问句或特殊疑问句来补充名词的内容。

（3）在一个句子当中，可能会含有多个名词从句，这样会使句子变得更复杂，遇到时要仔细分析句子结构。例如：

a. I realized that what I said was not exactly what I meant to say.（我后来意识到，当时所说的话并非是我真正想要说的。）在 that 引导的宾语从句中同时含有 what 引导的主语从句和 what 引导的表语从句。

b. The question is how what you have learned can be put into practice.（问题是，你所学到的知识如何才能应用于实践。）在 how 引导的表语从句中含有 what 引导的主语从句。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 13 The search for oil

本节重点和难点

- 情态动词概述
- 情感动词用法特点
- 情态动词的用法
- 情态动词与完成式

本课词汇

mineral ['minərəl] *adj.* 矿物的

boring ['bɔːriŋ] *n.* 钻孔

derrick ['derik] *n.* 井架

block and tackle 滑轮组

haul [hɔːl] *v.* 拖，拉

【词组】haul at (upon) a rope 拖绳子/haul down one's flag (colours) 投降/haul logs to the sawmill 拖圆木去锯木厂

rotate [rəu'teit] *v.* 使转动

【辨析】spin、revolve、rotate、turn、whirl 这五个词都可作"运转"解。spin 着重指以某一点为中心迅速而持续进行圆周运动；revolve 着重指某物围绕一定的圆周旋转；rotate 着重指物体围绕自身的中心轴旋转；turn 泛指一般的运动，它不涉及圆周运动的速度、复杂性或运动路线；whirl 着重指迅速地回旋。

cutting bit ['kʌtiŋ bit] *n.* 钻头

geologist [dʒi'ɔlədʒist] *n.* 地质学家

coring bit ['kɔːriŋ bit] *n.* 取芯钻头

cylinder ['silində] *n.* 圆柱体

strata ['strɑːtə] (〈单数〉stratum ['strɑːtəm]) *n.* (*pl.*)岩层

circulate ['səːkjuleit] *v.* 环流，注入

【词组】circulate through 在……中循环；流通/circulate among 在……中流传/circulate around 传遍

gusher ['gʌʃə] *n.* 喷油井

课文详解

1. The deepest holes of all are made for oil, and they go down to as much as 25,000 feet.

【译文】在所有洞穴中，为寻找石油所钻的洞是最深的，这些洞可达 25,000 英尺。

【用法】

(1) 在 The deepest holes of all 中，代词 all 指代 all holes。在 they go down to as much as... 中，代词 they 指代前面所述 the deepest holes。

(2) 句中 make 意为"制作"，make holes 相当于 dig holes。

(3) 动词词组 go down to 表示"深达……"，to 表示程度，因为深度是抽象概念，所以用 much 修饰。如：He knows as much as anybody does. 他知道的和任何人一样多。

www.TopSage.com

(4) 短语 as much as 在这里表示"多达"、"达到"之意，就语义而言 much 相当于 deep，即表达出 as deep as 之意。

2. But we don't need to send men down to get oil out, as we must with other mineral deposits.

【译文】但是，我们不必像开采其他矿藏那样，把人送到地下去把石油取出。

【用法】

(1) 这里的连词 as 引导出一个方式状语从句，表示"像……那样"。由于上下文语义明确和为了使文章简练，在 must 后省略了 send men down。介词 with 在这里表示"对于"之意。整个从句表达出"就像开采其他矿藏一样，必须派人下去"。

(2) 动词词组 send sb. (down) to do sth. 意为"派/送某人(下去)去干……"，如：We had better send a man to fetch the book. 我们最好派个人去取那本书。

(3) 名词 deposit 的含义为"存款，储蓄；定金；押金；沉淀；储存"。如：He put a deposit on a house. 他给一所房子付了押金。

3. The holes are only borings, less than a foot in diameter.

【译文】这些洞只不过是一些钻孔，直径不到 1 英尺。

【用法】less 的用法

(1) *adj.* 作形容词指较少，较小：More haste less speed. 欲速则不达。

(2) *n.* 作名词指更少一点：He's eating less than usual. 他比平时吃的少。.

(3) *adv.* ①(修饰形容词、副词等)较少，更少地：The movie was less funny than the book. 电影不如书有趣。

② (修饰动词)次数较少，少一些，不那么：He works less than he used to. 他不像过去那么努力工作了。

③ 用于短语：

a. (in) less than no time 很快：We can be ready to go in less than no time. 我们很快就会出发。

b. less and less 越来越不(可和 more and more 比较)：As I spoke to him he became less and less angry. 当我和他说话时他越来越不生气了。

c. less than

(a)不到(可和 more than 比较)：I bought it for less than ten yuan. 我花了不到十元买它。

(b)(美)不太：The boys were less than happy about having a party. 男孩们不太愿意开晚会。

d. more or less

(a)或多或少，大体上，基本上：The work is more or less finished. 工作基本上完成了。

(b)左右，大约：It's an hour's journey, more or less. 大约是一个小时的旅程。

(4) 短语 less than 的意思是"小于；不到"，例如：She spent less than 5 minutes finishing reading the book. 她花了不到 5 分钟读完了这本书。

注意：nothing less than 意为"至少，不低于"；none the less"仍然"；nothing less than"完全是，不比(某件坏事)好"。

4. My particular experience is largely in oil, and the search for oil has done more to improve deep drilling than any other mining activity.

【译文】我是专门搞石油的，寻找石油比其他任何采矿活动对改进深孔钻探作的贡献都要大。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 名词性短语 the search for oil 在句中作主语。这里 has done more... than... 表示“比……做得更多”之意，而动词不定式 to improve deep drilling 在这里作状语，修饰 has done，意指“在改进深井钻探方面”。由于语义明确，这里在 any other mining activity 之后省略了 has done。

(2) 短语 be in 意为“存在于，在于”，同义短语为 lie in，其后应跟名词或动名词。如：
The cause of the fire lies in his carelessness. 火灾的原因在于他粗心。

(3) drill 此处用作动词，含义为“钻；锥；在……钻洞”。此外，该词还可用作名词，含义为“钻头；钻孔机；钻；练习；操练；规定的步骤”。如：What's the drill here? 这儿有什么规定？

5. When it has been decided where we are going to drill, we put up at the surface an oil derrick.

【译文】当确定钻孔地点后，我们就在那里竖起一个井架。

【用法】

(1) 在本句 When 引导的时间状语从句中，代词 it 起到形式主语的作用，而名词性从句 where... drill 为逻辑主语。

(2) an oil derrick 为 put up 的宾语，而介词短语 at the surface(在地面上)为地点状语。这里将地点状语提前，起到对该地点状语强调的作用。

(3) 短语动词 put up 在这里表示“竖起”之意，表示与短语动词 set up 相同的语义。在表达上述意义时，这两个短语动词可以通用，而 put up 较 set up 更常见些。但不能用 put up 表示“建立/成立(某一机构或团体)”，如：
He is determined to set up a company of his own. 他决心建立一个完全属于自己的公司。(不用 put up)

6. It has to be tall because it is like a giant block and tackle, and we have to lower into the ground and haul out of the ground great lengths of drill pipe which are rotated by an engine at the top and are fitted with a cutting bit at the bottom.

【译文】井架必须很高，因为它像一个巨型滑轮组。我们必须把很长的钻杆一节节地钻入地下，然后再从地下拉出来。钻杆顶部安装的发动机带动钻杆旋转，它的底部装有钻头。

【用法】

(1) have to 固定搭配，意思为“不得不，必须”，相当于一个情态动词。注意 have to 和 must 的区别：have to 指的是“客观上必须做某事”，客观条件逼着去做；而 must 为情态动词，表示主语的主观态度，即指“主观上的必须”。例如：
I have to go now, or the boss will get angry with me. 我必须得走了，要不老板会生气的。
I must go now, and thank you very much for your treat. 我得走了，谢谢你的款待。
haul out 固定词组，意思为“拉出”，haul out of the ground great lengths of drill pipe 中将地点状语 of the ground 前置，放在了 haul out 和其宾语 great lengths of drill pipe 之间，是为了保证句子的衔接。

(2) which are rotated by an engine at the top and are fitted with a cutting bit at the bottom 为 which 引导的两个定语从句，修饰 drill pipe。

(3) 这里 be fitted with 表示“装配着”之意。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. The geologist needs to know what rocks the drill has reached, so every so often a sample is obtained with a coring bit.

【译文】地质学家需要知道钻头已经到达什么样的岩层，因此时常要用取芯钻头取样。

【用法】

(1) The geologist 中的定冠词 the 在这里并非用来特指某一位 geologist，而是用来泛指 geologist 这一类人。

(2) 短语 every so often 作频率状语，表示"时常"之意，类似的频率状语还有：every now and again、every once in a while、now and again 等，如：

Every so often they go to see their grandmother. 他们常常去看望祖母。

Rose goes shopping every now and then. 罗丝时常逛街购物。

(3) what rocks the drill has reached 为 what 引导的名词性从句，这里充当 know 的宾语。

8. It cuts a clean cylinder of rock, from which can be seen the strata the drill has been cutting through.

【译文】这种钻头能切割一段光滑的圆柱形岩石，从中能看出钻头所钻透的地层。

【用法】

(1) 本句中含有一个非限定性定语从句。本从句中使用了倒装语序结构，按正常语序为：from which the strata the drill has been cutting through can be seen。其中 the drill has been cutting through 为定语从句，其前省略了关系代词 that(which)。可以看出，这里由 the strata 和定语从句 the drill has been cutting through 构成的主语太长，使句子显得头重脚轻。为了避免这种情况，这里使用了倒装语序。

(2) 句中 clean 意为"边缘或表面光滑的；均匀的；有规则的"。如：a clean cut 干净利落的切割。

9. Once we get down to the oil, it usually flows to the surface because great pressure, either from gas or water, is pushing it.

【译文】一旦到达油层，石油就会由于地下巨大的压力涌到地面上来，这种巨大的压力来自地下天然气或水。

【用法】

(1) once 作为连词，表示"一旦，只要"，相当于 if ever，as soon as 引导的条件状语从句，表示时间上的两个动作或两件事彼此紧接着发生。如果 once 从句中的主语与主句主语相同，常可省略从句的主语，甚至于系动词或谓语。如：

Once you have taken the examination, you'll be able to relax. 你一旦考过，就可以轻松一下了。

Once in, you will never get out. 只要一进来，你就休想出去。

(2) get down to 达到。此为一个及物动词词组，to 为介词，除表示本课课文中的意思外，更常用来表达"认真对待"、"致力于"等含义，后接工作、任务、学习等名词或动名词，如：

Now let's get down to the matter. 现在让我们言归正传。

It's no good delaying the job; it will have to be got down to. 拖延这份工作是没有用的，你得认真去干。

(3) either from gas or water 这里充当 great pressure 的后置定语，相当于一个 which 引导的非限制性定语从句 which is either from gas or water。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. This pressure must be under control, and we control it by means of the mud which we circulate down the drill pipe.

【译文】这种压力必须加以控制，我们让泥浆顺着钻杆向下循环，用这种方法来控制压力。

【用法】

(1) 本句中的 it 指代 pressure。

which 为关系代词，用来引导一个定语从句，后置修饰 mud，在从句中作宾语。

(2) control 是个多义词和多词性词，可用作及物动词和名词。

① *vt.* control 用作及物动词时，意思是"控制自己(的脾气)；抑制；操纵"。如：

He can hardly control himself. 他几乎不能控制自己。

He controlled several newspapers. 他操纵着几家报纸。

② *n.*

a. control 在表示"控制，遏止"时，多用名词形式，而不用动词形式。如：get (bring) a fire under control 控制火灾，不使之蔓延。

b. control 用作名词时，其单复数的意义不同。其单数意思是"控制，检查(尤其产品质量以及边境、机场等处的检查)"，其复数的意思是"控制系统，控制措施"。如：

The airplane had dual controls, one sets for each pilot. 这架飞机有两个控制系统，两个飞行员各一个。

【辨析】control, manage, examine, inspect, check

(1) manage 一般意义是"管理"，而 control 即使在表示"管理"时也含有原来的"制约，操纵"的意思。如：His wife manages the household very well. 他妻子把家务管理得很好。/Who controls the prices? 物价由谁管理?

(2) 假如我们要看看某事是否正常，可用 examine, inspect 或 check 等词来表达。control 一般表示"管理，指导"。如：A man came into the compartment to check the tickets. 有个人走进车厢来查票。

(3) by means of 以……方式，靠……手段。

11. We endeavour to avoid the old, romantic idea of a gusher, which wastes oil and gas.

【译文】我们尽量避免使用过时的不实用的喷井方法，那样会浪费石油和天然气。

【用法】

(1) 这里的关系代词 which 用来引导非限定性定语从句，后置修饰 the old, romantic idea。

(2) endeavour to do sth. 设法/尽力去做某事。正式用法，在动词 endeavour 后使用作宾语的动词不定式。

(3) 动词 avoid 含义为"逃避；避开；避免"，其后如跟动词必须用动名词形式，而不可搭配动词不定式。如：Are you trying to avoid meeting me? 你是不是避开见我?

12. We want it to stay down the hole until we can lead it off in a controlled manner.

【译文】我们要让石油留在井下，直到我们能用一种有控制的方法把它引上来为止。

【用法】

(1) 本句中所用的两个 it 均指 oil。动词不定式 to stay down the hole 用作宾语补足语，其中 down 为介词。

(2) in a... manner 意为"以(用)……方法/态度/风格/文体"。如：

The sheets are usually folded in this manner. 被单通常是用这种方式叠的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

核心语法

一、情态动词概述

英文中情态动词有：can/could，may/might，shall/should，will/would，must，had better。其他类似表达：

be able to(与 can 类似)，be going to(与 will 类似)，ought to，be supposed to（与 should 类似)，have to，have got to（与 must 类似)；此外，need，dare 既可以用作情态动词，也可以用作实义动词。

二、情态动词用法特点：

1. 词义：情态动词有别于助动词（be，have，do)，情态动词有其自身的词汇意义，而且通常是一词多义。情态动词可以用来表示可能、建议、愿望、必要、允许、能力、怀疑等等，以表示说话者对某种行为或状态的看法或态度。比如，must 既可以表示强烈的必要性，也可以表示推测。例如：

I must go to school today. 今天我得上学去。

John isn't in class. He must be sick. 约翰今天没上课，他一定是病了。

2. 在谓语中的作用：情态动词在句中不能单独作句子谓语，必须和实义动词一起构成复合谓语。

(1) 没有单数第三人称的变化：

He can dance.

不说：He cans dance.

(2) 后面只能接动词原形：

不说：He can dances.

不说：He can danced.

不说：He can dancing.

(3) 不需借助助动词 do 来构成否定式或疑问式：

He can't dance.

不说：He doesn't can dance.

Can he dance?

不说：Does he can dance?

(4) can，may，will，shall 分别有过去时态的变化：could，might，would，should。但并不一定都表示过去时间的动作。(具体用法后面详述)

三、情态动词的用法

1. 情态动词表示现在或将来的能力

can 表示因为具备某些特点或条件，某人能够完成某件事或某事是可能存在的。所以 can 既有能力的含义，也有可能的意思。(注意：这里的“可能”与后边讨论的“推测”是不同的。)

a. Bob can play the piano. He has taken lessons for many years. But I can't.（后天获得的能力)

b. John is strong. He can lift that heavy box.（能力)

c. A fish can't walk, but it can swim.（天赋的能力)

d. Dogs can bark, but they cannot talk.（天赋的能力)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

e. The theater can seat 10,000 people. 这剧院可坐一万人。(可能)

f. I can walk to school. It's not far. (可能)

g. You can see fish at an aquarium(水族馆). (可能)

表示现在的能力一般不用 be able to。

2. 情态动词表示过去的能力

在表示能力时，could 可以作为 can 的过去式来表示过去存在的能力(注意这句话的潜台词：如果不是表示能力，could 则不表示过去。例如 could 可以表示现在的"许可"，"推测"。)

a. Our son could talk when he was two years old.

b. I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.

c. In those days few workers could support their families. 那时很少有工人能够养家糊口。

注意：在表示"过去的能力"时，could 和 was/were able to 的用法区别：

(1) could 只能表示过去"一般的能力，总的能力"。所谓"一般的能力"(general ability)，即我们在过去想干什么就随时可以干什么。(这时，我们也可用 was/were able to。)

a. I could/was able to recite several poems when I was 3 years of age. 我在三岁时就能背诵几首诗。

b. I could/was able to run fast when I was a child, but now I can't. 小时候我能跑得很快，但现在不行了。

c. He could/was able to pull down a bull and was acknowledged as a man with superman strength. 他曾能够拉倒一头牛，被公认为是具有神力的人。(我们还可以说：He used to be able to...)

(2) 而要表示主语在过去某个特定场合所表现出的"特定的能力，具体的能力"，或表示某人在某一场合设法成功地完成了某件事，而非表示泛指的能力时，我们要用 was/were able to。此时，was/were able to 意思相当于 succeeded in doing, managed to do。(When used to denote past ability, *could* does not refer to a single instance of ability on a particular occasion, but rather, it signifies an ability in a very general sense. The successful demonstration of ability on a particular past occasion is expressed by means of "be able to", "manage to do", "succeed in", etc.)下面例句均不能用 could：

a. With the aid of the wood, he was able to swim across the river. 因为有了那块木头，他游到了河的对岸。

b. I applied everywhere and finally I was able to get a good job. 我到处应聘，最后找到了一份好工作。

c. He hurried to the station, and he was able to catch the train. 他匆匆忙忙赶到车站，赶上了火车。

d. The fire spread through the building quickly but everybody was able to escape. = everybody managed to escape. 大火很快蔓延到整栋大楼，但是人们还是都逃了出来。

e. The two boys tried many ways to catch that sly fox and were able to do so at last. 两个孩子试用了多种方法抓那只狡猾的狐狸，最后终于成功了。

f. Although the pilot was badly hurt he was able to explain what had happened. 飞行员的伤势虽然很严重，但是他还能够解释发生的一切。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

g. Tom has started an exercise program. He was able to run two miles yesterday without stopping or slowing down. 汤姆已开始了训练计划，他昨天没有停也没有放慢速度跑了两英里。

(3) 在否定句中 could 和 was/were able to 可以互换，即在否定句中它们就不存在上述区别了。

a. I applied everywhere and I couldn't get any good job.

b. The fire spread through the building quickly and people couldn't escape.

3. 情态动词表示许可(permission)(给予允许)

(1) 表示"许可"，我们一般用陈述句。

(2) 肯定的陈述表示允许某人做某事；否定的陈述则表示不允许某人做某事。

(3) 常用的情态动词：may，might，can，could。但我们多用 can 或 be allowed to do... 表示许可。

(4) 情态动词用肯定句——给予许可

a. I can leave the office as soon as I have finished. =I am allowed to leave the office... 我工作一结束就可以离开办公室。

b. You can use my car tomorrow. 明天你可以用我的车。

c. —"May I turn on the TV?" 我可以开电视吗？(may 用在疑问句中表示"请求许可")
—"Yes, of course you may." 当然可以。(may 用在肯定的陈述句中表示"给予许可")

(5) 情态动词用否定句——拒绝许可，甚至禁止

a. —"May I borrow your car?" (may 用在疑问句中表示"请求许可")
—"No, I'm afraid you may not." (may 用在否定的陈述句中表示"拒绝许可")

b. You can't take your camera into the museum. 照相机不让带进博物馆。

c. You can't take the test paper out of the classroom. =You are not allowed to take... 试卷不允许带出教室。

我们还可用 must not 表示强烈的拒绝许可——禁止。must not 比 cannot，may not 语气强烈。

d. Students must not take the test papers out of the classroom. 任何学生不得把试卷带出教室。

(6) could 一般不用来表示现在的许可，而用来表示过去的许可

—"Can I ask you a question?"

不说：—"Yes, of course you could."

表示过去的许可可与 was/were allowed to do 互换。I could read/was allowed to read what I liked when I was a child. 我小的时候爱看什么书，就看什么书。

不过，若表示过去允许进行某项特定的活动，我们要用 was/were allowed to do。这一区别与 could 和 was/were able to 的区别类似。

Yesterday evening, Peter was allowed to watch TV for an hour. 不说：Peter could watch...

could 更多是用在陈述句中表示"建议"；用在疑问句中表示"请求"。

4. 情态动词表示请求(request)

(1) 表示"请求"，我们通常用一般疑问句。

(2) 两种"请求"：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

①主语用第一人称：表示请求对方许可我们做某事。这种“请求”是和上述表示“许可”相对应的；我们若用陈述句则是表示许可；用一般疑问句则表示“请求”，请求对方许可我们做某事。

—“Can I ask you a question?”(can 用在疑问句中表示请求允许)

—“Yes, of course you can.”(can 用在陈述句中表示给予允许)

—“Can I have some more wine?” 我可以再喝点酒吗？

—“No, I'm afraid you can't.” 恐怕你不能再要了。

第一人称：请求对方允许我（们）做某事

May I/we ?

Could I/we?

Can I/we ?

Might I/we? （很少用）

May I ?

Could I?

May I 和 Could I 表示较正式、很礼貌地提出请求：

May I please borrow your car?

May I borrow your car please?

Could I please borrow your car?

Could I borrow your car please?

Can I 则是非正式地请求允许，一般用于说话人与对方相当熟悉的情况下。比如你向你的同学借一支笔。

Can I borrow your pen?

Might I 显得过于正式和客气，所以一般很少用。

典型回答：

Certainly.

Yes, certainly.

Of course.

Yes, of course.

Sure. （美语，非正式）

②主语用第二人称：表示请求对方为我们做某事。

第二人称：请求对方为我们做某事

Would you ?

Could you ?

Will you ?

Can you ?

Would you 和 Could you 都是用来表示很客气地请求对方，客气程度相同；

Will you 不如 Would you 客气；

Can you 常用于非正式场合或熟人之间。

Would you please lend me your car?

Would you lend me your car please?

Could you please lend me your car?

Could you lend me your car please?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Can you pass me the salt, Mom?

典型回答：

Yes, I'd like to.

Yes, I'd be happy to.

Yes, I'd be glad to.

Certainly.

Sure.（非正式）

对于一个礼貌的请求我们通常是给予肯定的回答，若真是要否定，我们往往这样说：

I'd like to, but... 在 but 后面给出不能答应的理由。

A: I am on duty this afternoon. Will you please cover for me? I have a doctor's appointment. 今天下午我值班，你能替我吗？我得去看医生。

B: I am sorry I can't. My term paper is due tomorrow. 对不起，我替不了你。我明天得交学期论文。

5. 情态动词表示必须(necessity)：must, have to, have got to

All applicants must take an entrance exam.

All applicants have to take an entrance exam.

have got to 主要用于口语中，不是很正式。

have got to 口语中连读成：gotta

I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes.

要表示过去必须，我们要用 had to。

must, have got to 没有过去时形式。

I had to study last Sunday.

注意否定意思：

don't have to:"不必要"

mustn't 或 must not:"千万不要"，表示禁止。

Tomorrow is Saturday. We don't have to go to school. 明天是周六，我们不必上学。

You must not tell anyone my secret. Do you promise? 你千万别告诉任何人我的秘密，你能答应我吗？

6. 情态动词表示忠告或责任(obligation)：should, ought to, had better

You should do as you are told.

We should study harder because the finals are near. 快要期末考试了，我们得更用功了。

Drivers should/ought to obey the speed limit.

had better 常用于口语中。后面接动词原形，否定用 had better not do，往往含有一种警告或警示可能出现恶果的意味。比如，我们再不努力，可能考试会不及格了。

We had better study harder, or we'll probably fail in the exam.

7. 情态动词表示建议(making suggestions)

Shall I ?

Shall we?

Shall he?

8. 情态动词用于第一、三人称的一般问句中，表示征求对方的"意见"。

Shall I open the window? 要不要我把窗子打开？

Shall we leave at two? 我们两点钟走如何？

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Shall he come with us? 要不要他和我们一起去?

could 可以用 can，但 could 没有 can 那么肯定。

并不表示过去。

A：What shall we do this evening?

B：We could go to the cinema.

It is a nice day. We could go for a walk.

9. 情态动词表示推荐更佳方案，建议换另一种方式做某事：may (just) as well，might (just) as well "倒不如……"，"不妨……"

We may as well stay here tonight. 我们今晚不如在这儿过夜。

A：I'll go on Monday by train.

B：You might just as well wait till Wednesday and go by plane.

其他非情态动词表示建议：

Let's...

Why don't...?

Let's go to a movie.

Why don't we go on a picnic?

忠告与建议的比较：should 表示强烈的、明确的忠告。could 表示建议某事的可能性。

A：John doesn't feel good. He has a bad stomachache.

B：He should see a doctor. 他应该看医生去。

B：Well, he could see a doctor. Or he could simply stay in bed for a day and hope he feels better tomorrow. 他可以看医生去，也可以卧床休息一天，希望他明天能感觉好些。

A：I need to get to the airport.

B：You should take the airport bus. It's cheaper than a taxi.

B：Well, you could take the airport bus. Or you could take a taxi. Maybe Clint could take you. He has a car.

10. shall 的用法

(1) shall 用于第二、三人称的陈述句，表示说话人的许诺。

You shall have the money back next week. =I promise you will have... 下星期你就可以拿到钱了。

If he passes the examination he shall have a bicycle. =I promise he will have... 若他能通过考试，他就能得到一辆自行车。

(2) shall 用于第二、三人称的陈述句，还表示说话人强烈的意愿，甚至威胁。

You shall pay for this. 你一定得为此付出代价!

They shall do as they are told. 他们一定要按照吩咐的去做。

(3) 在法律条文、规章制度中，我们常用 shall 表示"必须"。

Each competitor shall wear a number. 每位参赛人员必须佩戴号码。

(4) 用于第一、三人称的一般问句中表示"建议"。

a. Shall I buy you a gift? 要不要我给你买份礼物?

b. Shall I open the window? 要不要我把窗户打开?

c. A detective (*n.* 侦探) arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff (*v.* 上手铐) him when a huge gust (*n.* 一阵狂风) of wind blew off the detective's hat. "Shall I go and fetch it?" the criminal asked.

www.TopSage.com

"Do you take me for a fool?" asked the detective. "You wait here while I go and get it!"

11. would do 和 used to do

在这种表示过去反复发生或习惯性的动作时，我们可用 would 或 used to，但二者之间有以下区别：

(1) used to 可以表示在过去定期重复的动作，也可以指过去存在的状态，含有"现在不再……"的含义。would 只能用来表示过去重复的动作，不表示过去的状况。

a. When I was a boy, I would/used to go swimming in a river near my house.

b. When I was a child, my mother would/used to read me a story at night before bed.

c. Illiteracy (文盲) is still a problem in my country, but it used to be much worse. 此句不说：... it would be...

d. I used to have a cat. 此句不说：I would have a cat.

e. There used to be a lot of fish in this river, but nothing seems to be in it after it's been polluted by the wastes. 此句不说：There would be...

f. My own mother used to be (表示过去的状态，不用 would 替换) very busy the whole day, but as soon as evening came, she would move (表示过去的动作，二者可互换使用) very fast to get ready to meet my father. At that time we didn't understand; we used to laugh (表示过去的动作，二者可互换使用); we used to tease (表示过去的动作，二者可互换使用) her; but now I remember what a tremendous, delicate love she had for him. It didn't matter what happened that day; she was ready with a smile to meet him. 以前，我妈妈每天总是忙忙碌碌的，但是只要到了夜幕时分，她就会很快地把家里的一切都料理好，以迎接我爸爸回家。那时我们对此都不理解，因而常常取笑她。但现在我终于明白，这是母亲对父亲多么深厚的爱啊！每天不论发生什么事，她总是微笑着去迎接父亲回家。

(2) used to 和 would 均不能用来表示过去某事发生的次数。

a. I went to that restaurant over ten times when I was in college. (正确)

b. I used to/would go to that restaurant over ten times when I was in college. (错误)

12. 情态动词表示推测

(1) 对现在推测的肯定句：

Why isn't John in class? 约翰为什么没上课?

(客观事实的陈述 100%确定) He is sick. 他病了。

must：强烈的肯定，对自己陈述的内容很有把握。

(90%确定) He must be sick. 他一定是病了。

may, could, might 用于表达较弱的肯定，没太多把握。少于 50%的确定。

在肯定句中，三者差别不大。但在否定句中，couldn't 比 may not, might not 语气强烈得多。(见下文)

He may be sick. 他可能是病了。

He could be sick.

He might be sick. I don't really know.

He may be at home watching TV.

He might be at the library.

He could be out of town.

can 一般不表示这种肯定的推测，但表示否定的推测很常用。

can 表示推测只用在否定句和疑问句中。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

更多例子：

a. You've been traveling all day. You must be tired.

b. Carol must get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.

c. "I have one teacher who is so forgetful that he gave the same test three weeks in a row. If he does that two more times, I may pass it."

d. Michael: Teacher, is there life after death?

Teacher: Why do you ask?

Michael: I may need the extra time to finish all this homework you gave us.

(2) 对现在推测的否定句：

The restaurant is always empty.

(100%确定) It is not very good. 这餐馆很糟糕。

(98%确定)can't, couldn't：强烈地表示说话人认为某事是不可能的。

It can't be very good. 这餐馆不可能很好。

It couldn't be very good.

may not, might not：(少于 50%确定)说话人提出的一般的可能性。

It may not be very good. 这餐馆可能不太好。

It might not be very good.

说明：must 表示推测，一般不用在否定句中。

在肯定句中，could, may, might 三者差别不大。但在否定句中，couldn't 比 may not, might not 语气强烈得多。

Judge: How could you swindle (诈骗) people who trusted in you?

Prisoner: But Judge, people who don't trust you cannot be swindled.

法官：你怎么能够诈骗信任你的人呢？

罪犯：法官大人，不信任你的人怎么骗？

(3) 对过去推测的肯定句：must/can/may/could/might + 完成式

Why wasn't John in class yesterday? John 昨天怎么没上课？

(100%确定)He was sick. 他病了。

(95%确定) He must have been sick. 他一定是病了。

(少于 50%确定)

He may have been sick. 他可能病了。

He could have been sick.

He might have been sick.

(4) 对过去推测的否定句：

(100%确定)He wasn't sick. 他没有病。

(95%确定)can 表示推测，一般不用在肯定句中。

He couldn't have been sick. 他不可能病了。

He can't have been sick.

(少于 50%确定)

He may not have been sick. 他可能没病。

He might not have been sick.

(5) 表示对将来的推测：

Tomorrow John will take a test. 明天约翰要考试。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

will：(100%确定) He will do well on the test. 他会考得很好。

should, ought to：(90%确定)

He should do well on the test. 他应该会考好。

He ought to do well on the test.

(少于 50%确定)

He may do well on the test. 他可能会考好。

He can do well on the test.

He might do well on the test.

He could do well on the test.

四、情态动词与完成式

1. "情态动词+完成式"表示对过去的推测：

could have done, may have done, might have done, must have done; can't have done, couldn't have done, may not have done, might not have done.

a. A: The money has disappeared! Who could have taken it? 钱没了，会是谁拿的呢？

B: John could have; he was here alone yesterday. 可能是约翰，他昨天一个人在这里。

b. The situation was bad but it could have been worse.

情况很坏，但本来还可能更糟糕。

c. You screamed in your sleep last night. You must have had a terrible dream. 你昨晚睡觉时大喊大叫了，你一定是在做恶梦。

d. I can't find my sunglasses. I may/might have left them at the restaurant yesterday.

e. The package is gone. Someone might have picked it up by mistake.

f. Some women ________ good salary in a job instead of staying home, but they decided not to work for the sake of the family. (四级真题)

A. must make　　B. should have made

C. would make　　D. could have made

正确答案：D

2. should/ought to have done

表示过去应该做而实际并没有做的动作，含有批评的意思。

a. You should have phoned me last night. 你昨晚应该给我打个电话。

用于否定句中，则表示过去不应该做而实际做了的动作，也含有批评的意思。

A: I feel terribly ill today.

B: You shouldn't have eaten those mushrooms yesterday. Mushrooms don't agree with you. 你昨天本来不应该吃那些蘑菇。你不能吃蘑菇。

我们也可用 could have done 表达批评的含义。

b. You could have told me you were getting married. 你本来可以告诉我你要结婚的事嘛。

c. I could have lent you the money. Why didn't you ask me? 我那时是能够把钱借给你的，你为什么不向我借？

3. needn't have done

表示本来"无须做……，不必做……"，但实际上做过了。

a. A: We went to the meeting, but it had been cancelled.

B: Oh, so you needn't have gone. 喔，那你本来不必去的。

b. The restaurant was nearly empty. We needn't have booked a table.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 14 The Butterfly Effect

本节重点和难点

分词(1)

- 现在分词
- 现在分词与动名词的区别
- 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义
- 现在分词的完成时

本课词汇

forecast [ˈfɔːkɑːst] *n.* 预报
speculative [ˈspekjulətiv] *adj.* 推测的
blizzard [ˈblizəd] *n.* 暴风雪
deteriorate [diˈtiəriəreit] *v.* 变坏,恶化
multiply [ˈmʌltiplai] *v.* 增加
cascade [kæsˈkeid] *v.* 瀑布似地落下
turbulent [ˈtəːbjulənt] *adj.* 狂暴的
dust devil *n.* 小尘暴,小旋风
squall [skwɔːl] *n.* 暴风
eddy [edi] *n.* 旋涡
grid [grid] *n.* 坐标方格
sensor [ˈsensə] *n.* 传感器
humidity [hjuːˈmiditi] *n.* 湿度
meteorologist [ˌmiːtiəˈrɔlədʒist] *n.* 气象学家
fluctuation [ˌflʌktʃuˈeiʃn] *n.* 起伏,波动
deviation [ˌdiːviˈeiʃən] *n.* 偏差

课文详解

1. Beyond two or three days, the world's best weather forecasts are speculative, and beyond six or seven days they are worthless.

【译文】世界上最好的两三天以上的天气预报具有很强的猜测性,如果超过六七天,天气预报就没有了任何价值。

【用法】

(1) beyond two or three days 超出/超过两三天。这里 beyond 表示"超出/超过……范围"的含义,在句中作状语。这里将其提前,用来表示强调。

(2) beyond 可用作副词,含义为"在(到)较远处;再往前去;越过"。如:Men can travel to the moon and beyond. 人们能到月球或更远处去旅行。

(3) beyond 还可用作介词,其含义为"在(到)……较远的一边;晚于;超过"。例如:What lies beyond the mountains? 山的那一边有什么? /The fruit is beyond my reach. 那个果子我够不着。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. The Butterfly Effects is the reason.

【译文】原因是蝴蝶效应。

【用法】effect

(1) effect 用作及物动词时，表示“引起；实现”，不表示“影响”。如：

I will effect my purpose, and no one shall stop me! 我会达到目的，没人能阻止我。

(2) effect 作名词解时，表示“效果，影响”，相当于 result，influence。如：Don't look at the details, but consider the general effect. 别注意细节，要考虑总的效果。

(3) 与 effect 有关的词组：

① have an effect on 用来表示“对……有影响，对……起作用”，相当于动词 affect。如：A word from the teacher will have a great effect on my son. 老师的一句话能对我儿子起很大的作用。

② in effect 表示“事实上，实际上”，与词组 in fact，actually 同义。如：The two methods are in effect identical. 这两个方法实际上是一样的。

in effect 还可表示“有效；在实施中”。如：The rule is still in effect. 本规则仍然有效。

③ take effcet 表示“生效，奏效”。如：The medicine quickly took effect. 药很快见效。

【辨析】effective，efficient

(1) effective 意“有效的，奏效的，效果好的”。指得到所希望的结果或产生良好的效果，又有给人留下显著印象的意义。如：Effective measures were taken at once to overcome transport difficulties. 立刻采取了有效措施解决运输方面的困难。

(2) efficient 意“有效率的，效率高的，有能力的”。如：Computers are the most efficient assistants man has ever had. 计算机是人类效率最高的助手。/A lawyer needs an efficient secretary. 一位律师需要一位能干的秘书。

3. For small pieces of weather—and to a global forecaster, small can mean thunderstorms and blizzards—any prediction deteriorates rapidly.

【译文】对于小片的天气状况——对一个全球性的气象预报员来说，“小”可以意味着雷暴和暴风雪——任何预测的质量会很快下降。

【用法】

(1) to a global forecaster 中的介词 to 的意思为“对……来说”，例如：

To me, it is very important. 对我来说，这很重要。

(2) mean 这里为及物动词，意思为“意味着……”。

4. Errors and uncertainties multiply, cascading upward through a chain of turbulent features, from dust devils and squalls up to continent-size eddies that only satellites can see.

【译文】错误和不可靠性上升，接踵而来的是一系列湍流的征兆，从小尘暴和暴风发展到只有卫星上可以看到的席卷整块大陆的旋涡。

【用法】

(1) cascading upward through a chain of turbulent features 这里为动词的现在分词短语作结果状语，修饰前面整个句子，表示其带来的后果。

(2) from dust devils and squalls up to continent-size eddies that only satellites can see 用作 features 的定语，在这个短语中，又有 that 引导的定语从句 that only satellites can see 修饰 eddies。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

5. The modern weather models work with a grid of points of the order of sixty miles apart.

【译文】现代气象模型以一个坐标图来显示，图中每个点大约间隔60英里。

【用法】

(1) 这里介词 with 的意思为"用……，有……"。

(2) of the order of 固定词组，意思为"大约，差不多"。

(3) 句中的 work 意为"运作，起作用"。如：This clock doesn't work. 这座钟不好使了。

6. But suppose the earth could be covered with sensors spaced one foot apart, rising at one-foot intervals all the way to the top of the atmosphere.

【译文】但是假设地球上可以布满传感器，每个相隔1英尺，并按1英尺的间隔从地面一直排列到大气层的顶端。

【用法】

(1) 本句即为 suppose 引导的条件句。如：Suppose you are right, what will you do? 假设你是对的，你怎么办？spaced 为过去分词短语作定语，修饰 sensors，意为"间隔，间隔开"。如：10 lines of writing is spaced out to fill the page. 将全长十行的文章隔开书写以填满一页。

(2) 过去分词短语 spaced one foot apart 和现在分词短语 rising at one-foot intervals all the way to the top of the atmosphere 都是 sensors 的后置定语。由于动词 space 和 sensors 为逻辑上的动宾关系，所以应该使用具有被动意义的过去分词形式 spaced。而 sensors 和 rise 为逻辑上的主谓关系，所以使用具有主动含义的现在分词形式 rising。例如：

The book written by him (which is written by him) is very interesting. 他写的这本书很有意思。

I have a desk made of wood (which is made of wood). 我有一张木头做的桌子。

The boy sitting in the chair is my son. 坐在椅子里的男孩是我儿子。

7. Precisely at noon an infinitely powerful computer takes all the data and calculates what will happen at each point at 12.01, then 12.02, then 12.03...

【译文】在正午时分，一个功能强大的计算机搜集所有的资料，并算出在12:01，12:02，12:03等每一个点时可能出现的情况。

【用法】

(1) data(资料，材料)常用作不可数名词。如：The data is very useful. 这些资料很有用。

(2) at each point 中的 at 意为"在(某一点)"；at 12.01 中的 at 则是与时间或时刻连用。

8. The computer will still be unable to predict whether Princeton, New Jersey, will have sun or rain on a day one month away.

【译文】计算机无法推断出1个月以后的某一天，新泽西州的普林斯顿究竟是晴天还是雨天。

【用法】

(1) whether Princeton, New Jersey, will have sun or rain on a day one month away 为 whether 引导的宾语从句，其中 whether 的意思为"是否"。

(2) have sun 相当于 be sunny，同样 have rain 相当于 be rainy。

(3) one month away 意为"一个月以后"，即"一段时间+away"结构。如：He will be back a week away. = He will be back in a week's time 或 He will be back in a week. 他一周以后回来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

9. At noon the spaces between the sensors will hide fluctuations that the computer will not know about, tiny deviations from the average.

TopSage.com

【译文】正午时分,传感器之间的距离会掩盖计算机无法知道的波动——任何偏离平均值的变化。

【用法】

(1) between the sensors 传感器之间的,介词短语,作定语,修饰 spaces。

(2) that 为关系代词,引导一个定语从句,在这里指代 fluctuations,作介词 about 的宾语。这里 tiny deviations from the average 是 fluctuations 的同位语,对其作进一步的说明。

10. By 12.01, those fluctuations will already have created small errors one foot away.

【译文】到 12:01 时,那些波动就已经会在 1 英尺远的地方造成偏差。

【用法】

(1) by 意为"到……为止",用作时间状语时,常与完成时态连用。如:He had come back by I came home. 我回家时他已经回来了。/By 10 o'clock he will have finished his work. 到十点钟为止,他已经做完工作了。

(2) one foot away 中的 away 表示距离,即一英尺远。

核心语法

➡分词(1)

分词包括现在分词和过去分词,这也是一种非谓语动词形式。现在分词是在动词词尾按一定的规则加-ing,过去分词则按一定的规则加-ed 或采用其他一些特殊变形。现在分词和过去分词一起构成分词的时态、语态变化:

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	writing	being written
完成式	having written	having been written

分词在句中可作的成分有:状语、定语、表语、补足语(宾语补足语或主语补足语)。本专题就以分词的句法作用为主线来分析它的用法。

一、现在分词

现在分词可表示:

(1) 主动的、一般的动作

men bringing Beijing Youth Daily: men who bring Beijing Youth Daily 送《北京青年报》的人

(2) 主动的、进行的动作

the barking dog: the dog that is barking

二、现在分词与动名词的区别

现在分词	状语	补足语	表语	定语
动名词	主语	宾语	表语	定语

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

所以，在句中作主语、宾语的-ing 形式应该属于动名词（这是动名词的名词性质的体现）。而在句中作状语、补足语的-ing 形式应该属于现在分词（这是现在分词副词和形容词性质的体现）。所以我们可以这样看待动名词和现在分词：

(1) 动名词是动词和名词的结合体。

(2) 现在分词是动词和形容词或副词的结合体。

我们看下列例句：

a. I found him standing at the door.

b. I appreciate you(r) helping me.

a 句中，standing at the door 作宾语 him 的补足语，故此处 standing 为现在分词，him 不可改为 his，因为 him standing 不是动名词复合结构。b 句中，helping 作动词 appreciate 的宾语，故此处 helping 为动名词。you 可改为 your，因为 you(r) helping 是动名词复合结构，you 是动名词 helping 意义上的主语。

c. We sat talking about college life on the grass.

talking about 在句中作伴随状语，修饰动词 sat，故为现在分词。

d. He avoided assuming his responsibility.

assuming 在句中作 avoided 的宾语，故为动名词。

e. Reading poetry on the stage is one of her strong suits.

reading poetry 作主语，故为动名词。

f. Reading the letter, she burst out crying.

reading the letter 作状语，表时间，故为现在分词。

我们分析下列短文中-ing 形式是动名词还是现在分词。

Artistic Touch

——Pavarotti, opera star finds creative passion in painting. Tenor Luciano Pavarotti holds a handkerchief whenever he sings in concert. Yet in real life he is more likely to be found holding a paintbrush.

His great love is painting vividly colored pictures of Italian villages and seascapes. What he likes best about painting is its contrast to opera, where the challenge is to use one's talents to bring to life the works of others. "When I finish a canvas, I feel I have created a world."

我们先从分析-ing 形式在句中所作的成分入手。holding 在句中作主语 he 的补足语，故应是现在分词。而其他三个 painting 中，前后两个 painting 作介词宾语，所以应是动名词。中间的 painting 作表语。如何判断是动名词还是现在分词呢？

1. 二者作表语的差别

二者均可作表语，但现在分词作表语，修饰句子主语，说明主语的性质、特征；而动名词作表语则说明句子主语的具体内容。

a. His hobby is collecting stamps. (动名词)

b. Reading is permitting a men to talk a long time, and refusing you the right to answer. (动名词)

c. These results are most satisfying. (现在分词)

据以上分析，故 His great love is painting vividly...一句中的 painting 应该是动名词。

2. 二者作定语的差别

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二者均可作定语，但现在分词作定语，表示被修饰名词的行为状态，通常含有进行意味，且均可改为定语从句；动名词作定语一般表示所修饰名词的用途，一般不可直接改为定语从句。

a. a sleeping car⇨a car used for sleep (动名词)

b. a sleeping child⇨a child who is sleeping (现在分词)

c. a reading room⇨a room for reading (动名词)

d. a reading student⇨a student who is reading (现在分词)

e. boiling water⇨water that is boiling (现在分词)

f. boiling-point⇨point at which water boils 而并不是 point which boils (动名词)

g. Children objecting to their parents' remarrying ________ a prevalent social problem.

A. has become　　B. have become

正确答案：A

因为句子主语是动名词复合结构"Children objecting to their parents' remarrying"，而不是"Children"。这可从句子意思中分析出来。原句应翻译为："孩子们反对父母再婚已成为一个普遍的社会问题。"

若是 children 作主语，则原句译为"反对父母再婚的孩子们已成为一个普遍的社会问题。"显然不通。

h. Children objecting to this proposal ________ on the right side.

A. stand　　B. stands

正确答案：A

因为句子主语为 Children。请注意与上句做比较。

此外，二者否定形式不完全一样。

三、分词短语作状语

一说起分词短语作状语，一个重要问题首先必须引起我们的重视，即当分词短语作状语时，分词短语的逻辑主语和句子主语的关系问题。

这一问题主要涉及三种不同情况：

1. 主语一致

主语一致是指分词短语的逻辑主语必须与句子主语一致，也就是说，分词短语的动作和谓语的动作是由同一主语发出的，否则句子意思在逻辑上就讲不通。

a. Looking out of the window, I saw her crossing the road.

这里的 looking 动作是由 I 发出的，即 I 是 looking 的逻辑主语，原分词短语相当于 When I looked out of the window, . . .

b. Having failed to qualify as a doctor, I took up teaching.

这里 having failed to qualify. . . 的逻辑主语是 I，原分词短语相当于 As I had failed to qualify as a doctor, . . .

上面 a 句若改写成：Looking out of the window, there are lots of people in the street. 我们就找不到 looking 的主语，此种情形在英文中即被称做垂悬分词(dangling participle)，这种句子在英文中被认为是错的。以下句子均因此而错。

c. Arriving home, the door was found locked. (×)

应该为：Arriving home, I found the door locked.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

d. Being a pop fan, Celine Dion is her favorite. (×)

应该为:Being a pop fan, she likes Celine Dion most.

2. 独立分词结构

分词短语的逻辑主语除了在上述情况下要与句子主语一致外,很多情况下,分词本身有自己意义上的主语,这时分词短语的动作和谓语动作就不是由同一主语发出的。这种"名词或代词+分词短语"的结构,在英语中被称为"独立分词结构"。

a. It being so nice a day, we go out for a walk.

b. Weather permitting, we'll be going fishing tomorrow.

c. All the money having been spent, we started looking for work.

这种带有自己意义上的主语的分词短语,其逻辑主语前还可加介词 with 或 without。

d. A car roared past, with smoke pouring from the exhaust(排气管).

e. The old man often takes a walk after supper with his dog following him.

f. She left the party, without a word said.

g. I often go to see movies without anybody accompanying me.

3. 特殊表达方式

在某些表达方式中,分词短语的逻辑主语和句子主语是不一致的。因为这已是约定俗成的,所以不认为错。我们在应用时,只需记住这些特殊表达方式即可。这种结构常见的有:

(1) 副词+ speaking:如 generally (strictly, broadly,...) speaking

a. Generally speaking, men are stronger than women. (= If we are to speak generally, men...)

b. Strictly speaking, this is not a right answer.

(2) 不及物动词的分词+介词:如 judging from, talking of, allowing for (考虑到……)等。

a. Judging from his expression, he is in a lousy mood.

b. Allowing for her inexperience, she has done a good job.

c. Talking of English, she is the best speaker.

(3) 分词 + (that)从句:如 seeing that... (= since... 既然), considering that...(= since... 既然), supposing that...(= if... 假如), granting/granted that...(= though... 即使),allowing that...(考虑到)等。

a. Considering that she has no experience, she has done a good job.

b. Supposing there was a war, what would you do?

c. Granting that he has made a mistake, he is not to blame, for he intended to help us.

尽管他出错了,但我们不要因此责怪他,因为他本意是想帮我们。

四、分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义

分词短语作状语,在句中可表示时间、原因、条件、让步、结果、伴随等等。

1. 时间

a. Having watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn.

After he had watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn.

b. Riding in the street during the rush hours, you must be careful.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

When you are riding in the street during the rush hours, you must be careful.

c. Reading the letter, she burst out crying.

As she read the letter, she burst out crying.

d. Asked what had happened several times, he then told us about it.

After he was asked what had happened several times, he then told us about it.

2. 原因

a. It being so nice a day, let's go out for a walk.

Since it is so nice a day, let's go out for a walk.

b. Having been robbed of economic importance, those states are not likely to count for very much in international political terms.

As they have been robbed of economic importance, those states are not likely to count for very much in international political terms.

c. Not knowing what to do next, I want to ask for your advice.

Because I don't know what to do next, I want to ask for your advice.

3. 条件

a. Given more time, I would be able to complete it.

If I were given more time, I would be able to complete it.

b. Weather permitting, we'll go fishing.

If weather permits, we'll go fishing.

c. Used economically, the money can support you for the whole week.

If it is used economically, the money can support you for the whole week.

d. United, we stand; divided, we fail.

If we are united, we stand; if we are divided, we fail.

4. 结果

a. His wife died three years ago, leaving him with five children.

b. It rained for two weeks on end, completely ruining our holiday.

c. The face of the Moon is changed by collisions with meteoroids, causing new craters to appear.

5. 让步

a. Having lived in Canada for three years, he still can't speak English well. (=Though he has lived in Canada for three years, he...)

b. Mocked at by everybody, he had my sympathy. (=Though he was mocked at by everybody, he...)

c. Though understanding no Japanese, Charles was able to communicate with them.

6. 伴随状况

a. He came running breathlessly and told me the results.

b. The truck passed by, with a wake of dust floating toward me. 卡车一开过,卷起一股尘土迎面飘来。

五、带有连词或介词的分词短语

分词短语可以用在一定的连词或介词后面,以表示强调。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

a. Once deprived of oxygen, the brain dies. (once 强调时间)

b. Although exhausted by the walk, he continued his journey. (although 强调让步)

c. On hearing her son's death, the bereaved mother broke out crying. (on 强调时间,相当于 as soon as)

TopSage.com

d. After having annoyed everybody, he went home. 他非得把所有人都惹恼了才回家。

六、分词的完成式

若分词的动作在谓语动作之前发生,且我们强调这两个动作的一先一后,则我们一般用现在分词的完成式。这种现在分词的完成式可表示时间,此时一般要放在句子开头;也可表示原因,此时放在句首或句末均可。

a. Having noted down our names and addresses, the policeman dismissed us. (表示时间)

b. I was unable to go with you, having promised to accompany my girlfriend to the concert. (表示原因)

c. Having spent all the money on me, I had to look for work. (表示原因)

不过,有时即使分词动作先发生,但是它与谓语动作时间间隔很短,我们一般用分词的一般式。此时,若表示时间则要放在句首,否则有时句子会有歧义。

a. Locking the door, he went home. (先 lock,紧接就 went home)

b. Hearing the joke, we burst out laughing. (显然 hear 和 burst 两个动作时间间隔很短)

c. Finding the door locked, I went home. (发现门锁着,我就回家了。finding 表示时间)

d. I went home, finding the door locked. (我回到家里发现门锁着。finding 表示结果)

所以,若分词动作晚于谓语动作,此时分词短语要置于句末。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 15 Secrecy in industry

本节重点和难点

分词(2)

- 现在分词与过去分词的区别
- 分词作定语的词序问题
- 现在分词作定语
- 过去分词作定语
- 分词其他用法

本课词汇

secrecy ['si:krəsi] *n.* 秘密

【词组】with the most secrecy 极秘密地/swear sb. to secrecy 使某人发誓保守秘密;in (with) secrecy 秘密地

effectiveness [i'fektivnis] *n.* 成效,效力

inquiry [in'kwaiəri] *n.* 调查研究

positive ['pɔzətiv] *adj.* 确实的

【词组】be positive about/of/that... 确信……,对……有自信

process ['prəuses] *n.* 过程

【词组】in the process of 在……过程中

patent ['peitnt] *n.* 专利 *v.* 得到专利权

agent ['eidʒənt] *n.* 情报人员

课文详解

1. Two factors weigh heavily against the effectiveness of scientific research in industry.

【译文】有两个因素严重地妨碍着工业中科学研究的效率。

【用法】weigh against 不利于。表达此意义时,这一短语动词不用于被动语态,并且通常仅用于一般时态,如:Evidence will weigh against him. 证据将对他不利。/His frequent lateness will weigh heavily against him when new appointments are being decided. 新决定任命时,他经常迟到将对他极为不利。

weigh... against 形式通常表达"根据……权衡/考虑"的含义,如:The quality of the product must be weighed against its cost. 必须根据其成本考虑产品的质量。

2. One is the general atmosphere of secrecy in which it is carried out, the other the lack of freedom of the individual research worker.

【译文】一是科研工作中普遍存在的保密气氛;二是研究人员缺乏个人自由。

【用法】

(1) 因为前句中是 two factors,所以本句用 one... the other 结构连接。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) in which it is carried out 为定语从句,修饰 atmosphere。这里的 in which 可以用 where 来代替。
(3) carry out 固定词组,意思为"执行,实现,贯彻"。
(4) 用被动语态而不用主动语态为了强调发生了什么事,而不是强调导致事情的人或物。
(5) 关系代词 which 引导一个定语从句,其中的代词 it 用来指代文中提及的 scientific research。
(6) 由于语义明确,在 the other 与 the lack of...之间省略了动词 is。

3. In so far as any inquiry is a secret one, it naturally limits all those engaged in carrying it out from effective contact with their fellow scientists either in other countries or in universities, or even, often enough, in other departments of the same firm.

【译文】任何一项研究都涉及到保密,那些从事科研的人员自然受到了限制,他们不能和其他国家、其他大学、甚至往往不能与本公司的其他部门的同行们进行有效的接触。

【用法】

(1) 本句主句中用了两个 it:第 1 个指 secrecy,第 2 个指 inquiry。engaged in... the same firm 为过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 those。这里 those 指 those research workers。
(2) 在英语中,短语连词 as far as 和 so far as 均可表达"就……而言"的意义,对主句的行为或状态加以限制,说明先行或后随事项所适用的范围,如:As far as I could see, they were all satisfied. 依我来看,他们都是满意的。/So far as the quality of tone goes, the radio is excellent. 就音质而论,这收音机好极了。
但同介词 in 连用表达同一概念时,只能使用 in so far as 这一形式,其语气比单独使用 so far as 或 as far as 要强,如:In so far as it served to foster new forces in the field of scientific research, I think we are justified in considering our experiment a great success. 至少在培养科研新生力量这一点上,我想我们有理由说我们的实验是极为成功的。
(3) either in other countries or in universities, or even, often enough, in other departments of the same firm 这里出现了三个介词 in 引导的短语,都用作名词 fellow scientists 的后置定语。

4. Some of the bigger firms are engaged in researches which are of such general and fundamental nature that it is a positive advantage to them not to keep them secret.

【译文】有些大公司进行的研究属于一般和基础性的研究,因此不保密对他们才有利。

【用法】

(1) which 为关系代词,引导一定语从句。
such... that... 引导的结果状语从句中,对非谓语部分进行否定的特指否定成分,即 not to keep them secret 为该从句的逻辑主语,先行代词 it 为形式主语。该从句中使用的两个 them,第 1 个指代 the bigger firms,第 2 个指代 researches。
(2) 对于许多名词,"of+名词"相当于其对应的形容词,例如:be of great use=be very useful, be of much value=be very valuable, be of glamour=glamorous。如:Mary is of a such gentle nature. 玛莉有着那样温柔的性格。
(3) it is a positive advantage to them not to keep them secret 出现了两个 to:to them 中的 to 为介词,意思为"对于……而言",而 not to keep them secret 中的 to 为动词不定式符号。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

5. Yet a great many processes depending on such research are sought for with complete secrecy until the stage at which patents can be taken out.

【译文】然而，依赖这种研究的很多工艺程序是在完全保密的情况下进行的，直到可以取得专利权的阶段为止。

【用法】

(1) depending on such research 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 processes。with complete secrecy 极端秘密地，为方式状语，修饰 are sought for。at which patents can be taken out 为定语从句，修饰 stage。注意一般 stage 和介词 at 搭配，所以这里使用的是 at which。

(2) 短语 a great many (很多；许多)用来修饰复数可数名词，如果作主语，谓语动词用复数。如：A great many students are dancing. 很多学生在跳舞。

(3) 这里 seek for 用来表达"探索"之意。

(4) take out 此处意为"正式获得；得到"。如：Have you taken out your insurance on your possessions? 你的财产投保了没有？

6. Even more processes are never patented at all but kept as secret processes.

【译文】甚至更多的工艺过程根本就不会取得专利权，而是作为秘方保存着。

【用法】

(1) 本句中的 kept 前省略了 are。

(2) at all 表达"完全"、"根本"的意义时，主要用于否定句中，如：He doesn't know French at all. 他根本不懂法语。

(3) but 除……以外，介词，意义与 except 相近，但 but 更强调意义上的几乎完整性，而 except 则更强调例外。此外，如文中那样，其后可以使用动词原形(即一般为省略了 to 的动词不定式)，如：

I have written all my letters but one. 我只差一封信就全写完了。(强调完整性)
I have written all my letters except one. 我还差一封信没写。(强调例外)

The could do nothing but wait for the doctor to come. 他们别无它法，只有等医生的到来。(其后使用省略了 to 的动词不定式)

7. This applies particularly to chemical industries, where chance discoveries play a much larger part than they do in physical and mechanical industries.

【译文】这在化学工业方面尤其突出。同物理和机械工业相比，化学工业中偶然发现的机会要多得多。

【用法】

(1) 这里指示代词 This 指 to keep as secret processes。
where 为关系副词，在这里用来引导一个非限定性定语从句，修饰 chemical industries。这里的 where 可用 in which 来代替。

(2) apply 作动词，意为"应用，运用；适用"。
apply (to sth.) 适用(于……)：
This rule does not apply. 这项规则不适用。/The rule does not apply in all cases. 这规则并非适用于所有的情形。/What I have said does not apply to you. 我所说的话与你

www.TopSage.com

大家网

无关。

其中，短语 apply to(适用于……)的介词 to 不能写作 for。比较：

(误)：This principle applies for all the students of English.

TopSage.com

(正)：This principle applies to all the students of English.

同样，短语 apply to(适用于……)的介词 to 也不能与不定式符号 to 相混淆。比较：

(误)：These principles apply to learn foreign languages.

(正)：These principles apply to learning foreign languages. 这些原则适用于学习外语。

(3) they do in physical and mechanical industries 中的 do 用来代指 paly a part，以避免重复。

8. Sometimes the secrecy goes to such an extent that...

【译文】有时，保密竟到了这种程度……

【用法】such an extent that... 到了这样的程度以至于……。这里 such... that... 为关联连词，用来引导结果状语从句。

9. Many firms, for instance, have great difficulty in obtaining technical or scientific books from libraries because they are unwilling to have their names entered as having taken out such and such a book, for fear the agents of other firms should be able to trace the kind of research they are likely to be undertaking.

【译文】比如，很多公司向图书馆借阅科技书籍时感到很困难，因为他们不愿让人家记下公司的名字和借阅的某一本书。他们生怕别的公司的情报人员据此摸到他们可能要从事的某项科研项目。

【用法】

(1) have difficulty in... 在……方面有困难。使用此短语时，有两点应注意。首先，difficulty 之后要使用介词 in，再于其后使用名词、代词或动名词，不能在 difficulty 后使用动词不定式。其次，表达上述意义时，difficulty 为不可数形式。

(2) to have their names entered 使用了 to have sth. done(过去分词)这样的使役结构。在这一结构中，sth. done 在句子中起复合宾语的作用，过去分词用来表明 sth. 所处的状态。

(3) having taken out such and such a book 中的 as 为介词，having taken out 为动名词的完成时结构，所构成的介词短语在句中作方式状语。such and such a book 某某书。在英语中，想不指名地提到某个人时，常说：Mr. so and so，即“某某先生”。想不具体地说出某人或某事的名字或特征时，常用：such and such a girl (或 place、date)等。

(4) 在 for fear... to be undertaking 中，for fear 为复合连词，其后省略了 that。在其引导的从句中，通常使用“should (或 would、might)＋动词原形”或直接使用动词原形这样的虚拟语气结构。在现代英语中，有时也使用“may＋动词原形”，但通常用来表达“预防某种可能性”的含义，如：He handled the instrument with care for fear that it may be damaged. 他小心地摆弄那仪器，(因为)怕把它毁坏了。

(5) they are likely to be undertaking 为定语从句，置后修饰 the kind of research，其前省略了关系代词 that 或 which。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡分词(2):分词作定语

一、现在分词与过去分词的区别

前面已介绍过现在分词与动名词的区别,而现在分词与过去分词的区别之所以放在"分词作定语"这一节来讲,是因为当它们作定语时,二者的差别才显得突出。

1. 总的来说,二者的区别是:

(1) 从语态角度来看,现在分词表示主动意义,它与所修饰的名词构成主谓关系,而过去分词表示被动意义,与它所修饰的名词构成动宾关系,如:

The man standing at the gate is my English teacher.

换句话说:The man is standing at the gate and he is my English teacher.

the broken cup,意思是:Someone broke the cup. 或 The cup was broken.

(2) 从时态角度来看,现在分词一般表示正在进行的或一般的动作,而过去分词则表示过去的或完成的动作。如:

a. men bringing Beijing Youth Daily: men who bring Beijing Youth Daily 送《北京青年报》的人。bring 表示一般的动作。

b. The man standing at the gate is my English teacher. (=The man who is standing at the gate is...) standing 表示正在进行的动作。

c. fallen leaves:leaves that have fallen。fallen 表示完成的动作。

falling leaves:leaves that are falling。falling 表示正在进行的动作。

2. 二者区别具体分析举例如下:

现在分词可表示:

(1) 主动的、一般的动作。

a. flying fishes: fishes that can fly

b. a promising young man: a young man who promises well 有出息、有前途的年轻人

c. a guiding principle: a principle that guides something else 指导原则

d. the exploiting class: the class that exploits others 剥削阶级

e. an understanding man: a man who can understand others' feelings

f. a puzzling problem: a problem that puzzles people

g. the coming week: the week that will come

从上面的例子我们可分析出来:此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种持久性的特点。

(2) 主动的、正在进行的动作。

a. a developing country: a country that is developing

b. the setting/rising sun: the sun that is setting/rising

c. the barking dog: the dog that is barking

d. a sleeping child: a child who is sleeping

此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种短暂性的特点。

过去分词可表示:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(1) 被动的、一般的动作。

a. the exploited class: the class that is exploited

b. the oppressed nations: the nations that are oppressed

c. a respected writer: a writer who is respected

(2) 被动的、完成的动作。

a. the broken cup: the cup that has been broken before

b. an annoyed man: a man that has been annoyed

c. trained employees: employees who have been trained before

d. boiled water: water that has been boiled

(3) 主动的、完成的动作。由及物动词变来的过去分词才有被动意义,而由不及物动词变来的过去分词则不表示被动,而只表示主动、完成的动作。此时,过去分词一般表示一种完成的状态,它们多数已失去了原动词的特点,这些动词如:fallen, vanished, retired, escaped, faded 等。

a. fallen leaves: leaves that have fallen.

b. a retired general: a general who has retired.

c. faded colors: colors that have faded

d. departed friends: friends that have departed

e. a developed country: a country that has developed

f. returned students: students that have returned from abroad 归国留学生们

g. a married man: a man that has married

此外,还有如:vanished civilization, the risen sun, rotten teeth, shrunken clothes, sunken ships, escaped prisoners 等等。

二、分词作定语的词序问题

分词作定语时,分词放在它所修饰的名词之前还是之后,主要由这个分词本身的性质决定。

一般来说,当一个分词表示某种永久性的特点时,它更像一个形容词,而不像动词,这时我们将分词放在所修饰名词之前。当所用分词表示的是一种具体的、特定的特征时,我们主要想到它动作方面的含义,此时作定语的分词要放在名词之后。试比较:

a broken window: 不是强调 broken 的动作,而是想到窗户 broken 以后看上去的样子。

the window broken last night: 主要强调动作。

I'll never get married — I don't want to spend my life surrounded by dirty washing and screaming children.(此处 screaming 是一个永久性的特征)

Did you hear that child screaming?(此处 screaming 是一个特定的动作)

下列例子中,分词强调动作:

Many of the people questioned refused to answer.

the success just obtained

the person objecting

三、现在分词作定语

分词作定语都可改成一个定语从句,本书在定语从句部分也涉及了这方面内容。

在有些情况下,我们是不能用现在分词作定语的,而只能用定语从句,这是由现在分词本身的特点所决定的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

我们在分析现在分词作定语的特点之前，先理解以下关键两点：

1. 特指名词后用现在分词作定语多数表示正在进行的动作；泛指的名词后用现在分词作定语可表示正在进行的动作或一般的动作。如：

Men breaking the law will be punished.

Men who break the law will be punished.

men 在这里是泛指，所以 breaking 作定语表示一般的动作。

The boy bringing the milk is my brother.

The boy who is bringing the milk is my brother.

The boy 在这里是特指名词，所以 bringing 作定语表示正在进行的动作。

2. 前面说过，现在分词可表示一般体主动动作或进行体主动动作，但它并没有说明这个一般动作或进行动作所发生的时间，即没有说明是现在发生的还是过去发生的。而其动作发生的具体时间是由句子谓语动作的时间决定的。

a. The men working on the site were in some danger.

这里 were 决定了现在分词 working 在此句中表示的是“过去进行的动作”，所以原句可改为：The men who were working on the site were in some danger.

b. The man standing at the gate is my English teacher.

句中 is 决定了现在分词 standing 在此句中表示的是“现在进行的动作”，所以原句可改为：The man who is standing at the gate is my English teacher.

现具体分析用现在分词作定语时需注意的问题：

(1) 现在分词作定语只能用来叙述与谓语动作差不多同时发生的动作。

a. Can you see the girl dancing with your boyfriend?（主动进行的动作）

Who is dancing with your boyfriend?

b. Anyone touching that wire will get an electric shock.（主动一般的动作）

who touches that wire...

但若两个动词表示的动作在时间上有先后，则无法用现在分词作定语，看下面一例：

c. I want to talk to the boy breaking the window.（×）

我们现在应用上述关键两点来对此句进行分析。按上述第二点规定：现在分词只表示两种体的动作：一般体主动动作或进行体主动动作，它没有时间上的概念。现在分词的时间概念是由句子谓语动词的时间而定，这里现在时 want 只能决定 breaking 是现在一般的动作 breaks 或现在进行体动作 is breaking；进一步根据第一点来分析，breaking 所修饰的名词 the boy 是表示特指，所以 breaking 应表示现在进行的动作 is breaking。

由此分析，原句应为：I want to talk to the boy who is breaking the window. 但这显然不符合逻辑。因为从原句实际意思来看，此句中 breaking 显然应是一个表示过去的动作，即 broke。

这样一分析，二者明显矛盾，所以 c 句不正确，应为：

d. I want to talk to the boy who broke the window.

e. The boy who brings the milk has been ill.

显然此句也不能改为：The boy bringing the milk has been ill. 因为，这样一改句子意思成了：The boy who is bringing the milk has been ill. 则句子在时态上、逻辑上都是矛盾的。再比较：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The man who broke the window was fined.

The man breaking the window was fined. (×)

The man who cooked for the students has died.

The man cooking for the students has died. (×)

The man who cooked for the students died 3 days ago.

The man cooking for the students died 3 days ago. (×)

f. Do you know anybody who has lost a cat?

know 和 has lost 在时间上不一致,此句也不能改为现在分词作定语的句子:Do you know anybody having lost a cat? (×)

(2) 现在分词完成式 having done 一般不能用来作定语。

但 having done 是可以用来作状语的,因此,不要把分词完成式作定语和它作状语形式混淆:My brother, having spent all his money, I had to lend him some.

也不要和类似动名词的复合结构混淆:I have forgiven my brother('s) having cheated me of so much money. having cheated 不是分词作定语,而是与 my brother 一起构成动名词复合结构。

(3) 除了在被动的动词结构中之外,being 也不能用来作定语。

Anybody who is outside after ten o'clock will be arrested.

Anybody being outside after ten o'clock will be arrested. (×)

但可用于被动语态:Do you know the man being questioned by the police?

四、过去分词作定语

1. 正如前面说过,过去分词作定语,若是及物动词的过去分词则含有被动、完成的意义;不及物动词的过去分词则表示主动、完成的意义。

a broken glass = a glass which has been broken before

a retired worker = a worker who has retired

A penny saved(= that has been saved) is a penny earned(= that has been earned).

2. 有些过去分词作定语,因其位置不同而导致词义不一样。这样的词有:concerned, involved, adopted, given, used 等。

I noticed a concerned look in her eyes. 关切的目光

She wore a concerned expression. 忧愁的表情

all parties concerned 有关当事人/有关各方

the people concerned 和此事有牵连的人

an involved sentence 复杂的句子

the people involved/concerned 有关人士

the solution adopted 所采用的/选择的解决办法

an adopted child 一个被人收养的孩子

within a given period 规定的期限

She seems not to like the gift given to her. 所送的礼物

to sell used books 旧书

The textbooks used are all up-to-date. 所使用的教材

3. 作后置定语时,分词的三种结构形式:

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

to be done 表示将来的动作

being done 表示正在进行的动作

done 表示一般过去或完成的动作

a. The question being discussed is very important.

b. The house being built will be our library upon its completion.

c. Are you going to attend the meeting to be held next month?

d. For any adhesive to make a really strong bond, the surfaces to be glued must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease. 对于任何粘合剂，要想粘得牢固的话，被粘的表面就必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿或有油性物质。

五、分词其他用法

(一)作宾语补足语

1. 主要用在感觉动词之后，如：find, hear, smell, observe, watch, notice 等。在它们之后用动词不定式表示事实，用现在分词则具有很强的描写性。

请看下面的例句：

a. We saw the sun rise.

b. We saw the sun rising from behind the trees.

c. You can see the vapor rising from the wet clothes when they are hung on the fire.

2. 在 see, watch, hear 等之后，用现在分词表示观察到整个动作的一部分，动作在进行；用不定式则表示一个动作自始至终的全过程。请看例句：

a. When I glanced out of the window I saw Mary crossing the road.

b. I watched him step off the pavement, cross the road, and disappear into the post office. 我看见他走下人行道，穿过马路，进了邮局，再就不见了。

(二)"定冠词+过去分词或现在分词"的用法

此时的分词已名词化了，可在句中作主语或宾语。

1. 表示抽象概念，则谓语动词用单数。

The unexpected is bound to happen.

2. 泛指某一类人，则谓语动词用复数。

a. The wounded/injured were sent to hospital.

b. The disabled/handicapped are not supposed to be discriminated against.

c. The living have escaped.

(三)现在分词和过去分词构成复合形容词

现在分词和过去分词可分别与名词、形容词、副词构成复合形容词。那么它们的用法有何区别？究竟什么时候用"名词(或形容词、副词)+现在分词"构成的复合形容词，什么时候用"名词(或形容词、副词)+过去分词"构成的复合形容词呢？这个问题对于刚接触这类复合形容词的朋友们来说是有一定难度的。为了阐述清楚，先来分析讨论"外部"和"内部"两方面的关系。

(1) 外部关系：指(现在或过去)分词与它所修饰的名词的关系。如：

English-speaking countries。这里的外部关系即指现在分词 speaking 和它所修饰的名词 countries 之间的关系。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) 内部关系：指分词与能构成复合形容词的其他词(名词、形容词、副词)之间的关系。如：

English-speaking countries。这里的内部关系即指现在分词 speaking 和能构成复合形容词的名词 English 之间的关系。

以上两方面关系是正确使用这类复合形容词的关键，换句话说，究竟用什么形式的复合形容词，必须对这两方面关系分析清楚。

(1) 首先分析外部关系，即先判断是应该用现在分词还是应该用过去分词；

(2) 外部关系正确无误，再分析内部关系，即判断应该用什么词性的词与分词构成复合形容词。只有在内部、外部关系都正确的情况下，复合形容词才算使用对了。

例如以下所用复合形容词均不正确(请朋友们试着分析为什么)：

a. English-spoken countries (×)

b. water-covering land (×)

c. a newly-building library (×)

d. naturally-occurred substances (×)

e. ready-making clothes (×)

f. nice-looked person (×)

g. good-done jobs (×)

1. 由现在分词构成的复合形容词

这类复合形容词的总体特点：

由现在分词构成的复合形容词，在"外部关系"上具有共同的特点：即被修饰的名词与现在分词存在逻辑上的主谓关系，或者说被修饰的名词可以作现在分词的逻辑主语。这其实就是现在分词构成复合形容词的共同特征。

既然"外部关系"存在共性，那么"内部关系"就是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解"内部关系"成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

(1) 名词+及物动词的现在分词

a. English-speaking countries (= the people in these countries speak English)

b. peace-keeping force (= force keeps peace 维和部队)

c. freedom-loving people (= people love freedom)

d. a man-eating beast (= a beast eats a man)

特点：

① 外部关系：前面说过，存在逻辑上的主谓关系，即被修饰的名词可以作现在分词的逻辑主语。

② 内部关系：构成复合形容词的名词(如 a 中 English)与现在分词(speaking)存在逻辑上的动宾关系(speak English)，即可以作现在分词逻辑上的宾语。

(2) 名词+不及物动词的现在分词

a. a night-walking animal (= an animal walks at night)

b. a winter-blooming plant (= a plant blooms in winter)

特点：

① 外部关系：前面说过，存在逻辑上的主谓关系。

② 内部关系：名词(night，winter)不是作现在分词的逻辑宾语，而是与特定介词连用构

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

成介词短语(at night,in winter)来修饰现在分词所表示的行为动作(walking,blooming)。

(3) 形容词＋系动词的现在分词

a. a good-looking young man (= a young man looks good)

b. a funny-looking clown (= a clown looks funny)

c. an easy-going person (= a person goes easy on sb. else)性格随和的人

d. the nice-sounding music (= the music sounds nice)

特点：

① 外部关系：存在逻辑上的主谓关系。

② 内部关系：形容词(如 a 中 good)作现在分词(looking)逻辑上的表语(look good)。

(4) 副词＋不及物动词的现在分词

a. far-reaching events (= events reach far)有深远影响的事件

b. hard-working people (= people work hard)

c. a far-seeing politician (= a politician sees far)远见卓识的政治家

d. naturally-occurring substances (= substances occur naturally)

特点：

① 外部关系：存在逻辑上的主谓关系。

② 内部关系：副词(如 b 中 hard)作现在分词(working)逻辑上的状语(work hard)。所以我们不能说：natural-occurring substances (×)

③ 做比较：它与“形容词＋现在分词”构成的复合形容词的区别。

2. 由过去分词构成的复合形容词

这类复合形容词的总体特点：

同现在分词构成的复合形容词一样，由过去分词构成的复合形容词在“外部关系”上也具有共同的特点：即被修饰的名词与过去分词存在逻辑上的动宾关系，或者说被修饰的名词可以作过去分词的逻辑宾语。这其实也就是过去分词构成复合形容词的共同特征。

既然“外部关系”存在共性，那么“内部关系”就是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解“内部关系”成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

(1) 名词＋及物动词的过去分词：

a. man-made fibers (= fibers are made by man) 人造纤维

b. hand-made gloves (= gloves are made by hand) 手工制的手套

c. water-covered land (= land are covered with water)

d. state-owned firms (= firms are owned by the state) 国有企业

e. helium-filled balloon (= a balloon is filled with helium)

f. The WTO is a rules-based trading system(=the trading system is based on rules). 世界贸易组织是建立在一定规则基础之上的一个贸易体系。

特点：

① 外部关系：存在逻辑上的动宾关系。

② 内部关系：内部的名词(如 b 中 hand)说明过去分词(made)所表示的动作的行为方式(made by hand.。

③ 做比较：它与“名词＋现在分词”的区别。

(2) 形容词＋及物动词的过去分词：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a. a ready-made dress (made a dress ready, or a dress which is made ready) 成衣

b. a green-painted house (painted a house green, or a house which is painted green)

c. a clean-shaven man (a man shaved himself clean)

特点:

① 外部关系:存在逻辑上的动宾关系。

② 内部关系:此处的形容词(如 a 中 ready)一般是作复合形容词所修饰的名词(dress)的补足语(made a dress ready)。

③ 做比较:它与“形容词+现在分词”的区别。

(3) 副词+及物动词的过去分词:

a. a well-bred young man (= a young man was bred well)

b. the above-mentioned items (= the items were mentioned above)

c. a newly-built library (= a library was built newly)

d. a tightly-packed box (= a box is packed tightly)

特点:

① 外部关系:存在逻辑上的动宾关系。

② 内部关系:此处的副词(如 c 中 newly)一般是作过去分词(built)的逻辑状语(built newly)。

③ 做比较:它与“形容词+过去分词”及“副词+现在分词”的区别。

3. 此外还有

(1) 形容词+名词+ed

warm-hearted, cold-blooded, narrow-minded, blue-eyed, near-sighted, long-haired, lighter-skinned, middle-aged, ill-humored, bad-tempered 等。

(2) 数词+名词+ed

one-eyed camel, two-faced person, ten-storyed building, three-legged table 等。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 16 The modern city

本节重点和难点

状语从句(1)

- 状语从句概述

本课词汇

physiological [ˌfiziəˈlɔdʒikl] *adj.* 生理的

maximum [ˈmæksiməm] *adj.* 最大限度的

【辨析】 maximum、minimum 这两词都有在数量、数值或程度上的大小、高低极限的意思。maximum 最大量、最高点：maximum speed 最大速度，最高速率，maximum draft (draught)最大吃水深度。minimum (*pl.* minima 或 minimums)是 maximum 的反义词，做"最小量"、"最低点"解释：the minimum temperature 最低温度。

consideration [kənˌsidəˈreiʃən] *n.* 考虑

【词组】 take into consideration 考虑(相当于 take into account); for the consideration of 作为……的参考; in consideration of 考虑到; on (under) no consideration 决不; out of consideration for 出于对……的考虑; under consideration 在考虑中/without due consideration(不加思考)冒失，轻率(不可数)照顾/leave sth. out of consideration 对某事不加考虑；忽视某事

descendant [diˈsendənt] *n.* 子孙，后代

artificial [ˌɑːtiˈfiʃəl] *adj.* 人工的

impose [imˈpəuz] *vt.* 强加

【词组】 impose sth. on/upon sb. 把……强加于某人

dimension [daiˈmenʃən] *n.* 大小，规模

skyscraper [ˈskaiskreipə] *n.* 摩天大楼

tenant [ˈtenənt] *n.* 租户

civilized [ˈsivəlaizd] *adj.* 文明的

banal [bəˈnɑːl] *adj.* 平庸的

luxury [ˈlʌkʃəri] *n.* 豪华

deprive [diˈpraiv] *vt.* 剥夺，

【词组】 deprive (sb.) of... 剥夺(某人)的……

【用法】 deprive 不能直接跟两个宾语，常用的是 deprive sb. of... 的搭配。

monstrous [ˈmɔnstrəs] *adj.* 畸形的

edifice [ˈedifis] *n.* 大厦

toxic [ˈtɔksik] *adj.* 有毒的

ceaselessly [ˈsiːsləsli] *adv.* 不停地

throng [θrɔŋ] *v.* 挤满，拥塞

课文详解

1. In the organization of industrial life the influence of the factory upon the physiological and mental state of the workers has been completely neglected.

【译文】 在工业生活的组织中，工厂对工人的生理和精神状态的影响被完全忽视了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】the influence upon/on... 对……的影响。在表达“对……有影响”的意义时，名词 influence 常与动词 have 连用，构成 have influence upon/on 这样的结构形式。应注意的是，在此短语中，influence 常作不可数名词使用，但 influence 前有修饰语时有时也可作可数名词，如：

It is said that in that country ten big families have great influence on its affairs.

据说在那个国家里，10 大家族对其事务颇有影响。

Religion has a great influence on man's behaviour. 宗教对人们的行为颇有影响。

【辨析】neglect, overlook, ignore

(1) fneglect 强调“疏忽”、“忽略”，指有意或无意地疏忽，例如：

He neglected his health. 他疏忽了他的健康。

(2) overlook 指“由于粗心、放任而没看出或采取行动”，例如：

He overlooked my errors. 他忽视了我的错误。

(3) ignore 是指有意地“忽视，忽略”，另外，还有“不理睬，不搭理”之意，例如：

She saw him coming but she ignored him. 她看见他走过来，但装作没看到他。

2. Modern industry is based on the conception of the maximum production at lowest cost, in order that an individual or a group of individuals may earn as much money as possible.

【译文】现代工业的基本概念是：以最低成本获得最多产品，为的是让某个人或某一部分人尽可能多地赚钱。

【用法】base *vt.* 用作及物动词，意为“以……为根据，把……建立在……基础上”，常与 on/upon 搭配。如：And he based his ideas on scientific experiment. 他把他的想法建立在科学实验基础上。

【辨析】base, basis

(1) 注意 base 与 basis 单、复数形式及读音差别：

base [beis] —bases ['beisiz]

basis ['beisis]—bases ['beisi:z]

(2) base 和 basis 的形容词形式均为 basic。

(3) base, basis 为名词作“基础”解时，前者指具体的基础，后者常指某一理论、某种关系、某项工作等的抽象的基础，作比喻用法。如：

This work laid the basis for the movement. 这项工作为运动打下了基础。

base 有时也可作比喻用法，但它更侧重暗示“坚实、可靠”，具备 foundation 的含义，且不及 basis 运用广泛。如：

Axioms are the base of geometry. 公理是几何学的基础。

“以……为根据，在……的基础上”，不说：on the base of...，应说：on the basis of...。如：

He reached this conclusion on the basis of the experimental data. 他是在实验数据的基础上得出这个结论的。

(4) at lowest cost 以最低成本的。介词短语，作定语，修饰 production。in order that 为复合连词，相当于 so that，后接从句，表示“为了”、“以便”、“目的在于”。其从句中常使用 may、might、can、could、should 等情态助动词，一般在正式书面用语中使用，如：

She will send them her proposals in order that they may have time to consider them. 她要把她的建议交给他们，以便他们有时间考虑这些建议。

In order that there might be no time lost, I oiled the machine myself. 为了节省时间，我

www.TopSage.com

大家网

亲自给机器上了油。

(5) 介词短语 at... cost 或 at a/the cost of... 意为“以……为代价,牺牲”。如:

He saved his daughter at the cost of his life. 他以牺牲自己的生命挽救了女儿。

TopSage.com

3. It has expanded without any idea of the true nature of the human beings who run the machines, and without giving any consideration to the effects produced on the individuals and on their descendants by the artificial mode of existence imposed by the factory.

【译文】现代工业发展起来了,却根本没想到操作机器的人的本质。工厂把一种人为的生存方式强加给工人,却不顾及这种生存方式给工人及其后代带来的影响。

【用法】

(1) 在 the effects produced on the individuals and on their descendants... 中,由 produced... 构成的过去分词短语在句中作定语,修饰 the effects。过去分词短语 imposed by the factory(由工厂强加给的)在句中作定语,修饰 the artificial mode of existence。

(2) 句中两个 without 引导的介词短语都作 expanded 的状语,without any idea of 意为“完全忽视;根本不知道”。如:

He came here without any idea of my coming. 他来这里了,根本不知道我也来了。

(3) give consideration to 意为“考虑……;对……给予考虑”,是动词短语。如:

He gave no consideration to my words. 他对我的话根本不考虑。

(4) 短语 produce effects on... 表示“对……产生/造成影响”之意。

4. The great cities have been built with no regard for us.

【译文】大城市的建设毫不关心我们。

【用法】with no regard for us 不考虑我们。show/pay regard for 对……关心,如:

She shows no regard for the feelings of others. 她根本不关心别人的感受。

You must have regard for our safety. 你必须关心我们的安全。

5. The shape and dimensions of the skyscrapers depend entirely on the necessity of obtaining the maximum income per square foot of ground, and of offering to the tenants offices and apartments that please them.

【译文】摩天大楼完全是按这样的需要修建的:每平方英尺地皮取得最大收入和向租房人提供使他满意的办公室和住房。

【用法】

(1) of obtaining... ground 和 and of offering... that please them 同为定语,修饰 the necessity。offices and apartments 作 offering 的宾语。

(2) 短语 depend on 意为“依赖;依靠”,同义短语有:rely on; count on; turn on 等等。

(3) and of offering... 部分中,of 前省略了 the necessity(必要性);offering 后跟双宾语,直接宾语为 offices and apartments,间接宾语为 the tenants,即 offer to sb. sth. 或 offer sth. to sb.。

(4) that please them 为 that 引导的定语从句,修饰 offices and apartments。注意这里的关系代词 that 不能省略,因为先行词在定语从句中充当的是主语。这里 them 指代 tenants。

6. This caused the construction of gigantic buildings where too large masses of human beings are crowded together.

【译文】这样就导致了许多摩天大厦拔地而起,大厦内众多的人挤在一起。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) gigantic 为名词 giant(巨人)的形容词,意思为"巨大的"。

(2) where too large masses of human beings are crowded together 为 where 引导的定语从句,修饰 buildings。先行词为表示地点的名词时,当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的状语时,用关系副词 where,而当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的主语、宾语或表语时,用关系代词 that 或 which。如:

She went to a city which is far away from Beijing. 她去了一个离北京很远的城市。

She went to a city that she loved very much. 她去了一个她非常喜欢的城市。

She went to a city where her boyfriend lived. 她去了她男朋友生活过的城市。

7. While they enjoy the comfort and banal luxury of their dwelling, they do not realize that they are deprived of the necessities of life.

【译文】在享受自己住宅的舒适和庸俗的豪华时,却没有意识到被剥夺了生活所必需的东西。

【用法】

(1) while 这里为连词,这里用来表示比较和转折,用来引导比较状语从句。

(2) dwelling 这里为名词,意思为"住处,住所"。其中 dwell 为不及物动词,意思为"居住",经常和介词 in 连用,例如:

dwell in the country 住在乡下

dwell in sb's mind 留在某人脑海里

(3) that they are deprived of the necessities of life 为 that 引导的宾语从句,充当动词 realize 的宾语。

8. The modern city consists of monstrous edifices and of dark, narrow streets full of petrol fumes and toxic gases, torn by the noise of the taxicabs, lorries and buses, and thronged ceaselessly by great crowds.

【译文】大得吓人的高楼和阴暗狭窄的街道组成了今日现代化的城市。街道上充斥着汽油味和有毒气体,出租车、卡车、公共汽车的噪音刺耳难忍,络绎不绝的人群挤来挤去。

【用法】

(1) of dark, narrow... 也与动词 consists 搭配,与 of monstrous edifices... 为并列成分。

(2) full of petrol fumes and toxic gases 为形容词引导的短语作后置定语修饰 streets。be full of = be filled with 意思为"充满了……"。

(3) torn by the noise of the taxicabs, lorries and buses 和 and thronged ceaselessly by great crowds 为两个过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰 streets。这里 torn 为 tear 的过去分词,tear 的意思为"撕开"。

9. Obviously, it has not been planned for the good of its inhabitants.

【译文】显然,现代化的城市不是为居民的利益而规划的。

【用法】

(1) it 指 the modern city。

(2) 短语 for the good of sth. 意为"为了……的好处",其中 good 为名词"好处"(不可数)。还可说成 for sb.'s good 或 for one's own good。如:

I work for the good of my family. 我为我家庭的幸福工作。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡状语从句(1)

状语从句概述

英语中的状语从句有九大类。这九类从句是：时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、比较、方式。尽管数目较多，但理解并不难。

从本质上来说，状语从句就是用不同的连词将几个分句连接起来，以表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。例如：

a. I've brought my umbrella in case it rains.

b. I've brought my umbrella because it's raining.

c. I've brought my umbrella so that I don't get wet.

d. I've brought my umbrella even though it's not raining.

e. You don't need an umbrella unless it's raining.

因此，学习状语从句关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词。只要记住连接词一般都能识别是何种状语从句，从而正确分析句子结构并正确理解句子意思。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 17 A man-made disease

本节重点和难点

状语从句(2)

● 状语从句的省略

本课词汇

settlement ['setlmənt] *n.* 移民，开拓
enterprising ['entəpraiziŋ] *adj.* 有事业心的
settler ['setlə] *n.* 移居者
Antipodes [æn'tipədi:z] (the ~) 新西兰和澳大利亚
promiscuous [prə'miskjuəs] *adj.* 杂乱的
abandon [ə'bændən] *v.* 放任，纵情
　【词组】abandon oneself to sth. 纵情于……，沉溺于……
overrun [ˌəuvə'rʌn] *v.* 蔓延，泛滥
devastation [ˌdevə'steiʃən] *n.* 破坏，劫掠
burrow ['bʌrəu] *v.* 挖，掘
susceptible [sə'septəbl] *adj.* 易受感染的
virus ['vairəs] *n.* 病毒
myxomatosis [ˌmiksəmə'təusis] *n.* 多发性黏液瘤
infect [in'fekt] *vt.* 传染
　【词组】be infected with... 感染上……，沾染上……
epidemic [ˌepi'demik] *n.* 流行病
mosquito [məs'ki:təu] *n.* 蚊虫
carrier ['kæriə] *n.* 带菌者
exterminate [iks'tə:mineit] *v.* 消灭
ironically [ai'rɔnikli] *adv.* 具有讽刺意味地
bequeath [bi'kwi:ð] *v.* 把……传给
pest [pest] *n.* 害虫，有害动物
pestilence ['pestiləns] *n.* 瘟疫
confine [kən'fain] *n.* 范围
domesticate [də'mestikeit] *v.* 驯养

课文详解

1. In the early days of the settlement of Australia, enterprising settlers unwisely introduced the European rabbit.

【译文】在澳大利亚移民初期，一些有创业精神的移民不明智地把欧洲兔子引入了澳大利亚。

【用法】day 此处意为"时代；时期"。如：In the old day(s) things were different. 在过去那个时代，情况有所不同。settlement 此处意为"移民；殖民"，还可作为"殖民地"之意。

2. This rabbit had no natural enemies in the Antipodes, so that it multiplied with that promiscuous abandon characteristic of rabbits.

【译文】这种兔子在澳大利亚及新西兰没有天敌，因此便以兔子所特有的杂乱交配迅猛繁殖起来。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) so that 引导结果状语从句,it 指 rabbit,该句的意思是"因此便以兔子所特有的杂乱交配迅猛繁衍后代"。形容词短语 characteristic of 用作 abandon 的后置定语。

(2) with that promiscuous... of rabbits 作方式状语,that 在此处作副词,表示程度,意即"那么"、"那样",如:Don't eat that much. 别吃那么多。

3. It caused devastation by burrowing and by devouring the herbage which might have maintained millions of sheep and cattle.

【译文】他们在地下打洞,吃掉本可以饲养数百万头牛羊的牧草,给澳洲大陆造成了毁灭性的破坏。

【用法】

(1) 关系代词 which 引导定语从句,修饰 herbage。该从句使用的是虚拟语气,表示"如果那些牧草不被兔子吃掉的话就可以饲养数百万头牛羊"。但是牧草被兔子吃掉是事实,所以这是不可能的,故使用虚拟语气结构。与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的基本结构是:if 引导的条件句中谓语动词用"had+过去分词",而主句谓语动词用"would/should/could/might+have+过去分词",如:

If I had known that a bit ealier, there wouldn't have been such a quarel between us.

如果我早一点知道的话,我们之间就不会吵架了。

If there hadn't had such a fierce storm, we might have lived a happy life here.

如果没有发生这么凶猛的暴风雨,我们在这里应该过得很幸福。

另外,上面的结构中可以省略 if 引导的条件状语从句,这时与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的结构可以写成:句子的谓语动词用"would/should/could/might+have+过去分词",They would have continued to struggle against economic odds and would have lived in obscurity. 就是使用的这种形式。

(2) sheep 和 cattle 这两个单词的单复数形式相同。

(3) millions of 意思为"数百万的",类似的短语还有 tens of, hundreds of, thousands of, billions of 等。

4. Scientists discovered that this particular variety of rabbit (and apparently no other animal) was susceptible to a fatal virus disease, myxomatosis. By infecting animals and letting them loose in the burrows, local epidemics of this disease could be created.

【译文】科学家们发现,这种特殊品种的兔子(显然不包括别的动物)易患一种叫"多发性黏液瘤"的致命病毒性疾病。通过让染上此病的动物在洞内乱跑,就可以使这种疾病在一个地区蔓延起来。

【用法】

(1) be susceptible to 意思为"易受……感染的",其中 to 为介词,表示对象。

(2) myxomatosis 为 a fatal virus disease 的同位语。

(3) let sb./sth. loose 意思为"放任……",这里的 loose 是形容词,作 sb./sth. 的宾语补足语。

5. Later it was found that there was a type of mosquito which acted as the carrier of this disease and passed it on to the rabbits.

【译文】后来又发现,有一种蚊子是传播这种疾病的媒介,能把此病传染给兔子。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) it 为先行主语,真正的主语是 that 引导的主语从句。which 引导的是定语从句,修饰 a type of mosquito。

(2) act as 充当,担任,如:She acted as our English teacher. 她担任我们的英语老师。

(3) pass...on to 把……传给,如:Please pass the good news on to your friends. 请将这个好消息传给你的朋友。

6. It later became apparent that rabbits were developing a degree of resistance to this disease, so that the rabbit population was unlikely to be completely exterminated.

【译文】后来,明显看出,兔子对这种疾病已产生了一定程度的免疫力,所以兔子不可能被完全消灭。

【用法】

(1) It 为先行主语,真正的主语是 that 引导的主语从句。so that 引导的是结果状语从句,意即"所以兔子不可能被完全消灭"。

(2) a degree of 某种程度的,如:You have to achieve a high degree of proficiency to do it well. 要把它做好,你得达到很高的熟练程度。

(3) 注意名词 resistance 后面跟介词 to,意即"对……的抵抗力",如:resistance to the charm(对诱惑的抵抗力)。

7. Ironically, Europe, which had bequeathed the rabbit as a pest to Australia, acquired this man-made disease as a pestilence.

【译文】具有讽刺意味的是,欧洲把这种兔子作为有害动物传给澳洲,而欧洲自己却染上了这种人为的瘟疫般的疾病。

【用法】

(1) which 引导非限定性定语从句,修饰 Europe,意即"将这种兔子作为有害动物传给澳洲的欧洲"。

(2) bequeath...to...把……馈赠给……,如:

She bequeathed her new skirt bought by her mother to her friend. 她把妈妈新给她买的裙子赠送给朋友。

8. It did not, however, remain within the confines of his estate. It spread through France, where wild rabbits are not generally regarded as a pest but as a sport and a useful food supply, and it spread to Britain where wild rabbits are regarded as a pest but where domesticated rabbits, equally susceptible to the disease, are the basis of a profitable fur industry.

【译文】然而,这种疾病并未被局限在他的庄园内,结果在整个法国蔓延开来。野兔在法国一般不被当作有害动物,而被视为打猎取乐的玩物和有用的食物来源。这种疾病又蔓延到了英国。在英国,野兔被当作有害的动物,可是家兔是赚钱的毛皮工业的基础,然而家兔同样易感染这种疾病。

【用法】

(1) within the confines of 意思为"在……范围内",其中 confine 为名词,意思为"界限,边界"。

(2) where wild rabbits are not generally regarded as a pest but as a sport and a useful food supply 为 where 引导的非限制性定语从句,修饰 France。

(3) be regarded as 意思为"被认为是……",例如:

www.TopSage.com

You can't regard him as a friend but a business associate. 你不能把他看作朋友，只是个生意合伙人。

"Titanic" is regarded as his best film so far. "泰坦尼克号"被认为是到目前为止他拍得最好的影片。

(4) where wild rabbits are regarded as a pest but where domesticated rabbits, equally susceptible to the disease, are the basis of a profitable fur industry 为 where 引导的两个定语从句，修饰 Britain。在后一个定语从句中，equally susceptible to the disease 为 domesticated rabbits 的定语，相当于非限制性定语从句 which is equally susceptible to the disease。

9. The question became one of whether Man could control the disease he had invented.

【译文】 现在的问题是，人类能否控制住这种人为的疾病。

【用法】

(1) whether Man could control the disease he had invented 为 whether 引导的名词性从句，这里充当 of 的宾语。在这个名词性从句中，又包含了一个省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句 he had invented，修饰 the disease。he 指"人类"。

(2) Man 在此处大写，指"人类"。

核心语法

➡状语从句(2)

状语从句的省略

在同时满足以下两点的情况下：1)当主句的主语和从句的主语一致；2)从句谓语中含有 be 动词，可将从句的主语和 be 动词省去。这种省略主要常见于时间、地点、条件及让步状语从句中。

a. Metals expand when (they are) heated and contract when (they are) cooled. (两个 when 后省略 they are) 金属具有热胀冷缩的特性。

b. When (he was) a student in the university, he read a lot. (when 后省略了 he was)

c. While (he was) waiting, he took out a magazine to read.

d. A tiger can't be tamed unless (it is) caught very young.

若不同时满足上述条件，则从句不能省略主语和 be 动词。

e. When I was ten years old, my family moved to the city. 两个主语不同，故从句不可用省略形式：When ten years old, my family moved to the city. (×)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 18 Porpoises

本节重点和难点

状语从句(3)

- 时间状语从句

本课词汇

porpoise ['pɔːpəs] *n.* 海豚

mariner ['mærinə] *n.* 水手

shark [ʃɑːk] *n.* 鲨鱼

formation [fɔː'meiʃən] *n.* 队形

【词组】change the battle formation 改变战斗队形

dolphin ['dɔlfin] *n.* 海豚科动物

unconscious [ʌn'kɔnʃəs] *adj.* 不省人事的

【用法】be unconscious of 没意识到……

beaver ['biːvə] *n.* 海狸

ashore [ə'ʃɔː] *adv.* 上岸

waterlogged ['wɔːtəlɔgd] *adj.* 浸满水的

scent [sent] *n.* 香味

ensue [in'sjuː] *v.* 接着发生

intrigue [in'triːg] *v.* 引起兴趣

indignity [in'digniti] *n.* 侮辱

snout [snaut] *n.* 口鼻部

shove [ʃʌv] *v.* 硬推

【词组】shove one's way 推挤着往前走

aquaplane ['ækwəplein] *n.* 驾浪滑水板

oceanarium [ˌəuʃə'nɛəriəm] *n.* 水族馆

swoop [swuːp] *v.* 猛扑

belly ['beli] *n.* 腹部

equilibrium [ˌiːkwi'libriəm] *n.* 平衡

【词组】keep sth. in equilibrium 保持……平衡；maintain(lose) one's equilibrium 保持(失去)平衡；political equilibrium 政治平衡；upset equilibrium 打破平衡

butt [bʌt] *v.* 碰撞

crack [kræk] *n.* 重击

课文详解

1. There has long been a superstition among mariners that porpoises will save drowning men by pushing them to the surface, or protect them from sharks by surrounding them in defensive formation.

【译文】长期以来，海员中流传着一种迷信说法，认为海豚会把快要淹死的人托到水面，救人性命；或在人们周围列队保护，使他们免遭鲨鱼伤害。

【用法】

(1) has long been 为现在完成时，表示该迷信一直流传到现在并还在流传。

(2) that 所引导的是名词 superstition 的同位语从句。动词 save 和 protect 为该同位语从句的并列谓语动词。

(3) by pushing them to the surface 和 by surrounding them in defensive formation 为方式

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

状语，其中的代词 them 指 drowning men。

(4) drowning 这里用作形容词，意思为“快要淹死的”，这种用法类似于 dying(垂死的)。drowning 的词根为 drown。

2. Marine Studio biologists have pointed out that, however intelligent they may be, it is probably a mistake to credit dolphins with any motive of lifesaving.

【译文】海洋摄影室的生物学家指出，无论海豚多么聪明，认为它们有救人的动机可能是错误的。

【用法】

(1) point out 固定词组，意思为“指出”。注意 point out、point to、point at 的区别：point out 意思为“指出”；而 point to 意思为“指向”，一般是指“指向比较远的物体”，强调方向；point at 意思为“指着”，一般是指“指着小而且近的事物”。例如：

He pointed to the remote village and said: “She lives there.” 他指向那个偏远的村子说：“她住在那里。”

He pointed at the map and tried to locate their position. 他指着地图，想要确定他们的位置。

(2) that 引导宾语从句。however 引导的是该宾语从句中的让步状语从句。it 作该宾语从句的先行主语，真正的主语是动词不定式 to credit dolphins with...。

3. On the occasions when they have pushed to shore an unconscious human being they have much more likely done it out of curiosity or for sport, as in riding the bow waves of a ship.

【译文】当它们偶尔把一个失去知觉的人推到岸边时，更大的可能是出于好奇或游戏，就像它们追逐被船首犁开的浪花一样。

【用法】

(1) when 引导的是定语从句，修饰 occasions。as in riding the bow waves of a ship 就像它们追逐被船首犁开的浪花一样。as 后面省略了 they did，该短语在此句中作方式状语，修饰 have much more likely done it...。

(2) much more likely 更大的可能。

(3) out of curiosity 出于好奇心。out of 出于，如：I helped him out of kindness. 我帮助他是出于善心。/The boy did it completely out of ignorance. 那个男孩子做那件事纯属无知。

4. In 1928 some porpoises were photographed working like beavers to push ashore a waterlogged mattress.

【译文】1928 年，有人拍摄到了海豚像海狸一样把浸透水的床垫推上岸的情景。

【用法】

(1) photograph... doing sth. 拍摄到……做某事，如：Tom was photographed leaving the building. 汤姆被拍摄到离开那座大楼。

(2) working like beavers to push ashore a waterlogged mattress 这里为主语补足语，补充说明主语 some porpoises 正在进行的动作。其中动词不定式 to push ashore a waterlogged mattress 在这里为目的状语，说明 working like behavers 的目的。

5. If, as has been reported, they have protected humans from sharks, it may have been because curiosity attracted them and because the scent of a possible meal attracted the sharks.

【译文】正如报道中所说，如果海豚保护人不受鲨鱼侵害，那它们可能是出于好奇；而鲨鱼可能是闻到了可以美食一顿的香味。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) as has been reported 中的 as 为关系代词，代替 they have protected humans from sharks...，引导非限定性定语从句。it may have been 中的 it 指 they have protected humans from sharks。may have been 表示对过去发生的事情的推测，表示可能。句子中的两个 because 引导的是表语从句。

(2) protect[prə'tekt] *v.*(*vt.* & *vi.*) protect 大多用作及物动词，偶尔也用作不及物动词。固定搭配：

a. protect...against...指"防御，保护……"。如：The great wall was built along the border to protect the country against attack. 沿边界修筑了长城以保护国家免受攻击。

b. protect...from...指"挡住，保护……，使不受"。如：He was wearing dark glasses to protect his eyes from the sun. 他戴水墨眼镜以保护眼睛不受阳光直射。

6. It is possible that upon such an occasion a battle ensued, with the sharks being driven away or killed.

【译文】双方可能随之发生搏斗，搏斗结果是海豚赶走或咬死鲨鱼。

【用法】

(1) It 为先行主语，that 引导的主语从句是真正的主语。

(2) with the sharks being driven away or killed 该短语为独立主格结构，表示伴随状况。短语中的 the sharks 作现在分词短语 being driven or killed 的逻辑主语。由于独立主格不是一个完整的句子，其中的动词一律采用动词的非谓语形式，即现在分词或过去分词形式。当 with 后的名词与动词之间为主谓关系时，采用动词的现在分词；当 with 后的名词与动词之间为动宾关系时，采用动词的过去分词，例如：

With the problem having been settled, I feel very relaxed. 问题解决了，我感觉很放松。

He was very excited with his arms swaying in the air. 他很兴奋，胳膊在空中挥舞着。

7. Whether it be bird, fish or beast, the porpoise is intrigued with anything that is alive.

【译文】海豚对凡是活着的东西都感兴趣，不管是鸟、鱼、还是野兽。

【用法】

(1) Whether it be bird, fish or beast 中，whether 作连词，引导一个让步状语从句，用以列举两个或更多的可能，句中的 it 指后面的 anything that is alive。此句中使用的是虚拟语气，意即：It is not important if it is a bird, fish or beast。that 引导的是定语从句，修饰 anything。注意定语从句在修饰表示物的不定代词时，关系代词必须用 that，不能用 which 代替，例如：

I have given everything that I have. 我已经给了你我所拥有的一切。

All I need is your love. 我只需要你的爱。

(2) be intrigued with 对……感兴趣。

8. They are constantly after the turtles, who peacefully submit to all sorts of indignities.

【译文】它们经常追逐海龟，海龟则温顺地忍受着各种侮辱。

【用法】

(1) who 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 the turtles。

(2) submit 为动词，常与 to 连用，含义为"服从；提出，提交；建议"。如：I submitted my papers to the examiner. 我把试卷交给主考老师。submit to 屈从于，如：The people in that country did not submit to the invaders. 那个国家的人们不向入侵者屈服。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

9. Almost any day a young porpoise may be seen trying to turn a 300-pound sea turtle over by sticking his snout under the edge of his shell and pushing up for dear life.

【译文】几乎每天都可以看到一只小海豚把鼻子顶入一只 300 磅重的海龟的硬壳下面，拼命地把它翻过来。

【用法】

(1) trying to turn... 作主语 a young porpoise 的补足语。by sticking... and pushing up... 作方式状语，修饰 turn... over。该短语中的第 1 个 his 指“海豚的”，而第 2 个 his 则指“海龟的”。

(2) for dear life 拼命地，如：He hung on to the slippery rope for dear life. 他拼命地抓住那根滑溜溜的绳子。

10. In another game, as the turtle swims across the oceanarium, the first porpoise swoops down from above and butts his shell with his belly.

【译文】在另一场游戏中，当海龟游过水族馆时，第一只海豚从上方猛扑下去，用腹部撞击龟壳。

【用法】

(1) as the turtle swims across the oceanarium 为 as 引导的时间状语从句，其中 as 为连词，意思为“当……的时候”，例如：

As the temperature rises, the water evaporates much faster. 随着温度的升高，水蒸发得更加迅速。

He dropped the glass as he stood up. 他站起来时，把杯子摔了。

(2) swoop down 固定词组，意思为“骤然下降，突然冲下来”。

11. He no sooner recovers his equilibrium than the next porpoise comes along and hits him another crack.

【译文】海龟刚恢复平衡，第二只海豚又冲过来猛击一下。

【用法】no sooner... than... 为固定搭配，意为“刚一……就……”。该短语的同义搭配为 scarcely/hardly... when...，请注意其倒装结构。如：No sooner had he go on the bus than the bus started off. 他刚一上车，车就开了。（=Hardly had he go on the bus when the bus started off.）

12. He is now satisfied merely to try to stand up, but as soon as he does so a porpoise knocks him flat. The turtle at last gives up by pulling his feet under his shell and the game is over.

【译文】此时的海龟，只要能站起来就满足了，但它刚站起来，就被一只海豚击倒。海龟终于屈服了，将 4 条腿缩进壳内。游戏到此结束。

【用法】

(1) to try to stand up 这里的用法为动词不定式作主语补足语，说明主语满足的对象。

(2) so 这里为副词，意思为“这样”，充当方式状语。

(3) give up 固定词组，意思为“放弃，停止”。注意 give up 和 give in 的区别：give in 的意思为“投降，屈服”，例如：

Mr. Smith decided to give up smoking since he wanted to have a child with his wife. 史密斯先生打算戒烟，因为他想和妻子生一个孩子。

The soldiers would rather die than give in. 战士们宁愿死也不屈服。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡状语从句(3)

时间状语从句

1. 时间状语从句要用一般现在时表示将来

a. I'll speak to him when he arrives. 不说:... when he will arrive。

b. I'll tell him about it when he comes back. 不说:... when he will come.

2. when

意思相当于:at that time(在……时刻),从句谓语动词通常是短暂动词,表示某一时刻的动作。注意主句和从句的时态。

a. I'll speak to him when he arrives.

b. I'll tell him about it when he comes back.

c. When I arrived, he was talking on the phone. 我到的时候,他正在打电话。

d. When I got there, he had already left. 我到那儿的时候,他已经走了。

e. When I got there, he left the office. 我到了之后,他才离开办公室。

从句也可接延续动词,这时从句往往用过去进行时态,表示某一时间段内发生的动作。例如:

f. The doorbell rang when I was telephoning.

3. while

意思相当于:during that time(在……期间),表示某一时间段内发生的动作,因此,从句谓语动词通常只接延续动词。

4. until

(1) 当主句谓语动词是延续动词时,通常用肯定形式。例如:

a. Wait until he comes back. (wait 为延续性动词)

b. We'll stay here until it stops raining. (stay 为延续性动词)

c. Until I came back, he was waiting for me at my home.

(2) 若主句谓语动词是短暂动词,则要用否定形式。这就是我们常说的"not... until...(直到……才……)"的结构。

a. I did not realize how special my mother was until I became an adult. 直到我长大成人以后,我才真正懂得母亲是多么不平凡。

b. Ice cream did not reach America until about the middle of the eighteenth century.

c. I didn't go to bed until 12 o'clock last night. 我昨晚到 12 点钟才睡觉。

d. He didn't leave the office until his boss came back. 老板回来之后他才离开办公室。

(3) 我们还可以把 not... until 变成倒装句型:

a. Not until 12 o'clock last night did I go to bed.

b. Not until his boss came back did he leave the office.

5. 表示"一……就……"

表示"一……就……"的连词有:as soon as, once, immediately, the moment。这些连词后边通常都是接短暂动词,表示一个点动作。注意分析下列句子:

a. We will leave as soon as it stops raining. 雨一停,我们就动身走。

b. Once it stops raining, we will leave.

www.TopSage.com

c. It began to rain as soon as I arrived home. 我刚到家，天就开始下起雨来。

d. It began to rain immediately I arrived home.

e. It began to rain the moment I arrived home.

6. by the time

by the time 意思是"在……之前"，强调的是"一个动作在另外一个动作之前已经完成(one event is completed before another event)"，因此，与 by the time 搭配的主句要用完成时态。

by the time 与两种完成时搭配：

a. By the time they arrived, we had already left. 那天他们到达的时候，我们已经先走了。

从句中 arrived 表示过去动作，对应的主句用过去完成时。

b. By the time they arrive, we will have already left. 一会儿等他们来的时候，我们将已经离开了。

从句中 arrive 表示将来动作，对应的主句用将来完成时。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 19 The stuff of dreams

本节重点和难点

状语从句(4)

● 地点状语从句

本课词汇

speculation [ˌspekjuˈleiʃən] *n.* 推测
literally [ˈlitərəli] *adv.* 确实
odd [ɔd] *adj.* 奇特的
tissue [ˈtisjuː] *n.* 组织
plausible [ˈplɔːzəbl] *adj.* 似乎有理的
hypothesis [haiˈpɔθəsis] *n.* 假说
electroencephalograph [iˈlektrəuinˈsefələgræf] *n.* 脑电图仪
electrode [iˈlektrəud] *n.* 电极
scalp [skælp] *n.* 头皮
psychiatrist [saiˈkaiətrist] *n.* 精神病学家
punctuate [ˈpʌŋktʃueit] *v.* 不时介入
jerky [ˈdʒəːki] *adj.* 急动的
disorder [disˈɔːdə] *n.* 失调
implication [ˌimpliˈkeiʃən] *n.* 含意,暗示

课文详解

1. It is fairly clear that the sleeping period must have some function, and because there is so much of it the function would seem to be important.

【译文】很清楚,睡眠必然具有某种作用。它占去那么多时间,所以其作用似乎还很重要。

【用法】

(1) It 作先行主语,真正的主语是 that 引导的主语从句。该句中的情态动词 must 用来表示"肯定"的推测,如:You must be wrong here. 在这点上你肯定错了。
文中的第 2 个 it 指 sleeping period。情态助词 would 在此处表示"可能"。

(2) 在 so much of it 中,much of 常用于代词 it、this 或 that 等前面,表示许多,如:
I still remember much of it in some detail. 我仍然记着这件事的许多细节。

2. Speculations about its nature have been going on for literally thousands of years, and one odd finding that makes the problem puzzling is that it looks very much as if sleeping is not simply a matter of giving the body a rest.

【译文】人们对睡眠作用的种种猜测,确实有数千年之久。一项使人对这个问题感到困惑的奇怪的发现是,睡眠在很大程度似乎并不仅仅是为了使身体得到休息。

【用法】

(1) 介词短语 about its nature 这里用作 speculations 的后置定语。
(2) go on 固定词组,意思为"持续,进行下去,继续"。
(3) literally 的意思为"确实,简直"。
(4) that makes the problem puzzling 为定语从句,修饰 one odd finding。"make+sb./sth.

www.TopSage.com

+形容词"意思为"使某人或某物……"，其中形容词充当的是宾语补足语。

(5) that it looks very much as if sleeping is not simply a matter of giving the body a rest 为 that 引导的表语从句。

3. "Rest", in terms of muscle relaxation and so on, can be achieved by a brief period lying, or even sitting down.

【译文】"休息"，从使肌肉得到放松等方面来看，只要稍微躺一躺，甚至坐一坐就能达到。

【用法】

(1) 现在分词短语 lying, or even sitting down 此处用作 period 的后置定语。

(2) in terms of 意为"从……方面来看"。

4. The body's tissues are self-repairing and self-restoring to a degree, and function best when more or less continuously active.

【译文】人体的组织在一定程度上有自我修补和自我恢复的能力，有张有弛地连续活动时，其功能最佳。

【用法】

(1) when 引导的是时间状语，其后省略了 the body's tissues are。在 while, when, if 引导的状语从句中，若句子的主语和谓语(系动词)为"主语+be"时，主语和系动词 be 往往可以省略，如：

If possible, give me some money. 可能的话，给我点儿钱。

While working, he is always singing. 工作的时候，他总是哼着小调。

(2) 形容词 self-repairing 和 self-restoring 均由"self+现在分词"构成，含义分别为"自我修补的"和"自我恢复的"。类似的词语还有：self-respecting(自尊的)，self-seeking(惟利是图的；自私自利的)，self-supporting(自力更生的)，self-winding(自动上发条的)。

5. In fact a basic amount of movement occurs during sleep which is specifically concerned with preventing muscle inactivity.

【译文】事实上，睡眠状态下仍有着基本的活动量，以防止肌肉活动停止。

【用法】

(1) which is specifically concerned with preventing muscle inactivity 为定语从句，修饰 movement。这里由于该定语从句太长，所以将其后置。

(2) be concerned with 固定词组，意思为"与……有关的"。由于 with 为介词，所以其后使用的是 preventing。

6. If it is not a question of resting the body, then perhaps it is the brain that needs resting?

【译文】如果睡眠的功能不是在于使身体得到休息，那么也许是让大脑得以休息？

【用法】

(1) perhaps 副词，意思为"可能，也许"，表示推测，一般用在句首。

(2) it is the brain that needs resting 为一个典型的强调句，强调的是主语 brain。强调句的一般句型为"it is+被强调部分+that(who)从句"，其中被强调部分可以是主语、宾语和状语等，如：

It is Li Ming who (that) helped me that day. 是李明那天帮了我。

It is on that day that I knew the truth. 正是在那天我知道了真相。

It is in Beijing that we met for the first time. 在北京我们第一次见面。

(3) need 这里为实义动词，意思为"需要"，后面一般接名词、动名词或动词不定式。应该

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

注意,need doing sth. = need to be done,用主动的形式表示被动的含义。例如:

You need to finish your job tomorrow. 你需要明天完成你的工作。

The flowers need watering. 这些花需要浇水。

I need a pen. 我需要一支钢笔。

7. This might be a plausible hypothesis were it not for two factors.

【译文】若不是下面两点,这种假设似乎是有道理的。

【用法】were it not for two factors 如果不是下面两个因素的话。该句为条件状语从句,在英语中可以省略 if,将从句中的 were 或 should 置于句首,构成条件状语从句。但这种用法通常只用于正式文章或公函中,如:Should you be interested in our offer, please contact us. 你若对我们的报价感兴趣,请与我们联系。

8. First the electroencephalograph (...) shows that while there is a change in the pattern of activity during sleep, there is no evidence that the total amount of activity is any less.

【译文】第一点,脑电图记录仪显示,人在睡眠时大脑活动的方式有变化,但没有迹象表明,其活动总量有任何减少。

【用法】

(1) that 引导宾语从句,该从句的主句是 there is no evidence....。while 在该宾语从句中引导一个让步状语从句。

(2) that the total amount of activity is any less 为 evidence 的同位语从句。

9. He showed that the average individual's sleep cycle is punctuated with peculiar bursts of eye-movements, some drifting and slow, others jerky and rapid.

【译文】他指出,平常人的睡眠周期中不时伴有一阵阵奇怪的眼球活动,这些活动有的飘忽而缓慢,有的急剧而快速。

【用法】

(1) some drifting and slow 和 others jerky and rapid 是两个独立主格结构,作 eye-movements 的同位语。可视为在这两个结构中省略了现在分词 being。其特点是:它们具有逻辑上的主语和逻辑上的谓语(系动词),但是谓语部分采用的是非谓语形式(现在分词或过去分词),系动词一般去掉。

这也可以从"一个句子只能有一个谓语动词(系动词)"来分析。对于这个句子,已经有了谓语 is punctuated with,所以其他的动词只能用非谓语形式。当独立主格的逻辑主语与动词之间为逻辑上的主谓关系时,使用现在分词;若为动宾关系,使用过去分词。例如:

It raining hard outside, we are studying in our cozy classroom. 外面下着大雨,我们在温暖舒适的教室里学习。

The car started, we decided to go. 车发动起来了,我们决定走。

(2) punctuate... with/by... 用……不停地打断……,如:The president's speech was punctuated by constant applause. 总统的讲话不停地被掌声打断。

10. If one group of people were disturbed from their eye-movement sleep for several nights on end, and another group were disturbed for an equal period of time but when they were not exhibiting eye-movements, the first group began to show some personality disorders while the others seemed more or less unaffected.

【译文】如果有两组人,一组人连续几夜在眼球活动时被叫醒;另一组人也是连续几夜被叫

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

醒，但是在眼球没活动时被叫醒的。结果，第一组人开始出现性格失常，而第二组人似乎没受什么影响。

【用法】

(1) 复合名词 eye-movements 用作 sleep 的定语，即睡眠时的状态是眼球活动着的。

(2) on end 连续地，如：He used to study in his bedroom for hours on end and refuse to do others. 他过去常常连续几个小时在卧室里学习不做别的事。

(3) 注意区别转折连词 while 和 but：while 可被译为"虽然"，表示转折对比，如：Tom is very clever while his brother is very stupid. 汤姆很聪明而他的弟弟却很笨；but 只表示转折，没有前后对比的含义，如：I wanted to go, but I had no time. 我想去，但没时间。

11. The implications of all this were that it was not the disturbance of sleep that mattered, but the disturbance of dreaming.

【译文】这一切暗示我们：睡眠受到干扰没关系，而做梦受到干扰是有问题的。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的是表语从句。该从句中使用了强调结构，所强调的部分是句子的主语 the disturbance of sleep 和 the disturbance of dreaming。按正常结构应该是：The disturbance of sleep did not matter, but the disturbance of dreaming mattered。在 but the disturbance of dreaming 后面省略了 that mattered。

(2) "not... but..."为固定搭配，意思为"不是……，而是……"，用来连接两个并列成分或句子，例如：

It was not you but him who saved my life that day. 不是你而是他在那天救了我的命。

核心语法

➡状语从句(4)

地点状语从句

1. 通常由 where 引导

a. Stay where you are. 待在原处别动。

b. After you finish the book, put it where it was. 看完这本书后，放回原处。

c. A driver should slow down where there are schools. 在有学校的地方，司机应缓行。

d. The tree of this kind grows favorably where it is wet. 这种树种是喜湿性的。

2. 也可由 wherever、anywhere 和 everywhere 引导地点状语从句

a. Wherever he happens to be, Clint can make himself at home. 无论在什么地方，Clint 总是无拘无束。

b. Everywhere they appeared, there were ovations. 他们在哪里都受到热烈欢迎。

3. 地点状语从句有时含有条件意味

a. Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者，事竟成。

b. Wherever there is water, air and earth, there is vegetation. 只要有水、空气和土壤，就会有植被。

c. Wherever there is love, there is also wealth and success! 只要有爱，就会有财富和成功！

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 20 Snake poison

本节重点和难点

状语从句(5)

- 原因状语从句
- 目的与结果状语从句
- 让步状语从句
- 比较状语从句
- 方式状语从句

本课词汇

saliva [sə'laivə] *n.* 唾液

digestive [dai'dʒestiv] *adj.* 助消化的

defy [di'fai] *v.* 使不可能

【词组】defy description (understanding) (某事物)难以形容(无法理解)/defy sb. to do sth. 量某人也不敢或不能干某事,激某人做他做不到或不愿做的某事/defy sb. against doing sth. 向某人挑战要他干某事/defy sb. by doing sth. 干某事以示对某人的藐视或公开反抗/defy severe cold 不畏严寒/defy the law 目无法纪

prey [prei] *n.* 被捕食的动物

fierce [fiəs] *adj.* 凶猛的

【辨析】fierce, violent

fierce 着重指"凶残"的天性,在行动、态度上十分凶猛,并含有杀伤意义。violent 指"猛烈,狂暴",是常用词,含义较 fierce 广,常含有"可能造成破坏"的意思,强调破坏性的或不受控制的物质力量,用于人时,指极端的激动不安,或常指有害的或恶意的行为。

tussle ['tʌsl] *v.* 扭打

carnivore ['kɑːnivɔː] *n.* 食肉动物

vertebrate ['vəːtibrit] *n.* 脊椎动物

lizard ['lizəd] *n.* 蜥蜴

concoct [kən'kɔkt] *v.* 调制

potency ['pəutənsi] *n.* 效力

conversion [kən'vəːʃən] *n.* 转化,转换,转变

arsenic ['ɑːsnik] *n.* 砒霜

strychnine ['strikniːn] *n.* 马钱子碱

mamba ['mæmbə] *n.* 树眼镜蛇

cobra ['kəubrə] *n.* 眼镜蛇

venom ['venəm] *n.* 毒液

neurotoxic [ˌnjuərəu'tɔksik] *adj.* 毒害神经的

viper ['vaipə] *n.* 蝰蛇

adder ['ædə] *n.* 蝮蛇

rattlesnake ['rætlsneik] *n.* 响尾蛇

haemolytic [ˌhiːməu'litik] *adj.* 溶血性的

viperine ['vaipərin] *adj.* 毒蛇的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. How it came about that makes manufactured poison is a mystery.

【译文】蛇是怎样产生毒液的,这是一个谜。

【用法】

(1) How 引导的是主语从句。it 在主语从句中作先行主语,真正的主语是 that 引导的主语从句。is a mystery 是整个句子的谓语部分。

(2) 短语 come about 此处意为"发生",还可用作"(船,风)改变方向"之意。如:How did such a mess come about, anyway? 到底这乱七八糟的是怎么发生的?
come about 常用于 it + comes about + that 结构中,如:It came about that he had to cancel his vacation. 所发生的事使他不得不取消假期。

2. Over the periods their saliva, a mild, digestive juice like our own, was converted into a poison that defies analysis even today.

【译文】蛇的唾液本来和我们人的消化液一样柔和,但经过漫长的时间,演变成了至今仍无法分析清楚的毒液。

【用法】

(1) 句中的 a mild, digestive juice like our own 用作 their saliva 的同位语, was converted into... 为句子的谓语, that defies analysis even today 为 poison 的定语从句。

(2) 句中 over 为介词,意为"在……时间内;在(一件事,一段时期的)过程中"。如:Over the years he's become more and more patient. 经过这许多年他已经变得越来越有耐心了。

(3) convert... into/to... 把……改成,把……转换成,如:The plant converted to microchip production. 该厂转产微集成电路。/They converted their money from marks into pounds. 他们将马克兑换成英镑。
defy 向……挑战,激发(某人做某事),如:She defied them to prove her guilty. 她倒要看看他们能不能证明她有罪。

3. It was not forced upon them by the survival competition; they could have caught and lived on prey without using poison, just as the thousands of non-poisonous snakes still do.

【译文】毒液不是生存竞争强加给它们的,它们也可以不用毒液捕捉动物而生存,就像今天成千上万的无毒蛇那样。

【用法】

(1) 介词短语 without using poison 相当于一个 if 引导的条件状语从句,即 if they hadn't used poison,所以主句中用的也是虚拟结构,即 could(情态动词) + have done,表示与过去事实相反。without using poison 为介词短语,作条件状语,意即"如果不用毒液的话"。这种结构称作含蓄条件句,也就是不用 if 直接引导的条件句,如:With luck, we'll be there by tomorrow. 幸运的话,我们明天将到达那儿。(=if we are lucky)/Given time, they'll probably agree. 给时间的话,他们可能会同意。(=if we give them time)/But for his pension, he would starve. 要不是他有养老金,他就挨饿了。(=if he didn't have his pension)

(2) just as 引导方式状语从句。

(3) 短语 force upon(亦作 force on)意为"迫使接受;强迫"。

(4) live on/off 靠……生活,以……为食,如:The whole family lived on her salary. 整个一家子都靠她一个人的工资生活。/He didn't want to live off his parents. 他不想靠他的父母生活。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. Poison to a snake is merely a luxury; it enables it to get its food with very little effort, no more effort than one bite.

【译文】毒液对蛇来说只是一种舒适生存的优越手段，它能使蛇不用费多大力气就能搞到食物，轻咬一口即可。

【用法】

(1) to a snake 作状语，意即"对蛇来说"。

(2) to get its food... 为动词不定式，作宾语 it 的补足语。

(3) no more effort than one bite 是 little effort 的同位语，对其作补充说明。

5. Cats, for instance, would be greatly helped; no running fights with large, fierce rats or tussles with grown rabbits—just a bite and no more effort needed.

【译文】例如，若猫有毒液，那对猫会大有帮助，它就不必再和又大又凶的老鼠边跑边搏斗了，也不必再和大兔子扭斗了，只要咬一口，就不必再费大力气了。

【用法】这是两个分句。两个分句都省略了条件句 if they had poison。后一个分句还省略了 they would have。破折号后面的部分强调说明"如果有毒液的话，咬一口就足矣，毫不费劲"。

6. In fact, it would be an assistance to all carnivores though it would be a two-edged weapon when they fought each other.

【译文】事实上，当它们相互撕打时，毒液就成了利弊参半的武器，可以杀死对方，也可以被对方的毒液杀死，但对于所有食肉动物来说，它都是有帮助的。

【用法】

(1) 整个句子使用的是与现在事实相反的虚拟语气，由于事实上并不是所有的肉食动物都有毒液，所以这里只是一种假设、虚拟的情况，所以应该使用虚拟语气。

(2) a two-edged weapon 双刃剑。意即"既有利又有弊"。

7. But, of the vertebrates, unpredictable Nature selected only snakes (and one lizard).

【译文】然而，在脊椎动物中，大自然神秘莫测地只选择了蛇(还有一种蜥蜴)。

【用法】

(1) 介词 of 的含义为 among。如：Of all my students, I like him best. 在我所有的学生中，我最喜欢他。

(2) 名词 nature 写成 Nature 指的是"大自然"。

8. One wonders also why Nature, with some snakes, concocted poison of such extreme potency.

【译文】人们还弄不清大自然为什么在某些蛇身上调制出如此高效的毒液来。

【用法】

(1) One 在此处作代词，泛指"人们"。with some snakes 作状语，指"在某些蛇的身上"。该句中将其提前，放在其所修饰的动词 concocted 之前，是为了强调大自然在某些蛇身上调制出如此高效的毒液。

(2) concoct 调制，一般指"调制食品"，如：She concocted a meal from leftovers. 她用剩菜剩饭做出了一顿饭。

该动词还可以转义为"编造"，如：

He concocted an excuse for being late for work. 他为上班迟到而编造了个借口。

(3) of such extreme potency 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 poison，意即"如此高效的"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

9. In the conversion of saliva into poison, one might suppose that a fixed process took place.

【译文】人们可能认为，唾液转变成毒液，其中有固定的程序。

【用法】

(1) In the conversion... poison 为介词短语，作状语，表示"在唾液转变成毒液的过程中"。该句使用的是虚拟语气结构，情态助动词 might 用来表示某种可能性。

(2) take place 固定词组，没有被动形式，意思为"发生"。

【辨析】happen, occur, take place

(1) happen 为常用词语，指"一切客观事物或情况的偶然或未能预见地发生"，例如：
The accident happened yesterday. 事故发生在昨天。

(2) occur 属正式用语，指"按计划使某事或效果发生"，通常所指的时间和事件都比较确定，在以具体事物、事件作主语时，可与 happen 互换，例如：
These events occurred in 1909. 这些事件发生于 1909 年。

(3) take place 指"发生事先计划或预想到的事物"，例如：
The meeting took place at 8 : 00 as planned. 按计划会议在八点举行了。

10. It did not; some snakes manufactured a poison different in every respect from that of others, as different as arsenic is from strychnine, and having different effects.

【译文】其实没有。有些蛇产生的毒液在各方面与另外一些毒蛇产生的毒液不同，就像砒霜不同于马钱子碱一样，它们有不同的效果。

【用法】

(1) It 指 a fixed process, did not 后面省略了短语动词 take place。different in... from that of others 作 poison 的定语。in every respect 作状语，修饰 different，意即"在各方面"。that of others 中的 that 指 poison，意即"其他蛇的毒液"。as different as... 作非限定性定语从句，第 1 个 as 前面省略了 which is。as arsenic is 后面省略了 different。该从句的完整结构应该是：which is as different as arsenic is different from strychine，与 different in every respect... 为并列结构，作定语，修饰 poison。

(2) be different from 与……不同，如：She is quite different from her elder sister. 她与她的姐姐截然不同。

(3) having different effects 为现在分词短语作后置定语，这里用来修饰 a poison。

11. One poison acts on the nerves, the other on the blood.

【译文】一种毒液作用于神经，另一种毒液作用于血液。

【用法】

(1) on the blood 前面省略了动词 acts。如果并列结构中的动词相同，后一个动词可以省略。

(2) 短语 act on 文中意为"对……起作用"，还可译为"根据或按照……(行动)"。如：If you had acted on my suggestion, you would have passed the exam. 如果你按照我的建议做，你就会及格了。

12. Both poisons are unpleasant, but by far the more unpleasant is the blood poison.

【译文】这两种毒液都很可怕，但溶血性毒液尤其厉害。

【用法】Both poisons 指 blood poison 和 nerve poison。by far 作状语，意即"……得多"、"显然"，常用来修饰比较级或最高级，强调数量或程度，如：
She is by far the better player. 她显然比别的运动员强得多。
This melon is by far the ripest of all. 这个西瓜显然是这些西瓜中最熟的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

13. It is said that the nerve poison is the more primitive of the two, that the blood poison is, so to speak, a newer product from an improved formula.

【译文】据说，神经毒液在两种毒液中是较为原始的一种，而溶血性毒液，打个比方说，是根据改良配方生产出的一种较新的产品。

【用法】It 为先行主语，that... of the two 和 that the blood... an improved formula 为两个并列的主语从句。so to speak 为插入语，意即“打个比方说”、“可以这样说”，如：

We lost our shirts, so to speak. 可以这么说，我们丢了衬衣。

14. Be that as it may, the nerve poison does its business with man far more quickly than the blood poison.

【译文】尽管如此，神经毒液比溶血性毒液在人身上起作用快得多。

【用法】

(1) Be that as it may 是一个倒装的让步状语从句，相当于 however that may be，意即“尽管如此”。

(2) does its business with man 意即“在人身上起作用”、“要人的命”。

15. Snakes did not acquire their poison for use against man but for use against prey such as rats and mice, and the effects on these of viperine poison is almost immediate.

【译文】蛇的毒液不是用来对付人的，而是对付它的猎物，诸如鼠类，毒液对这些猎物会立刻起作用。

【用法】

(1) 在第二分句中，the effects 是主语，of viperine poison 为其定语。on these 中的 these 指 rats and mice。

(2) such as 相当于 like，用来列举，如：My doctor told me to avoid fatty foods such as bacon or hamburgers. 我的医生告诫我避免食用咸肉或汉堡这样的高脂肪食物。

(3) 名词 effect 与介词 on 搭配，指“对……所起的作用”。

核心语法

➡状语从句(5)

一、原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句最常用的连词有：because，for，as，since。

1. because

(1) 语气最强，只有它才能用来回答 why 引导的问句。所引出的原因往往是听话人所不知道的或最感兴趣的原因。

a. You want to know why I am leaving? I am leaving because I'm fed up with the job and boss. 你想知道我为什么要辞职？我辞职是因为我厌倦了工作和我老板。

b. My friends dislike me because I'm handsome and successful. 我的朋友们都不喜欢我，因为我又帅气，又事业有成。

(2) 它可与强调词 only、just 连用。

a. Just because I don't complain, people think I'm satisfied.

b. You shouldn't get angry just because some people speak ill of you.

www.TopSage.com

2. since

表示人们已知的事实、不需强调的原因，所以常译成“既然……”，通常放在主句前边。

a. Since Monday is Bob's birthday，let's throw him a party. 既然周一就是Bob的生日，那我们为他举行一个派对吧。

b. Since everyone is here，let's get started.

c. Since you are free tonight，why not drop in and play chess with me?

d. Since we don't have class tomorrow，why not go out for a picnic?

e. Since you are sleepy，you might as well go to bed.

f. Since you are an English major，I guess you can help me with this sentence.

3. as

as 与 since 用法差不多，所引出的理由在说话人看来已经很明显，或已为听话人所熟悉而不需用 because 加以强调。

a. She didn't hear us come in as she was asleep.

b. I left a message as you weren't there.

c. As Monday is a national holiday，all government offices will be closed.

d. I have to speak English with them，as the guys I live with don't know any Chinese.

4. for

表示推断的理由，是对前面分句的内容加以解释或说明，通常放在主句后边。

a. The days are short，for it is now December.

b. It rained last night，for the ground is wet this morning.

试比较：Because it rained last night，the ground is wet this morning.

c. It must be morning，for the birds are singing.

d. Pay attention to your enemies，for they are the first to discover your mistakes.

二、目的与结果状语从句

1. 目的状语从句常见引导词主要有：so that，in order that，从句中常含有情态动词 will/would 或 can/could。

a. I turned off the TV so that my roommate could study in peace and quiet. 我关掉了电视，好让我的室友安静地学习。

b. When I was a child，I would take a flashlight（手电筒）to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.

c. We climbed high so that we could get a better view.

d. They carved the words on the stone so that/in order that the future generation would remember what they had done.

e. He has recently devoted much time to writing books on the subject so that the coming generation can learn the martial arts.

2. 结果状语从句常见的连接词主要有：so... that，such... that，从句中一般不带情态动词，且从句都要放在主句之后。

a. Sensible Sam：I saw you pushing your bicycle to work this afternoon.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Foolish Fred: Yes, I was so late that I didn't have time to get on it.

b. The food is so bad in the school cafeteria that flies go there to lose weight. 我们学校食堂饭菜质量太差，连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

注意：不要受汉语思维的影响，把这里的 so 改成了 very 或 too，常见于考试改错题。比如我们不能说：

The food is too/very bad in the school cafeteria that flies go there to lose weight.

3. 注意下句中 such 和 so 的用法区别：(重点掌握！)

(1) so 后边直接加形容词，such 要先接冠词 a(n)

a. He is such a good teacher that everyone likes him.

b. He is so good a teacher that everyone likes him.

(2) such 可修饰不可数名词，so 不可：

c. It was such nice weather that we went to the beach.

d. It was so nice weather that we went to the beach. (×)

可以说：

e. The weather was so nice that we went to the beach.

(3) such 可修饰复数名词，so 不可：

f. He got such heavy boxes that he couldn't carry them by himself.

(4) so 可与 many, much, few, little 搭配，such 不可：

g. I made so many mistakes that I failed the exam.

h. He has so few friends that he is always lonely.

i. He lost so much money that he didn't dare to go home.

j. I had so little trouble with the test that I left half an hour early.

三、让步状语从句

1. 常见的让步状语从句的引导词主要有：though, although, even though, even if。

注意：主句前不可用 but，但可用 yet/still。

a. Though/Although he tried hard, (yet/still) he failed.

b. Although I didn't know anybody at the party, I had a very good time.

c. The family is the essential presence—the thing that never leaves you, even if you find you have to leave it.

2. 介词表示让步。

(a1)though 是连词，后边只接从句(有时是省略形式的从句)，而 despite, in spite of, for all 是介词，后边只接名词(短语)，不接从句。注意比较下列句子：

a. Though he was inexperienced, he did a very good job. = In spite of his inexperience, ...

b. Although it was dangerous, ... = Despite the danger, ...

c. Though the weather was bad, ... = In spite of the bad weather, ...

3. while 位于句首，一般表示"尽管……"，引导让步状语从句。

a. While I sympathize with (同意) your point of view, I can not accept it.

b. While he has time, it doesn't mean he has capacity and patience.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

c. While many countries of the world celebrate their own Mother's Day at different times throughout the year, there are some countries such as Denmark, Finland, Italy, Turkey, Australia, and Belgium which also celebrate Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May.

TopSage.com

4. as 引导的倒装句，表示让步。

句型：adj. ＋ as ＋主语＋谓语

a. Young as he is, he is knowledgeable. 尽管他年龄小，知识却很渊博。

b. Poor as he is, he is kind and honest. 尽管他贫穷，但他心地善良，为人诚实。

前置的也可以是：名词或副词。例如：

c. Much as I respect him, I can not agree with him.

尽管我很尊重他，但我并不同意他的观点。

d. Hard as he tried, he failed the exam again.

e. Child as he is, he is knowledgeable. ＝Although he is a child, ...

四、比较状语从句

1. 引导词 as

(1) 结构 1："as ＋形容词或副词＋as"

a. The work is not as difficult as you think.

b. Eyes are as eloquent as lips (are).

(2) 结构 2："as ＋形容词＋ a(n) ＋可数名词单数＋as"

a. Americans tend to think from small to large. Let us take as simple an example as the addressing of envelopes. 美国人思维喜欢由具体到一般。我们举一个写信封地址的简单例子吧。

b. I didn't finish as large a part of the work as he did.

c. I didn't finish as a large part of the work as he did. (×)

在否定句中第一个 as 可用 so 代替。

2. 引导词 than

(1) 应是两个同类事物才能比较，如：he 和 I，不是两个同类事物，是无法比较的。

a. He is taller than I (am).

b. The weather of the South is wetter than the North. (×)

例句 b 是典型的错误句子，因为 the weather of the South 和 the North 是两个截然不同的事物，无法进行比较。只能是"南方的天气"和"北方的天气"两个同类事物才能比较。故原句应该改为：

The weather of the South is wetter than that of the North. (为避免重复，用 that 代替 the weather)

(2) 在有 than 的比较句子里，主句中必须有比较级形式出现。

He has made great contributions to the company than anyone else. (×)

应将 great 改为 greater。

3. "The more..., the more..."句型表示比较

a. The more she practiced, the worse she sang. 她练习得越多唱得越糟糕。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

b. The nearer it is drawn to the surface of the earth (从句), the more a body weighs (主句). 一个物体离地球表面越近，重量就越大。

c. The higher you go (从句), the less dense air becomes (主句). 你升得越高，空气就会变得越稀薄。

d. The more we help others, the more we receive in return. We advance ourselves as we help others. 帮助别人越多，我们获得的回报也越多。帮助了别人，提升了自己。

e. Friends are lights in winter: the older the friend, the brighter the light. 朋友犹如冬日里的暖阳，愈久弥珍。

f. The more you leave things to chance, the less chance there is for you. 你越是听天由命，机会就越少。

五、方式状语从句

方式状语从句表示主句动作的方式，引导词有：as, as if, as though, the way 等。

请看例句：

a. When in Rome, do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗。(When traveling, follow the customs of the local people.)

b. Do as you are told. 按照吩咐的去做。

c. Do as I say, not as I do. =Follow my advice, but don't follow my example.

d. Do it the way you were taught. 按照教你的方式去做。

e. He acted as though/as if he had nothing to do with it. 从他的表现看，好像这事与他无关。

前面说过，学习状语从句关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词。只要记住连接词一般都能识别是何种状语从句，从而正确分析句子结构并正确理解句子意思。相反，若在应试中，首先要仔细分析各分句之间的逻辑关系，然后填入适当的连词。

同时，还要了解各状语从句在使用时自己独特的用法，比如 although 不能和 but 连用；as 表示让步要用倒装结构；时间状语从句中应特别注意时态搭配等等。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 21 Williams S. [illegible] "Western" film

本节重点和难点

● 不带 to 的动词不定式(1)

本课词汇

supreme [sju:ˈpri:m] *adj.* 首屈一指的
protagonist [prəuˈtægənist] *n.* 主角
outlaw [ˈautlɔ:] *n.* 逃犯,亡命之徒
framed [ˈfreimd] *adj.* 遭到陷害的
vicious [ˈviʃəs] *adj.* 恶毒的
mythology [miˈθɔlədʒi] *n.* 神话
vanished [ˈvæniʃd] *adj.* 消失了的
absurdly [əbˈsə:dli] *adv.* 荒诞地
arena [əˈri:nə] *n.* 竞技场地
encroaching [inˈkrəutʃiŋ] *adj.* 渐渐渗入的
Indian [ˈindiən] *n.* 印第安人
bewilder [biˈwildə] *v.* 使手足无措
alien [ˈeiliən] *adj.* 外来的
taboo [təˈbu:] *n.* 戒律
disinherit [ˌdisinˈherit] *v.* 剥夺……继承权
undeclared [ˌʌndiˈklɛəd] *adj.* 未经宣布的
hypocrisy [hiˈpɔkrəsi] *n.* 伪善
chicanery [ʃiˈkeinəri] *n.* 诈骗
impending [imˈpendiŋ] *adj.* 迫近的,迫在眉睫的
immolation [ˌiməˈleiʃən] *n.* 杀戮
code [kəud] *n.* 准则

课文详解

1. . . . ,for unlike Gary Cooper and John Wayne he appeared in nothing but Westerns.

【译文】他和加里·古柏、约翰·韦恩不同,他只在西部电影中扮演角色。

【用法】

(1) for 在此处引导一个原因状语从句,它所引导的原因状语从句主要是给出新的信息,原因只是捎带说一下,该连词引导的从句不出现在句首,而且也不能单独使用,且常用于较正式文体,如:I decided to stop and have lunch—for I was feeling hungry. 我决定停下来,吃午饭——我觉得饿了。
在课文中是说明一下为什么他是西部影片明星中的佼佼者。Gary Cooper,加里·古柏(1901～1961),美国电影演员,以演西部片中的牛仔著称。John Wayne,约翰·韦恩(1906～1980),美国电影演员,擅长演西部片中的牛仔英雄。Westerns 西部电影。

(2) nothing but 仅仅,只是,如:I could see nothing but flowers everywhere. 我到处看到的只有花。

2. It was Hart who created the basic formula of the Western film,and devised the protagonist he played in every film he made,the good-bad man,the accidental-noble outlaw,or the honest-but-

www.TopSage.com

大家网

framed cowboy, or the sheriff made suspect by vicious gossip; in short, the individual in conflict with himself and his frontier environment.

【译文】正是哈特创造了西部电影的基调,即在他自己拍摄的影片中他所塑造的主人公的形象:被认为是坏人的好人,出人意料的高尚逃犯,诚实却遭陷害的牛仔,或因流言蜚语蒙受嫌疑的司法官。总之,主人公是一个自相矛盾,又与他的拓荒环境相矛盾的人物。

【用法】

(1) 该句为强调句结构,所强调的部分是该句的主语 Hart。正常结构应该是:Hart created the basic formula... and devised the...。he played in every film he made 作定语,修饰 protagonist。he made 作定语,修饰 every film,意即"在他自己拍摄的影片中他所塑造的主人公形象"。

(2) the good-bad man,... the individual... environment 为 protagonist 的同位语。made suspect by vicious gossip 为过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 the sheriff,等于 who was made suspect by vicious gossip,该短语中的 suspect 作主语 sheriff 的补足语。

(3) in conflict with... environment 为介词短语,作定语,修饰 the individual。
in conflict with 与……发生矛盾,与……冲突,如:
He is in conflict with his relatives about the terms of a will. 他就遗嘱的条款与亲属发生矛盾。
in short 总而言之,一句话。

3. He had lived in it as a child when it was already disappearing, and his hero was firmly rooted in his memories and experiences, and in both the history and the mythology of the vanished frontier.

【译文】在他还是孩子的时候,他在西部生活过,当时西部拓荒生活正在消失。他塑造的英雄人物深深地扎根于他本人的记忆和经历之中,也扎根于有关已经消失的拓荒生活的历史和神话之中。

【用法】

(1) it 指 the old West。as a child 孩提时期。when 引导时间状语从句,该从句中的 it 也指 the old West。从句中使用过去进行时表示当时西部的拓荒生活已经开始消失。his hero 指他所塑造的影片主人公。

(2) be rooted in 意思为"深植于……",这里 root 为及物动词,意思为"使生根,使扎根"。

(3) and in both the history and the mythology of the vanished frontier 注意这里的介词 in 不能省略,介词 in 说明 both the history and the mythology of the vanished frontier 同样也是 was firmly rooted in 的宾语。若省略掉,会造成句子结构的混乱。

4. And although no period or place in..., myth and reality did join hands in at least one arena, the conflict between the individual and encroaching civilization.

【译文】虽然在美国历史上没有任何时期或地区像西部拓荒时期那样被荒谬地浪漫主义化了,但神话和事实至少在某一个舞台上共存,也就是存在于个人与渐渐闯入的文明这两者的冲突之中。

【用法】

(1) although 引导的是让步状语从句,用否定词 no+副词的比较级 more absurdly 强调"只有西部拓荒时期才被荒谬地浪漫主义化了",如:
No one else has ever had a greater influence on my life (than him).

www.TopSage.com

任何其他人都没有(他)对我的一生有过更大的影响。

(2) the conflict between... civilization 作 arena 的同位语,意即"神话和事实至少在某一个舞台上共存,也就是存在于个人与渐渐闯入的文明这两者的冲突之中"。

(3) join hands in 携手联合,如:They joined hands in fighting tyranny. 他们联合起来与暴政作斗争。

5. Men accustomed to struggling for survival against the elements and Indians were bewildered by politicians, bankers and businessmen and unhorsed by fences, laws and alien taboos.

【译文】习惯与大自然和印第安人作斗争以求生存的拓荒者被政客、银行家和商人搞得晕头转向,最后被圈地、法律和外来的清规戒律所击败。

【用法】

(1) accustomed to struggling for survival against the elements and Indians 这里用作为后置定语,修饰 men。相当于定语从句 who are accustomed to struggling for survival against the elements and Indians。

(2) be accustomed to sth. /doing sth. 固定用法,意思为"习惯于……",其中 to 为介词,后面接名词或动名词。与其意思相同的结构为 get used to sth. /doing sth. 和 be used to sth. /doing sth. 。另外注意 be used to 与 used to 的区别:used to do sth. 表示过去的习惯性动作或经常做的动作。例如:

He used to go to school by bus. 他过去坐公交车去上学。

He is used to the bad circumstances. 他已经习惯了周围恶劣的环境。

She is accustomed to doing exercises every morning. 她已经习惯了每天早上锻炼。

(3) and unhorsed by 与 were bewildered by 为该句的并列谓语,unhorsed 前面省略了 were。由于西部英雄都是骑在马上的,所以在此处 unhorsed by 指"被赶下了马"也就是说"被击败"。19 世纪初期,美国西部地区处于开拓时期。牛仔们骑马放牧畜群,广阔的地区任他们驰骋。为了生存,他们与大自然斗,与土著印第安人斗。可是随着文明的渐渐渗入,同时也出现了划分疆界的藩篱以及相应的法律和外来的清规戒律。所有这些使他们失去了过去自由自在的生活,所以说他们被击败了。

(4) against the elements and Indians 为介词短语,作定语,修饰 struggling。

(5) be bewildered by 被……所困惑,如:She was bewildered by his departure. 他的离去使她不知所措。

6. Hart's good-bad man was always an outsider, always one of the disinherited, and if he found it necessary to shoot a sheriff or rob a bank along the way, his early audiences found it easy to understand and forgive, especially when it was Hart who, in the end, overcame the attacking Indians.

【译文】哈特扮演的被误认为坏人的好人总是一个局外人,总是一个被剥夺继承权的人。如果他认为在进行过程中有必要枪击一个司法官或抢劫一个银行,他的早期观众很容易接受,觉得应原谅他,特别是当哈特最后战胜了前来进攻的印第安人时,观众更能原谅他。

【用法】

(1) he found it necessary to shoot a sheriff or rob a bank along the way 以及 his early audiences found it easy to understand and forgive 中的 it 为先行宾语,后面的动词不定式为真正的宾语。

(2) it 后面的形容词 necessary 和 easy 为宾语补足语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(3) an outsider 局外人。the disinherited 被剥夺继承权的人。英语中"定冠词 the+形容词"常用来表示"某类人",如:the rich(富人)、the poor(穷人)、the blind(盲人)。

TopSage.com

7. Audiences in the second decade of the twentieth century found it pleasant to escape to a time when life, though hard, was relatively simple.

【译文】生活在 20 世纪 20 年代的观众认为,逃到一个即使艰苦但比较简朴的时代中去是件愉快的事。

【用法】

(1) in the second decade of 为介词短语,作定语,修饰 audiences。

(2) found it pleasant to escape to a time 中的 it 为先行宾语,真正的宾语是动词不定式 to escape to a time,形容词 pleasant 为宾语补足语。

(3) when 引导的是定语从句,修饰 a time。

(4) though hard 作让步状语,though 和 hard 之间省略了 life was。

8. We still do; living in a world in which undeclared aggression, war, hypocrisy, chicanery, anarchy and impending immolation are part of our daily lives, we all want a code to live by.

【译文】我们今天仍然有这种感觉。如今,不宣而战的侵略、战争、虚伪、诈骗、无政府状态以及即将临头的毁灭成了我们日常生活的一部分,我们都希望有一个赖以生存的行为准则。

【用法】

(1) We still do 指前句中的 found it pleasant... simple。意即"我们今天仍有这种感觉。"

(2) living in a world in which... our daily lives 为现在分词短语,作原因状语。说明我们想要有一个赖以生存的行为准则的原因。句子的主语 we 和动词 live 为逻辑上的主谓关系,所以这里使用的是表示主动的现在分词形式。

(3) to live by 作定语,修饰 code,意即"遵循……生活",如:

We must live by certain principles. 我们必须遵循某些原则生活。

核心语法

➡不带 to 的动词不定式(1)

在下列几种情况下不定式要省略 to:

一、一些动词的复合宾语中 to 省去

1. 感觉动词 (perceptional verb): see, hear, watch, notice, feel, observe

2. 使役动词 (causative verb): let, make, have

a. The teacher has us write a composition every week.

b. I saw a man enter the shop.

c. A man was scared to death when he went to the dentist with a toothache. To calm the patient, the dentist offered him a shot of whiskey. The man tossed it down (一饮而尽), then had another. "Now," said the dentist, "got your courage back?" "Yeah," snarled (咆哮) the patient. "And I'd like to see anybody try to touch my teeth." 一名男子因为牙痛去看牙医,但他非常害怕。为使病人平静下来,牙医给了他一杯威士忌。男子一饮而尽,接着又喝了一杯。牙医说:"现在,你不再害怕了吧?" 病人咆哮道:"是的,我倒要看看谁敢再碰我的牙齿。"

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

上述动词若转换为被动结构时，其后不定式需加 to。

d. A man was seen to enter the shop.

二、一些短语句型中 to 省去

had better, would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might (just) as well, cannot but, cannot choose but, cannot help but, etc.

a. I cannot but admire his courage.

b. We might as well put up here for tonight.

c. It all started so innocently that warm June night. When I first met you, you looked so beautiful and lovely that I couldn't help but fall in love with you, even though we both agreed our worlds were far apart, and could never be one.

三、do nothing/anything/everything but do 句型中 to 省去

a. I have nothing to do but wait.

b. I have no choice but to wait.（若 but 前没有 do，则不定式加 to）

c. He needs nothing but to succeed.

d. He will do anything but give in.（他决不会屈服。）

四、还有在解释 do 的精确含义的名词从句和定语从句作主语的句子中，be 动词后直接加 do。

e. All that I could do then was wait.

f. What I could do then was wait.

g. All you do now is complete this form.

h. No mountains too high for you to climb. All you have to do is have some climbing faith. No rivers too wide for you to make it across. All you have to do is believe it when you pray.

i. Husband: I have a very demanding job. I'm tired when I get home.

Wife: I also have a demanding job, but I'm expected to come home from the office and cook, care for the children and clean the house. All you do is sit and watch television and complain about how tired you are.

在三种非谓语动词变化中，不定式所能充当的句子成分最为复杂：能够充当除谓语之外的任何成分，这也是"不定式"（不一定是什么词性）得名的由来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 22 Knowledge and progress

本节重点和难点

- 不带 to 的动词不定式(2)
- 分裂不定式

本课词汇

loom [luːm] *v.* 赫然耸起
【用法】loomed (up) through the mist 隐约出现在雾中

manifest [ˈmænifest] *adj.* 明显的

morality [məˈræliti] *n.* 道德

communicate [kəˈmjuːnikeit] *v.* 交际,交流
【词组】communicate with sb. by letter/telegraph 与某人通信(通电报)
【用法】1. communicate 作"传达"、"告知"等解时,是及物动词:communicate one's thoughts very clearly(很清楚地表达自己的思想);有必要说明"向某人传达"时,后跟 to sb.:He has communicated his wishes to me. 他已把他的愿望告知了我。2. 在表达与某人"交往、联络"时,是不及物动词。3. 在表示把疾病传染给某人时,介词用 to。

compound [ˈkɔmpaund] *adj.* 复合的

enhance [inˈhɑːns] *v.* 增进

tempo [ˈtempəu] *n.* 速度
【词组】quick tempo 快速

trickle [ˈtrikl] *n.* 涓涓细流

torrent [ˈtɔrənt] *n.* 滔滔洪流

humanity [hjuːˈmæniti] *n.* 人类

indifferently [inˈdifrəntli] *adv.* 不在乎地

grimly [ˈgrimli] *adv.* 可怖地

whimsical [ˈwimzikl] *adj.* 怪诞的

shatter [ˈʃætə] *v.* 毁坏

twofold [ˈtuːfəuld] *adj.* 双重的

课文详解

1. Why does the idea of progress loom so large in the modern world?

【译文】为什么进步这个概念在现代世界显得如此突出?

【用法】loom large 赫然出现,显得突出,如:

Her possible candidacy loomed large in the future plans of the party. 将来她极有可能被该党推举为候选人。

2. Although mankind has undergone no general improvement in intelligence or morality, it has made extraordinary progress in the accumulation of knowledge.

【译文】虽然人类在智力和道德上没有得到普遍提高,但在知识积累方面却取得了巨大的进步。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) although 为连词,意思为"尽管",引导让步状语从句,注意 although 引导的让步状语从句应该置于主句的前面。

(2) undergo 及物动词,意思为"承受,经历",例如:

a house that is undergoing renovations 经过翻修的房子

He undergoes great pain during the operation. 做手术时,他忍受极大的痛苦。

(3) make progress 固定搭配,意思为"取得进步",经常和介词 in 连用,意思为"在……方面取得进步"。

3. Knowledge began to increase as soon as the thoughts of one individual could be communicated to another by means of speech.

【译文】人一旦能用语言同别人交流思想,知识的积累便开始了。

【用法】

(1) communicate 的用法

① communicate 表示"传达,表达,传送",作及物动词,其后可跟事物名词作宾语,即:communicate sth. to sb. 。**注意**:宾语后面使用介词"to"而不用"of"。

②communicate 在表示"通消息,联系,交流思想"时,用作不及物动词,其后不可直接跟宾语,常常使用 communicate with 的结构。如:The two friends hadn't communicated with each other for years. 这两位朋友已多年未互通音讯。

(2) as soon as 相当于一个连词,意思为"一……就……",用于引导时间状语从句。与其意思相同的词语有 immediately, directly, the moment, 例如:

I determined to lodge a complaint immediately we arrived. 我决定一到目的地就给铁路部门提意见。

4. With the invention of writing, a great advance was made, for knowledge could then be not only communicated but also stored.

【译文】随着书写的发明,又迈进了一大步,因为这样一来,知识不仅能交流,而且能储存了。

【用法】

(1) 介词 with 的意思是"随着"。如:With the development of society people's living standards have been improved. 随着社会的发展,人们的生活水平已经提高了。

(2) for 这里为连词,意思为"因为,由于",用于引导原因状语从句。not only... but(also)... 固定结构,意思为"不但……,而且……",连接两个同等成分,在此句中连接的是两个并列的过去分词。如:Not only he but also I am going. 不仅他要去,我也要去。

5. Libraries made education possible, and education in its turn added to libraries: the growth of knowledge followed a kind of compound interest law, which was greatly enhanced by the invention of printing.

【译文】藏书使教育成为可能,而教育反过来又丰富了藏书,因为知识的增长遵循着一种"滚雪球"的规律。印刷术的发明又大大提高了知识增长的速度。

【用法】

(1) "make+sth. /sb. +形容词"意思为"使某人或某物……",其中形容词充当的是宾语补足语。possible 作 education 的宾语补足语。which 引导的非限定性定语从句,修饰 the growth of knowledge。

(2) education in its turn added to libraries 教育反过来也丰富了藏书。in one's turn 轮到某人。

(3) compound interest law 的原意为"复利率",即平时所说的"驴打滚"、"滚雪球"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. What is called "modern civilization" is not the result of a balanced development of all man's nature, but of accumulated knowledge applied to practical life.

【译文】所谓"现代文明"并不是人的天性平衡发展的结果，而是积累起来的知识应用到实际生活中的结果。

【用法】

(1) What 引导的是主语从句，谓语动词用单数。过去分词短语 applied to... 用作名词 knowledge 的定语，表示被动。

(2) balanced 为形容词化的动词过去分词，可直接作为形容词使用，意思为"平衡的"。

(3) 名词 man 此处的意思是"人类"，man's nature 意思是"人类的本性"。

7. As is so often pointed out, knowledge is a two-edged weapon which can be used equally for good or evil.

【译文】正像人们常常指出的，知识是一把双刃刀，可以用于造福，也可以用来为害。

【用法】

(1) As 作关系代词，引导非限定性语从句，指 knowledge is a two-edged weapon... evil。which 引导的定语从句，修饰 a two-edged weapon。for good or evil 作目的状语。

(2) 短语 be used for sth. 或 be used to do sth. 意思是"被用做……"。如 The wood will be used to build a house. 这些木头将被用来建房子。

8. Could any spectacle, for instance, be more grimly whimsical than that of gunners using science to shatter men's bodies while, close at hand, surgeons use it to restore them?

【译文】例如：炮兵利用科学毁坏人的身体，而外科医生就在附近用科学抢救被炮兵毁坏的人体，还有什么情景比这更可怕、更怪诞的吗？

【用法】

(1) that 代替 spectacle。using science to shatter men's bodies 作定语，修饰 gunners。

(2) while 在该句中不用来引导时间状语从句，而相当于连词 but，意即"而"，引出与前面提到的截然相反的事情，如：Fred gambled his money away while Julia spent all hers on dresses. 弗雷德把钱都赌光了，而朱丽娅却把钱都花在衣着上。it 指 science，them 指 men's bodies。

(3) 该句的结构是疑问句，但实际上起到一个加强语气的陈述句的作用。修辞疑问句中的一般疑问句的否定形式常表示肯定的意思，而肯定形式的则表示否定的意思：Are we going to let them do this to us? (=We aren't...)我们能让他们这么对待我们吗？/Didn't I tell you it would rain? (=I told you...)我难道没告诉你要下雨吗？

(4) close at hand 在手边，在近旁。

9. We have to ask ourselves very seriously what will happen if this twofold use of knowledge, with its ever-increasing power, continues.

【译文】我们不得不严肃地问问自己：随着日益增长的知识的力量，如果我们继续利用知识的这种双重性，将会发生什么样的情况呢？

【用法】

(1) what 引导的是宾语从句，作动词 ask 的直接宾语。if 引导的是宾语从句中的条件状语从句。

(2) this twofold use of knowledge 指知识可以用来造福，也可以用来为害。with its ever increasing power 作名词 knowledge 的非限定性定语。its 指 knowledge。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡不带 to 的动词不定式(2)

一、在下列几种情况下不定式要省略 to:

1. 在 help, listen to, look at 后边可用 to,也可不用 to。

a. Would you like to listen to me(to) read the poem?

b. The teacher will help you (to) study English well.

2. 在 rather than, other than, than 后加不带 to 的不定式

a. Rather than wait anymore, I decided to go home by taxi.

b. Rather than go on with his work, he went home.

c. No one could do other than admire it.

d. To my great surprise, she preferred to give herself up ________ herself.

A. than hiding　　B. rather than to hide

C. to hiding　　D. rather than hide

正确答案:D

e. In the course of a day students do far more than just ________ classes. (四级真题)

A. attend　　B. attended　　C. to attend　　D. attending

正确答案:A

3. Why (not) + do?

(1) Why do sth? 含有责怪之意,通常表明做某事是无意义或愚蠢的。

a. —I really hate to write the essay Professor Smith assigned us.

—Why bother then?

b. Why pay to see that movie, since you can see it on TV for nothing.

(2) Why not do sth? 表示建议

Why not take a holiday?

4. 两个动词由 and, or, but 等连接时,为了避免重复而省去 to

a. I'd like to lie down and go to sleep.

b. Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later?

c. I haven't decided whether to go home or stay at school during the coming summer vacation.

在这种情况下,若两个不定式动词有对比之义,则均须加 to。

d. It is the greatest happiness on earth to love and to be loved.

e. To play fair is as important as to play well.

f. I came not to praise, but to scold you.

g. He likes to be respected, not to respect others.

5. 动词原形 come, go 在口语中,其后常加不带 to 的不定式

a. Go get a paper for me. 去给我买份报纸。

b. Come sit down. 过来坐下。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二、分裂不定式

所谓分裂不定式，即 to 与动词之间插入了一个副词。如：

a. He liked to half close his eyes.

b. He began to slowly get up off the floor. 他开始慢慢地从地上爬起来。

但有人认为用这种分裂不定式是“文风恶劣”，尤其在正式文体中应尽量加以避免，而把副词放在 to 之前或句子末尾。

c. He began slowly to get up off the floor.

但是，有时为了准确表达不定式的意思，我们可能只好用分裂不定式，因为，这种改动可能会引起意思的改变。请比较下例：

The United Nations is expected to strongly condemn such action. 人们期望联合国强烈谴责这种行为。

The United Nations is expected strongly to condemn such action. 人们强烈期望联合国谴责这种行为。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 23 Bird flight

本节重点和难点

- 局部倒装

本课词汇

albatross ['ælbətrɔs] *n.* 信天翁
sustenance ['sʌstənəns] *n.* 支撑力
glider ['glaidə] *n.* 滑翔者
harness ['hɑːnis] *v.* 利用
endow [in'dau] *v.* 赋予
ply [plai] *v.* 不断地供给
gale [geil] *n.* 大风
partridge ['pɑːtridʒ] *n.* 鹧鸪
like [laik] *adj.* 类似的
propulsion [prə'pʌlʃən] *n.* 推进力
utter ['ʌtə(r)] *adj.* 完全的
slip [slip] *v.* 滑行

【辨析】 slide, glide, slip
slide 强调在光滑平面上持续的"滑动"。glide 强调舒展、优美的"滑行"，与表面无关。slip 强调由于表面光滑使得身体产生的突然的、不自觉的运动，如 slip and fall（滑倒）。

adverse ['ædvəːs] *adj.* 逆的，相反的
omen ['əumən] *n.* 预兆

课文详解

1. No two sorts of birds practise quite the same sort of flight; the varieties are infinite; but two classes may be roughly seen.

【译文】 没有任何两种鸟的飞行方式是相同的。鸟的飞行方式千差万别，但大体上可分为两类。

【用法】

(1) 句中 no 为限定词，含义为"无，没有"，相当于 not a; not any。

(2) practise 及物动词，这里的意思为"实行，使用"，注意其名词形式为 practice。类似变化的单词还有：advise→advice, increase→increace

(3) 名词 variety 的含义为"变化；多样性；种种；各类"，与 of 连用时，含义为"各种"。如：At school we learn a variety of things. 在学校我们学习各种东西。/This is a new variety of wheat. 这是一种新品种小麦。

2. Any ship that crosses the Pacific is accompanied for many days by the smaller albatross, which may keep company with the vessel for an hour without visible or more than occasional movement of wing.

【译文】 任何一艘横渡太平洋的轮船都会有一种小信天翁伴随飞行许多天，它们随船飞行一小时也难得见其扇动一下翅膀。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) that crosses the Pacific 为定语从句，修饰 any ship。which 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 the smaller albatross。visible 和 more than occasional 作并列定语，修饰 movement of wing。

(2) keep company with 陪伴着，如：Whenever my husband went away on business my parents would come and keep company with me. 每当我丈夫外出出差，我父母就来跟我作伴。

(3) more than 在这里作副词，表示"非常"，相当于 very，如：I was more than a little curious about the whole business. 我对整件事都非常好奇。/We will be more than glad to help you in any way we can. 我们将非常高兴地尽我们所能来帮助你。

3. The currents of air that the walls of the ship direct upwards, as well as in the line of its course, are enough to give the great bird with its immense wings sufficient sustenance and progress.

【译文】沿船体上升的气流和沿航线向前的气流给这种巨翼大鸟以足够的浮力和推力。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的定语从句，修饰 the currents of air，意即"沿着船体上升的气流"。

(2) as well as in the line of its course 也作定语，修饰 the currents of air。

(3) its course 指"船的航线"。

(4) the great bird 作动词 give 的间接宾语。

(5) with its immense wings 作定语，修饰 the great bird。the great bird 指 albatross。

4. The albatross is the king of the gliders, the class of fliers which harness the air to their purpose, but must yield to its opposition.

【译文】信天翁是滑翔飞行的鸟类之王，它能自如地驾驭空气，但必须顺气流飞行。

【用法】

(1) the class of fliers... opposition 是 gliders 的同位语。which 引导定语从句，修饰 the class of fliers。its 指空气的。

(2) 动词 yield 常与 to 连用，含义为"放弃；投降；让步；让位于，被……取代"，还可用作及物动词，含义为"出产"。例如：That tree yields fruits. 这种树结果。/I will not yield a step. 我寸步不让。

5. In the contrary school, the duck is supreme.

【译文】与滑翔鸟相对的另一类鸟中，数野鸭本领最高。

【用法】名词 school 此处含义为"(鱼及某些动物的)群体，队"，另外该名词还可用来"学派，派"。如：They belong to different literary schools. 他们属于不同的文学流派。

6. It comes nearer to the engines with which man has "conquered" the air, as he boasts.

【译文】它更近乎于人类自夸"征服"了空气的发动机。

【用法】

(1) It 指 the duck。comes nearer to the engines 近乎于……的发动机。with which 引导定语从句。conquered 用引号引上，表示这是一种夸张的说法。人类所谓的征服空气只是能够靠着发动机的动力在空气中飞行。as he boasts 作状语，意即"正像人们所自夸的那样"。he 指 man。

(2) 短语 come near to 或 come close to 含义为"接近于……"。

www.TopSage.com

7. Duck, and like them the pigeons, are endowed with steel-like muscles, that are a good part of the weight of the bird, and these will ply the short wings with such irresistible power that they can bore for long distances through an opposing gale before exhaustion follows.

【译文】野鸭及与它们相似的鸽子有天赋的钢铁般的肌肉，占了体重的很大一部分。这些肌肉以巨大的力量扇动短小的翅膀，使这类鸟能顶着大风飞行很远的路程才会疲劳。

【用法】

(1) like them 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 the pigeons，them 指 duck。该句中 duck 前既没有定冠词也没有不定冠词，表明该词泛指野鸭类，故 like them 中使用复数代词 them。

(2) that are a good part of the weight of bird 为非限定性定语从句，修饰 muscles，但用关系代词 that 引导非限定性语从句非常罕见。these 指 muscles。and these will... 与 Duck,...,... are endowed with... 是两个并列的句子。that they can bore for long distances through an opposing gale before exhaustion follows 为结果状语从句。该结构是典型的 such... that... 结构。

(3) endow with 捐……给，赋予……以，如：They endowed the hospital with a large sum of money. 他们给医院捐了很多钱。/She is endowed with the finest qualities. 她天资优良。

(4) ply... with 向……供应，如：The little boy plied his father with questions about their new house. 那个小男孩不断地向他的父亲问有关他们新房子的问题。

(5) bear 在此处的意思是"进行"，如：When you get to the cross, bear right. 当你走到十字路口时，向右转。

8. Their humbler followers, such as partridges, have a like power of strong propulsion, but soon tire.

【译文】次于野鸭和鸽子的鸟，如鹧鸪，有相似的巨大推动力，但很快会疲劳。

【用法】

(1) humbler 是形容词 humble 的比较级，指"次于野鸭和鸽子的鸟"。such as partridges 是插入语。

(2) like 作形容词，意即"类似的"。

(3) but soon tire 中动词 tire 的主语也是 their humbler followers。

(4) tire 为形容词 tired 的原形，为动词，意思为"(使)疲劳，(使)疲倦"。

9. The swallow shares the virtues of both schools in highest measure. It tires not, nor does it boast of its power...

【译文】燕子充分兼有这两类鸟的长处，它既不疲劳，也不炫耀自己的飞翔力……

【用法】

(1) virtue 这里为"优点"的意思。

(2) in measure 固定短语，意思为"适度地"。

(3) It tires not 中未采用助动词＋否定词句式，所采用的是古英语或诗歌中使用的句式。it tires not＝it doesn't tire 意思为"它不易疲倦"。

(4) 当表示否定意义的副词或词组置于句首时，整个句子要部分倒装。所谓部分倒装，就是将助动词置于主语的前面。这里 nor 的意思为"也不"，表示否定，所以整个句子采用了倒装句。采用部分倒装的词语有：at no time, by no means, under no circumstances, few, hardly, scarcely, in no way, never, nor 等，例如：

Nowhere else in the world can there be such a nice place. 世界上没有比这更好的地方了。

Under no circumstances shall we surrender before the enemies. 在任何情况下，我们都

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

不会向敌人投降。

(5) boast of 固定词组,意思为"吹牛,自吹有……"。

10. ...but belongs to the air, travelling it may be six thousand miles to and from its northern nesting home, feeding its flown young as it flies, and slipping through a medium that seems to help its passage even when the wind is adverse.

【译文】燕子在空中十分自如,可以飞行 6,000 英里,可以飞往北方做窝的老家,再从老家飞回;一边飞一边喂养会飞的雏燕,甚至在顶风时也在气流中滑翔,似乎气流在帮它前进。

【用法】

(1) travelling it may be six thousand miles...为倒装句,倒装是为了强调 travelling 的生动逼真。按正常语序是:it may be travelling...。该句使用 may+进行时结构,也是为了强调燕子能一直飞行 6,000 英里。

(2) nesting home 意为 home for nesting。feeding...and slipping...adverse 作状语,并列修饰 travelling,表示伴随状况。

(3) its flown young 中的 flown 意为"已会飞的"。as it flies 作时间状语从句。a medium 指 air。

(4) belong to 属于,如:The scarf belongs to me. 这条围巾是我的。

11. Such birds do us good, though we no longer take omens from their flight on this side and that; and even the most superstitious villagers no longer take off their hats to the magpie and wish it good-morning.

【译文】这些鸟对我们是有益的,虽然我们不再从它们的飞翔姿态来占卜吉凶,连最迷信的村民也不再对喜鹊脱帽行礼,祝它早安了。

【用法】

(1) do sb. good 意思为"对某人有好处"。

(2) no longer 固定词组,意思为"不再"。

(3) and that 后省略了 side,即 and that=and that side。

(4) take off 固定词组,意思为"脱下"。另外,take off 还有"起飞,开始"的意思。例如:

The plane is going to take off at 9 o'clock. 飞机 9 点钟起飞。

Our action takes off today. 今天我们的行动开始。

核心语法

➡局部倒装

句子的局部倒装

1. 当句首状语为否定词或者是带有否定意义的词语时,句子要用局部倒装。这些词语常见的有:never, not for one minute, no longer, on no account, no more, nowhere else, at no time, hardly, scarcely, rarely, not for nothing 等。

Never have I found him in such a bad mood. 我从没见他心情这么糟过。

2. 句首状语若是由 only+副词,only+介词词组,only+状语分句时,句子要用局部倒装。

Only yesterday did he notice that his book was missing. 昨天他才发现书不见了。

3. 以关联连词 not only... but also...和 so... that 开头的句子要用局部倒装。

So heavy was the box that I could hardly move it. 箱子太重了,我几乎不能移动它。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 24 Beauty

本节重点和难点

动词不定式的用法
- 不定式充当的句子成分
- 不定式的逻辑主语
- 不定式的时态与语态

本课词汇

intense [in'tens] *adj.* 强烈的
【词组】intense but orderly work 紧张而有序的工作/intense feeling 强烈的感情；intense longing 热望/intense pain 剧痛/intense study 认真研究
aesthetic [iːs'θetik] *adj.* 审美的
realm [relm] *n.* 世界
serenity [si'reniti] *n.* 静谧
undeniable [ˌʌndi'naiəbl] *adj.* 不可否认的
indefinable [ˌindi'fainəbl] *adj.* 模糊不清的
vulgar ['vʌlgə(r)] *adj.* 平庸的
radiance ['reidiəns] *n.* 发光
intimation [ˌinti'meiʃən] *n.* 暗示
unutterable [ʌn'ʌtərəbl] *adj.* 不可言传的
invest [in'vest] *v.* 赋予

课文详解

1. A young man sees a sunset and, unable to understand or to express the emotion that it rouses in him, concludes that it must be the gateway to a world that lies beyond.

【译文】一个年轻人看到日落，由于无法理解和表达日落在他心中唤起的激情，便得出结论：日落处想必是通往遥远世界的大门。

【用法】

(1) sees a sunset 和 concludes that... 为并列谓语动词，它们的主语是 A young man。

(2) unable to understand or to express... 作原因状语，表示“由于无法理解和表达日落在其心中激起的感情”，that it rouses in him 作定语从句，修饰 the emotion。该从句中的 it 指 a sunset。

(3) that it must be... 作动词 concludes 的宾语从句。

(4) that lies beyond 作定语从句，修饰 a world，意即“遥远的”。beyond 作副词。

2. It is difficult for any of us in moments of intense aesthetic experience to resist the suggestion that we are catching a glimpse of a light that shines down to us from a different realm of existence, different and, because the experience is intensely moving, in some way higher.

【译文】无论是谁，在强烈感受到美的时刻，心中都不禁油然而生一种遐想：我们似乎瞥见从

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

另一个世界射向我们的一线光芒，那个世界不仅不同于我们的世界，而且由于美感的强烈感染，在某些方面比我们这个世界更美好。

【用法】

(1) “it is+形容词+for sb./sth. +to do sth.”为固定结构，意思为“某人做某事很……”。

(2) for any of us 这一介词短语实际是动词不定式 to resist 的逻辑主语。

(3) in moments of intense aesthetic experience 作状语，意即“在强烈感受到美的时候”。

(4) that we are catching... existence 为名词 suggestion 的同位语从句。该从句中的 that shines down... existence 作定语，修饰 a light。

(5) different and, because the experience is intensely moving, in some way higher 的主干为 different and in some way higher，用作后置定语修饰 a different realm of existence。在这个短语中，将 because 引导的状语从句放在了 different 和 in some way higher 的中间位置。一般状语的位置比较灵活，尤其是介词短语或状语从句作为句子的状语时，可以置于句首、句中或句尾。

3. And, though the gleams blind and dazzle, yet do they convey a hint of beauty and serenity greater than we have known or imagined.

【译文】虽然这光芒令人眼花缭乱，但它确实给予我们一种不曾经历和无法想象的美感和静谧的启示。

【用法】

(1) though the gleams blind and dazzle 作让步状语从句。blind 和 dazzle 为不及物动词，作该从句的并列谓语，意即“令人眼花缭乱”。greater than... 作定语，修饰 beauty and serenity。than 引导的是比较状语从句。从属连词 though 引导让步状语从句时，不能与并列连词 but 连用，但可以与 yet 连用。

(2) yet do they... 中的助动词 do 起强调作用，放在主语前更具有强调的作用。

(3) greater than we have known or imagined 为 a hint of beauty and serenity 的后置定语，相当于定语从句 which is greater than we have known or imagined。

4. Greater too than we can describe; for language, which was invented to convey the meanings of this world, cannot readily be fitted to the uses of another.

【译文】这超出了我们能描述的界限，因为我们发明的语言是用来描述我们这个世界的含义，不能随便用来去描述另一个世界。

【用法】

(1) Greater too than we can describe 是省略句，greater 前面省略了 the beauty and serenity is。than 引导的是比较状语从句。

(2) for 为连词，引导原因状语从句，意即“由于”。which 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 language，该从句中的动词不定式作目的状语。

5. That all great art has this power of suggesting a world beyond is undeniable.

【译文】不可否认，一切伟大的艺术都具有使人遐想到进入天外世界的魅力。

【用法】that all great art... beyond 作主语从句，is undeniable 是该句的谓语部分。of suggesting a world beyond 作定语，修饰 this power。

6. In some moods, Nature shares it.

【译文】在某种状态下，大自然也有这种魅力。

【用法】in some moods 在某种状态下。Nature 在这里指“大自然”，作专有名词，故大写。it 指前面一句中的 this power of suggesting a world beyond。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. There is no sky in June so blue that it does not point forward to a bluer, no sunset so beautiful that it does not waken the vision of a greater beauty, a vision which passes before it is fully glimpsed, and in passing leaves an indefinable longing and regret.

【译文】六月蔚蓝的天空总使人遐想一个更加蔚蓝的苍穹；美丽的落日总会引起一个更加绚丽的景象，这景象未及饱览便一闪即逝，并在消逝中给人留下了不可名状的渴望和惆怅。

【用法】

(1) so blue that it does not point forward to a bluer 为 sky 的后置定语，相当于定语从句 which is so blue that it does not point forward to a bluer，其中 a bluer＝a bluer sky。

(2) a vision which passes... regret 作 the vision of a greater beauty 的同位语，其中的 which 作定语，修饰 a vision。passes 和 leaves 同作 which 的谓语。in passing 作状语，修饰 leaves。

(3) "There is no... that it does not..."及后一句均为双重否定句，用来表示肯定含义，类似的用法还有：I never see her without thinking of her mother. 我一见到她就想起她妈妈。

8. But, if this world is not merely a bad joke, life a vulgar flare amid the cool radiance of the stars, and existence an empty laugh braying across the mysteries; if these intimations of a something behind and beyond are not evil humour born of indigestion, or whimsies sent by the devil to mock and madden us, if, in a word, beauty means something, yet we must not seek to interpret the meaning.

【译文】但是如果这个世界不只是一个拙劣的恶作剧，如果人生不只是群星寒光中平凡的一闪，如果存在不只是对神秘事物的一阵阵空虚的笑声，如果某种玄妙事物的暗示不是消化不良引起的邪恶情绪，也不是魔鬼为了捉弄我们，使我们发狂而送给我们的邪念，一句话，如果美有某种意义的话，我们千万不要去阐明它的意义。

【用法】

(1) 该句也是一个典型的排比结构，由 3 个并列的条件状语从句构成。主句是 yet we must not seek to interpret the meaning。在第 1 个条件状语从句中，life 和 existence 前面省略了 if，后面省略了 is not merely。braying across the mysteries 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 an empty laugh。第 2 个条件句中 evil humour 和 whimsies 为该条件句中的并列表语。born of indigestion 和 sent by the devil to mock and madden us 作定语，分别修饰 humour 和 whimsies。a something 中的 something 作名词，故其前用不定冠词。

(2) 情态动词 must not 含义为"一定不要，禁止"。

注意：need not 含义为"不必"。如：You must not go there. 你不需去那里。/You need not go there. 你没必要去那里。

(3) behind and beyond 玄妙的。in a word 总而言之。

9. If we glimpse the unutterable, it is unwise to try to utter it, nor should we seek to invest with significance that which we cannot grasp.

【译文】如果我们瞥见了只可意会不可言传的事物，企图把它说出来，那是不明智的；对于我们不理解的事物，我们也不应该去赋予它某种意义。

【用法】

(1) it 为先行主语，真正的主语是动词不定式 to try to utter it，其中的 it 指 the

www.TopSage.com

大家网

unutterable。nor 为否定副词，置于句首，故该句为倒装句。that 指 the unutterable，作动词 invest 的宾语。which 引导定语从句，修饰 that。

TopSage.com

(2) glimpse 此处为动词，含义为"瞥见；看一眼"。如：I glimpsed her among the crowd. 我在人群当中瞥见她。

【辨析】invest，cost，spend，take

(1) invest 指"花费"时，其主语必须是"人"（主动语态），其结构为"invest sth. in sth.（in doing sth.）"，多见于口语，但不及 spend 常用。如：They invested large sums in books. 他们在书籍上花大笔金钱。

(2) spend 也指"花费"，主语也必须是"人"，其结构为"spend sth. on sth."或"spend sth. in doing sth."，注意介词 on 不能省略，但 in 可以省略。如：He spends a lot of money (in) buying books. 他花很多钱买书。/We spent two hours on our homework. 我们花了两个小时做作业。/We spent two hours (in) doing our homework. 我们做作业花了两个小时。

(3) cost 指"花费"时，其主语是"物"或"事"，不用"人"作主语，其结构为"cost sb. sth."。如：This dress cost me thirty dollars. 这套衣服花去我三十美元。

(4) take 指"花费"时，主语可以是"人"，也可以是"事"，经常跟双宾语。在口语中，用 it 作形式主语较为普遍。如：It took me three yuan to buy the book. 买这本书花了三元钱。

注意：上述四个动词的共同点是：①其宾语都是"时间、金钱、精力"等，②不能用于被动语态。不同点：invest 和 spend 的主语必须用"人"；take 的主语可用"人"或"物"，二者皆可；cost 的主语不用"人"，只用"物"。

核心语法

➡动词不定式的用法

动词不定式是一种非谓语动词形式，它具有以下特征：

1. 在句中不受主语人称和数的限制，也不体现"时(tense)"的特征。

2. 具有动词性质。表现在它有：

(1) "体(aspect)"和语态的变化(参见下表)；

(2) 可以有自己的宾语和状语，一起构成动词不定式短语。

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	to write	to be written
完成式	to have written	to have been written
进行式	to be writing	一般不用
完成进行式	to have been writing	一般不用

关于这些用法是本课讲述的第一个语法重点。

3. 具有名词性质：表现在动词不定式在句中所作的成分——主语、宾语、表语、宾语补足语、同位语等。

4. 具有形容词性质：表现在动词不定式在句中可作定语。

5. 具有副词性质：表现在动词不定式在句中可作状语。

此外，动词不定式在句中还可充当独立成分，甚至可以引导独立句子，表示愿望、惊讶等情态。

关于这些用法是本课又一个语法重点。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

一、不定式充当的句子成分

(一)句型一:It + to do sth.(作主语)

不定式作主语，常见的是用 it 作形式主语，放在句首，将真正的主语动词不定式(短语)放在句子后面。

a. It is easier to spend money than to make money. 花钱要比挣钱容易。

b. It's better to love someone you can't have than to have someone you can't love. 爱一个无法拥有的人胜过拥有一个你不爱的人。

注意:此处形式主语 it 不能用 this 或 that 来替换。

a. To err is human; to forgive, divine. 犯错人皆难免，宽恕则属超凡。

b. To love for the sake of being loved is human, but to love for the sake of loving is angelic. 因为被爱而爱，是人之常情;因为爱而爱，则难能可贵。

(二)句型二:动词+to do(作宾语)

1. 直接跟在一个及物动词后面作宾语。这时句子有以下两个特点:

第一，句子主语和不定式的逻辑主语是一致的，即两个动词所表示的动作都是由全句主语发出。

第二，这时句子的谓语动词多是描写态度,不定式的动词则说明行为。

a. I hope to see you again.

b. This company refused to cooperate with us.

c. He promised not to tell anyone about it.

d. Why should anyone bother ________ his treasure to help a stranger?

A. risking to lose B. to risk losing C. risking losing D. to risk to lose

正确答案:B

英语中常接动词不定式作宾语的动词有:(具体词义和用法请查词典,词典永远是你最好的朋友!)

afford, agree, appear, arrange, ask, attempt, beg, begin, bother, care, choose, consent, dare, decide, determine, expect, fail, forget, happen, hate, help, hesitate, hope, intend, learn, like, love, manage, mean, neglect, offer, prefer, prepare, pretend, promise, propose, refuse, regret, remember, seem, start, swear, trouble, try, want, wish, etc.

2. 在一些动词之后，可以在连接代词(what, who, which)或连接副词(how, when, where)及连词 whether 后面接一个带 to 的动词不定式。我们可以将这种结构看成是连接词引导的宾语从句的简略形式。

a. I wonder who to invite. (=who I should invite)

b. Show us what to do. (=what we must do)

c. I don't know whether to answer his letter. (此处不用 if)

类似动词还有:ask, consider, decide, discover, explain, forget, find out, guess, imagine, know, learn, observe, remember, see, tell, teach, think, understand, wonder, etc.

3. 动词+it+宾补(名词或形容词)+宾语 to do(作宾语的不定式后置)

此时，往往用 it 作形式宾语，而将真正的宾语放在宾语补足语后面。常用于此结构中的动词有:consider, think, judge, feel, make, etc.

a. I think it hard to answer the question in one go. 我觉得很难一下子回答这个问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

b. He feels it challenging to be a marketing supervisor. 他认为担任市场总监很具有挑战性。

c. Using many symbols makes ________ to put a large amount of information on a single map.

TopSage.com

(托福真题)

A. possible　　B. it is possible　　C. it possible　　D. that possible

正确答案：C

注意：一定记住以下三个句型：

(1) 动词＋it＋宾补(名词或形容词)＋宾语 to do

The development of steel nibs makes it possible to develop pens.

不定式作宾语后置了，需要形式宾语 it。

(2) 动词＋it＋宾补(名词或形容词)＋that 宾语从句

The development of steel nibs makes it possible that people can develop pens.

that 从句作宾语后置了，需要形式宾语 it。

(3) 动词＋宾补(名词或形容词)＋名词宾语

The development of steel nibs makes possible the development of pens.

名词短语作宾语后置了，不需要形式宾语 it。

重要结论：在"宾语＋宾语补足语"的结构中，若将不定式宾语或从句宾语放在补足语后边，则须加上形式宾语 it；名词宾语后置，不能加形式宾语 it。

(三)句型三：动词＋sb. to do sth.(作宾语补足语)

1. 通常的结构是：动词＋sb. to do sth.

a. They don't allow people to smoke in the theater.

b. The chairman declared the meeting to be over.

c. Allow me to drink to your success. 让我为你的成功干杯！(祝酒辞，现在就背下来！)

d. Allow me to propose a toast to our friendship! 我提议为我们的友谊干杯！

能用于此结构中的动词有：(具体词义和用法请查词典，词典永远是你最好的朋友！)

advise, allow, ask, beg, believe, cause, command, challenge, compel, declare, encourage, expect, forbid, force, get, hate, have, help, instruct, intend, invite, judge, leave, let, like, mean, make, need, oblige, order, permit, persuade, prefer, press, recommend, request, remind, teach, tell, tempt, trouble, want, warn, wish(hope 不可以), urge, etc.

2. 在 let, make, have, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, listen to 等动词后面的作宾补的不定式中，to 要省略。

(四)句型四：名词＋ to do sth.(作定语)

不定式作定语一般与被修饰名词有以下两种关系：

1. 动宾关系：

即所修饰的名词在逻辑上作不定式的宾语。

I have a letter to write. 我有一封信要写。

逻辑关系相当于：write a letter

I need some paper to write on. 我需要一些能写字的纸。

逻辑关系相当于：write on some paper

I need a pen to write with. 我需要一支写字的笔。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

逻辑关系相当于：write with a pen

重要结论：从上述例句可看出，由被修饰的名词决定不定式动词是否需要接介词。

比如，我们不能说：

I need some paper to write.

I need a pen to write.

2. 同位关系：(两类名词)

(1) 与动词相关的名词：要求与不定式连用的动词，它的名词形式也要接不定式。常见的这样的名词有：arrangement, attempt, claim, decision, hope, determination, failure, need, plan, promise, refusal, resolution, tendency, threat, wish, etc.

He refused to co-operate with us. 他拒绝与我们合作。

His refusal to co-operate makes us angry. 他拒绝与我们合作，这让我们很生气。

I don't wish to change. 我不愿意改变。

I have no wish to change. 我不愿意改变。

(2) 与形容词相关的名词：要求与不定式连用的形容词，它的名词形式也要接不定式。这样的名词有：ability, ambition, anxiety, eagerness, inclination, reluctance, etc.

She was reluctant to accept his invitation. 她很不愿意接受他的邀请。

Her reluctance to accept his invitation upset him. 她很不愿意接受他的邀请，这使他很恼火。

They were eager to help me. 他们非常热心地帮助我。

Their eagerness to help pleased me. 他们的热心帮助真让我高兴。

a. A decision ________ stock by one or a few of these large companies may have a very important effect on the market as a whole. (考研真题)

A. buying or to sell　　　　B. to buy or selling

C. buying or selling　　　　D. to buy or sell

分析：因为 decide 后边要接 to do，所以名词 decision 后边也需接 to do。故选 D。

b. All our attempts ________ the child from drowning were in vain.

A. to rescue　　　　B. having rescued

C. rescue　　　　D. being rescued

分析：因为 attempt 后边要接 to do，所以名词 attempt 后边也需接 to do。故选 A。

(五) 句型五：形容词＋to do sth.

1. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的动宾关系。

我们先分析下面这个例句：

She is interesting to listen to.

请暂停，先思考一下这句话的含义！我们给你两个选项：

A. 她对听别人讲话很感兴趣。

B. 听她讲话很有趣。

其实，这句话相当于说：

It is interesting to listen to her.

意思是：听她讲话很有趣。

因此，原句的主语 she 在逻辑上是作不定式 to listen to 的宾语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

更多例句：

a. Relativity theory isn't easy to understand. = It isn't easy to understand relativity theory. 相对论不好理解。

b. She is very nice to talk to. =It is very nice to talk to her. 和她聊天很开心。

c. Mary is easy to get on with. =It is easy to get on with Mary. 玛丽很容易相处。

d. English is difficult to speak. 说好英文不容易。

e. Football is very interesting to watch. 看足球很有趣。

句子主语与不定式动词存在这种动宾关系的情况下，我们要注意以下三点：

(1) 不定式动词一般不用被动式：(最容易出错)

a. English is difficult to be spoken.

b. Football is interesting to be watched.

(2) 不定式后不能再加宾语：

a. Football is very interesting to watch it.

b. She is nice to talk to her.

(3) 不定式动词所带的介词不能省略：

a. She is interesting to listen.

b. She is easy to get on.

2. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

这一句型中的形容词通常表示人的性格特征或行为表现。如：brave, careful, careless, clever, considerate, cruel, foolish, generous, kind, modest, nice, polite, rude, selfish, silly, stupid, thoughtful 等。

a. He was kind to help us.

b. The boy was careless to break the window.

这时句子可用以下两种方式来改写：

such... as to do: He was so kind as to help us. /The boy was so careless as to break the window.

It is/was+形容词+of sb. to do: It was kind of him to help us. /It was careless of the boy to break the window.

但注意，并不是所有的形容词都能这样改写！这得取决于特定形容词的用法。

(六)不定式作状语

动词不定式作状语，主要表示目的、结果和条件。

1. 作目的状语

a. Hating people is like burning down your own house to get rid of a rat. 憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠，而把自己的房子烧掉。

b. To avoid criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.

c. To acquire knowledge, one must study; but to acquire wisdom, one must observe.

d. We had better start early to catch the train.

e. I went to the post office to mail a letter.

f. I'd climb the highest mountain, just to see you smile. I'd swim the ocean, just to hold your hand. I'd run a million miles, just to be with you forever.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

我们可用 in order to do 或 so as to do 强调目的状语。

a. We had better start early so as to catch the train.

b. I went to the post office in order to mail a letter.

c. I quote others in order better to express my own self.（我引用别人的话，是为了更好地表达自己。）

d. The teacher raised her voice in order for us to hear more clearly.

注意：so as to 一般不用在句首。但 to do 或 in order to do 可提到句首。

2. 作结果状语

(1) 作结果状语，表事先没有预料到的，要放在句子后面。例如：

What have I said to make you angry? 我说了什么话让你生气了呢？

Indonesia beat Denmark to take the first place in the badminton tournament. 印度尼西亚在羽毛球锦标赛上打败丹麦取得了第一名。

(2) so as to...：以至于……

① 表示目的：它的否定形式是 so as not to do。例如：

He took a taxi to go to the station so as not to miss the train. 为了不误火车，他坐出租车到火车站。

Go in quietly so as not to wake the baby. 轻点进去，别惊醒了婴儿。

(3) why not ＋动词原形

"why not＋不加 to 的不定式"表达向某人提出建议，可以翻译为："为什么不……?""干吗不……?"例如：

Why not try the new hairstyle? 为什么不换个新发型呢？

3. 用作条件状语

当不定式表示条件时，句子谓语通常含有助动词，如：will，would，shall，should，must，can，could 等。

a. You would be stupid not to ask for a raise. 如果你不要求涨工资，那真是愚蠢。

这句话相当于：You would be stupid if you don't ask for a raise.

b. One must be out of his mind to do such a thing. (=... if he does such a thing)

c. I would have been happy to be invited to the party. (=... if I had been invited... But I was not invited. 这是虚拟语气)

d. The father will be proud for his son to win the gold medal. (=... if his son wins the gold medal. 不定式带有自己的逻辑主语。)

(七)用作独立成分

动词不定式可用作独立成分，用来修饰整个句子，常见的有：to begin with，to tell the truth，to make a long story short，so to speak，to be brief/exact/frank/honest，to say nothing of（姑且不说），to say the least（至少可以这么说）

以上所列短语均为口语中常用短语。请脱口而出！

a. To begin with, on behalf of（代表）all of your American guests, I wish to thank you for the incomparable（无可比拟的）hospitality.

首先，我谨代表你们的所有美国客人向你们表示感谢，感谢你们无可比拟的盛情款待。（尼克松 1972 年访华时的祝酒词开篇）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

b. —You're in pretty lousy mood, huh?

—To say the least.

c. I have a point there, to say the least.

d. To make a long story short, he is in hospital now.

二、不定式的逻辑主语

1. 何谓逻辑主语?

对于三种非谓语动词而言,都有一个逻辑主语的问题,这是因为它们都是动词的变化形式,既然是动词就应该有动作的执行者,即主语。之所以称之为逻辑主语,这是为了区别于句子主语。因为句子主语和非谓语动词的逻辑主语并不总是统一的(有时是一样的,有时不一样)。请比较:

He was anxious to meet you. 他渴望认识你。

句子主语是 he;不定式 to meet 动作也是由 he 发出,因此 he 也是不定式的逻辑主语。此时,我们说:句子主语和不定式逻辑主语一致。

He was anxious for his sister to meet you. 他渴望让他妹妹认识你。

句子主语是 he;不定式 to meet 动作不是由 he 发出,而是由 his sister 发出,因此 his sister 是不定式的逻辑主语。此时,我们说:句子主语 he 和不定式逻辑主语 his sister 不一致。

对于动名词和分词,同样存在句子主语和逻辑主语或一致,或不一致的两种情形。具体后文讨论,在此先分析不定式的逻辑主语。

2. for sb. to do

不定式的逻辑主语常见的是由"for +名词或代词"引出,这里的"名词或代词"即是不定式的逻辑主语,来说明不定式动作的执行者。例如:

a. It's important for you to go there in person. 你有必要亲自去那儿一趟。

b. It is very common for him to be absent without leave. 不请假就擅自离开是他的一贯作风。

c. He was very willing for everyone else to come. 他很愿意让其他所有的人都来。

d. For any adhesive to make a really strong bond, the surfaces to be glued must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease. 对于任何黏合剂,要想粘得牢固的话,则被粘的表面必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿和有油性物质。

e. The father will be proud for his son to win the gold medal. (=... if his son wins the gold medal.)

f. The eye of an animal is quite easy to see. How then can the eyes be prevented from spoiling the animal's blending with its environment? One solution would be for the animal to keep its eyes closed when danger threatens.

下列句子因为不定式的逻辑主语不明确而显得不规范,因此在写作文时要避免。例如:

a. To study English well, a lot of practices are needed.

b. A lot of practices are needed to study English well.

"要想学好英文,大量练习是必要的。"这完全是受汉语思维影响而写出的句子。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

以上两句均因句子主语"a lot of practices"不能作不定式 to study 的逻辑主语而显得不规范。上面两句可以说成：

a. To study English well, you need a lot of practices.

b. A lot of practices are needed for you to study English well.

c. For you to study English well, a lot of practices are needed.

3. of sb. to do

用来说明人的性格特征或行为表现的动态形容词与不定式连用时，用"of ＋名词或代词"这一结构引出不定式的逻辑主语。这样的形容词主要有：brave, careful, careless, clever, cruel, foolish, generous, kind, modest, nice, polite, rude, selfish, silly, stupid, thoughtful 等。

a. It's wise of you not to argue with your boss.

b. It's generous of him to lend me his car.

c. It was very careless of him to make such silly mistakes.

for 和 of 的使用规律是：看句中的表语形容词是着重说明人(逻辑主语)还是事(不定式短语)。若是前者，则用 of；若是后者，则用 for。且用 of 的句子，可以用人作主语将句子改写；用 for 的句子则不能。试比较：

a. You are important to go there in person. (错误)

b. It's important for you to go there in person.

c. You are wise not to argue with your boss. (逻辑关系正确)

d. It's wise of you not to argue with your boss.

三、不定式的时态与语态

(一)不定式的时态

1. 不定式时态、语态的构成

不定式的时态、语态是不定式作为动词的特征体现。英文中把动作分为四种不同的完成程度：一般动作，进行动作，完成动作和完成进行动作。同理，不定式也具备这四种形式。

不定式同样还有语态方面的变化。现列表如下：

四种形式	主　动	被　动
一般式	to write	to be written
完成式	to have written	to have been written
进行式	to be writing	一般不用
完成进行式	to have been writing	一般不用

2. 不定式一般式(to do)

不定式的一般形式 to do 所表示的动作通常：

(1) 与主要谓语所表示的动作或状态同时或几乎同时发生：

a. I am glad to see you.

b. I heard him sing last night.

(2) 或是在主要谓语动作之后发生：

We plan to go to the sea this summer.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. 不定式的完成式(to have done)(4、6级的重要考点)

不定式的完成式可表示:

(1) 发生在谓语之前的动作

由以上得知,不定式的一般式不能表示发生在谓语之前的动作,若要表示不定式的动作比谓语动作先发生,则不定式要用它的完成式 to have done。例如:

a. We are happy to have visited so many historic places in Beijing. 在北京参观了那么多的名胜古迹,我们感到很开心。

b. Humans are believed to have evolved from the primate species. 人们相信,人类是由灵长类动物进化过来的。

c. Albert Einstein, the great American scientist, is estimated to have had the incredible intelligence quotient of 200. 据估计,爱因斯坦的智商高达200,这真让人难以置信。

d. The rain seems to have stopped.

e. I am very sorry to have bothered you with so many questions on such an occasion. (四级真题)

f. I am sorry not to have come on Thursday. (= I am sorry that I didn't come on Thursday.)

g. The redwood appears ________ some 100 years ago in northern forests around the world. (托福真题)

A. having to flourish　　B. to flourish

C. to have flourished　　D. have flourished

分析:句子谓语 appears 表示现在,而 some 100 years ago 表示不定式动作发生在过去,故选 C。

(2) 表示"非真实"的过去

用在表示打算、需要、计划等动词的过去时后面,表示过去本打算做但事实上没有实现的动作。这些动词有:mean, intend, think, plan, hope, wish, propose, etc.

a. I meant to have telephoned, but I forgot. 我本来打算打电话的,但是我忘记了。

b. I planned to have visited you last night, but I was too busy. 我昨晚本来想去看你,但太忙了。

我们还可用下边两种结构表达同一意思:

① was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done

a. I was to have visited you last night.

b. I was to have telephoned, but I forgot.

②过去完成时+to do

用上述动词的过去完成时态来表示此义,但此时不定式不可用完成式,而要用一般式 to do。

a. I had intended to see you, but I was busy.

不说:

I had intended to have seen you, but I was busy.

b. He was to ________ to a foreign university but the war prevented.

A. have gone　　B. go

C. be going　　D. have been going

正确答案:A

www.TopSage.com

大家网

因此，表示“过去想做而实际未做成”的事，有下述三种表达方式：

① was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done

② intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to have done

TopSage.com

③ had intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to do

(3) 偶尔表示“将来”

She hopes to have finished the work by the time he comes back. 她希望在他回来之前把这些工作都做完。

这句话本来是由宾语从句转换而来的：

She hopes that she will have finished the work by the time he comes back.

由于句中 by the time 对应的主句一般用完成时态，因此改成不定式也要用不定式的完成式，这时，表示的是一个将来完成的动作。

4. 不定式的进行式(to be doing)(不常用)

不定式的进行式可表示：

(1) 正在进行的动作

通常用在 appear, happen, pretend, seem 等动词之后。如同进行时态那样，动词不定式的进行式(to be doing)用于描写在我们谈论的时间(现在或过去)正在继续的动作，或说与谓语动作同时发生的动作。例如：

a. He pretended to be listening attentively when the teacher came by. 当老师走过时，他假装正在专心听讲。

此句相当于：He pretended that he was listening attentively...

b. He pretended to be sleeping when she came in.

c. He happened to be singing in the room when I came in this morning.

(2) 反复发生的一般性动作

因为进行时态可以表示一个最近一段时间内持续的一般性动作，同样，不定式进行式可表示一种反复发生的一般性动作，此时带有很强的感情色彩：

a. In the 1980's and early 1990's, athletes entering international sports competitions seemed to be getting younger and younger. Talented young athletes... boys and girls... were spotted early on in their school career, and were given special training.

b. I'd rather read than watch television; the programs seem ________ all the time. (四级真题)

A. to get worse B. to be getting worse

C. to have got worse D. getting worse

正确答案：B

5. 不定式完成进行式(to have been doing)(较少用到)

表示在谓语动作之前已经开始并且一直在持续进行的某一动作。例如：

a. They are said to have been collecting folk songs in Yunnan. =It is said that they have been collecting folk songs in Yunnan. 据说他们一直在云南收集民歌。

b. He seems to have been sitting there all day.

c. I seem to have been learning English for over ten years.

d. The little girl seems to have been watching TV all this evening.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(二)不定式的语态

1. 一般来讲,在句中若出现了不定式动作的执行者时,则不定式用主动形式。若没有执行者或不定式所修饰的成分是不定式动作的承受者,则不定式用被动形式。

比较:

He wants someone to take photographs. 他想找人拍几张照片。(是 someone 执行 take 动作)

He wants photographs to be taken. 他想拍几张照片。(不是 he 拍照,所以照片 be taken)

I have three letters to write today. 我今天要写三封信。(是由 I 来执行 write 动作)

I want the letters to be typed at once. 我想找人立即把这些信件打印出来。(不是 I 来 type,对 the letters 来说就是 be typed。

2. 形容词后边的不定式通常用不定式的主动形式表示被动意思。

a. English is difficult to speak.

b. Relativity theory is hard to understand.

c. The box is too heavy to move.

d. The sentence was difficult to translate.

e. This magazine is interesting to read. (=I found the magazine interesting to read.)

3. to let(出租), to blame(责备)

这两个短语是固定用法,主动形式表示被动意思。

a. You should be to blame for it.

b. The house is to let.

4. 不定式完成被动式及双重被动结构完成被动式:

a. The book is said to have been published.

b. The construction is reported to have been completed.

双重被动式:

c. The book is said to have been published.

d. The construction is reported to have been completed.

e. The book is not allowed to be taken out of the library.

比较:(单一被动)

f. You are not allowed to smoke here.

g. You are not allowed to take the exam paper out of the classroom.

可用于这种结构的动词有:allow, announce, attempt, believe, desire, enable, expect, intend, mean, order, permit, propose, report, say, etc.

h. The Bunsen burner is so named because it is thought to ________ by Robert Bunsen, who was German by birth. (托福真题)

A. be invented　　B. have been invented

C. have invented　　D. invent

正确答案:B

i. The bank is reported in the local newspaper ________ in broad daylight yesterday. (四级真题)

A. to be robbed　　B. to have been robbed

C. being robbed　　D. having been robbed

正确答案:B

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 25 Non-auditory effects of noise

本节重点和难点

动词不定式的语法功能

- 动词不定式作主语
- 动词不定式用作表语
- 动词不定式用作主语补足语
- 动词不定式用作宾语

本课词汇

auditory ['ɔːditəri] *adj.* 听觉的

inadequate [in'ædikwit] *adj.* 不适当的

plea [pliː] *n.* 请求

abatement [ə'beitmənt] *n.* 减少

discredit [dis'kredit] *v.* 怀疑

allegation [æli'geiʃən] *n.* 断言

caption ['kæpʃən] *n.* 插图说明

wreck [rek] *n.* (船只等)失事,遇难;失事的船(或飞机等);受到严重损害的人 *vt.* (遭受)破坏,毁坏

snag [snæg] *n.* 疑难之处,障碍

anecdote ['ænikdəut] *n.* 轶闻

slander ['slɑːndə] *n.* 诽谤

persecute ['pəːsikjuːt] *v.* 迫害

【辨析】persecute 为迫害之意,prosecute 为起诉之意

squadron ['skwɔdrən] *n.* 中队

psychiatric [ˌsaiki'ætrik] *adj.* 精神病学的

diagnosis ['daiəg'nəusis] *n.* 诊断

orphanage ['ɔːfənidʒ] *n.* 孤儿院

课文详解

1. Many people in industry and the Services, who have practical experience of noise, regard any investigation of this question as a waste of time; they are not prepared even to admit the possibility that noise affects people.

【译文】在工业部门工作和在军队中服役的许多人对噪音有切身的体会,他们认为对这个问题进行调查是浪费时间,甚至不愿承认噪音可能对人有影响。

【用法】

(1) who 引导一个非限定性定语从句,与 in industry and the Services 一起修饰 many people。

(2) that noise affects people 为名词 possibility 的同位语从句。

(3) regard...as 把……看做,如:He regards my younger brother as his friend. 他把我弟弟看做是他的朋友。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. On the other hand, those who dislike noise will sometimes use most inadequate evidence to support their pleas for a quieter society.

【译文】另一方面，那些讨厌噪音的人有时会用不充分的证据来支持他们希望有一个较为安静的社会环境的要求。

【用法】

(1) who dislike noise 是定语从句，修饰先行词 those。

(2) 介词短语 on the other hand 意思是"另一方面"，通常前面有 on one hand(一方面)与之相呼应。

(3) most 在此处不是形容词最高级，只表示 very(非常、很)。如：They have been most kind to me. 他们一直对我都非常好。

3. This is a pity, because noise abatement really is a good cause, and it is likely to be discredited if it gets to be associated with bad science.

【译文】要求减少噪音确实是件好事，但是如果与拙劣的科学掺杂在一起的话，就不会被人们所信任，这是很遗憾的。

【用法】

(1) discredit 怀疑，如：Evidence of links with drug dealers has discredited the President. 与毒品贩子有关系的证据使总统受到怀疑。

(2) get to sth. 开始做某事，成功做某事，如：If you get to see her, you may receive some help. 如果你能见到她，你也许得到一些帮助。/If you get to know her, you'll like her. 如果你了解她，你会喜欢她的。

(3) 动词短语 be associated with 的意思是 be connected with(与……相混杂、相联系)。例如：We associate China with the Greet Wall. 我们想起中国，就联想到长城/We associate with all sorts of people. 我们与各种各样的人们交往。bad science 此处应被理解为 false science(伪科学)。

4. One allegation often made is that noise produces mental illness.

【译文】常见的一种指责是，噪音能引起精神病。

【用法】often made 作定语，修饰 one allegation。that 引导的是一个表语从句。

5. A recent article in a weekly newspaper, for instance, was headed with a striking illustration of a lady in a state of considerable distress, with the caption "She was yet another victim, reduced to a screaming wreck".

【译文】例如，最近一家周刊报刊登了一篇文章，文章上方有一幅引人注目的插图，是一位表情沮丧的女子。图的文字说明是："她是又一个受害者，成了一只会尖叫的可怜虫"。

【用法】

(1) in a state of considerable distress 作定语，修饰 a lady，意即"一位表情沮丧的女子"。with the caption 作定语，修饰 illustration，意即"带有……解说词的插图"。reduced to a screaming wreck 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 victim，意即"成了一只会尖叫的可怜虫"。

(2) be headed with(文章的)标题是，以……开头，如：The article was headed with 'How to cut your heating bills'. 文章的标题是"如何降低你的供暖费用"。

(3) reduce to 使变成，使陷入，如：She was reduced to poverty. 她陷入了贫困。/I reduced the problem to a few simple questions. 我将那个问题分解成了几个小问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. On turning eagerly to the text, one learns that the lady was a typist who found the sound of office typewriters worried her more and more until eventually she had to go into a mental hospital.

【译文】当人们急切地看完正文后，便知道这位女子是个打字员，办公室打字机的声音使她越来越烦恼，最终住进了精神病医院。

【用法】

(1) 介词 on 在这里的意思为"在……的时候，在……后立即"，例如：

on analysis 经分析后

On arriving home, she began to cook. 刚到家她就开始做饭。

(2) learn 这里的意思为"了解到，获悉"，其后的 that 从句为宾语从句。

(3) who found the sound of office typewriters worried her more and more until eventually she had to go into a mental hospital 为 who 引导的定语从句，修饰 typist。在这个定语从句中，found 后面为省略了 that 的宾语从句，而在这个宾语从句中，又有 until 引导的时间状语从句。

7. Another patient might equally well complain that her neighbours were combining to slander her and persecute her, and yet one might be cautious about believing this statement.

【译文】另一位病人可能同样有理由抱怨说，她的邻居们正在联合起来对她进行诽谤和迫害，不过，人们不会轻信她的抱怨。

【用法】

(1) one 指"人们"。this statement 指 her neighbours were combining to slander her and persecute her。

(2) might well 和 may well 可以表示"十分可能"，如：She might well be right. 她可能是对的。

combine to do 联合做某事，如：They are normally harmless substances which combine to form a highly poisonous gas. 它们一般是无害物质，合成起来却构成剧毒气体。

8. What is needed in the case of noise is a study of large numbers of people living under noisy conditions, to discover whether they are mentally ill more often than other people are.

【译文】对于噪音问题，需要对大量生活在噪音中的人进行研究，看一看他们是否比其他人更易患精神病。

【用法】

(1) What is needed in the case of noise 为主语从句。living under noisy conditions 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 people。to discover... 作目的状语，修饰谓语部分 is a study of large numbers of people...。whether 引导的是动词不定式 to discover 的宾语从句。

(2) 介词短语 in the case of 意思是"在……问题上"。如：In the case of payment, we prefer letter of credit payable at sight. 在付款方式问题上，我们愿采用即期信用证方式付款。

9. Some time ago..., examined a very large number of men working on aircraft carriers: the study was known as Project Anehin.

【译文】例如，美国海军前些时候调查了许多在航空母舰上工作的人，这次调查被称之为："安内英工程"。

【用法】working on aircratt carriers 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 men。aircraft carriers 航空母舰。冒号后面的部分是对前面所提到的调查作的补充说明。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. It can be unpleasant to live even several miles from an aerodrome; if you think what it must be like to share the deck of a ship with several squadrons of jet aircraft, you will realize that a modern navy is a good place to study noise.

【译文】即使住在离机场几英里以外的地方，机场的噪音也会使人难受。因此，如果你能想象出和几个中队的喷气机同在一个船甲板上是什么滋味儿的话，你就会认识到现代海军是研究噪音的好地方。

【用法】

(1) It 先行主语，真正的主语是 to live... aerodrome。

(2) what 引导宾语从句，该从句中的 it 是先行主语，真正的主语是 to share the deck... jet aircraft。that 引导的是动词 realize 的宾语从句。

11. But neither psychiatric interviews nor objective tests were able to show any effects upon these American sailors.

【译文】但是，不管是进行精神病学的调查访问，还是进行客观的测试，都不能显示噪音对这些美国水兵有任何影响。

【用法】

(1) neither... nor 是相互搭配使用的否定连词，意思是"既不……也不"。

(2) 此处连接着两个名词词组作句子主语。如：

Neither Tom nor Jack has passed the geography examination. 汤姆和杰克都没能通过这次地理考试。

注意：后面的谓语部分要用单数。当 neither... nor 连接宾语放在句首时，句子要倒装。如：Neither a gift nor a card have I got. 我既没得到礼物，也没得到贺卡。

12. This result merely confirms American and British studies: if there is any effect of noise upon mental health, it must be so small that present methods of psychiatric diagnosis cannot find it.

【译文】这个结果只不过证实了美国和英国早些时候的研究结论：如果噪音对精神健康有影响的话，那也一定是微乎其微，以致现代的精神病诊断方法还发现不了。

【用法】

(1) 冒号后面的部分是 American and British studies 的同位语，是对该研究的内容所作的具体说明。if 引导的是条件状语从句。

(2) 句中的两个 it 都是指 effect of noise。that 引导的是一个结果状语从句。

13. That does not prove that it does not exist; but it does mean that noise is less dangerous than, say, being brought up in an orphanage—which really is a mental health hazard.

【译文】那并不能证实噪音对健康的影响不存在。但它确实说明，噪音的危险——比如说——比在孤儿院长大所受的危害要小一些，孤儿院才是真正危害精神健康的地方。

【用法】

(1) 第一个 that 指的是前句中的 this result。后面的 that 是连词，引导动词 prove 的宾语从句。

(2) 该从句中的 it 指的是 the effect of noise。but 后面的 it 指的是 this result。其后的 does 表示强调。

(3) that noise is... hazard 为动词 mean 的宾语从句。

(4) say 作插入语，意思是"比如说"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(5) being brought up in an orphanage 为动名词短语，作比较状语从句中的主语，该从句中省略了 is dangerous。

(6) 破折号后面引出的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 being brought up in an orphanage。使用破折号是为了对该句进行强调。

TopSage.com

核心语法

一、不定式的语法功能

不定式的语法功能是修饰动词和句子。其在句子中可以作主语、宾语、宾语补充语、定语、状语、表语等成分。(参见 135-140 页核心语法)

二、动词不定式符号"to"的省略问题

1. 动词不定式符号"to"的省略问题

在以下 10 种情况下，不定式符号 to 可以省略：

1)情态动词(除 ought to, have to 之外)后的不定式符号 to 省略。例如：

I can do it by myself. 我可以自己来做。

2)使役动词 let, have, make 后的不定式符号 to 省略。例如：

The teacher had Mary make a speech before class. 老师让玛丽在课前做了一个演讲。

3)感官动词 feel, find, hear, look at, listen to, notice, observe, overhear, perceive, see, smell, watch 等后的不定式作宾补，省略 to。例如：

I saw him break the glass window yesterday. 昨天我看到他打破了窗玻璃。

感官动词和使役动词用于被动语态时，动词不定式符号 to 不能省掉。例如：

I saw him dance. =He was seen to dance. 我看到他跳舞。

The boss made them work the whole night. =They were made to work the whole night. 老板让他们整晚工作。

4)would rather... than...(宁愿……也不……), would sooner... than...(真希望……而不是……), rather than, had better 后面的动词不定式符号 to 常常省略。例如：

I would rather go home now. 我情愿现在回家。

would rather... than...(宁愿……也不……); would sooner... than...(真希望……而不是……)后面接从句时，要用动词过去时表示虚拟语气。

5)why.../why not...后面的动词不定式符号 to 省略。例如：

Why not do it now? 为什么不现在做呢?

6)help 后面的不定式可带 to，也可不带 to，即：help sb. (to) do sth。例如：

I help my mother(to) wash dishes. 我帮妈妈洗碗。

Can I help(to) carry it for you? 我可以帮你搬吗?

7)can(not) do but/except... 和 can not help but 前是动词 do 时，后面出现的动词用不带 to 的动词不定式。例如：

As a good friend, I can do everything for you except help you cheat in the exam. 作为好朋友，我可以为你做任何事，除了帮你考试作弊。

He wants to do nothing but go out. 他除了想出去以外，什么都不想干。

8)由并列连词 and, except, but, than, or 连接两个以上的具有相同意义或功能的不定式时，第二个动词不定式不带 to。例如：

I'd like to stay with you, help you and learn from you. 我想留下和你待在一起，帮助你

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

并且向你学习。

She told us to stay at home and wait till she came back. 她告诉我们待在家里一直等到她回来。

如果两个不定式表示对照或对比时，则不能省略 to。例如：

To try and fail is better than not to try at all. 尝试而失败也比不尝试好。

He hasn's decided whether to quit or to stay. 他还没有决定是去还是留。

To be or not to be, that is a question. 是生存还是死亡，这是一个问题。

9)通常在 discover, imagine, suppose, think, understand 等词后，可以省去 to be。例如：

He is supposed (to be) nice. 他应该是个好人。

10)may well do, may as well do(还是……好了)后面的不定式可以省略 to。例如：

We might as well put up here for tonight. 我们不妨今晚就在这儿过夜。

Since you are here, you may as well stay and make the best of it. 既来之，则安之。

2. 容易误认为动词不定式的介词 to

to 有两种用法：一为不定式＋动词原形；一为介词＋名词/动名词。to 在下面的表达中属于第二种用法，即 to＋名词/动名词。这些动词后的 to 是介词，需要学习者熟记于心。

admit to 承认	devote oneself to 献身于	be accustomed to 习惯于
look forward to 盼望	be devoted to 致力于	pay attention to 注意
be used to 习惯于	stick to 坚持	confess to 承认
turn to 开始，着手于		

3. 由 all, what 引导的主语从句或者主语被 only, first, one, lest 或形容词最高级修饰时，而且从句中含有 do 时，其表语如果是动词不定式，则往往省去 to。例如：

All I did was empty the bottle. 我所做的是倒空这个瓶子。

What I wanted to do was drive all night. 我想做的是彻夜开车。

The only thing I could do was do it myself. 我唯一能做的是我自己解决。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 26 The past life of the earth

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式用在形容词后
- 动词不定式用作宾语补足语
- 动词不定式用作定语

本课词汇

preservation [ˌprezəˈveiʃən] *n.* ①保护，保养；维护，保全 ②保持；保守；维持 ③保存，保留；留存 ④保藏，防腐；(食品的)耐藏加工(如腌制、蜜饯、醋渍、装罐等)

silt [silt] *n.* 淤泥；淤沙

scavenger [ˈskævindʒə] *n.* 食腐动物

vole [vəul] *n.* 田鼠

decompose [ˌdiːkəmˈpəuz] *v.* 腐烂

inaccessible [ˌinækˈsesəbl] *adj.* 不能到达的

crevasse [kriˈvæs] *n.* 缝隙

Siberian [saiˈbiəriən] *adj.* 西伯利亚的

palaeontological [ˌpæliˌɔntəˈlɔdʒikl] *adj.* 古生物学的

St. Petersburg *n.* 圣彼得堡

sabre-toothed [ˈseibətuːθt] *adj.* 剑齿的

venture [ˈventʃə] *n.* 冒险(事业)(adventure, attempt, enterprise, experiment, project, undertaking) *vi.* 冒险(adventure, run a risk, take a risk) *vt.* 敢于大胆表示

【短语】venture to say that 冒昧地说……/ venture... to do 冒着……危险去做……/ venture... on 以……作为赌注/ venture upon/on sth 大胆地尝试……

【辨析】adventure, venture

生命危险或经济风险大时就用 venture；想使人心振奋，寻求刺激的冒险就用 adventure。

bogged [bɔgd] *adj.* 陷于泥沼的，陷入困境的

课文详解

1. **It is animals and plants which lived in or near water whose remains are most likely to be preserved, . . . and it is only in the seas and rivers, and sometimes lakes, where mud and silt have been continuously deposited, that bodies and the like can be rapidly covered over and preserved.**

【译文】只有生活在水中或水边的动植物尸体最有可能被保存下来，因为保存的必要条件之一是迅速地掩埋，所以只有在泥沙不停淤积的海洋和江河里，有时在湖泊里，尸体之类的东西才能被迅速地覆盖而保存下来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) ① 这个句子的基本结构是两个强调句的并列复合句。

② 第一个强调句是 it is animals and plants...，for... burial，它所强调的部分是 animals and plants which... water and sometimes lakes。在该句中，which lived in or near water 作定语从句修饰 animals and plants。for one of the necessary conditions... burial 作原因状语从句，作补充说明。

③ 第二个强调句是 and it is only in the seas and... preserved，该句所强调的部分是地点状语 in the seas and rivers and sometimes lakes。在该句中 where mud and silt have been continuously deposited 作非限定性定语从句，修饰 the seas and rivers，and sometimes lakes。

(2) the like 相当于 such like，类似的东西，如：There's a big sports hall for tennis and badminton and the like/and such like. 有一个打网球、羽毛球这类项目的大型体育馆。/First class travel is not for the like of us. 坐头等舱旅行可不是我们这类人的事。

2. But even in the most favourable circumstances only a small fraction of the creatures that die are preserved in this way before decay sets in or, even more likely, before scavengers eat them.

【译文】即使是在最有利的环境中，死去的生物中也只有一小部分能在开始腐烂前，或更可能在被食腐动物吃掉之前，被这样保存下来。

【用法】

(1) that die 作定语从句，修饰 creatures。

(2) even 作副词用，可放在许多句子成分前加强语气。

(3) 短语"a small fraction of ＋可数或不可数名词"的意思是"一小部分"。如：Mother's careful with her money，and spends only a fraction of her earnings. 母亲用钱很审慎，只花自己收入的很小一部分。

(4) set in（常用来表示不好的事情）开始，到来，如：We need to have the roof repaired before the bad weather sets in. 我们需要在坏天气到来之前把屋顶修好。/After a few days，exhaustion set in and the climbers were forced to give up their attempt to reach the summit of the mountain. 几天后，疲劳袭来，登山者不得不放弃登上顶峰的打算。

3. After all，all living creatures live by feeding on something else，whether it be plant or animal，dead or alive，and it is only by chance that such a fate is avoided.

【译文】毕竟所有生物都是靠吃别的东西来活命的，不管这种东西是植物还是动物，死的还是活的，因此，生物偶尔才能避免被吃掉的命运。

【用法】

(1) whether it be plant or animal，dead or alive 是一个让步状语从句，用的是虚拟的语气。it 指 something else。and it is only by chance that... 为强调句，被强调的部分是状语 by chance。还原为非强调句应该是 and such a fate is avoided only by chance。

(2) live by 靠……生活，遵循，如：The boy lived by selling newspapers. 那个男孩靠卖报纸为生。

(3) by chance 偶然，如：I got this job completely by chance. 我得到这份工作纯属偶然。

4. for there is seldom anything to cover them over.

【译文】因为陆地上几乎没有什么东西覆盖它们。

【用法】副词 seldom 的意思是"不常，很少"，它所在的句子可被看成是否定句。例如：

The children are seldom ill. 这些孩子很少生病。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

5. When you think of the innumerable birds that one sees flying about, not to mention the equally numerous small animals like field mice and voles which you do not see, it is very rarely that one comes across a dead body, except, of course, on the roads.

【译文】你可以想象出天上有看得见的飞来飞去、数不清的鸟，地上有不显眼的无数野鼠和田鼠之类的小动物，但是，除非在路上，很少有人遇到这些动物的尸体。

【用法】

(1) it is very rarely that ... roads 为强调句型，被强调的部分是状语 very rarely。that one sees flying about 为定语从句，修饰 birds。one 泛指"人们"。flying about 作宾语补足语。not to mention ... see 为补充说明部分。

(2) think of 想起，想象，如：She thought of her bitter past and could not help sobbing. 她想起了自己悲惨的过去，不禁泣不成声。

(3) not to mention 为固定词组，意即"更不用说"、"更不屑说"，主要用来强调所要补充说明的部分，如：

He is one of the most intelligent, not to mention handsome, among the people I know. 他是我认识的人中最聪明的人之一，更甭说有多英俊了。

注意该词组与 don't mention it 的区别：don't mention it 用于别人对你表示感谢而进行回答时，意即"不必客气"，如：

Thanks for your help. 十分感谢你的帮助。
Not at all, don't mention it. 没什么，不必客气。

(4) come across 遇到，偶然碰到，如：If you come across my glasses, can you let me have them please? 如果你看到我的眼镜，请你交给我行吗？

6. It is almost always due to some very special circumstances that traces of land animals survive, as by falling into inaccessible caves, or into an ice crevasse, like the Siberian mammoths, when the whole animal is sometimes preserved, as in a refrigerator.

【译文】几乎总是由于某些特殊的条件，陆地动物的遗体才被保存下来，如掉进难以到达的洞穴，或掉进冰河裂缝里，或者像西伯利亚长毛象那样掉进冰窟中，有时整个动物像被放在冰箱里一样被保存下来。

【用法】

(1) 该句为强调句，强调部分是原因状语 almost always ... circumstances。as 引导方式状语从句，as 后面省略了 they survive。when 意即"这时"，补充说明动物掉进冰河裂缝里，有时就像被保存在冰箱里一样。as in a refrigerator 的面省略了 it is preserved。

(2) 副词词组 due to 此处意思是 because of（由于，因为），它后面通常与名词或名词性词组搭配。如：This accident is due to driving at high speed. 这起交通事故是由于高速开车而引起的。

(3) as by falling into inaccessible caves, or into an ice crevasse 和 as in a refrigerator 中的 as 为副词，意思为"像，比如"。

7. This is what happened to the famous Beresovka mammoth which was found preserved and in good condition.

【译文】著名的别林索夫卡长毛象就是这样被保存下来的，而且保存得很好。

【用法】

(1) what 引导表语从句。

(2) which 引导定语从句，修饰 the famous Beresovka mammoth。preserved and in good condition 作主语补足语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. In his mouth were the remains of fir trees—the last meal that he had before he fell into the crevasse and broke his back.

【译文】它嘴里还留着冷杉——它掉进冰河裂隙折断脊柱之前的最后一顿饭。

【用法】In his mouth were the... 是倒装句。该句之所以倒装,是因为主语即 the remains of fir trees 及后面由破折号引出的同位语 the last meal 和其定语从句 that he had before... back 过长。

9. The mammoth has now been restored in the Palaeontological Museum in St. Petersburg.

【译文】这头长毛象已被修复,现存于圣彼得堡古生物学博物馆。

【用法】此句是现在完成时被动句。动词 restore 意思是"恢复,使回复"。例如:

It is essential for a newly formed country to restore law and order. 对一个刚成立的国家来说,恢复法律和秩序是极其重要的。

10. Apparently what happened was that water collected on these tar pits,... ventured out on to...,and were promptly bogged in the tar.

【译文】显然,事情的经过是这样:沥青坑里积存了水,像大象那样的大动物冒险到似乎坚固的水面上去饮水,结果立即掉进了沥青坑。

【用法】what happened 为主语从句,that 引导的是表语从句。

11. And then,when...,came out to feed and suffered exactly the same fate.

【译文】大象死后一些食肉动物,如剑齿虎和大灰狼就来吃大象,结果遭到了同样的命运。

【用法】the same fate 指 were promptly bogged in the tar,意即"也掉进沥青坑"。

核心语法

一、不定式的一些特殊句型

1. only to do... 引出意想不到或不愉快的结果(4、6 级考试重点)

a. We hurried to the railway station, only to find the train had just left. 我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站,结果却发现火车刚刚离站。

b. All too often, women complain that they're educated as equals, only to go out into the workforce to be treated as inferiors. 女人往往抱怨说,她们和男人们接受同样的教育,结果在职业场上却被认为低人一等。

c. He worked very hard,________ he had not finished half of the job.

A. to find　　B. finding　　C. just finding　　D. only to find

正确答案:D

2. enough... to

a. He is not old enough to go to school. 他还没有到上学的年龄。

b. The teacher speaks loudly enough to make himself heard clearly.

3. too... to 结构

(1) 这一结构我们常熟悉的意思是"太……以致不能……",肯定形式,否定意思。

a. The box is too heavy for me to even move. 这箱子太沉了,我挪动不了。

b. The tea is too hot to drink.

(2) too ready/anxious/eager to do,在此结构中,因为 too 不是修饰形容词 ready/anxious/eager,而是修饰整个 ready/anxious/eager to do,故此结构意味"非常想……,急

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

于……，时刻准备……”等意思，肯定形式，肯定意思。

a. You are too ready to find faults with other people.（你也太爱找别人茬儿了。）

b. I'm just too eager to help you.（我非常乐意帮助你。）

(3) too 前若有 only，all，but，really 修饰时，这结构亦表示肯定。

a. I am only too pleased to help you.

b. He would be only too glad to be her boyfriend, but he knew he couldn't match her in family status. 他何尝不想成为她的男朋友，但他知道他的门第配不上她。

4. so as to...：以至于……

(1) 表示目的：它的否定式是 so as not to do。例如：

He took a taxi to go to station so as not to miss the train. 为了不误火车，他坐出租车到火车站。

Go in quietly so as not to wake the baby. 轻点进去，别惊醒了婴儿。

(2) so kind as to...：劳驾。例如：

5. why not+动词原形

“why not+不加 to 的不定式”表达向某人提出建议，可以翻译为：“为什么不……?”干吗不……? 例如：

Why not try the new hairstyle? 为什么不换个新发型呢?

二、动词不定式的难点

1. “动词+特殊疑问句+不定式”的特殊情况

如果该特殊疑问词在不定式中作介词宾语，介词往往置于该特殊疑问词之前。例如：

Without facts, we cannot form worthwhile opinion for we need to have factual knowledge upon which to base our thinking. 没有事实，我们不能够形成有价值的观点。因为我们需要以实际知识作为我们思考的基础。

2. 除了直接修饰谓语动词之外，动词不定式或不定式短语还可以和介词“with，for”连用，例如：

With nobody to help, the poor man worked late into the night. 没有人帮忙，这个可怜的人工作到深夜。

The police removed the road block for the cars to pass. 警察移开路障让车通行。

3. find 的特殊用法

find+形式宾语+形容词+带 to 的动词不定式；find 也可以直接加分词作宾补；find 后还可带一个从句。

I found it important to learn. 我发现学习很重要。

I found him lying on the ground. 我发现他躺在地上。

When he came out of the office, he found his bike stolen. 当他从办公室出来时，他发现他的自行车被盗了。

I found that to learn English is important. 我发现学习英语很重要。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 27 The "Vasa"

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式用作独立成分
- 动词不定式引导独立句

本课词汇

galleon [ˈgæliən] *n.* 大型帆船
flagship [ˈflægʃip] *n.* 旗舰
imperial [imˈpiəriəl] *adj.* 帝国的，皇帝的，帝王的；度量衡英制的
hurricane [ˈhʌrikən] *n.* 龙卷风，暴风(雨)
armament [ˈɑːməmənt] *n.* 军械
triple [ˈtripl] *adj.* 三层的
mount [maunt] *vi.* 增长，上升 *vt.* 登上，骑上；为……备马，扶某人上马(车)；装配，安放 *n.* 山，峰

【辨析】climb，ascend，mount，scale

climb *v.* 攀登，登上：一般用语，用于人指用手足攀登着东西往上爬；用于物指很费力地往高处移动。有时可用于比喻，指社会地位上升。ascend *v.* 登高，上升：正式用语，指一直往上升。用于人指用足不很费力地逐步攀登到较高处；用于物指通过水或空气垂直向上运动。用于比喻指某人的地位达到了极点。mount *v.* 登上，爬上：指人攀着某物上升到最高处，有时指跨到某物上。用于比喻，指数量提高了。scale *v.* 攀登，爬上：指人用梯子或有阶梯的东西爬上某物顶部或爬过某物。有时指用手脚既费力又有技巧地爬上坡度较大的物体。用于比喻指数字按比例增大。

bronze [brɔnz] *n.* 青铜，青铜色，青铜制品
cannon [ˈkænən] *n.* 加农炮
might [mait] *n.* 力量
ferment [ˈfəːment] *n.* 激动不安
ornament [ˈɔːnəmənt] *v.* 装饰
riot [ˈraiət] *n.* 丰富
demon [ˈdiːmən] *n.* 恶魔
mermaid [ˈməːmeid] *n.* 美人鱼
cherub [ˈtʃerəb] *n.* 小天使
ablaze [əˈbleiz] *adj.* 光彩的
portray [pɔːˈtrei] *v.* 绘制
drifting [ˈdriftiŋ] *adj.* 弥漫的
churn [tʃəːn] *v.* 翻滚
pennant [ˈpenənt] *n.* 三角旗
superstructure [ˈsjuːpəstrʌktʃə] *n.* 上部结构
majestic [məˈdʒestik] *adj.* 威严的
muzzle [ˈmʌzl] *n.* 炮口
freshen [ˈfreʃən] *v.* 变强
squall [skwɔːl] *n.* 狂风
list [list] *v.* 倾斜
port [pɔːt] *n.* (船、飞机的)左舷
ordnance [ˈɔːdnəns] *n.* 军械
heave [hiːv] *v.* 拖
starboard [ˈstɑːbəd] *n.* (船、飞机的)右舷
counteract [ˌkauntərˈækt] *v.* 抵消
steepen [ˈstiːpən] *v.* 变得更陡峭
ballast [ˈbæləst] *n.* 压舱物
inrush [ˈinrʌʃ] *n.* 水的涌入
Baltic [ˈbɔːltik] *n.* 波罗的海

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

课文详解

1. From the seventeenth-century empire of Sweden, the story of a galleon that sank at the start of her maiden voyage in 1628 must be one of the strangest tales of the sea.

【译文】1628年，一艘大帆船在处女航开始时就沉没了，这个从17世纪瑞典帝国流传至今的故事无疑是航海史上最离奇的事件之一。

【用法】

(1) 此句中 that 引导了一个限制性定语从句，修饰先行词 galleon。

(2) the maiden voyage 意思是"处女航，首航"。英语常用人称代词指代非人类的事物或动物。用"她"指代能包容或孕育他物的事物，如：earth, river, country, hometown, motherland 等。

2. For nearly three and a half centuries she lay at the bottom of... until her discovery in 1956.

【译文】这艘大船在斯德哥尔摩港口的海底躺了将近3个半世纪之后，直到1956年才被发现。

【用法】

(1) she 指"瓦萨"号帆船。英语中多用代词 she 指代船只。

(2) her discovery 指 the discovery of Vasa。

3. King Gustavus Adolphus, "The Northern Hurricane", then at the height of his militatry success in the Thirty Years' War, had dictated her measurements and armament.

【译文】当时号称"北方飓风"的国王古斯塔夫斯·阿道尔弗斯正处在"三十年战争"的军事鼎盛阶段，他亲自规定了这艘船的规模和武器装备。

【用法】

(1) "The Northern Hurricane"是 King Gustavus Adolphus 的同位语。the Thirty Years' War 三十年战争。

(2) at the height of 在……高度，在……顶峰，如：It flew at a height of ten thousand feet. 它在一万英尺的高空飞行。

4. She was intended to play a leading role in the growing might of Sweden.

【译文】目的就是要在不断增长的瑞典势力中起主导作用。

【用法】

(1) intend to do sth. 打算做某事，如：I don't think she intended me to hear the remark. 我认为她不打算让我听到这话。

(2) 动词词组 to play a role 意思是"扮演角色；起作用"，role 的前面可用形容词修饰。如：play a splendid (great, important, leading, etc.) role(起到很重要的作用)。或 play a minor (unimportant, trifle, etc.) role (作用甚微)。此词组后面通常与 in (doing) sth. 相搭配。如：Tom played the role of the old king in our school play. 汤姆在我们学校演的剧中扮演老国王的角色。

5. As she was prepared for... 1628, Stockholm was in a ferment.

【译文】1628年8月10日，"瓦萨"号准备首航时，斯德哥尔摩一片欢腾。

【用法】in a ferment 处于激动的状态。

6. The people watched this thing of beauty begin to spread her sails and catch the wind.

【译文】人们观看这艘美丽的战船扬帆起航，乘风前进。

【用法】动词应用原形或动名词形式，即 watch + sb. /sth. + do/doing。两者的区别在于：do 表示动作发生的事实，而 doing 表示动作正在发生。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

7. They had laboured for three years to produce this floating work of art;...

【译文】瑞典人辛辛苦苦干了3年才建成这件水上艺术品；

【用法】this floating work of art 指"瓦萨"号，意即"水上艺术品"。

TopSage.com

8. The high stern castle was a riot of carved gods, demons, knights, kings, warriors, mermaids, cherubs; and zoomorphic animal shapes ablaze with red and gold and blue, symbols of courage, power, and cruelty, were portrayed to stir the imaginations of the superstitious sailors of the day.

【译文】高耸的楼上雕刻着令人眼花缭乱的神仙、妖魔、骑士、国王、武士、美人鱼和小天使，还有用红色、金黄色、蓝色绘制的光彩夺目的兽形图案，象征着勇敢、力量和残暴，以激起当时崇尚迷信的水手们的想象。

【用法】

(1) 该句由两个并列分句组成，这两个分句由分号分开。

(2) ablaze with 在课文里面作定语，修饰 zoomorphic animal shapes。

(3) symbols of courage, power, and cruelty 作 zoomorphic animal shapes 的同位语。

(4) zoomorphic animal shapes 作第二个分句的主语，该句的谓语是 were portrayed。

(5) to stir the imaginatigns... day 作目的状语。

9. Then the cannons of the anchored warships thundered a salute to which the Vasa fired in reply.

【译文】这时，停泊在港口的其他战船向"瓦萨"号鸣炮致礼，"瓦萨"号也鸣炮回礼。

【用法】

(1) to which the Vasa fired in reply 作定语从句，修饰 a salute。

(2) thunder 常用作名词，意思是"雷电"，但此处作动词，意思是"鸣炮"。英语中像这样具有动词和名词性的词还有许多，试分析下列黑体词的含义：There are no stops on the **run**(n.) to the coast. 在去海滨的路上没有站。/She can't attend the formal party because she has only a suit for everyday **wear** (n.). 她不能去参加那个正式的宴会，因为她只有一套家常穿衣服。/Prof. Jackson's personal picture exhibition is **housed**(v.) in that building. 杰克逊教授的个人画展设在那座楼里。

(3) in reply 作为回答，如：The teacher nodded in reply. 老师点头作为回答。

10. As she emerged from her drifting cloud of gun smoke with the water churned to foam beneath her bow, her flags flying, pennants waving, sails filling in the breeze, and the red and gold of her superstructure ablaze with colour, she presented a more majestic spectacle than Stockholmers had ever seen before.

【译文】当"瓦萨"号从弥漫的礼炮烟云中出现时，船头下浪花四溅，舰旗迎风招展，三角旗随风飘动，微风鼓起风帆，金碧辉煌的船楼闪耀着灿烂的色彩。它所展现的壮观景象是斯德哥尔摩人从未见过的。

【用法】

(1) As 引导的是时间状语从句。

(2) 该从句中的 with the water churned..., her flags flying, pennants waving, sails filling..., and the red and gold ... ablaze with colour 为5个独立主格结构，均作方式状语，修饰动词 emerged。这5个独立主格结构生动形象地将当时"瓦萨"号刚起航时的壮观场面表现出来。

(3) 该句的主句是 she presented... before。

(4) than 引导比较状语从句，该连词后面省略了 that。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

11. As the wind freshened there came a sudden squall and the ship made a strange movement, listing to port.

【译文】当风力增强时,突然刮来一阵大风,"瓦萨"号奇怪地摇晃了一下,便向左舷倾斜。

【用法】there came a sudden squall 该句为 there 引导的句子。通常 there 与 be 动词连用,表示"存在"。此外 there 还可以同其他动词连用,如:arise、come、exist、rise、go、lie、live、remain、seem、stand 等动词连用,如:

There seems to be a problem. 好像有一个问题。

There came the crack of a shot. 传来一声枪响。

listing to port 作结果状语,修饰 made a strange movement。

12. the Ordnance Officer ordered all the port cannon to be heaved to starboard to counteract the list, but the steepening angle of the decks increased.

【译文】炮长命令把左舷上所有大炮搬到右舷上来以抵消船的倾斜,但甲板的倾斜度仍在增加。

【用法】

(1) to be heaved to starboard 作宾语 all the port cannon 的补足语。

(2) to counteract the list 作目的状语,修饰 to be heaved。

13. The lower gun-ports were now below water and the inrush sealed the ship's fate.

【译文】下层炮眼已淹没在水里,涌进船舱的水给"瓦萨"号带来了难以逃脱的厄运。

【用法】英语中 fate, destiny 和 doom 都含"命运"的意思。其区别如下:fate 指"宿命",具有神话或迷信色彩,使人有畏惧和无可奈何之感,如:They ascribed their disaster to an unkind fate. 他们把他们的灾难归于命不好。destiny 除含有"命运注定"之意外,还暗示"充满美好希望",如:It was her destiny to become famous. 她命里注定出名。doom 指"最终的、毁灭性或灾难性的命运",如:The Battle of Stalingrad sealed Hitler's doom. 斯大林格勒战役决定了希特勒的灭亡。

14. In that first glorious hour, the mighty Vasa, which was intended to rule the Baltic, sank with all flags flying—in the harbour of her birth.

【译文】想要统治波罗的海的大型战舰"瓦萨"号,在它壮丽的起航时刻,带着全身飘扬的彩旗,沉没在了它诞生的港口。

【用法】which 引导的是非限定性定语从句。with all flags flying 为独立主格结构,作方式状语。破折号用来起强调作用,强调就是在她诞生的港口沉没。in the harbour of her birth 为介词短语,作地点状语。

核心语法

➡动词不定式引导独立句

有时不定式可引导独立句,表达愿望、担心、惊讶等强烈情感。常见的结构是:to think..., to imagine...,这样的结构常理解为:你想想……! 竟有这样的事……。

a. To think she wanted to walk all the way to the park.
　It's too far to walk to the park.

b. To spend so much money on something he didn't even need.
　He spent money unwisely.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 28 Patients and doctors

本节重点和难点

不定式的体、态变化

- 不定式的进行体(或式)
- 不定式的完成体(或式)
- 不定式的主动和被动形式

本课词汇

sceptical ['skeptikl] *adj.* 怀疑的

forefathers ['fɔːfɑːðəz] *n.* 祖先

fervently ['fəːvəntli] *adv.* 热情地

curative ['kjuərətiv] *adj.* 治病的

astronomical [ˌæstrə'nɔmikl] *adj.* 天文学的

tangible ['tændʒəbl] *adj.* 实实在在的

remedy ['remədi] *n.* 药物

【辨析】remedy 治疗,医治:用药物、器械治疗生理缺陷,比喻克服缺点;cure 治愈:医治好某人的病,比喻革除旧习;heal 愈合:比喻复原精神创伤;treat 治疗:一般用语。

ointment ['ɔintmənt] *n.* 药膏

prescribe [pri'skraib] *v.* 开处方

indisposition [ˌindispə'ziʃən] *n.* 小病

disgusting [dis'gʌstiŋ] *v.* 令人讨厌的

inconvenience [ˌinkən'viːniəns] *n.* 不便

课文详解

1. This is a sceptical age, but although our faith in many of the things in which our forefathers fervently believed has weakened, our confidence in the curative properties of the bottle of medicine remains the same as theirs.

【译文】这是一个怀疑一切的时代,可是虽然我们对祖先笃信的许多事物已不太相信,我们对瓶装药品疗效的信心仍和祖辈一样坚定。

【用法】

(1) 这是个较长的并列句,主要信息包含在第二个分句里,此分句是带有一个让步性状语从句的复合句。主干是个主系表结构 our confidence remains the same,主句带着一个由介词短语充当的定语 in the curative properties of the bottle of medicine,修饰 confidence,另有一个介词短语 as theirs 作表语的定语,物主代词 theirs 此处指代 our forefathers'。although 引导的是个状语从句,时态是现在完成时,同时该从句中的介词宾语还带着自己的定语从句,由 in which 引导。

(2) faith 与介词 in 搭配,表示"笃信",confidence 也与介词 in 搭配以表示"对……信任"。该句为了避免重复,分别使用了 faith in, confidence in 和 believe in 来表示"相信"、"信任"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. This modern faith... the fact that the annual drug bill of the Health Services is mounting to astronomical figures and shows no signs at present of ceasing to rise.

【译文】卫生部门的年度药费上升到了天文数字，并且目前尚无停止上升的迹象，这个事实证实了现代人对药物的信赖。

【用法】that 引导的是同位语从句。astronomical figures 天文数字，表示很多，是夸张的说法。

3. The majority of the patients attending the medical out-patients departments of our hospitals feel that they have not received adequate treatment unless they are able to carry home with them some tangible remedy in the shape of a bottle of medicine, a box of pills, or a small jar of ointment, and the doctor in charge of the department is only too ready to provide them with these requirements.

【译文】在医院门诊部看病的大多数人觉得，如果不能带回一些看得见、摸得着的药物，如一瓶药片、一盒药丸、一小瓶药膏回家的话，就不算得到充分的治疗。负责门诊的医生也非常乐意为前来看病的人提供他们想要得到的药物。

【用法】

(1) attending the medical... hospitals 为分词短语，作定语，修饰 the patients。that 引导一个宾语从句，作动词 feel 的宾语。

(2) in charge of 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 doctor，意即“负责……的”。

(3) in the shape of 呈……形状。

(4) only too ready to do sth. 非常乐意做某事。英语中 too... to... 表示“太……以至于不能做……”，如：

I'm too tired to walk such a long way back home. 我太累了，不能走那么远的路回家。

但是如果在 too 前面用上 only，则表示“非常……能做……”的意思，如：

It's only too easy to say yes because your friends encourage you. 由于朋友们鼓励你，所以你说可以就非常容易。

4. There is no quicker method of disposing of patients than by giving them what they are asking for, ... and the jar are almost always granted them.

【译文】病人要什么就给什么，没有比这样处理病人更快的方法了。负责门诊的医生也非常乐意为前来看病的人提供他们想要得到的药品。因为卫生部门的大多数医生都超负荷工作，所以没有多少时间提出既费时又不受欢迎的忠告。如注意饮食，生活有规律，需要克服哪些坏习惯等等，结果就是把瓶药、盒药、罐药开给看病的人而完事大吉。

【用法】

(1) 这是 no more than 句型的变体，此处形容词比较级后带着它所修饰的名词。如：

There is no more intelligent person than he who can deal with such an embarrassing situation. 没人能像他那样灵活地处理如此尴尬的局面了。

(2) dispose of 处理，除掉，摆脱，如：

They must find a way to dispose of the opposition. 他们必须找出以应付反对派的办法。

(3) grant sb. sth. /grant sth. to sb. 授予某人某物，如：

The government granted a pension to her. /The government granted her a pension. 政府授予她一份养老金。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(4) overwork，前缀 over 是一个表示“上、外、过度、超过”的意思。常见的同类词还有：overload 负荷过多，overactive 活动过度，overbuild 建得过多，over-busy 过分忙碌的，等等。

(5) 两个合成形容词：time-consuming 的构词法是 *n.* ＋doing（名词＋动词的现在分词形式），前面的名词通常是后面的动词的宾语；little-appreciated 的构词法是 *adv.* ＋done（副词＋动词的过去分词形式），前面的副词多是修饰后面的动词的。

5. Nor is it only the ignorant and ill-educated person who has such faith in the bottle of medicine.

【译文】并不只是那些无知和没受过良好教育的人才迷信药瓶子。

【用法】由于该句由否定词 nor 开头，所以该句使用了倒装语序。此外，该句还是一个强调句，句中的 it 为强调句的形式主语，被强调的部分是 only the ignorant and ill-educated person。

6. It is recounted of Thomas Carlyle that when he heard of the illness of his friend, Henry Taylor, he went off immediately to visit him, carrying with him in his pocket what remained of a bottle of medicine formerly prescribed for an indisposition of Mrs. Carlyle's.

【译文】据说托马斯·卡莱尔有过这么一件事，他听说朋友亨利·泰勒病了，就立刻跑去看他，衣袋里装着他妻子不舒服时吃剩下的一瓶药。

【用法】

(1) it 为先行主语，真正的主语是由 that 引导的主语从句。

(2) when 引导的是该主语从句中的时间状语从句，该句中的主句是 he went off immediately... Mrs. Carlyle's。

(3) carrying with him... Mrs. Carlyle's 为现在分词短语，作伴随状语。

(4) of a bottle of medicine... of Mrs. Carlyle's 作 what 的定语。

7. Carlyle was entirely ignorant of what the bottle in his pocket contained, of the nature of the illness from which his friend was suffering, and of what had previously been wrong with his wife, but a medicine that had worked so well in one form of illness would surely be of equal benefit in another, and comforted by the thought of the help he was bringing to his friend, he hastened to Henry Taylor's house.

【译文】卡莱尔不知道药瓶子里装的是什么药，不知道他的朋友得的是什么病，也不知道他妻子以前得的是什么病，只知道一种药对一种病有好处，肯定对另一种病也会有好处。想到能对朋友有所帮助，他感到欣慰，于是急急忙忙来到了亨利·泰勒的家里。

【用法】

(1) what the bottle ... contained 以及 what had previously... his wife 作介词 of 的宾语。that 引导定语从句，修饰 medicine。comforted by ... his friend 为过去分词短语，作原因状语，表示“由于想到能对朋友有所帮助，他感到欣慰”。

(2) 该句中的 3 个 of 都是“不知道，无知”，如：

He is ignorant of the facts. 他不了解事实真相。

Thousands of children leaving school are ignorant of even basic skills. 成千上万辍学的孩子们连基本的技能都不了解。

(3) be of equal benefit 相当于 be equally beneficial，意即“同样有好处”。

www.TopSage.com

8. History does not relate whether his friend accepted his medical help, but in all probability he did.

【译文】他的朋友是否接受了他的药物治疗,历史没有记载,但很可能是接受了。

【用法】

(1) relate 叙述,如:

She related the events of the past week to the police. 她向警察叙述了上一周发生的事情。

(2) in all probability 很可能,如:

They realized too late that in all probability he was not guilty of the crime. 他们意识到他很可能没犯罪,可是已经太晚了。

9. The great advantage of taking medicine is that it makes no demands on the taker beyond that of putting up for a moment with a disgusting taste, and that is what all patients demand of their doctors—to be cured at no inconvenience to themselves.

【译文】服药的最大优点是:除了暂时忍受一下令人作呕的味道外,对服药人别无其他要求。这也正是病人对医生的要求——病要治好,但不要太麻烦。

【用法】

(1) 第一个 that 引导的是表语从句,在该从句中,it 指的是 taking medicine。

(2) beyond that of... taste 中的 that 代替的是 demand。

(3) what 引导的是表语从句,破折号后的 to be cured... themselves 作 what 的同位语。

(4) at no inconvenience to themselves 作条件状语,修饰 to be cured。

核心语法

➡不定式的体、态变化

一、不定式的进行体(或式)

如同进行时态那样,动词不定式的进行式(to be doing)用于描写在我们谈论的时间(现在或过去)正在继续的动作,或说与谓语动作同时发生的动作。

a. It's so nice to be sitting here with you.

b. I noticed that something seemed to be going in the wrong direction.

二、不定式的完成体(或式)

1. 表示不定式动作发生在谓语动作之前。

a. It is nice to have talked to you.

It 's nice when/because I've talked to you.

b. I am sorry to have kept you waiting for so long.

I am sorry that I have kept you waiting for so long.

c. She said she was sorry to have missed you.

She said she was sorry that she had missed you.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

d. I am sorry not to have come on Thursday.

I am sorry that I didn't come on Thursday.

注意以上例句中，to have done 改成从句后的不同时态形式。

三、不定式的主动和被动形式

1. 一般来讲，句子的主语是不定式动作的执行者时，则不定式用主动形式。句子的主语若是不定式动作的承受者，则不定式用被动形式。

a. I have a lot of clothes to wash.（由 I 来 wash，I 是动作的执行者）

b. I have three letters to write today.

此时，若不定式用被动形式 to be done，则说明此动作不是由主语来完成。试比较：

I have a lot of clothes to be washed.

I have someone else wash my clothes, and I don't wash them myself.

被动式不定式：

a. She doesn't like to be treated as a distinguished guest.（she 是动作 treat 的对象，是动作承受者）

b. No one hoped to be laughed at like that.

c. These sheets are to be washed.

d. This form is to be filled in in ink.

2. 不定式有自己的逻辑主语时，用主动形式。

a. The coffee was bitter for me to drink.（尽管 coffee 是动作 drink 的承受者，但 drink 动作带有自己的逻辑主语 me）

b. The sentence was difficult for us to translate.

c. —What do you think of English?

—It's a difficult language to speak.（省去了逻辑主语 for me）

3. 有时判断一个不定式动词到底是用主动还是用被动，并不能完全按照上述两点。

先请看下面的句子：

a. English is difficult to speak.

b. Relativity theory is hard to understand.

上述两句中，尽管主语（English，theory）都是不定式动词的动作承受者，或说与不定式动词存在逻辑上的动宾关系，但并没有因此而用被动不定式形式。

对于到底是用 to do 还是用 to be done，我们可以遵循这样一条思路：我们要看说话重点是放在做事的人上，还是放在要做的事上。若是着重在人上，则用 to do。因为，此时我们说出这句话时，考虑更多的是完成某一动作的人，即希望某特定的人去完成，这时当然要用主动不定式。

而上两句正是这种强调做事的人，是指对某些特定的人来说，English is difficult to speak，强调的不是 speak English 这一动作的本身。

相反，若我们更多是考虑完成某个动作或某件事本身，而不考虑由谁去完成时，我们就用 to be done。如：

a. These sheets are to be washed.

www.TopSage.com

b. This form is to be filled in in ink.

我们关心的是 these sheets 要被 be washed 掉，而不管是由谁来 wash。同样道理，我们要求 this form 是要用 in ink 来 be filled in 好，而具体由谁去 fill in，我们则不管。也就是说，这两句我们都只是强调动作的本身，所以我们要用被动不定式。再比较几例：

The report is all ready to be typed.

The report is easy to write.（注意形容词 ready 和 easy 感情色彩的不同）

我们说 easy，显然是针对某特定的人来说的，即对于某些人来说是 easy 的。而我们说 ready，则是针对事情（the report）的本身来说的。再看下例：

—What's your plan for your weekend?

—There are six letters to write on weekend.（省略主语 for me）

We are short-handed, but there is a lot of work to be done.（强调事情）

4. something/anything/nothing to do 和 something/anything/nothing to be done 的意思有区别，其实它们的区别正是源于上面第三点。

请看例子：

a. My tyre is punctured. There is nothing to be done, so I have to walk home. (There is no way of putting it right.)

b. Could you give me something to read? There is nothing to do now. (I am bored. There are no entertainments.)

c. My watch broke down. There is nothing to be done. I have to buy another one.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 29 The hovercraft

本节重点和难点

- 组合介词

本课词汇

hovercraft ['hɔvəkrɑːft] n. 气垫船
Norfolk Broads ['nɔːfəkbrɔːdz] 诺福克郡布洛兹区
cushion ['kuʃən] n. 座垫
ring [riŋ] v. 围
Solent n. 苏伦特海峡
sensation [sen'seiʃən] n. 轰动
dune [djuːn] n. 沙丘
plantation [plæn'teiʃən] n. 种植园
hovertrain ['hɔvətrein] n. 气垫火车

课文详解

1. Many strange new means of transport have been developed in our century, the strangest of them being perhaps the hovercraft.

【译文】本世纪已研制出许多新奇的交通工具，其中最新奇的要数气垫船了。

【用法】the strangest of them being perhaps the hovercraft 是现在分词 being 的独立主格结构。

2. In 1953, a former electronics engineer in his fifties, Christopher Cockerell, who had turned to boat-building on the Norfolk Broads, suggested an idea on which he had been working for many years to the British Government and industrial circles.

【译文】1953 年，有一位 50 多岁名叫克里斯托弗·科克雷尔的原电子工程师，改行在诺福克郡布罗兹区从事造船业，他向英国政府和工业界提出了他研究多年的一项计划。

【用法】

(1) who 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 Christopher Cockerell。Norfolk Broads 诺福克郡布罗兹区，位于英格兰东部。on which 引导定语从句，由于该从句中的动词 work 与介词 on 连用，表示“研究”，所以将介词 on 置于关系代词之前。

(2) in his fifties 在他五十多岁的时候。

(3) turn to 转而致力于，如：Ultimately, she turn to the research of art. 最终她转而研究艺术。

3. It was the idea of supporting a craft on a "pad", or cushion, of low-pressure air, ringed with a curtain of higher pressure air.

【译文】他的设想是：用一个低压空气垫或软垫来支撑船体，软垫周围用高压空气环绕。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) of supporting... cushion 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 idea。of low-pressure air 作定语，修饰 pad 和 cushion。ringed with... air 为过去分词短语，作定语，也修饰 pad 和 cushion。ring... with/by... 用……围绕……，如：The harbour is dangerous—it's ringed with rocks and reefs. 那个港口非常危险——它被岩石和暗礁所环绕。

(2) 名词词组 a curtain of 的意思是"一层……幕"，如：After the explosion, the area is covered with a curtain of smoke. 爆炸后整个地区笼罩在一层烟幕中。

4. Ever since, people have had difficulty in deciding whether the craft should be ranged among ships, planes, or land vehicles—for it is something in between a boat and an aircraft.

【译文】自那以后，人们很难决定是否应该将这种运载工具列为轮船、飞机，或是陆上交通工具，因为它是介于船和飞机之间的。

【用法】

(1) for 引导的是原因状语从句，说明为什么很难确定气垫船到底是属于轮船、飞机还是陆上交通工具的原因。

(2) 副词词组 ever since 的意思是 from then till now（从那时起，一直到现在），通常用在现在完成时句中。

(3) 动词短语"have difficulty in ＋动名词"的意思是"在……方面有困难"。difficulty 还可以用其他词语，如 trouble、hard time 来代替，意思基本相同。

(4) in between 介于……之间。这是一种组合介词，常用的还有：from among（从中），from under（来自下面），in front of（在……前面），up to（到达）等。

(5) be ranged among 的意思是 be classified into（被归类为）。如：This new kind of black vegetable can be ranged among cabbage. 这种新型的黑色蔬菜属于甘蓝类。

5. His answer was to lift the vessel out of the water by making it ride on a cushion of air, no more than one or two feet thick.

【译文】他的解决办法是把船体提离水面，让船在一个气垫上行驶，气垫只有一两英尺厚。

【用法】

(1) to lift the vessel out of the water by making it ride on a cushion of air 这里的用法为动词不定式作表语。其实，动词不定式具有和名词类似的用法，可以作主语、宾语、表语、宾语补足语等，例如：

To see is to believe. 眼见为实。（主语和表语）

I want to go with you. 我想和你一起走。（宾语）

The boss asked him to buy a package of cigarettes. 老板让他去买包香烟。（宾语补足语）

(2) make sth. /sb. do sth. 意思为"使……做某事"，这里 make 的意思为"使，让"，为使役动词，其后的宾语补足语要用不带 to 的动词不定式，类似用法的动词还有 let, have 等，例如：

Don't let him go. 不要让他走。

The officer had the soldiers repeat the order. 军官让士兵们重复他的命令。

另外，make 后宾语的补足语除了可以是不带 to 的动词不定式外，还可以是名词或形容词，例如：

A good wife makes her husband an excellent man. 好妻子成就优秀男人。

(3) no more than one or two feet thick 为 a cushion of air 的后置定语，相当于非限制性定语从句 which is no more than one or two feet thick。

(4) no more than 意思为"只是，不过是，仅仅"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. It "flies", therefore, but it cannot fly higher—its action depends on the surface, water or ground, over which it rides.

【译文】这样，船就能飞了，但飞不高。它的飞行取决于它所悬浮的水面或地面。

【用法】

(1) It "flies"中的 it 指的是 vessel。flies 用引号表明这是一种夸张的手法，形容它进行得非常快。

(2) water or ground 作 surface 的定语。

(3) over which it rides 作非限定性定语从句，修饰 surface。

7. Later it crossed the Channel, riding smoothly over the waves, which presented no problem.

【译文】后来气垫船跨越英吉利海峡，平稳地在波浪上行驶，波浪不再产生阻力。

【用法】the Channel 指英吉利海峡。riding smoothly over the waves 为现在分词短语，作方式状语，修饰动词 crossed。which presented no problem 作非限定性定语从句，修饰 waves，意即"波浪不再产生阻力"。

8. Since that time, various types of hovercraft have appeared and taken up regular service.

【译文】从那以后，各种各样的气垫船出现了，并开始了定期航行服务。

【用法】

(1) 副词短语 since that time 的意思是"从那时起"，与 since then 意思相似，也通常用在完成时中。

(2) take up 开始从事，开始，如：He's taken up a new job. 他开始从事一项新工作。

(3) regular service 定期航行服务。

9. ... and the railway of the future may well be the "hovertrain", riding on its air cushion over a single rail, which it never touches, at speeds up to 300 m. p. h. —the possibilities appear unlimited.

【译文】未来的火车或许能成为"气垫火车"，靠气垫在单轨上行驶而不接触轨道，时速可达每小时 300 英里。气垫船的前途是不可限量的。

【用法】

(1) riding on its... rail 作定语，修饰 hovertrain。

(2) which it never touches 作非限定性定语从句，修饰 rail。

(3) at speeds up to... 为介词短语，作状语，修饰现在分词 riding。

核心语法

➡组合介词

组合介词是由其他词类，主要是副词，后接介词而组成的词组，即副词/连词/形容词等+介词，最常见的形式如：according to; as for; as to; away from; because of; but for; due to; instead of; next to; out of; owing to; up to 等。

As for my past, I'm not telling you anything. 关于我的过去，我什么都不会告诉你。

He will go instead of you. 他将代你去。

Owing to the rain the match was cancelled. 由于下雨，比赛取消了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 30 Exploring the sea-floor

本节重点和难点

- and 连接的并列句

本课词汇

navigation [ˌnævi'geiʃən] *n.* 航海
sounding ['saundiŋ] *n.* 水深度
fathom ['fæðəm] *n.* 英寻(1.829 米)
porcupine ['pɔːkjupain] *n.* 箭猪
dredge [dredʒ] *v.* 挖掘
expedition ['ekspi'diʃən] *n.* 远征(队),探险(队),考察(队);旅行,出行
physicist ['fizisist] *n.* 物理学家
magnitude ['mægnitjuːd] *n.* 重大
topography [tə'pɔgrəfi] *n.* 地形
crust [krʌst] *n.* 地壳
rugged ['rʌgid] *adj.* 崎岖不平的
tableland ['teibllænd] *n.* 高地
sediment ['sedimənt] *n.* 沉淀物
terrace ['terəs] *n.* 阶地
erode [i'rəud] *v.* 侵蚀

课文详解

1. Our knowledge of the oceans a hundred years ago was confined to the two-dimensional shape of the sea surface and the hazards of navigation presented by the irregularities in depth of the shallow water close to the land.

【译文】100 年前,我们只知道海洋是二维平面形的,以及靠近陆地浅水区的深浅不一能给航海带来危险。

【用法】

(1) presented by the irregularities 作定语,修饰 the hazards of navigation。in depth 深度的,作定语,修饰 the irregularities。of the shallow water 为介词短语,作定语,修饰 depth,意即"浅水区的深浅不一"。close to the land,作定语,修饰 the shallow water,意即"靠近陆地的浅水区"。

(2) be confined to 被限制于,局限于,如:The lecturer confined herself to one topic. 讲师把她讲课内容局限在一个主题内。

2. The open sea was deep and mysterious, and anyone who gave more than a passing thought to the bottom confines of the oceans probably assumed that the sea bed was flat.

【译文】无边无际的大海深邃而又神秘,凡是稍稍想过大海海底的人大概都会认为海底是平坦的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 该句主要由连词 and 连接的两个并列句构成。后一句的主语是 anyone，who 引导的是修饰 anyone 的定语从句。该句的谓语动词是 assumed。that 引导的是动词 assumed 的宾语从句。

(2) the open sea 无边无际的大海。

(3) give a thought to 想，如：She doesn't give any thought to her appearance. 她对自己的外表毫不在意。a passing thought 稍稍想过。

3. Sir James Clark Ross had obtained a sounding of over 2,400 fathoms in 1839, but it was not until 1869, when H. M. S. *Porcupine* was put at the disposal of the Royal Society for several cruises, that a series of deep soundings was obtained in the Atlantic and the first samples were collected by dredging the bottom.

【译文】1839 年，詹姆斯·克拉克·罗斯爵士曾测得海水深度超过 2,400 英寻，但直到 1869 年，皇家学会用英国"豪猪"号舰艇进行了几次巡航后，才在大西洋测得一个个海水深度，同时通过挖掘海底，取得了研究海底的首批样品。

【用法】

(1) 连词 but 后面连接的是一个强调句，所强调的部分是 not until 1869，when 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 1869。文中的 H. M. S. 是 Her Majesty's Ship(英国皇家海军舰艇)的缩略形式。

(2) at the disposal of 交由……支配，意思同 be in charge of/controlled by(任意使用；任意支配)。如：If you want some help preparing for the party I can be at your disposal all day. 如果你需要人帮忙准备聚会的话，我一整天都可以由你支配。

(3) Royal Society 皇家学会。

4. Shortly after this the famous H. M. S. *Challenger* expedition established the study of the sea-floor as a subject worthy of the most qualified physicists and geologists.

【译文】此后不久，英国著名的"挑战者"号舰艇对海底的那次考察，把对海床的研究确立为一个值得一流物理学家和地质学家从事的研究课题。

【用法】

(1) shortly 时间副词，意思为"不久，立刻，即刻"。

(2) after 这里为介词。

(3) 这个句子为倒装句，将句子的主语 the study of the sea-floor as a subject worthy of the most qualified physicists and geologists 和谓语 established 的位置倒装。这是因为这个句子的主语太长，若不倒装，会造成整个句子"头重脚轻"。

(4) worthy of the most qualified physicists and geologists 为形容词引导的短语作后置定语，修饰 subject。

(5) be worthy of 值得的，配得上的。

5. A burst of activity associated with the laying of submarine cables soon confirmed the Challenger's observation that many parts of the ocean were two to three miles deep, and the existence of underwater features of considerable magnitude.

【译文】铺设海底电缆的热潮很快证实了"挑战者"号的观察结果：海洋中很多地方可深达两三英里，水下特征差异极大。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 主语是 a burst of activity，它带了一个过去分词短语充当的后置定语 associated with the laying of submarine cables。谓语动词是 confirmed，后面是两个并列宾语 the Challengers observation 和 the existence of underwater features，其中第一个宾语带了一个同位语从句 that many parts of the ocean were two to three miles deep。

(2) a burst of activity 一阵行动，活动热潮。a burst of 一阵，又如：a burst of applause 一阵掌声。

(3) that many parts... deep 是同位语从句，作 observation 的同位语。

6. Since the sea covers the greater part of the earth's surface, it is quite reasonable to regard the sea floor as the basic form of the crust of the earth, with, superimposed upon it, the continents, together with the islands and other features of the oceans.

【译文】既然海洋覆盖着地球的大部分表面，因此完全有理由把海床看作地壳的基本模壳，上面附加着大陆以及岛屿和海洋的其他形态。

【用法】

(1) since 这里为连词，意思为"既然，由于"，引导原因状语从句。

(2) "it is＋形容词＋to do sth."为一个固定结构，意思为"做某事很……"，其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语为动词不定式 to do sth.。例如：

It is disappointing to know that you failed the exam. 知道你没通过考试，真是令人失望。

It is exciting to travel by train. 乘坐火车旅行令人很兴奋。

(3) regard... as... 固定搭配，意思为"将……看作为……，认为……是……"。

(4) with, superimposed upon it, the continents, together with the islands and other features of the oceans 为 with 引导的独立主格结构，这个短语实际上应该是：with the continents together with the islands and other features of the oceans superimposed upon it。这里由于独立主格的逻辑主语太长，所以将 superimposed upon it 前置。

(5) together with 固定词组，意思为"和……一起，同时，加之"。注意 together with 连接的两个成分作主语时的主谓一致，例如：

He, together with his parents, all agrees with his wife. 他和父母都同意他妻子的看法。

7. From the shore line, out to a distance which may be anywhere from a few miles to a few hundred miles, runs the gentle slope of the continental shelf, geologically part of the continents.

【译文】从海岸线向大海延伸几英里到几百英里的区域是大陆架慢坡，从地质学上来说，它是大陆的一部分。

【用法】

(1) which may be anywhere from a few miles to a few hundred miles 为定语从句，修饰 a distance。

(2) 整个句子为一个倒装句，句子的主语 the gentle slope of the continental shelf 和谓语 runs 的位置互换。主语比较长，而谓语只有一个动词，很短，若不倒装，句子会"头重脚轻"。

(3) geologically part of the continents 为后置定语，用来修饰主语 the gentle slope of the continental shelf。这里它相当于非限制性定语从句 which is geologically part of the

www.TopSage.com

大家网

continents。

8. The slope averages about 1 in 30, but contains..., and near its lower reaches there is a long tailing-off which is almost certainly the result of material transported out to deep water after being eroded from the continental masses.

TopSage.com

【译文】坡度平均约为 1/30，但其中包括陡峭的，乃到垂直的峭壁和沉积物覆盖的缓和的阶梯地带，在这个地带的低处是很长的一段尾沙地段，基本上可以断定这个地段是大陆块体上侵蚀下来的物质被水冲到深水处形成的。

【用法】

(1) which is almost certainly... masses 为定语从句，修饰 a long tailing-off。transported out to... masses 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 material。after being eroded from the continental masses 作时间状语，意即"从大陆块体上侵蚀下来后"。

(2) 1 in 30，1/30。

核心语法

➡and 连接的并列句

并列连词 and 连接两个并列关系的句子，and 前需要用逗号隔开，有此类用法的连词还有 or，but；而 nor，so，yet 既可作并列连词也可作连接性副词。此外还有六对关联并列连词：both... and，either... or，not... but，not... nor，neither... nor，not only... but also。

She is a teacher，and I am her student. 她是个老师，我是她的学生。

以 and 为代表的是表示语义引申的并列连词；以 or 为代表的是表示选择的并列连词；以 but 为代表的是表示转折和对比的并列连词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 31 The sculptor speaks

本节重点和难点

名词+to do sth.

- 动宾关系
- 被 only，last，next 等，以及序数词和最高级形容词修饰的名词常用不定式作定语

本课词汇

colour-blind *adj*. 色盲的
perception [pə'sepʃən] *n*. 知觉
comprehend [ˌkɔmpri'hend] *v*. 理解
spatial ['speiʃəl] *adj*. 空间的
visualize ['viʒuəlaiz] *v*. 使具形象，设想
reminiscence [ˌremi'nisəns] *n*. 回忆，联想
tadpole ['tædpəul] *n*. 蝌蚪
mushroom ['mʌʃrum] *n*. 蘑菇
carrot ['kærət] *n*. 胡萝卜
bud [bʌd] *n*. 花蕾
【词组】in bud 含苞待放，在发芽
lark [lɑːk] *n*. 云雀
ladybird ['leidibəːd] *n*. 瓢虫
bulrush ['bulrʌʃ] *n*. 芦苇

课文详解

1. Appreciation of sculpture depends upon the ability to respond to form in three dimensions.

【译文】对雕塑的鉴赏力取决于对立体的反应能力。

【用法】

(1) appreciation 这里的意思为“欣赏”。

(2) the ability to 固定搭配，来源于 be able to，意思为“……的能力”。

(3) respond to 固定词组，意思为“响应……”，其中介词 to 表示对象。

(4) form in three dimensions 这里 form 为名词，意思为“形态，外形”，而介词短语 in three dimensions 为后置定语。

(5) depend 意为“取决于，由……决定”（和 on 或 upon 连用，通常不用被动语态或进行时态）：Whether we can go for a picnic depends on the weather. 我们是否能去野餐取决于天气。

注：典型错误例句“他不是个可靠的人”正确译法应当是：He is not a man to be depended on。译成：He is not a man to be depended. 是错的。因为：“依靠某人”是 depend on (sb.)，误句中句末应加介词 on。这里不定式的被动式 to be depended on 作 man 的后置定语。也可以说 a man to depend on。但在否定句中常用不定式的被动式。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Many more people are "form-blind" than colour-blind. The child learning to see, first distinguishes only two-dimensional shape; it cannot judge distances, depths.

【译文】"形盲"的人数比"色盲"的人数要多得多。正在学看东西的儿童起初只会分辨二维形态,不会判断距离和深度。

【用法】

(1) many more 固定词组,意思为"更多的……",用于修饰可数名词。

(2) than 这里为介词,意思为"而不是"。

(3) learn to do sth. 意思为"学习做某事"。

3. Later, for its personal safety and practical needs, it has to develop (partly by means of touch) the ability to judge roughly three-dimensional distances.

【译文】后来,由于自身安全和实际需要,儿童必须发展(部分通过触觉)这种粗略地判断三维空间距离的能力。

【用法】

(1) for its personal... needs 为介词短语,作目的状语。it 指 the child。括号中的内容是补充说明部分,说明孩子发展判断三维空间的能力是部分依赖触觉。to judge... 为动词不定式,作定语,修饰 ability,意即"粗略判断三维空间距离的能力"。

(2) by means of 用……方法,依靠,如:She tried to explain by means of sign language. 她试图用手势语进行解释。

4. But having satisfied the requirements of practical necessity, most people go no further.

【译文】但是,大部分人在满足了实际需要后,就不再继续发展这种能力了。

【用法】

(1) having satisfied the requirements of practical necessity 这里用作原因状语,由于 have satisfied 的逻辑主语为 most people,而且两者之间为逻辑上的主谓关系,所以这里使用 ing 形式。

另外,这里也可以理解为省略了逻辑主语的独立主格结构,由于独立主格结构的逻辑主语与主句的主语相同,为了避免重复,省略了独立主格的逻辑主语。而当独立主格的逻辑主语与主句的逻辑主语不一样时,就不能省略独立主格的主语,例如:

My homework having been finished, I decided to play with Xiao Ming. 我的作业已经完成了,我决定和晓明去玩。

Having finished his homework, he feels a bit tired. 做完了作业,他觉得有点儿累。

(2) go further 习惯短语;意思为"走得更远,继续前进,继续进步"。

5. This is what the sculptor must do.

【译文】雕塑家就必须做到这一点。

【用法】这是一个复合句,what 引导表语从句。主语 this 指代的是前一段最后一句话 to make the further intellectual and emotional effort needed to comprehend form in its full spatial existence。

6. He must strive continually to think of, and use, form in its full spatial completeness.

【译文】他必须勤于想象并且利用形体在空间中的完整性。

【用法】

(1) form in its full spatial completeness 作动词 to think of 和 use 的宾语。其中的介词短语 in its full spatial completeness 作定语,修饰 form,意即"想象并且利用形体在空间

www.TopSage.com

中的完整性”。

(2) strive/straiv/*vi.* (strove/strəuv/, striven /ˈstrivən/) 奋斗，力求；与……作斗争(for, against)：～for still greater victories/excellence/a noble idea 力求更大的胜利/力争优秀/追求一个崇高的理想；～against temptation/difficulties 同诱惑/困难作斗争。

7. He gets the solid shape, as it were, inside his head—he thinks of it, whatever its size, as if he were holding it completely enclosed in the hollow of his hand.

【译文】可以这样说，当他想象一个物体时，不管其大小如何，他脑子里得到的是一个立体的概念，就好像完全握在自己手心里一样。

【用法】

(1) as it were 可以说是，作插入语。破折号后面的 he thinks of it 为同位语，解释说明前面的文字。whatever its size 作让步状语从句，size 后面省略了 may be，意思是“不管其大小如何”。as if 引导的是方式状语从句。enclosed in the hollow of his hand 作宾语补足语。

(2) 在正式文体中，由 as if 引导的方式状语从句多用 were，但在口语中也可用 was，如：He looked at me as if I were mad. 他看着我，就好像我疯了似的。

8. He mentally visualizes a complex form *from all round* itself;...

【译文】他的大脑能从物体周围的各个角度勾画出其复杂的形象……

【用法】

(1) from all round itself 从它的各个角度构想。该处介词用斜体，是为了强调。

(2) round 除了用作名词有“圆，圆形物，一轮”的含义外，还可用作形容词和副词，表示“圆的，大概的，十足的；循环地，在周围”的意思。

9. ...he identifies himself with its centre of gravity, its mass, its weight;...

【译文】他把自身和物体的重心、质量、重量融为一体。

【用法】identify/aiˈdentifai/*vt.*

(1) 认出(身份等)；鉴定；验明：～handwriting 鉴定手迹；～a corpse 验尸；I identified the coat at once—it was my brother's. 我立刻认出了那件外衣，那是我兄弟的。

(2) 使……等同起来；把……看作一致；对……有同感(with)：He identifies her happiness with his own. 他把她的幸福看作是自己的幸福。～oneself with 和……有联系；参加到……中去：He identified himself as an old friend of the family. 他自称是那个家庭的老朋友。

(3) [生]确定……在分类学中的位置 *vi.* 成为一体；打成一片；[心]认同：The audience began to～with the main character of the play. 观众开始对剧中主人公产生了共鸣。

10. He must, for example, perceive an egg as a simple single solid shape, quite apart from its significance as food, or from the literary idea that it will become a bird.

【译文】例如，观察者必须感觉到它是一个单一的实体形态，而完全不靠它的食用意义或它会变成鸟这样的文学概念来感觉。

【用法】

(1) for example 为插入语。

(2) that it will become a bird 是 idea 的同位语从句。

(3) quite apart from its significance...a bird 完全抛开它的食用意义或它会变成鸟这样的文学概念来感觉。apart from 撇开，除……以外，如：

www.TopSage.com

大家网

He works until nine o'clock every evening, and that's quite apart from the work he does over the weekend. 他每天晚上都工作到 9 点钟，还未算他在周末干的活。

Apart from you and me, I don't think there was anyone there under thirty. 除了你和我，我认为那儿的人没有在 30 岁以下的。

TopSage.com

核心语法

➡名词＋ to do sth.

1. 动宾关系：

即所修饰的名词在逻辑上作不定式的宾语。

a. She has four children to take care of.

b. I had no place to live in.

c. You just regard me as a thing, an object to look at, to use, to touch, but not to listen to or to take seriously. 你只把我当作一件东西，一件任你看、任你用、任你抚摸的东西，但就是不听我的话，不认真对待我。

d. I gave the kid a comic to read.

e. He needs a place to live in.

f. I have no partner to speak English with.

g. I need a pen to write with.

h. I need a piece of paper to write on.

注意：

(1) 不定式一般不用被动形式。

(2) 不定式动词后不能再加宾语

a. I gave the kid a comic to read it. (×)

b. I need something to eat it. (×)

(3) 不定式动词后介词不省略

a. I have no partner to speak English. (×)

b. I need a pen to write. (×)

2. 被 only, last, next 等，以及序数词和最高级形容词修饰的名词常用不定式作定语。(考试重点)

a. I don't think he is the best man to do the job. 我认为他并不是做这工作的最好人选。

b. The next train to arrive is from New York. 下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。

c. Clint was the second person to fall into this trap. Clint 是第二个掉进陷阱的人。

d. Clint was the only person to survive the air crash. Clint 是这次空难事故中惟一的幸存者。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 32 Galileo reborn

本节重点和难点

- 动名词复合结构的用法

本课词汇

controversy ['kɔntrəvə:si] *n.* 争议,争论
dust [dʌst] *n.* ①尘土 ②砂 *v.* ①去掉灰尘 ②撒
clash [klæʃ] *n.* 冲突
Inquisition [inkwi'ziʃən] (罗马天主教的)宗教法庭
perspective [pə'spektiv] *n.* 观点,看法
despise [dis'paiz] *v.* 蔑视
Aristotelian [æristə'ti:liən] *n.* 亚里士多德学派的人
Aristotle ['æristɔtl] (人名)亚里士多德
Ptolemy ['tɔlimi] (人名)托勒密
Leaning Tower of Pisa 比萨斜塔
generalize ['dʒenərəlaiz] *v.* 归纳
【词组】generalize a conclusion from facts 从事实中引出结论/generalize the use of 推广……的使用
undercurrent ['ʌndəˌkʌrənt] *n.* 潜流
theoretical [ˌθiə'retikl] *adj.* 理论的,理论上的
potentiality [pəˌtenʃi'æləti] *n.* 潜能
intimate ['intimit] *adj.* 详尽的
familiarity [fəˌmili'ærəti] *n.* 熟悉,通晓;亲密,亲近
culpable ['kʌlpəbl] *adj.* 应受谴责的
spiral ['spaiərəl] *adj.* 螺旋状的
nebula ['nebjulə] *n.* (*pl.*) nebulae ['nebjuli:] 星云
scratch [skrætʃ] *n.* 擦痕
contrivance [kən'traivəns] *n.* 器械
distort [dis'tɔ:t] *v.* 歪曲

课文详解

1. In his own lifetime Galileo was the centre of violent controversy; but the scientific dust has long since settled, and today we can see even his famous clash with the Inquisition in something like its proper perspective.

【译文】伽利略在世时是激烈论战的中心。但是,自他逝世以来,那场科学上的纷争早已平息了下来,甚至他和宗教法庭的著名冲突,我们今天也能正确如实地看待。

【用法】

(1) 由 and, but 两个连词连接三个并列的句子。

(2) long since 作状语,表示"很久以前",如:I've long since forgotten any Latin I ever learned. 我早就把我学过的拉丁语忘记了。

(3) in something like its proper perspective 以正确的眼光或观点。some thing like 多少,大约,如:There are something like 6 million people living in the capital. 大约有 600 万人口住在首都。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. But, in contrast, it is only in modern times that Galileo has become a problem child for historians of science.

【译文】但是，相比之下，对于科学史家来说，伽利略只是在现代才变成一个的难题。

【用法】

(1) 该句为强调句，所强调的部分是 only in modern times。按正常语序应该是：Galileo has become a... only in modern times。a problem child 用在此处，是说将伽利略比作一个"问题儿童"，这是一种比喻的手法，意思是"新出现的问题"。

(2) in/by contrast 形成对照。在句子中作插入语，如：Their economy has expanded enormously in the last five years, whereas ours, by/in contrast, has declined. 他们的经济在过去的 5 年中得到巨大的发展，而与此形成对照的是，我们的经济则下降了。

3. He was, above all, a man who experimented: who despised the prejudices and book learning of the Aristotelians, who put his questions to nature instead of to the ancients, and who drew his conclusions fearlessly.

【译文】他首先是个实验工作者，他蔑视亚里士多德学派的偏见和空洞的书本知识。他向自然界而不是向古人提出问题，并大胆地得出自己的结论。

【用法】

(1) 该句中一连用了 4 个由关系代词 who 引导的修饰 a man 的定语从句。这 4 个并列的定语从句构成排比结构，起到加强语气的作用。

(2) above all 作插入语，意即"首先"、"首要"，如：Above all, don't forget to write to me. 首要的是别忘记给我写信。

(3) put his questions to nature 他向自然界提出问题。draw a conclusion 得出结论。

4. He had been the first... and he had seen there evidence enough to overthrow Aristotle and Ptolemy together.

【译文】他是第一个把望远镜对准天空的人，观察到的论据足以把亚里士多德和托勒密一起推翻。

【用法】there 指 in the sky。enough to overthrow... 作定语，修饰 evidence。Aristotle 亚里士多德，古希腊哲学家、科学家，亚历山大大帝的教师。Ptolemy 托勒密，公元 2 世纪时希腊天文学家、数学家及地理学家，提出太阳绕地球运行的学说。

5. He was the man who climbed the Leaning Tower of Pisa and dropped various weights from the top, who rolled balls down inclined planes, and then generalized the results of his many experiments into the famous law of free fall.

【译文】他就是那个曾经爬上比萨斜塔，从塔顶向下抛掷各种重物的人；他就是那个使球体沿斜面向下滚动，然后将多次实验结果概括成著名的自由落体定律的人。

【用法】

(1) 句子中的两个由关系代词 who 引导的从句都是定语从句，修饰 the man。from the top 后面省略了 of the Leaning Tower of Pisa(比萨斜塔)。

(2) generalize(亦作 generalise)/ˈdʒɛnərəlaiz/ *vi.* ①从少量资料归纳出看法：You can't generalizing about English food from only two meals. 可不能单靠两顿饭就对英国菜妄下评语。②统一进行概括：We should stop generalize and discuss each problem separately. 我们应该停止泛论，要把每个问题分开来讨论。

(3) the famous law of free fall 著名的自由落体定律。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

6. But a closer study of the evidence, supported by a deeper sense of the period, and particularly by a new consciousness of the philosophical undercurrents in the scientific revolution, has profoundly modified this view of Galileo.

【译文】但是对那个时代的深化了解，尤其是以科学革命中哲学潜流的新意识为依据，进一步仔细研究，就会极大地改变对伽利略的看法。

【用法】

(1) 这是一个简单句：主语为 a study；谓语为 has profoundly modified；宾语为 this view of Galileo。

(2) supported by... and by 为过去分词短语作后置定语，修饰 the evidence。

7. Today, although the old Galileo lives on in many popular writings, ...

【译文】今天，虽然已故的伽利略继续活在许多通俗读物中……

【用法】live on 继续活下去，如：Long after he was dead, his name lived on because of his good deeds. 他去世很久以后，因为他的善行，他的名字仍然活在人们心中。

8. His telescopic observations are justly immortal; they aroused great interest at the time, they had..., and they provided a striking demonstration of the potentialities hidden in instruments and apparatus.

【译文】伽利略用望远镜所作的观察确实是不朽的，这些观察在当时引起了人们极大的兴趣，具有重要的理论意义，并充分显示出了仪表和仪器的潜在力量。

【用法】句子中的 3 个 they 都指 his telescopic observations。at the time 当时。hidden in instruments and apparatus 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 potentialities，意即"仪表和仪器的潜在力量"。

9. But can we blame those who looked and failed to see what Galileo saw, if we remember that to use a telescope at the limit of its powers calls for long experience and intimate familiarity with one's instrument?

【译文】但是，如果我们想到使用一架倍数有限的望远镜需要长期的经验和对自己仪器的熟悉程度，那么我们怎么能去责备观察了天空但没有看到伽利略所看到的东西的那些人呢？

【用法】

(1) who looked and failed to see what Galileo saw 为定语从句，修饰 those。其中的 what Galileo saw 为动词不定式 to see 的宾语从句。if 引导的是该句的条件状语从句，that 引导的是该从句谓语动词 remember 的宾语从句。动词不定式 to use a telescope... powers 为该宾语从句的主语，意即"用望远镜的极限功率"，calls for 为其谓语动词。

(2) call for 需要，要求，如：

The position calls for an experienced engineer. 这个职位需要一位有经验的工程师。

10. Was the philosopher who refused to look through Galileo's telescope more culpable than those who alleged that the spiral nebulae observed with Lord Rosse's great telescope in the eighteen-forties were scratches left by the grinder?

【译文】难道曾拒绝使用伽利略的望远镜去观察天空的哲学家比那些 19 世纪 40 年代硬把用罗斯勋爵高倍望远镜观测到的螺旋状星云说成是磨镜工留下的磨镜划痕应受到更大的谴责吗？

【用法】

(1) 第一个 who 引导定语从句修饰 the philosopher；第二个 who 也引导一个定语从句修饰 those。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) more culpable 为该句表语部分。

(3) than 引导比较状语。

(4) that... in the eighteen-forties... 作 alleged 的宾语从句，说明 alleged 的内容。

(5) observed... 为过去分词短语作定语修饰 the spiral nebulae。

11. We can perhaps forgive those who said the moons of Jupiter were produced by Galileos spyglass if we recall that in his day, as for centuries before, curved glass was the popular contrivance for producing not truth but illusion, untruth; and if a single curved glass would distort nature, how much more would a pair of them?

【译文】如果我们回想一下伽利略之前的几个世纪期间，曲面镜一直是一种用于产生幻影而不是产生真相的把戏装置，那么我们就会原谅那些当初把伽利略观察到的木星卫星说成是伽利略用他的小望远镜变出来的人们，何况一片曲面镜就可歪曲自然，那么伽利略的两片曲面镜对自然的歪曲又该多大呢？

【用法】

(1) who said... by Galileo's spyglass 是修饰 those 的定语从句。

(2) 由分号后的 and 连接两个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

(3) 第一个条件状语从句中又包含一个 that 引导的宾语从句，curved glass 为宾语从句的主语，was the popular... untruth 为宾语从句的谓语部分。

(4) as for centuries before 为插入语。

(5) illusion 和 untruth 为同位语关系。

(6) 句末省略了 distort nature。

(7) before 和 ago 的区别

这两个词都有"以前"的意思。before 用于指过去某个时间之前的情况；ago 则从现时着眼谈过去的情况：Last summer, I finally left the firm that I had joined eighteen years before. 去年夏天，我最终离开了公司，那家公司是我 18 年前加入的。句中的 before 指去年夏天之前的 18 年；I started working for this firm three years ago. 三年前我开始在这家公司工作。句中 three years ago 是指说话人说话时之前的三年。before 可用于 as 或 than 引起的从句中：Brett was nervous as I has never seen her before. 由于布雷特以前从未见过我，因此她有些紧张；Apparently he and Robert were on better terms than ever before. 很明显他和罗伯特的相处比以往任何时候都更融洽。

核心语法

➡动名词复合结构的用法

1. 这种结构常在句中作主语或宾语。

a. Tom's coming home at last was a great consolation. (作主语)

b. Do you mind my making a suggestion? (作及物动词宾语)

c. Our discussion of earthquakes would be incomplete if we didn't raise the possibility of their being caused by external forces. (作介词宾语)要是我们没有考虑到外部力量造成地震的可能性，那么我们对于地震的研究还有欠缺。

d. Clint insisted on my reading the letter.

e. What are the chances of a sleepwalker's committing a murder or doing something else

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

extraordinary in his sleep? 梦游者在睡梦中实施谋杀或做出其他一些超常活动的可能性有多大呢?

这种动名词复合结构在某些情况下，可以将其中的物主代词（如：his，my，your 等）改为宾格代词（如：him，me，you 等）或将其中的所有格名词（如：Mary's，Tom's 等）改为普通格名词（如：Mary，Tom 等）。

a. It's no use Tom arguing with his boss.

b. Do you mind me making a suggestion?

c. I am annoyed about John forgetting to pay.

2. 在应用动名词复合结构时，什么时候用普通格，什么时候用所有格，一般遵循下面规定：

(1) 若动名词复合结构在句中作主语，最好用所有格形式：

a. Tom's refusing to accept the invitation upset me.

b. His refusing to accept the invitation upset me.（不宜用 him refusing）

c. It was a great consolation his coming home at last.（不宜用 him coming）

(2) 动名词复合结构在句中作宾语时，用普通格或所有格均可。

a. Do you mind me making a suggestion?

b. I am annoyed about John forgetting to pay.

三种非谓语动词当中，动名词用法相对来说较为简单。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 33 Education

本节重点和难点

● 动名词作宾语

本课词汇

adverse ['ædvəːs] *adj*. 敌对的，不利的；有害的；贬斥的

purchasable ['pəːtʃəsəbl] *adj*. 可买到的

preacher ['priːtʃə(r)] *n*. ①传道士，牧师；(天主教多明我会的)修道士②说教者；鼓吹者，宣传者

defendant [di'fendənt] *n*. 被告

outlook ['autluk] *n*. ①景色，风光 ②观点，见解 ③前景，前途 ④姿势，态度 ⑤方面

capacity [kə'pæsəti] *n*. ①容量，容积 ②能力，性能 ③地位；职责

【短语】in the capacity of 以……的身份/at full capacity 全速，全力/to the best of one's capacity 尽力，尽最大可能/of great capacity 智能的/to capacity 满满地

democratic [ˌdemə'krætik] *adj*. 民主政体的，民主作风的；民众的

tribal ['traibl] *adj*. 部族的，种族的

illiterate [i'litərət] *adj*. 文盲的，未受教育的 *n*. 文盲，失学者

compusory [kəm'pʌlsəri]*adj*. 义务的

deem [diːm] *v*. 认为，相信

【短语】deem highly of... 高度评价

【辨析】deem, think, consider

deem *vt*. 认为：有武断的意味，常带宾语补足语或宾语从句。正式书面语或用在正式的场合中。think *vt*. 认为，想：一般用语，可带宾语从句或宾语补足语。consider *vt*. 考虑，认为：作"考虑"解，较偏重考虑后得出的结论；作"认为"解，需带宾语从句或宾语补足语。

means [miːnz] *n*. ①手段，方法 ②财产，收入

hamper ['hæmpə] *vt*. 妨碍，阻碍，牵制 *n*. 有盖的大篮子

【辨析】hamper, fetter, shackle

hamper *vt*. 妨碍，牵制：指思想或身体由于某种东西的限制而使某人不能自由行动或顺利发展。fetter *vt*. 束缚，羁绊：语气较重，指手脚被某种东西束缚住了，只能待在某处，不能自由行动。用于比喻指思想被某种东西束缚了，失去了自由。shackle *vt*. 束缚，羁绊：语气最强，指手脚被某种东西束缚了，不能自由活动。用于比喻指思想受到某种东西桎梏，不能自由发展。

Savannah [sə'vænə] ①萨凡纳(在萨凡纳河河口) ②萨凡纳河美国东南部

juvenile ['dʒuːvənail] *a*. ①幼稚的 ②少年的

delinquency [di'liŋkwənsi] *n*. ①懈怠，失职 ②犯法，罪过 ③欠款

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com 大家网

课文详解

1. A man without an education, many of us believe, is an unfortunate victim of adverse circumstances, deprived of one of the greatest twentieth-century opportunities.

【译文】我们许多人都相信,一个没有受过教育的人,是逆境的牺牲品,被剥夺了 20 世纪最优越的机会之一。

【用法】

(1) without an education 为介词短语修饰 a man。

(2) many of us believe 作插入语,进行补充说明。deprived of... 为过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 victim。

(3) deprive *vt.* 剥夺,夺去,使丧失［同义］divest, make sb. lose, rob, strip, abridge, bereave, debar, depose, despoil, dispossess, separate［反义］give, add, assist, confer, endow, enrich, repay, restore［词组］deprive sb. of 剥夺某人的……(rob, strip)［用法］deprive 不能直接跟两个宾语,常用的是 deprive sb. of... 的搭配。［例子］deprive the enemy of the power to resist 使敌人丧失抵抗力;be deprived of one's right 被剥夺权利

2. Convinced of the importance of education, modern states "invest" in institutions of learning to get back "interest" in the form of a large group of enlightened young men and women who are potential leaders.

【译文】现代国家深深懂得教育的重要性,对教育机构投资,收回的"利息"便是培养出大批有知识的男女青年,他们会成为未来的栋梁。

【用法】

(1) Convinced of... 作原因状语,用以说明"invest" in institutions of learning 的原因,即"由于深信教育的重要性"。institutions of learning 教育机构。该句中的 invest 和 interest 用引号表示该处是一种借喻的手法。用"投资"和"利息"这两个金融方面的词汇,表示对教育的投入以及由此培养出来大批的人才。in the form of 以……形式,作定语修饰 interest,意即"以大批可望成为领导人的有知识的男女青年的形式取回利息"。

(2) convince/kən'vins/*vt.* 使确信;说服:~sb. of sth. 使某人确信某事:He ~d me of his sincerity. 他使我确信他的真诚。/The buyer was ~d of the salesman's integrity. 那顾客相信那个营业员的正直;be convinced 后面除接 of 短语外,还可以接 that 引出的从句:We are convinced that our project will succeed. 我们坚信,我们的计划会成功。~sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事的说法虽非罕见,但讲究文字的著作家大都不用,他们认为该用 persuade 代替 convince。

(3) invest in 在……投资,如:He has invested heavily in bonds. 他大量买进了债券。

3. Eduction, with its cycles of instruction so carefully worked out, punctuated by textbooks—those purchasable wells of wisdom—what would civilization be like without its benefits?

【译文】教育,以其教学周期如此精心地安排,并以教科书——那些可以买到的智慧源泉——予以强化,如果不受其惠,文明将会是个什么样子呢?

【用法】

(1) with its cycles of instruction so carefully worked out 为 with 引导的独立主格结构,在句中表示伴随。独立主格结构的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致,它独立存在。独立

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

主格结构一般位于句首，有时也位于句中或句尾，一般用逗号将独立主格和主句分开，例如：

With the white skirt on you, you look much smarter. 穿上这身白色的裙子，你看上去更靓丽了。

With the floor wet and dirty, we had to stay outside. 地板又湿又脏，我们只好待在外面。

(2) work out 固定词组，意思为"解决，设计出"。

(3) those purchasable wells of wisdom 为 textbooks 的同位语。

(4) what would civilization be like without its benefits 这里使用了虚拟语气，由于 without its benefits 是与事实不符的，所以这里应该使用虚拟语气。

4. So much is certain: that we would have doctors and preachers, lawyers and defendants, marriages and births—but our spiritual outlook would be different. We would lay less stress on "facts and figures" and more on a good memory, on applied psychology, and on the capacity of a man to get along with his fellow-citizens.

【译文】至少，这些是可以肯定的：虽然我们还会有医生和牧师、律师和被告、婚姻和生育，但人们的精神面貌将是另一个样子。人们不会再重视"资料和数据"，而靠好记性、实用心理学和与同伴相处的能力。

【用法】

(1) so much is certain 有承上启下的作用：一方面回答了前一段最后一句的提问，另一方面开始列举没有教育将会给社会文明带来的影响。

(2) 这里的句子中使用了以"would＋动词原形"为标志的虚拟语气。

(3) lay stress on 固定搭配，意思为"强调……，重视……"。

(4) 这里 lay stress on 的宾语有四个："facts and figures"，a good memory，applied psychology，the capacity of a man to get along with his fellow-citizens。

(5) get along with 固定词组，意思为"与……相处"。

5. If our educational system were fashioned after its bookless past we would have the most democratic form of "college" imaginable.

【译文】如果我们的教育制度仿效没有书籍的古代教育，我们的学院将具有可以想象得出的最民主的形式了。

【用法】

(1) 这里使用了典型的与现在事实相反的虚拟语气，这种虚拟语气是由 if 引导的条件状语从句引入的，其一般的结构为：在 if 引导的条件状语从句中，谓语动词用动词的过去式（系动词 be 采用 were），主句中用 would/should/could/might＋动词原形。例如：

If I were you, I would go to Paris for a visit. 如果我是你，我会到巴黎去旅游。

(2) fashion after 固定词组，意思为"仿照……，参照……而成"。

(3) past 这里为名词，意思为"过去，以前"。

(4) imaginable 为形容词作后置定语，修饰 college。

6. Among tribal people all knowledge inherited by tradition is shared by all; it is taught to every member of the tribe so that in this respect everybody is equally equipped for life.

【译文】在部落中，通过传统继承的知识为所有人共享，并传授给部落中的每一个成员。从这个意义上讲，人人受到的有关生活本领的教育是相等的。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

【用法】inherited by tradition 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 all knowledge，表示“由传统继承来的所有知识”。is shared 为该句谓语，表示“为所有人共享”。share 分享，共同具有，如：The thieves shared the loot among themselves. 窃贼分赃。分号后面的代词 it 代表 all knowledge。in this respect 在这方面，在这点上，指接受知识方面。be equipped for 为……而装备，如：He was well equipped for the trip. 他为这次旅行装备充分。

7. It is the ideal condition of the “equal start” which only our most progressive forms of modern education try to regain. In primitive cultures the obligation to seek and to receive the traditional instruction is binding to all.

【译文】这就是我们最进步的现代教育试图恢复的“平等起步”的理想状况。在原始文化中，寻求和接受传统教育的义务对全民都有约束力。

【用法】

(1) the ideal condition 和 the “equal start”为同位语关系，由介词 of 将它们连接起来。

(2) which only our most progressive forms of modern education try to regain 为定语从句，用来修饰 the “equal start”。

(3) to seek and to receive the traditional instruction 为 the obligation 的定语，即动词不定式短语用作后置定语。

(4) bind sth. to... 固定搭配，意思为“将某物绑在……上”。

8. There are no “illiterates” —if the term can be applied to peoples without a script—while our own compulsory school attendance became law in Germany in 1642, in France in 1806, and in England in 1876, and is still non-existent in a number of “civilized” nations.

【译文】没有“文盲”(如果这个字眼可以用于没有文字的民族的话)，而我们的义务教育成为法律在德国是在 1642 年，在法国是在 1806 年，在英国是在 1876 年。今天，在许多“文明”国家里，义务教育迄今尚未实行。

【用法】

(1) while... 这里是并列句，含有转折的意思。

(2) 第二个连词 and 连接两个句子。

(3) if the term can be applied to peoples without a script 为插入语，对 illiterates 作进一步的解释，term 指 illiterates。without a script 作定语，修饰 peoples，表示“没有文字的”。while 在此处表达的是“而”的意思。is still non-existent 的主语是 our own compulsory school attendance。

(4) script /skript/*n.* ①(可数，不可数)(一套)字母；字母表：words printed in Arabic ～用阿拉伯字母印的词 ②(不可数)手写本；手迹：neat ～整洁的字迹 ③(可数)(演讲、戏剧、广播的)原稿；底稿：a broadcast/shooting～广播稿/电影剧本，a～editor 广播(或电视)节目稿编辑，～writer 电影(或戏剧)剧本作者；广播(或电视)节目撰稿者 ④(可数)书面答卷。

9. Education in the wilderness is not a matter of monetary means.

【译文】荒凉地区的教育问题不是钱的问题。

【用法】动词词组 be a matter of sth. 的意思是“有关……的问题”。如：The inefficiency of this factory is not a matter of equipment, but a matter of management. 这个工厂效率太低不是设备的问题，而是管理的问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. All are entitled to an equal start.

【译文】所有的人都享有平等起步的权利。

【用法】entitle/in'taitl/*vt.* ① 使……有资格(做某事);给予……权利(to):~sb. to sth./to do sth. 使某人有资格做某事 ② 给……定名;把……叫做:The new book is ~d How To Write Letters. 这新书名叫《怎样写信》。

11. There is none of the hurry which, in our society, often hampers the full development of a growing personality.

【译文】那里没有我们今天社会中的匆忙生活,而匆忙的生活常常妨碍个性的全面发展。

【用法】

(1) which 引导的是定语从句,其先行词是 hurry,意即"我们社会中妨碍个性全面发展的匆忙生活"。in our society 为插入语。

(2) hurry 在此处用作名词,意思是"匆忙,仓促",如:The frequent hurry and trivial activity of daily life seem to prevent, or at least, discourage quiet and intensive thinking. 不停的动乱和日常生活的琐碎的活动看来会阻碍或者至少会使人不能安静地集中思考。

(3) hamper 束缚,阻碍,如:We were hampered in the ice until noon. 我们一直被冰雪所困,直到中午。

12. There, a child grows up under the ever-present attention of his parents; therefore the jungles and the savannahs know of no "juvenile delinquency".

【译文】荒凉地区的孩子无时无刻不在父母关怀下成长。因此,丛林和荒凉地区不知道什么叫"青少年犯罪"。

【用法】There 指 the wilderness,即"荒凉地区"。know of 听说,知道,如:Do you know of any computer stores in this neighbourhood? 你听说这附近有电脑商店吗? 该句中 know of 的主语是无生命的,jungles and the savannahs 此处是拟人用法。juvenile delinquency 青少年犯罪。

13. No necessity of making a living away from home results in neglect of children, and no father is confronted with his inability to "buy" an education for his child.

【译文】人们没有必要离家谋生,所以不会产生孩子无人管的问题,也不存在父亲无力为孩子支付教育费用而犯难的问题。

【用法】

(1) 句首省略 There is。

(2) away from home 为状语修饰 making a living。

(3) of making... from home 为定语修饰 necessity。

核心语法

➡动名词作宾语

1. 下列动词后只能用动名词作宾语:

admit, advise, allow, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, consider, contemplate, delay, deny, detest, discuss, dislike, encourage, endure, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, favor, feel like, finish, forbid, forgive, give up, can't help, imagine, involve, leave off, mention, mind,

www.TopSage.com

miss, overlook, permit, postpone, practise, prohibit, put off, recommend, resent, resist, risk, can't stand, suggest, tolerate, understand 等。

a. I will overlook your being so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.

b. Many of the things we do involve taking some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

c. Being a bad-tempered man, he would not tolerate having his lectures interrupted.

d. Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested ________ at the next town. （四级真题）

A. to stop　　B. stopping　　C. stop　　D. having stopped

正确答案:B

e. Putting in a new window will ________ cutting away part of the roof. （四级真题）

A. include　　B. involve　　C. contain　　D. comprise

正确答案:B

f. They are considering ________ before the prices go up. （四级真题）

A. of buying the house　　B. buying the house

C. with buying the house　　D. to buy the house

正确答案:B

g. She was so angry that she felt like ________ something at him. （四级真题）

A. to throw　　B. throwing　　C. to have thrown　　D. having thrown

正确答案:B

2. 接动名词与接动词不定式有区别的动词

在英语中有很多动词后接动名词和接动词不定式均可，但在意思上往往有很大的差别，现将这样的动词分类归纳整理如下：

(1) 在 demand, deserve, need, require, want 等。动词后面，动名词主动形式表示被动的意思，若改接动词不定式，则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

a. The garden needs watering/to be watered. 不说:The garden needs being watered.

b. Your hair needs cutting/to be cut.

(2) 与 remember, forget, stop, go on 和 regret 连用时，动名词指发生于这些动词之前的事，不定式表示发生在它们之后的事。

①remember

remember doing sth. : remember/recall something that happened in the past. 记得已做过某事。

a. I still remember being taken to Beijing for the first time.

b. I don't remember/recall locking my suitcase. = As far as I know, my suitcase should be open.

remember to do sth. : remember to perform a responsibility, duty or task 记得需要履行职责或完成任务。

a. Remember to go to the post office, won't you?

b. Remember to do some shopping after work.

c. Clint always remembers to turn off the lights when he leaves the room.

②forget

forget doing sth. : forget something that happened in the past. 忘记了已做过的某事。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

I forgot locking the door. So when I came back, I found the door locked. = As far as I know, the door should be open.

TopSage.com

forget to do sth. : forget to perform a responsibility, duty or task 忘记要做的事。As well as getting on everybody's nerves, he's got a habit of borrowing money and forgetting to pay it back.

③stop

stop doing：停下经常做的或手头正在做的事。

I really must stop smoking.

stop to do：中断下来，以便做某事。

Stop to have a rest.

3. 特别关注的动词

上面接动名词的动词中有几个需特别注意：allow，advise，forbid，permit，recommend

(1) 这些动词后要接动名词作宾语，如：allow doing 等。

(2) 但在有人作宾语时，则后接动词不定式(用作宾补)，如：allow somebody to do。请看例句：

a. We don't allow smoking in the lecture room.

b. We don't allow people to smoke in the lecture room.

c. I wouldn't advise taking the car—there's nowhere to park. 我不主张开车去，因为没地方停车。

d. I wouldn't advise you to take the car. 我劝你不要开车去。

e. I recommended going by subway. 我建议坐地铁去。

f. The doctor recommended me to take a few days' rest. 医生劝我休息几天。

g. I advise you ________ before ________ final decision.

A. waiting/to make　　B. to wait/make

C. waiting/making　　D. to wait/making

正确答案：D

4. to doing

在英文中带有 to 的固定短语，其后须接动名词：

look forward to, object to, be/get used to, prefer doing to doing, in addition to, be accustomed to doing, amount to doing(意味着……), take to doing(开始喜欢做……), devote... to doing/be devoted to doing, dedicate... to doing/be dedicated to doing, be averse to doing, be opposed to doing, get round to doing, the way/approach/solution to doing, etc.

a. I am looking forward to hearing from you. 我期待你的来信。

b. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.

c. I am accustomed to sleeping with the lights on.

d. The students object to increasing their tuition.

e. After a long delay I finally got round to making inquiries into the matter. 拖了很长时间以后，我才终于抽出时间来过问这件事。

f. The children are opposed to ________ without their uncle.　　(四级真题)

A. have a party　　B. have held a party

C. take part in a party　　D. having a party

正确答案：D

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

g. I have no objection ________ the evening with them. (四级真题)

A. to spend B. spending

C. of spending D. to spending

正确答案:D

h. They don't object ________ the meeting until Friday. (四级真题)

A. to our postponing B. that we postpone

C. for postponing D. to postpone

正确答案:A

关于这样的短语,需要大家在平时的学习过程中注意不断地积累和总结。

5.其他用动名词的结构:

(1) have + difficulty/trouble/problem/(a lot of) fun/(lots of) pleasure/a hard time/a good time/a difficult time, etc. + (in) doing sth.

但要注意:take the trouble to do sth., trouble to do sth., have (no) time to do sth.。

a. W: How do you find your new apartment?

M: Well, it's quite nice really, although I have a hard time getting used to living in a big place.

Q: What is the man's problem?

A: He finds the new apartment too big for him.

b. I have learned, however, that change always seems more difficult at the outset, and if I work hard at remaining positive and view changes as opportunities to grow, I have an easier time dealing with them.

c. I worked so late in the office last night that I hardly had time ________ the last bus. (考研真题)

A. to have caught B. to catch

C. catching D. having caught

正确答案:B

d. The teachers have had some problems ________ when they should return the final papers to the students.

A. to decide B. deciding

C. decided D. having decided

正确答案:B

(2) can't help doing, can't resist doing, can't keep from doing, can't hold back from doing, can't keep back from doing 这些短语均表示"情不自禁……,不得不……"。

不过注意:can't help but do, can't but do, can't choose but do, etc.

No one can help liking Tom; he is such a cute boy.

(3) be worth doing "值得做……",主动形式表示被动的意思。

= be worthy of being done 或 to be done

a. The book is worth reading.

b. The book is worthy of being read.

c. The book is worthy to be read.

此外还有 be busy doing,但是注意 be busy with sth. 这个结构。

remind sb. of sth.,但是不说:remind sb. of doing sth.,而是 remind sb. to do sth.。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 34 Adolescence

本节重点和难点

- there be 句型中用动名词

本课词汇

adolescence [ˌædəˈlesns] *n.* 青春期
slur [sləː] *n.* 诋毁
adolescent [ˌædəˈlesnt] *n.* 青少年
disloyalty [disˈlɔiəlti] *n.* 不忠实
spiteful [ˈspaitfl] *adj.* 恶意的，怀恨的
disillusionment [ˌdisiˈluːʒənmənt] *n.* 幻灭感
evaluation [iˌvæljuˈeiʃən] *n.* 评价
infallibility [inˌfæləˈbiliti] *n.* 一贯正确
resent [riˈzent] *v.* 怨恨
【词组】resent doing ... 怨恨……
sincerity [sinˈseriti] *n.* 诚意，诚恳，真诚
victorian *adj.* 维多利亚式的
retreat [riˈtriːt] *v.* 后退
unreasoning [ʌnˈriːzniŋ] *adj.* 不凭理智的
authoritarian [ɔːˌθɔriˈtɛəriən] *adj.* 专制的
cow [kau] *v.* 吓唬

课文详解

1. Parents are often upset when their children praise the homes of their friends and regard it as a slur on their own cooking, or cleaning, or furniture, and often are foolish enough to let the adolescents see that they are annoyed.

【译文】当家长听到孩子赞扬自己朋友的家时，总感到不安，认为这是孩子在嫌弃自家的饭菜、卫生或家具，而且愚蠢地让孩子看出自己的烦恼。

【用法】

(1) upset 这里为形容词，意思为“不安的”。
(2) regard sth. /sb. as 固定搭配，意思为“认为某人或某物是……”。
(3) a slur on 固定搭配，意思为“对……的嫌弃”。
(4) enough 这里为副词，用来修饰形容词。
(5) that they are annoyed 为宾语从句，充当 see 的宾语。
(6) let sb. do sth. 意思为“让某人做某事”，由于 let 为使役动词，其后的宾语补足语使用不带 to 的动词不定式。

2. They may even accuse them of disloyalty, or make some spiteful remark about the friends' parents.

【译文】他们甚至责备孩子不忠，或是讲些小朋友家长的坏话。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) accuse of 指责,指控……犯有……,如:
He accused me of cheating. 他指责我作弊。
He was accused of murder. 他被控犯有谋杀罪。
(2) make remark on/about 固定搭配,"对……做出评价"。

3. Such a loss of dignity and descent into childish behaviour on the part of the adults deeply shocks the adolescents, and makes them resolve that in future they will not talk to their parents about the places or people they visit.

【译文】家长这种有失身份和孩子气的作法使青春期的孩子大为震惊,使他们决心以后不再向父母讲述去过的地方和见过的人。

【用法】

(1) 介词词组 on the part of 的意思是"在某人方面,就某人来说,出自某人的一方",如:
Fake commodity means evil on the part of its producer and hurt on the part of its user.
假货在生产者方意味着邪恶,在使用者方意味着伤害。
(2) 第一个 and 连接 dignity 和 descent。
(3) 第二个 and 连接两个并列句子:shocks... 和 makes...。
(4) resolve 后的 that 引导一个宾语从句,作 resolve 的宾语。

4. Before very long the patents will be complaining that the child is so secretive and never tells them anything, but they seldom realize that they have brought this on themselves.

【译文】不要很久,家长就会抱怨孩子守口如瓶,什么事也不告诉他们,殊不知这是他们自找的。

【用法】

(1) Before very long 为时间状语。
(2) but 为转折连词,连接两个句子。
(3) bring on 给……带来,如:He brought trouble on himself. 他自找麻烦。

5. Disillusionment with the parents, however good and adequate they may be both as parents and as individuals, is to some degree inevitable.

【译文】不管家长的人品有多么好,作为父母又多么合格,孩子们对家长幻想的破灭在某种程度上是不可避免的。

【用法】

(1) Disillsionment with the parents 孩子对家长幻想的破灭。however good and adequate they may be both as parents and as individuals 为让步状语从句,they 指 parents,意即"作为父母和作为个人,无论他们多么好、多么合格"。
(2) to some degree 在某种程度上。

6. Most children have such a high ideal of their parents, unless the parents themselves have been unsatisfactory, that it can hardly hope to stand up to a realistic evaluation.

【译文】除非父母自身不能令人满意,大多数孩子对父母估价过高,以致这种估价很难指望经受住现实的考验。

【用法】

(1) 这个长句子的句子结构为"unless 引导的条件状语从句+主句",其中 unless 引导的条件状语从句放在了主句的中间。另外,主句是一个典型的"such... that..."句式。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(2) unless 连词,意思为"除非,如果不",引导条件状语从句。

(3) "such＋形容词＋名词＋that 从句"为一个固定结构,意思为"这样的(一件事物),以至于……",注意这个结构与"so＋形容词或副词＋that 从句"在用法上的区别:在"such＋形容词＋名词＋that 从句"这个结构中,such 与形容词一起修饰名词,that 从句为结果状语从句;在"so＋形容词或副词＋that 从句"结构中,so 为副词,用于修饰形容词或副词,that 从句为结果状语从句。例如:

She was such a beautiful creature that everyone in the party was attracted by her glamour. 她是如此的一个美人以至于晚会上的每一个人都被她的魅力吸引了。

She was so beautiful that everyone in the party was attracted by her glamour. 她是如此美丽,以至于晚会上每一个人都被她的魅力吸引了。

7. Parents would be greatly surprised and deeply touched if they realized how much belief their children usually have in their character and infallibility, and how much this faith means to a child.

【译文】如果家长意识到孩子们通常是多么相信家长的品行和绝对正确,意识到孩子们的这种信念会对孩子产生多么大的影响,那么家长会大为吃惊和深受感动的。

【用法】

(1) have belief in 对……信仰,对……信任,如:Do you have belief in God? 你信仰上帝吗?

(2) how much sth. mean to sb. 意思相当于 how much sth. is of value or importance to sb. 某事对某人来讲有多么重要,如:Maybe you don't know how much to be punctual means to a waiting person. 你也许不知道对于等人的人准时有多么重要。

8. If parents were prepared for this adolescent reaction, and realized that it was a sign that the child was growing up and developing valuable powers of observation and independent judgment, they would not be so hurt, and therefore would not drive the child into opposition by resenting and resisting it.

【译文】如果家长对青少年的这种反应有思想准备,并且意识到这象征着孩子们正在成熟和正在形成宝贵的观察力、独立的判断力,那么他们就不会那么伤心,也就不会由于怨恨和抵触这种反应,而把孩子推到自己的对立面去。

【用法】

(1) 这是一个带有条件状语从句的复合句,并采用了虚拟语气。

(2) be prepared for 对……有准备的,如:I'm not prepared for such a large bill. 我尚未准备足够的钱付如此大额的账单。

(3) 动词词组 drive sb. into opposition by doing sth. 的意思是"通过做某事把某人推到对立面",如:The candidate drove many supporters into opposition by lying to them. 这个候选人由于撒谎把许多支持者推到了对立面上。

drive into 驱动……处于某种状态,如:Her son's death has driven her into despair. 儿子的死使她陷入绝望之中。

9. The adolescent, with his passion for sincerity, always respects a parent who admits that he is wrong, or ignorant, or even that he has been unfair or unjust. What the child cannot forgive is the parents' refusal to admit these charges if the child knows them to be true.

【译文】青少年酷爱真诚,对于能够承认错误或无知、甚至承认自己做得不公平或不公正的父母,他们总是尊敬的。孩子们所不能原谅的是:父母错了,孩子们也看出来了,可是做父母的还不肯承认。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) with his passion for sincerity 在句中作定语修饰句子的主语 the adolescent。

(2) who 引导的从句为定语从句，修饰 a parent，这个定语从句的宾语为 that 引导的两个从句：that he is wrong，or ignorant，or even that he has been unfair or unjust。

(3) What the child cannot forgive 为 what 引导的名词性从句，这里用来作为句子的主语。

(4) 在 refusal to admit these charges if the child knows them to be true 中，动词不定式短语这里用作为 refusal 的后置定语，在这个后置定语中，又有 if 引导的条件状语从句。

(5) know sb. /sth. to do sth. 意思为"听说某人或某物……"，其中，know 的意思为"听说"。

10. Victorian parents believed that they kept their dignity by retreating behind an unreasoning authoritarian attitude; in fact they did nothing of the kind, but children were then too cowed to let them know how they really felt.

【译文】维多利亚时代的父母认为，他们可以靠无理的独断专行来维护自己的尊严，实际上那是根本不行的。孩子们只不过被吓得不敢让父母知道自己的想法罢了。

【用法】

(1) believed 后面的 that 引导宾语从句，作 believed 的宾语。

(2) but 转折连词，连接一个 too... to... 结构的句子。

(3) keep/maintain one's dignity 保持某人的尊严，如：If you want to keep your dignity, you must obey the laws. 如果你要保持你的尊严，你必须遵纪守法。

(4) of the kind 某一类的，含有轻蔑的意思。这里 the kind 指 kept their dignity。

(5) cow 吓唬，威胁，如：I was cowed into agreeing with the boss. 我被吓得同意了老板的意见。

11. Today we tend to go to the other extreme, but on the whole this is a healthier attitude both for the child and the parent.

【译文】虽然现在我们倾向于走向另一个极端，但总的来看，孩子和家长双方的态度都比较端正。

【用法】

(1) tend to do sth. 有做某事的倾向，如：He tends to exaggerate. 他说话有夸张的倾向。

(2) go to the other extreme 走向另一个极端。

(3) on the whole 总的看来，大体上，如：The situation is, on the whole, satisfactory. 总的看来，形势是令人满意的。

12. It is always wiser and safer to face up to reality, however painful it may be at the moment.

【译文】遇事采取面对现实的态度总是比较明智和稳妥的，尽管会有暂时的痛苦。

【用法】

(1) however 引导的让步状语从句意即"尽管会有暂时的痛苦"。

(2) face up to 勇敢地接受，如：You must learn to face up to your responsibilities. 你必须学会勇于承担自己的责任。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

核心语法

➡there be 句型中用动名词

1. there is no point (in) doing something "干某事没有必要,没有意义",例:

There is no point in my going out with someone; I might really like if I met him at the time, but who, right now, has no chance of being anything to me but a transitional man.

2. there is no use/good in doing something "干某事没有用",例:

There is no use your arguing with him.

3. there is no doing something,意思相当于 It's impossible to do something 或 We can't do something。

a. There is no denying the fact that... 不容否认……

b. There is no gainsaying the fact that...

c. There is no telling what will happen tomorrow. 无法预知未来会发生什么。

d. There's no knowing the future. ⇨It's impossible to know the future, or we can't know the future.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 35 Space odyssey

本节重点和难点

- 系动词的用法

本课词汇

hub [hʌb] *n.* (活动的)中心

【词组】up to the hub 深深陷入

lunar ['luːnə] *adj.* 月球的

oxygen ['ɔksidʒən] *n.* 氧气

Apollo [ə'pɔləu] *n.* 阿波罗

accelerate [ək'seləreit] *v.* 加速

terrestrial [ti'restriəl] *adj.* 地球的

permanently ['pəːmənəntli] *adv.* 永远地

fascination [ˌfæsi'neiʃən] *n.* 魅力

【词组】exercise a fascination over 对……产生魅力/have(hold) a fascination for 对……有吸引力/special fascination 特殊的吸引力

senior ['siːniə] *adj.* 资历深的，年长的

【辨析】在跟别人进行比较时 senior 和 junior 之后接 to：There are plenty of others senior to me. 有许多人比我年长(地位高)。

chasm ['kæzəm] *n.* 断层，裂口

canyon ['kænjən] *n.* 峡谷

课文详解

1. The Moon is likely to become the industrial hub of the Solar System, supplying the rocket fuels for its ships, easily obtainable from the lunar rocks in the form of liquid oxygen.

【译文】月球很可能成为太阳系的工业中心。从月球上的岩石中很容易提炼出液态氧，作为航天飞船的燃料。

【用法】

(1) supplying... for its ships 为现在分词短语作定语修饰 the Moon。

(2) easily obtainable from the lunar rocks 修饰 the fuels。

(3) likely 可能的，不能单独使用，后面可以跟动词不定式或 that 引导的从句，如：

It is not likely to snow. 不大可能会下雪。

It is likely there will be more rain. 很可能还会下雨。

(4) the industrial hub 工业中心。

2. The reason lies in its gravity.

【译文】其原因在于月球的重力。

【用法】lie in 在于，如：

My real interest lies in developing a new sort of robot. 我真正的兴趣所在是开发一个新型

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

的机器人。

The causes of the war lie in the greed and incompetence of politicians on both sides. 那场战争的原因是双方政客的贪婪和无能。

3. Because the Moon has only an eightieth of the Earth's mass, it requires 97 per cent less energy to travel the quarter of a million miles from the Moon to Earth-orbit than the 200 mile-journey from Earth's surface into orbit!

【译文】因为月球的质量只有地球的1/80,因此,从月球到地球的25万英里所消耗的能量要比从地球表面进入地球轨道的200英里所耗能量少97%。

【用法】an eightieth of 1/80。to travel the quarter of a million...为动词不定式短语,作目的状语。the quarter of a million miles 25万英里。连词than后面省略了energy to travel。

4. This may sound fantastic, but it is easily calculated.

【译文】这点听起来令人难以置信,但却很容易计算出来。

【用法】sound 在这里作系动词,后面跟形容词作表语,意即"听起来"。

5. To escape from the Earth in a rocket, one must travel at seven miles per second.

【译文】要乘坐一枚火箭飞离地球,火箭的速度要达到每秒7英里。

【用法】To escape from the Earth in a rocket 为动词不定式,作目的状语。

6. Because the gravity on the Moon's surface is only a sixth of Earth's (remember how easily the Apollo astronauts bounded along)...

【译文】由于月球表面的重力仅为地球表面的1/6——还记得阿波罗飞船中的宇航员轻松地跳跃……

【用法】

(1) because 引导原因状语从句。

(2) 主句为 It takes (sb.) some time to do sth. 的句型。

(3) Earth's 后面省略了 surface。the Apollo astronauts 指1969年7月20日美国"阿波罗11号"宇宙飞船中第一次载人登月的宇航员。

(4) bound along 跳跃. 介词 along 前面可以与实意动词搭配,意思是"沿着……,向前……",如,move along(向前走动),bring along(带来)等等。

7. Arthur C. Clark once suggested a revolutionary idea passes through three phases:...

【译文】亚瑟·C·克拉克曾指出,一种创新的想法要经过以下三个阶段:……

【用法】

(1) suggest

动词 suggest 之后可以接 v-ing,也可以接 that 从句,从句中的动词在(正式)英语中通常用 should be 型虚拟式,但是有时 should 可以省略。如:

He suggested going out for a walk. 他建议出去散步。

I suggested that he (should) wait out there. 我建议他在外边等。

在非正式场合,下面的用法也可以被接受:I suggested that he waited out there.

请注意,当 suggest 不表示"建议"的意思时,其用法不受以上规则的制约。如:

Are you suggesting that I am telling a lie? 你的意思是说我在撒谎吗?

(2) 动词词组 pass through 的意思是"经历"。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

8. The idea of colonising Mars—a world 160 times more distant than the Moon—will move decisively from the second phase to the third, when a significant number of people are living permanently in space.

【译文】如果有相当数量的人永久性地住在太空，征服火星的计划——一个比月球远160倍的星球——就可以明确地从第二阶段进入第三阶段。

【用法】

(1) a world 160 times more distant than the Moon 一个比月球远160倍的星球，是插入语，对Mars作进一步的说明。the third 后面省略了名词 phase。

(2) when 引导的是一个时间状语从句。

9. Mars has an extraordinary fascination for would-be voyagers.

【译文】火星对未来的星际旅客来说有着特殊的魅力。

【用法】have a fascination for 对……具有魅力，如：Old churches have a certain strange fascination for me. 旧教堂对我具有某种奇特的魅力。

10. America, Russia and Europe are filled with enthusiasts—many of them serious and senior scientists—who dream of sending people to it.

【译文】美国、俄罗斯和欧洲都有许多热心此项事业的人——其中不少是认真和资深的科学家，他们一直梦想着把人送上火星。

【用法】

(1) be filled with 充满，相当于 be full of，如：The bus is filled with students. 公共汽车里都是学生。

(2) many of them serious and senior scientists = many of them are serious and senior scientists 这里为独立主格结构。当一个句子中的动词为系动词 be 时，其相应的独立主格结构把 be 去掉即可，例如：
She happy, I feel happy. 她快乐，我快乐。
His mother sad, he want to comfort her by making faces. 母亲很悲伤，他想用做鬼脸的方式让她开心。

(3) dream of 梦想，通常后面搭配名词或动名词，如：She dreamed of going abroad. 她梦想出国。此句式若为否定，意思则变化很大，可被解释为 not do sth. under any circumstances(无论如何也不做某事)，如：I'd never dream of cheating you. 我绝不欺骗你。

(4) Who 引导的是一个定语从句，修饰 enthusiasts。

11. It is the one world in the Solar System that is most like the Earth.

【译文】火星是太阳系里与地球最相似的一颗行星。

【用法】

(1) one+可数名词表示"唯一的"，如：She is the one person in the class I don't like. 她是班里我唯一一个不喜欢的人。

(2) that is most like the Earth 为定语从句，修饰 the one world，即 Mars。

12. It is a world of red sandy deserts (hence its name—the Red planet)...

【译文】这是一个红色沙漠的世界(因而得名：红色行星)……

【用法】hence 为副词，因此，由此，所以，如：The town was built among the hills, hence the name Hill town. 该城镇修建在群山之中，故取名山城。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

13. ... chasms wider than the Grand Canyon and at least one mountain more than twice as tall as Everest.

【译文】……比大峡谷还宽的裂缝，起码有一座山有珠穆朗玛峰的两倍高。

【用法】the Grand Canyon 指位于美国亚利桑那州西北部的科罗拉多河两岸的大峡谷。more than twice as tall as Everest 是珠穆朗玛峰的两倍高。

核心语法

➡系动词的用法

1. 系动词本身有一定的词义，但不能独立作谓语，必须与表语一起构成谓语。表语通常由名词、形容词等充当，系动词用以连接主语和补足成分，说明主语是什么或怎么样。如：

He is a painter. 他是个画家。（表语是名词）

The milk tastes sour. 这牛奶有酸味。（表语是形容词）

2. 常见的系动词有 be(是)，appear(出现)，become(变成)，get(成为)，look(看上去)，remain(还是)，seem(看似)等。

3. 系动词是不及物动词时，不用于被动语态和进行时态中。如：

The rose smells sweet. 玫瑰花香。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 36 The cost of government

本节重点和难点

- it的用法

本课词汇

disunited [ˌdisjuːˈnaitid] *adj.* 分裂的

correspondingly [ˌkɔriˈspondiŋli] *adv.* 相应地

backward(s) [ˈbækwəd(z)] *adj.* 落后的

【辨析】backward、underdeveloped 这两个词都有"落后的"意思。backward 强调发展步伐缓慢，因而落在了人家后面；underdeveloped 强调资源有待于进一步开发。

incur [inˈkəː] *v.* 承担

administer [ədˈministə] *v.* 管理

【词组】administer to 相当于 minister to 有助于

【辨析】administer、manage 这两个词都有管理之意。administer 指管理一个国家、大公司、大社团等并有责任。manage 指管理一个部门，对这些部门发展有责任。

administrative [ədˈministrətiv] *adj.* 行政的，管理的

analogous [əˈnæləgəs] *adj.* 类似的

overheads [ˈəuvəhedz] *n.* 一般费用

initiative [iˈniʃiətiv] *n.* 主动，积极性

【词组】have the initiative 掌握主动权/take the initiative (in doing sth.)带头，采取主动(做某事)/on one's own initiative 主动地，率先地

checker [ˈtʃekə] *n.* 检查人员

foreman [ˈfɔːmən] *n.* 监工

dividend [ˈdividənd] *n.* 红利

unduly [ʌnˈdjuːli] *adv.* 过度地

课文详解

1. If a nation is essentially disunited, it is left to the government to hold it together.

【译文】如果一个国家实际上处于分裂状态，使之联合起来就是政府的事了。

【用法】

(1) it 在此处是先行主语，动词不定式 to hold it together 是该句的真正主语。该动词不定式中的代词 it 所指的是 a nation。

(2) leave... to 把……委托给，交由……来处理，如：I left the decision to your judgement. 我让你根据自己的判断作出决定。

2. And it should not be forgotten how small those resources are in a poor and backward country. Where the cost of government is high, resources for development are correspondingly low.

【译文】不应忘记，在一个贫穷落后的国家里，那部分财力是很有限的。凡是政府管理费用高的地方，用于发展国家经济的资金就会相应地减少。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 这里 it 为形式主语,实际的主语为 how 引导的名词性从句 how small those resources are in a poor and backward country。

(2) Where the cost of government is high 为 where 引导的地点状语从句。例如:

Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者事竟成。

I will go where you live. 我会去你生活的地方。

3. This may be illustrated by comparing the position of a nation with that of a private business enterprise.

【译文】把国家的状况和私人企业的状况加以比较,就可以看清这个问题。

【用法】动词词组 compare with 为"比较两者的相同与不同之处"。比较的两者应有其可比性,即意义范围应相似,而且语法结构最好相同,但后者重复出现的名词可以用代词代替。如:If you compare her work with his, you'll find hers is much better. 要是把他们的工作比较一下,你就会发现她的好得多。

4. An enterprise has to incur certain costs and expenses in order to stay in business.

【译文】一个企业为了继续经营,不得不支出一定的费用和开销。

【用法】动词词组 stay in business 的意思是 keep on doing business(维持营业,免于破产),例如:This factory took many measures on occupying market to stay in business. 这家工厂为了继续生存,在占据市场上采取了许多新的措施。

5. For our purposes, we are concerned only with one kind of cost—the cost of managing and administering the business.

【译文】就我们的目的而言,我们只关心一种费用——企业行政管理费。

【用法】be concerned with 对……感兴趣的,如:We are more concerned with efficiency than expansion. 在效率和发展之间,我们对效率更感兴趣。

6. Such administrative overheads in a business are analogous to the cost of government in a nation.

【译文】一家企业的这种行政管理开支类似于一个国家的政府管理所用的开支。

【用法】

(1) administrative overheads 行政管理开支。

(2) analogous/ə'næləgəs/ *adj.* 类似的;相似的(to):be～to 类似:Sleep is ～ to death. 睡眠可以比作死亡。

① analogous 作"类似的","相似的"解,很容易同 similar 相混淆。其实它们并非同义词:analogous 指某种程度的相像或相同,往往用于不同事物之间的比较:Waves of water and the way light travels are analogous.(水波和光的传播方式相似。)但 similar 一般只用于同类事物间的比较:My opinions are similar to his.(我的意见和他的相似。)②analogous 后面也可用介词 with,但不及 to 普遍。

7. The administrative overheads of a business are low to the extent that everyone working in the business can be trusted to behave in a way that best promotes the interests of the firm.

【译文】如果企业中的每个人都在真诚地为提高企业利润而工作,那么企业的管理费用就会降低到相应的程度。

【用法】to the extent that... 达到那样的程度。that 引导的是同位语从句。to the extent 及

www.TopSage.com

其同位语从句起到的作用类似于条件状语，意即“如果企业中的每个人都在真诚地为增加企业利润而工作”。in a way that best... 为方式状语，其中 that 引导的是定语从句，修饰 a way。best 此处用作副词，是 in the most excellent manner，to the greatest degree(最好地，最大程度地）的意思，用来修饰后面的动词。例如：The new teaching method best motivated the students' interest in physics. 新的教学方法极大地提高了学生学习物理的兴趣。

8. If they can each be trusted to take such responsibilities, and to exercise such initiative as falls within their sphere, then administrative overheads will be low.

【译文】如果企业的每个人都信得过，人人都认真负责，在各自的工作范围内发挥主动性，行政管理费用就会降低。

【用法】

(1) each 这里为副词，意思为“每个”。

(2) exercise initiative 固定搭配，意思为“发挥主动性”。

(3) fall within their sphere 意思为“在他们的工作范围内”，其中，fall within 为固定词组，意思为“属于，适合于”，sphere 这里的意思为“范围”。

9. It will be low because it will be necessary to have only one man looking after each job, without having another man to check upon what he is doing, keep him in line, and report on him to someone else.

【译文】行政管理费用降低的原因是：每项工作只需一个人去完成，用不着另外再有一个人去检查他的工作，督促他遵守章程，或向有关人士汇报他的工作。

【用法】

(1) 从句中的 it 是形式主语，真正的主语是动词不定式 to have one man looking after each job。

(2) without having another... 为介词短语，作方式状语，修饰 looking after。这里应注意的是，在介词 without 后面的 having another man to check upon what he is doing 中，动词不定式短语 to check upon 作定语，置后，修饰 another man，而非表达“让某人做某事”的 have sb. do sth. 结构。to check upon, keep him in line 以及 report on him to someone else 这 3 个动词不定式为并列成分。

(3) have sb. doing sth. 使某人做某事，其中 doing sth. 作宾语补足语，如：We soon have them all laughing. 我们很快就使大伙儿都笑了起来。

(4) 动词词组 check upon/on 的意思是 examine sth. to discover if it is true, safe, correct, etc. “检查某事物(是否真实、安全、正确等)”。

(5) keep sb. in line 的意思是 keep sb. busy with his work“使某人忙于工作(不偷懒或磨蹭)”。

(6) report on sb./sth. to sb. 是指 give an account of (sth. heard, seen, done, studied, etc.) “报告或报道(所闻、所见、所做、研究所得等)”，如：The reporters were ordered to report on the recent development of the strike every half hour. 记者们被要求每半小时报道一次罢工事件的最新发展情况。

10. But if no one can be trusted to act in a loyal and responsible manner towards his job, then the business will require armies of administrators, checkers...

【译文】但是，如果企业中谁也不可信赖会对工作尽忠守职，那么企业就会需要大批的管理人员、检查人员和带班人员，管理费用就会相应地增加。

【用法】to act in... job 为主语补足语。armies of 大批的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

11. As administrative overheads rise, so the earnings of the business after meeting the expense of administration, will fall; and the business will have less money to distribute as dividends or invest directly in its future progress and development.

【译文】管理费用增加了，那么在扣除管理费用后，企业的收入就降低了，因而，用于分红的金额或直接用于将来开拓和发展的投资就相应地减少了。

【用法】首句 as 引导的是一个时间状语从句，逗号后面是主句，谓语部分是 will fall。so 此处用作副词，意思是"如是；这样；照此而行；如此"。after 引导的介词短语也作时间状语。and 连接的虽然是并列句，但是在该句中所表达的是结果。to distribute 与其后的 invest 为并列的动词不定式，作定语，修饰 money。

12. To the extent that the people can be relied upon to behave in a loyal and responsible manner, the government does not require armies of police and civil servants to keep them in order.

【译文】如果人民忠于职守，举止规矩，能受到政府的信赖，那么政府就不需要大批的警察和文职人员去促使人民遵纪守法。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的同位语从句修饰 extent。

(2) 逗号之后为主句部分。

13. But if a nation is disunited, the government cannot be sure that the actions of the people will be in the interests of the nation.

【译文】但是，如果一个国家处于分裂状态，政府不能相信人民的行动有利于国家。

【用法】

(1) "feel/be sure ＋that 从句"为一固定结构，意思为"相信……，确信……"。在此结构中，若从语法功能上讲，that 从句为一个状语从句，若从句子意思上理解，that 从句可以看做为宾语从句。

(2) in the interests of 固定词组，意思为"为了……打算，为了……的利益"。

核心语法

➡it 的用法

it 除了作代词表示"它"之外，用法还可分为三种：虚拟"it"，先行"it"及"it"引导的分裂句，即强调句型。第 5 课和第 26 课已经讲过强调句型，这里着重讲解前两者。

1. 虚拟 it 是一种非指代性 it，常用作没有具体意义的主语，表示天气、气候、时间等。如：

It is very cold outside. 外面天气很冷。

2. 先行 it 用来充当形式主语或形式宾语，后面真正的主语或宾语通常是不定式结构，-ing 分词结构或名词性从句。而文章中的这句话就属于这种以 it 作先行主语的句子。如：

It was not known whether he was coming. 没人知道他会不会来。

这类句子有些可以用后面的真正主语取代先行 it 的位置，也可以说

Whether he was coming was not known.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 37 The process of ageing

本节重点和难点

- 英语修辞的应用——明喻

本课词汇

likelihood ['laiklihud] *n.* 可能性

infant ['infənt] *n.* 婴儿

【词组】infant food 婴儿食品/infant industry 新建工业/nurse an infant 给婴儿喂奶

【辨析】baby、child、infant 这三个词都有"小孩"的意思。baby 是口语用语，它以疼爱的口气指婴儿或非常小的孩子；child 是普通用语，可指胎儿以及小于或略小于 10 岁的儿童；infant 是书面用语，指婴幼儿以及法律上的未成年者。

vulnerable ['vʌlnərəbl] *adj.* 脆弱的

imperceptible [ˌimpə'septəbl] *adj.* 感觉不到的

steep [stiːp] *adj.* 急转直下的

ageing ['eidʒiŋ] *n.* 老化

odds [ɔdz] *n.* (*pl.*)可能性

virtual ['vəːtʃuəl] *adj.* 实际上的

robust ['rəubʌst] *adj.* 强健的

organism ['ɔːgənizəm] *n.* 生物，有机体

thermodynamics [ˌθəːməudai'næmiks] *n.* 热力学

moot ['muːt] *adj.* 争论未决的

run-down *adj.* 破旧的

friction ['frikʃən] *n.* 摩擦

课文详解

1. At the age of twelve years, the human body is at its most vigorous.

【译文】人体在 12 岁时是生命力最旺盛的时期。

【用法】at its most vigorous 为介词 at＋形容词的最高级结构，表示"处于极点"，如：The captain is still at his best. 船长仍然精力充沛。

2. It has yet to reach its full size and strength, and its owner his or her full intelligence; but at this age the likelihood of death is least.

【译文】虽然在这个时期人的身材、体力和智力还有待发展和完善，但在这个年龄死亡的可能性最小。

【用法】

(1) its owner 后省略了 has yet to reach。

(2) 逗号后的 and 连接两个并列关系的分句。

(3) It 指的是 human body, its owner 指的是 human body's owner。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

3. Earlier, we were infants and young children, and consequently more vulnerable; later, we shall undergo a progressive loss of our vigour and resistance which, though imperceptible at first, will finally become so steep that we can live no longer, however well we look after ourselves, and however well society, and our doctors, look after us.

TopSage.com

【译文】再早一些，我们是幼儿和小孩子，身体较为脆弱；再迟一些，我们就要经历生命力和抵抗力逐步衰退的过程。虽然这个过程起初难以觉察，但最终会急转直下，不管我们怎样精心照料我们自己，不管社会和医生怎样对我们进行精心照顾，我们也无法再活下去了。

【用法】

(1) and consequently more vulnerable 这句话省略了句子的主语和系动词 we were。由于这个句子的主语和动词与前面句子相同，所以这里省略了主语和动词，以避免重复。

(2) earlier 和 later 这里都为时间副词。

(3) which 引导的从句为定语从句，修饰 loss of our vigour and resistance。这个定语从句比较长，其中包含了一个 though 引导的让步状语从句和两个 however 引导的让步状语从句，并且从句中出现了"so... that..."句式。

(4) though 引导的让步状语从句 though imperceptible at first 省略了主语和系动词 it is，即完整的应该为 though it is imperceptible at first。

(5) "so... that..."固定结构，意思为"太……以至于……"。

(6) no longer 固定搭配，意思为"不再"，其用法相当于一个副词，修饰动词时，置于系动词 be 之后，实义动词之前，例如：

She is no longer our English teacher. 她不再是我们的英语老师了。

He no longer gambles. 他不再赌博了。

4. This decline in vigour with the passing of time is called ageing.

【译文】生命力随时间的流失而衰退叫做衰老。

【用法】in vigour 作定语，修饰名词 decline，指"生命力方面的衰退"。with the passing of time 作定语，修饰 decline in vigour，意即"随着时间的流逝"。

5. It is one of the most unpleasant discoveries which we all make that we must decline in this way, that if we escape wars, accidents and diseases we shall eventually "die of old age", and that this happens at a rate which differs little from person to person, so that there are heavy odds in favour of our dying between the ages of sixty-five and eighty.

【译文】人类发现的最不愉快的一个事实是：人必然会衰老。即使我们能避开战争、意外的事故和各种疾病，我们最终也会"老死"；衰老的速度在人与人之间相差甚微，我们最可能死亡的年龄在 65 至 80 岁之间。

【用法】

(1) 3 个由 that 引导的从句均是 discoveries 的同位语从句，即：that we must...，that if we escape...，and that this happens....。第 3 个从句中的 this 指 die of old age。so that 引导的是结果状语从句，修饰其前面的那个主语从句，意即"因此我们最可能死亡的年龄在 65 至 80 之间"。heavy odds 可能性极大。in favour of 作定语，修饰 heavy odds，意即"有利于"、"赞成"。discoveries 后面的 which 引导定语从句，修饰discoveries。

www.TopSage.com

(2) 介词词组 at a rate 意思是 at a speed(以……速度)。differ from 的意思是 be different from(异于),如:My standpoint is different from yours. 我的观点不同于你的。

6. Some of us will die sooner, a few will live longer—on into a ninth or tenth decade.

【译文】有些人会死得早一些,少数人寿命会长一些——活到八十几岁或九十几岁。

【用法】live on 继续活下去,该句中的破折号用以引出强调部分。

7. But the chances are against it, and there is a virtual limit on how long we can hope to remain alive, however lucky and robust we are.

【译文】但是这种可能性很小,不管我们多么幸运,多么健壮,我们所希望的长寿实际上是有限度的。

【用法】it 指 live longer。however 引导的是让步状语从句。

8. Normal people tend to forget this process unless and until they are reminded of it.

【译文】衰老的过程,不经提起,正常人容易忘记;一经提醒,才会记起。

【用法】they 在此句指代的是 normal people,而 it 指代的是 this process(这一进程),即 the dying process(死亡进程)。注意区分下面两个词组:be reminded of sth. 被提醒想起某事;remind sb. of sth. 使某人想起某事;使记起;提醒。如:The photo reminded her of college days. 这张照片使她回想起了大学里的日子。

9. We are so familiar with the fact that man ages, that people have for years assumed that the process of losing vigour with time, of becoming more likely to die the older we get, was something self-evident, like the cooling of a hot kettle or the wearing-out of a pair of shoes.

【译文】我们对人总是要衰老的现象并不陌生,多年来就已认识到。生命力随着时间流失而丧失活力,人随着年龄的增长而接近死亡,这是不言而喻的,就像一壶热水迟早会凉下来,一双鞋渐渐会磨破一样。

【用法】

(1) 前两个 that 引导并列的同位语从句。

(2) 第三个 that 引导 assumed 的宾语从句。

(3) was something... 是 that 引导的宾语从句的谓语部分。

(4) of becoming 前面省略了 the process。

(5) like the cooling... shoes 为介词短语作状语修饰整个宾语从句。

(6) be familiar with 对……熟悉,如:I am familiar with your habit. 我熟悉你的习惯。

10. They have also assumed that all animals, and probably other organisms such as trees, or even the universe itself, must in the nature of things "wear out".

【译文】人们不但认识到所有的动物,大概也认识到所有的有机物,如树木,甚至宇宙本身,从事物的本质上来说都会"磨损掉"。

【用法】in the nature of things 从物质本质上来说。wear out 磨损,如:The long travel wore out his new shoes. 长途旅行磨损了他的新鞋。

11. Most animals we commonly observe do in fact age as we do, if given the chance to live long enough;...

【译文】我们通常看到的大多数动物,即使能让它们活得足够长久的话,也会像我们一样衰老的。……

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】we commonly observe 作定语从句，修饰 animals。do 在此用来表示强调。as we do 为方式状语从句。if 引导的是条件状语，if 后面省略了 they are。

12. ... and mechanical systems like a wound watch, or the sun, do in fact run out of energy in accordance with the second law of thermodynamics (whether the whole universe does so is a moot point at present).

【译文】像上紧发条的手表那样的机械装置，或太阳，也都会依照热学第二定律消耗完其能量（整个宇宙是否如此，目前尚有争论）。

【用法】

(1) do 起强调作用。

(2) run out of 耗尽，如：she ran out of his money. in accordance with 根据、按照，如：I'm in accordance with your instructions.

13. But these are not analogous to what happens when man ages.

【译文】但是，这些衰老的情况同人并不相似。

【用法】be analogous to 与……相似，如：This proposal was analogous to the one we discussed at the last meeting. 这项提案与上次会议上我们讨论过的那份提案相似。

14. But a watch could never repair itself—it does not consist of living parts, only of metal, which wears away by friction.

【译文】但是，手表绝不会自行修理，它不是由有生命的部件组成，而是由金属组成，而金属可以随着摩擦而磨损殆尽。

【用法】wear away 逐渐磨损，逐渐消耗掉，如：Water can wear away rock after a long time. 久而久之，水能穿石。

15. We could, at one time, repair ourselves—well enough, at least, to overcome all but the most instantly fatal illnesses and accidents.

【译文】我们人在一定时间内是可以自行修复的，除了暴病而死或意外事故之外，至少足以克服一切一般疾病和事故。

【用法】to overcome all but... 为动词不定式短语，作 well enough 的结果状语。all but 除了，如：All but him went to the zoo. 除了他所有人都去了动物园。

16. ...; an illness which at twelve would knock us over, at eighty can knock us out, and into our grave.

【译文】能使我们在 12 岁时病倒的疾病，到了 80 岁可能会使我们一蹶不振而进入坟墓。

【用法】

(1) which at twelve would knock us over 为定语从句，修饰该句的主语 an illness。can knock 作该句的谓语。

(2) 词组 knock over 和 knock out 通常用在拳击比赛中，意思分别是“打倒”和“打败出局”。此处用作比喻意，可被译作“让我们病倒”和“让我们送命”。

(3) and into our grave 是跟在动词 knock 之后的，省略了 us，意即“使我们进入坟墓”。

www.TopSage.com

17. If we could stay as vigorous as we are at twelve, it would take about 700 years for half of us to die, and another 700 for the survivors to be reduced by half again.

【译文】如果我们能保持12岁时的旺盛生命力,那么我们当中的一半人过700年才会死去,剩下的一半人再过700年,才会又减少一半。

【用法】if引导的是非真实性条件句,所以主句使用的是虚拟结构would take。因为人是不可能保持12岁时的旺盛精力,这只是一种假设。the survivors指700年后活下来的那一半人。reduce by half减少一半。by half作动词不定式to be reduced的状语。

核心语法

➡英语修辞的应用——明喻

英语修辞格明喻和汉语修辞格明喻的特点基本相同,这是一种最简单也最常用的修辞方式。明喻是指两种完全不同概念的事物通过比较的方式达到形象比喻的言语行为,基本形式是表明本体和喻体的关系,即:A像B,也就是说,把所要加以描写、刻画的事物,用比喻词与另一具有鲜明的同一特点的事物联系起来,从而更形象,更深刻地说明事物。英语本体和喻体之间常用as, like, as if, as though等连接。如:The cheque fluttered to the floor like a bird with a broken wing.支票跌落到地上,像一只断了翅膀的小鸟。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 38 Water and the traveller

本节重点和难点

- 新使句

本课词汇

contamination [kənˌtæmiˈneiʃən] *n.* 污染

sanitation [ˌsæniˈteiʃən] *n.* 卫生,卫生设备

sewage [ˈsuːidʒ] *n.* (下水道里的)污物

leakage [ˈliːkidʒ] *n.* 泄漏

【词组】leakage of secrets(information)泄露秘密(消息)/detect(stop)a leakage of 发现(阻止)……泄露

intermittent [ˌintəˈmitənt] *adj.* 间歇的,断断续续的

carbonated [ˈkɑːbəneitid] *adj.* 碳化的,碳酸的

acidic [əˈsidik] *adj.* 酸的,酸性的

alcohol [ˈælkəhɔl] *n.* 酒精

disinfectant [ˌdisinˈfektənt] *n.* 消毒剂

sterilize [ˈsterilaiz] *v.* 消毒

ethanol [ˈeθənɔl] *n.* 乙醇

bactericidal [bækˌtiəriˈsaidəl] *adj.* 杀菌的

negligible [ˈneglidʒəbl] *adj.* 可以忽略的,微不足道的

methylated [ˈmeθileitid] *adj.* 加入甲醇的

课文详解

1. Contamination of water supplies is usually due to poor sanitation close to water sources, sewage disposal into the sources themselves, leakage of sewage into distribution systems or contamination with industrial or farm waste.

【译文】水源的污染通常是由于接近水源的地方卫生条件太差而造成的:污水排入水源,污水渗入给水系统或工农业污水造成污染。

【用法】

(1) 主语是 Contamination of water supplies,后面是系表结构,表语由 to 后的三个名词短语组成。

(2) supply 这里为名词,意思为"补给,供给"。

(3) due to 固定词组,意思为"由于,应归于"。

(4) sanitation close to water sources 这里 close to water sources 为 sanitation 的后置定语。其中 be close to 为固定词组,意思为"接近于……,在……附近"。这里 close 为形容词,意思为"近的"。

(5) distribution system 配水系统。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Even if a piped water supply is safe at its source, it is not always safe by the time it reaches the tap.

【译文】既使管道供水系统在水源处是安全的，等水到达龙头时就不一定总是安全的了。

【用法】

(1) even if＝even though，意思为“即使”，表示让步，引导让步状语从句，例如：
Even if you have no money at all, I will still marry you. 即使你身无分文，我也要嫁给你。

(2) piped water supply 管道供水。

(3) by the time 这里相当于一个连词，用于引导时间状语从句 it reaches the tap，类似用法的还有 the time，the moment。

3. Travellers on short trips to areas with water supplies of uncertain quality should avoid drinking tapwater, or untreated water from any other source.

【译文】短途旅行到水质不保险的地区时，旅游者应避免饮用水龙头的水或未经处理的任何其他来源的水。

【用法】

(1) on short trips 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 travellers。with water supplies... 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 areas。

(2) avoid doing sth. 避免干某事，如：She managed to avoid being punished. 她设法避免了受处罚。

4. It is best to keep to hot drinks, bottled or canned drinks of well-known brand names—international standards of water treatment are usually followed at bottling plants.

【译文】最好仅饮用开水、名牌瓶装或罐装水——装瓶厂通常遵循国际水处理的标准。

【用法】

(1) It 为先行主语，真正的主语是动词不定式短语 to keep to...。

(2) of well-known brand names 为介词短语，作定语修饰 bottled or canned drinks。

(3) 破折号后面的部分是对前面的部分所作的进一步说明。

5. Make sure that all bottles are opened in your presence, and that their rims are clean and dry.

【译文】确保瓶子是当着你的面开启的，瓶口清洁干燥。

【用法】该句为祈使句。in sb.'s presence 为方式状语，意即“当着某人的面”、“当某人在场时”，如：
The play will be performed in the presence of the President. 总统将光临观看此剧。

6. Some hotels supply boiled water on request and this can be used for drinking, or for brushing teeth.

【译文】有些酒店根据要求可提供开水，这些开水可用于饮用和刷牙。

【用法】on/upon request 若提出要求，如：Brochures are mailed out on request. 小册子承索即寄。

7. Portable boiling elements that can boil small quantities of water are useful when the right voltage of electricity is available.

【译文】如果有相配的电压，可以煮少量水的便携式热水装置是有用的。

【用法】that can boil... 为定语从句，修饰 portable boiling elements。when the right... 为条

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

件状语从句。available 可获得的，可利用的，如：

Portable boiling elements are not always easily available. 便携式热水装置并不总是容易获得的。

8. Drinks can be cooled by placing them on ice rather than adding ice to them.

【译文】可以把饮料置于冰块之上冷却，而不是把冰块加入饮料之中。

【用法】

(1) 句中 than 后省略了介词 by，这样 rather than 连接的两个介词短语 by placing them 和 (by) adding ice to them 结构平衡，共同作方式状语。

(2) by placing them... 为方式状语。

(3) rather than 此处用作连词词组，意思是 instead of(不愿，不要)，rather than 连接的两者应在词意和语法结构上平衡，连接动词时通常使用动词原形。如：We would rather rent the house than buy it outright. 我们宁可租这幢房子，也不愿直接买下它。

9. ..., but should not be relied upon to sterilize water.

【译文】但是，绝不可用来消毒饮用水。

【用法】

(1) 因为本句使用的是被动语态，因此原来应在主动语态中作宾语补足语的动词不定式 to sterilize water 现改在句子中作主语补足语。

(2) 词组 rely upon sth. to do sth. 的意思是"依赖某事物来做某事"，如：You should rely upon your own efforts to finish the job. 你应该依靠自己的力量完成这项工作。

【辨析】rely 和 depend 两词都含"信赖"的意思，现区别如下：rely 指"在过去经验的基础上，依赖、相信某人或某事物，希望从中得到支持或帮助"，如：He can be relied on to keep secret. 相信他能保密。depend 指"出于信赖而依靠他人或他物，以取得其支持或帮助，这种信赖可能有过去的经验或了解为根据，也可能没有"，如：He can depend on his wife for sympathy. 他相信妻子会同情他。

10. Beware of methylated alcohol, which is very poisonous, and should never be added to drinking water.

【译文】要提防甲醇化酒精，那是剧毒的，永远不能掺入饮用水。

【用法】

(1) which is very poisonous, and... 为非限定性定语从句，对 methylated alcohol 作进一步的说明。

(2) beware/bi'wɛə/*vi.* (bewares /-z/, bewared/-d/, bewaring) 当心，小心，提防①名/代＋beware：You beware! 你要当心！②beware＋of＋名/代：Beware of falling rocks! 当心落下的石头！We must beware of pickpockets on buses. 公共汽车上我们一定要提防扒手。③beware＋of＋动名词：Beware of forming bad habits. 当心别染上坏习惯。【注】beware of 后面的名词或动名词表示"要提防或当心的人或事"。④be ware＋of＋wh-从句：You should beware of how you said to him. 你跟他说话应当小心。Beware of what you do with this dangerous substance! 摆弄这种危险物品要当心！【注】beware 多用于祈使句中。

(3) add to 添加，把……加上，如：We added this amount to the bill. 我们把这笔数目加在账里了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

11. If no other safe water supply can be obtained, tap water that is too hot to touch can be left to cool and is generally safe to drink.

【译文】如果没有其他安全的饮用水，水管中流出的烫手的水可以留下来冷却。

【用法】

(1) that is too hot to touch can be left to cool 为定语从句，修饰 tap water。

(2) too... to... 固定结构，意思为"太……以致不能……"，例如：

He is too young to smoke. 他太小，不能抽烟。

This puzzle is too difficult for me to figure out. 这道题太难了，我做不出来。

12. Those planning a trip to remote areas, or intending to live in countries where drinking water is not readily available, should know about the various possible methods for making water safe.

【译文】那些计划去偏远地区旅行，或在没有现成饮用水的国家居住的人，应该知道如何使水适于饮用的各种方法。

【用法】

(1) those 这里为代词，意思为"那些人"。

(2) planning a trip to remote areas 和 or intending to live in countries 为现在分词短语作后置定语，修饰指代人的代词 those。由于 those 和动词 plan、intend 为逻辑上的主谓关系，所以这里使用表示主动的现在分词形式。

(3) intend to do sth. 意思为"想要做某事，意欲做某事"。

(4) where drinking water is not readily available 为 where 引导的定语从句，修饰先行词 countries。先行词为在从句中充当逻辑上的状语。先行词为表示地点的名词时，当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的状语时，用关系副词 where，而当先行词在从句中充当逻辑上的主语、宾语或表语时，用关系代词 that 或 which。例如：

She went to a city which is far away from Beijing. 她去了一个离北京很远的城市。

She went to a city that she loved very much. 她去了一个她非常喜欢的城市。

She went to a city where her boyfriend lived. 她去了她男朋友生活过的城市。

(5) 这个长句子的主干为 those should know the methods。

核心语法

➡祈使句

祈使句通常是以动词祈使式开首，表示命令、指示、要求、建议、劝告等意义的特殊句式。现代英语中祈使句有两种类型：一种是第二人称祈使句，另一种是第一、三人称祈使句。第二人称祈使句是以听话人为祈使对象的祈使句。在这种祈使句中，祈使对象 you 通常不表现出来，句子以动词祈使式开首，用降调，句尾用句号或感叹号。如：

Come and have a dinner with us. 来和我们一起吃饭吧。

Never do that again! 不要再那样做了！

第一人称祈使句是以 let 为引导词，随后跟单数第一人称代词宾格(me)＋不定式。

Let me try again. 让我再试一次。

第三人称祈使句也是以 let 为引导词，它的结构模式是 Let him/them/NP＋不定式。

Let bygones be bygones. 既往不咎。

Don't let anyone shirk his responsibility. 谁也不要逃避责任。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 39 What every writer wants

本节重点和难点

先行主语和先行宾语的用法(1)

- 主语从句在复合句中充当主语
- it 作形式主语和 it 引导强调句的比较
- 用 it 作形式主语的主语从句结构
- 主语从句不可位于句首的四种情况

本课词汇

confess [kən'fes] *v.* 承认

【用法】作及物动词后可接名词或动名词+to sb.或接 that 从句,如作不及物动词后接 to+名词。

inspiration [ˌinspə'reiʃən] *n.* 灵感

Kashmir [kæʃ'miə] (地名)喀什米尔

afresh [ə'freʃ] *adv.* 重新

discern [di'səːn] *v.* 辨明,领悟

indescribable [ˌindis'kraibəbl] *adj.* 无法描述的

blur [bləː] *v.* 使……模糊不清

yeast [jiːst] *n.* 激动

fathom ['fæðəm] *v.* 领悟,彻底了解

interminably [in'təːminəbli] *adv.* 没完没了地

winkle ['wiŋkl] *v.* 挖掘

incidentally [ˌinsi'dentli] *adv.* 顺便说一下

pertinent ['pəːtinənt] *adj.* 中肯的

flirt [fləːt] *v.* 调情

inmost ['inməust] *adj.* 内心深处的

课文详解

1. I have known very few writers, but those I have known, and whom I respect, confess at once that they have little idea where they are going when they first set pen to paper.

【译文】我所认识的作家寥寥无几,然而凡是我所认识和尊敬的作家,都坦率地承认在他们动笔时,不清楚要写什么,怎么写。

【用法】

(1) ... I have known, and whom I respect 为定语从句,前面省略了关系代词 whom。

(2) where they are going 为 idea 的同位语从句。

(3) when they first set pen to paper 为时间状语。

2. They have a character, perhaps two; they are in that condition of eager discomfort which passes for inspiration; all admit radical changes of destination once the journey has begun;...

【译文】他们心中有一个或两个角色。他们处于急切不安的状态,而这被当作灵感。他们无不承认,一旦"旅程"开始,"目的地"常有急剧的变化。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) two 指 two characters。which passes for inspiration 为定语从句，修饰 that condition of eager discomfort。once 为连词，引导条件状语从句。该句采用比喻的手法，将写作过程比作旅行。

(2) 介词短语 in that condition of 意思是 in the state of(处于……状态中)，condition 前面可以用形容词修饰，如 in good condition，in bad condition，in a terrible condition 等。eager discomfort 的意思是 suffering from annoyance(不安，困苦)。动词词组 pass for 的意思是"被称作，被看作"，如：He can pass for Japanese. 他会被错当作一个日本人。

3. One, to my certain knowledge, spent nine months on a novel about Kashmir, . . .

【译文】据我所知，有位作家花了 9 个月的时间写了一部关于克什米尔的小说，……

【用法】one 指某作家。to my certain knowledge 为插入语，意即"就我所知"。

4. I never heard of anyone making a "skeleton", as we were taught at school.

【译文】我从未听说过任何一个作家像我们在学校学的那样，动笔前先列什么提纲。

【用法】making a "skeleton"为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 anyone，意即"列提纲的"。as we were taught at school 中的 as 为关系代词，引导一个非限定性定语从句，意即"就像我们在学校学的那样"。

5. . . . the writer comes to discern things in his material which were not consciously in his mind when he began.

【译文】作家会领悟到素材中有很多东西是他刚动笔时未意识到的。

【用法】come to do sth. 开始做某事，如：I came to love him. 我开始爱上他了。discern 领悟、辨明，如：It is difficult to discern the truth. 很难了解真相。

6. This organic process, often leading to moments of extraordinary self-discovery, is of an indescribable fascination.

【译文】这种有机的加工过程往往达到不同寻常的自我发现的境界，具有难以言表的构思魅力。

【用法】

(1) This organic process 指前句中提到的 the breaking and remaking, the timing 等写作过程。

(2) often leading to... 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 This organic process。

(3) be of 具有，如：He is of confidence. 他是自信的。

7. A blurred image appears; he adds a brushstroke and another, and it is gone; but something was there. . .

【译文】一个朦胧的形象出现在作家的脑海里，他左添一笔，右添一笔，形象反而消失了；可是好像还有什么东西存在着。

【用法】it 指 a blurred image。

8. . . . ; but something was there, and he will not rest till he has captured it. Sometimes the yeast within a writer outlives a book he has written.

【译文】可是，好像还有什么东西存在着，不把它捕捉到，作家是不会罢休的。有时，一个作家一本书写完了，但兴奋仍不消散。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) till 这里为连词，意思为"直到……为止"，引导时间状语从句。till 与 until 的意义的用法相同，但句首一般不用 till 而用 until。要注意在使用 until 或 till 表示汉语"直到……才"的时候，常常要把汉语的肯定句改为否定句。

(2) rest 这里为不及物动词，意思为"休息"。

(3) yeast 原意为"酵母"，这里引申为"兴奋"。

(4) outlive 意思为"比……活得长，比……存在时间长"。

(5) he has written 为省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句，修饰 a book。

9. I have heard of writers who read nothing but their own books; like adolescents they stand before the mirror, and still cannot fathom the exact outline of the vision before them.

【译文】我听说一些作家，除了自己的书外，别的书一概不读，犹如希腊神话中那位漂亮少年，站在镜前，不能辨认出自身的真面目。

【用法】

(1) who read nothing but their own books 为定语从句，修饰 writers。

(2) nothing but 固定搭配，意思为"只是，只"。

(3) like 这里为介词，意思为"如同……样"。

(4) 这里的两个 before 都是介词，意思为"在……的前面"，相当于 in front of。

10. For the same reason, writers talk interminably about their own books, winkling out hidden meanings, super-imposing new ones, begging response from those around them.

【译文】由于这个原因，作家喋喋不休地谈论自己的书，挖掘其隐晦的含义，增添新的含义，询问周围人的反应。

【用法】

(1) 句子中的 3 个现在分词短语均作状语，表示伴随状况，修饰 talk about。new ones 指 new meanings。those around them 指他们周围的人。

(2) 动词词组 winkle out 的意思是 get sth. out slowly and with difficulty(缓慢而费力地弄出，费力地从某处得到信息)，如：A farmer winkled out the child of the dry well. 一个农夫把那个孩子从一口干枯的井里弄出来。

11. Of course a writer doing this is misunderstood: he might as well try to explain a crime or a love affair.

【译文】作家如此行事当然会被人误解。他还不如给人讲一个犯罪事件或一个恋爱故事。

【用法】

(1) doing this 这里的用法为现在分词短语作名词的后置定语，修饰 a writer。

(2) might as well 相当于一个情态动词，意思为"还是……的好"。

(3) love affair 风流韵事。

12. This temptation to cover the distance between himself and the reader, to study his image in the sight of those who do not know him, can be his undoing: he has begun to write to please.

【译文】这种企图消除自己和读者之间距离的作法，企图用不了解自己的人的观点来研究自己塑造的形象的作法会导致作家的毁灭，因为他已经开始为取悦他人而写作了。

【用法】

(1) 文中两个动词不定式 to cover... 和 to study... 均作定语，修饰 this temptation。

(2) 句子的谓语部分是 can be his undoing。冒号后面的部分是说明 undoing 的原因。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

13. A young English writer made the pertinent observation a year or two back that the talent goes into the first draft, and the art into the drafts that follow.

【译文】一两年前，一位年轻的英国作家发表了中肯的看法。他说，初稿是才华，以后各稿才是艺术。

【用法】

(1) that the talent goes into... that follow 是 observation 的同位语从句。

(2) the art 和 into 之间省略了动词 goes。

(3) that follow 为定语从句修饰 draft。

14. For this reason also the writer, like any other artist, has no resting place, no crowd or movement in which he may take comfort, no judgment from outside which can replace the judgment from within.

【译文】也是由于这个原因，作家同任何艺术家一样，找不到可休息的场所，找不到伙伴和活动使自己得到安逸。任何局外人的判断也比不上他自己内心的正确判断。

【用法】

(1) also 为副词，通常置于主语的后面，但是该句的主语后面有插入语，故将 also 提前。

(2) outside 为名词，意即"局外人"。

(3) which 引导的是定语从句，修饰 judgment from outside。定语从句中的 within 也是名词，意即"内心"。

15. A writer makes order out of the anarchy of his heart; he submits himself to a more ruthless discipline than any critic dreamed of...

【译文】一旦作家从内心的紊乱中理出头绪，就应按任何评论家想象不到的无情规范约束自己去写作……

【用法】

(1) submit oneself to 固定词组，意思为"甘受，服从"，其中 to 为介词。

(2) than any critic dreamed of 为 than 引导的定语从句，修饰 discipline。

(3) dream of 固定词组，意思为"梦想，梦见……"。

16. ..., and when he flirts with fame, he is taking time off from living with himself, from the search for what his world contains at its inmost point.

【译文】当他沽名钓誉时，他就脱离了自我生活，脱离了对自己灵魂最深处世界的探索。

【用法】

(1) flirt with 和……调情，不认真地考虑。

(2) take time off 抽出一部分时间。

(3) search for 固定搭配，意思为"寻找……"。

(4) what his world contains at its inmost point 为 what 引导的名词性从句，这里充当 for 的宾语。

核心语法

➡先行主语和先行宾语的用法(1)

一、主语从句在复合句中充当主语

大多数主语从句都可以用 it 代替，作形式主语，把主语从句置于句尾。that 引导的主语

www.TopSage.com

大家网

从句可用 it 代替，that 不可省。但是，当 what 引导的主语从句表示"……的东西"时，一般不用 it 作形式主语。whatever，whoever，whichever 一般也不用 it 作形式主语。比较：

That she should be ungrateful cut him to the heart. 她竟忘恩负义，这使他很伤心。

TopSage.com

That she will succeed is certain.（正）
It is certain that she will succeed.（正）她会成功是确实的。
She will succeed is certain.（误）

二、it 作形式主语和 it 引导强调句的比较

it 作形式主语代替主语从句，主要是为了平衡句子结构（特别是谓语较短时），主语从句的连接词没有变化。而 it 引导的强调句则是对某一句子成分的强调（这一成分可以是词、词组或句子），其结构是"It is(was)＋that"。无论强调的是什么成分，都要求用连接词 that（强调人时，也可以用 who，whom，whose）。要特别注意的是，当强调部分是状语时，也只能用 that，不要误用 when，where，how，why 等。比较：

It was in Paris where they met for the first time.（误）
It was in Paris that they met for the first time.（正）

但：It is Mr. Smith that (who) invited Professor Li to Harvard University.

三、用 it 作形式主语的主语从句结构

在本部分第 4 类结构或某些其他结构中，有时也可用关系代词或关系副词引导的从句。

1. 主语＋名词＋从句

It is a pity that...	遗憾的是……
It is a fact that...	事实是……
It is good news that...	……是好消息
It is no wonder that...	……不足为奇
It is a wonder that...	真是个奇迹……
It is a shame that...	……真是可耻
It is an honour that...	……非常荣幸
It is common knowledge that...	……是常识

2. 主语＋形容词＋从句

It is natural that...	很自然……
It is obvious that...	显而易见……
It is fortunate that...	幸运的是……
It is possible that...	很可能……
It is unlikely that...	不可能……
It is strange that...	奇怪的是……

3. It＋不及物动词＋从句

It seems that...	似乎……
It turned out that...	结果……
It appears that...	看来……
It happened that...	碰巧……

4. It＋过去分词＋从句

It is not known that...	……不得而知
It is said that...	据说……

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

It is reported that...	据报道……
It is to be discussed that...	……有待讨论
It has been proved that...	已证明……
It is estimated that...	据估计……
It is to be noted that...	值得注意的是……
It is believed that...	据认为……
It is announced that...	据宣布……
It can safely be said that...	完全可以说……
It must be admitted that...	必须承认……

5. 其他

It doesn't matter...	是无关紧要的……
It makes no difference...	毫无区别……
It doesn't make too much difference that...	……关系不大
It doesn't need to be bothered that...	不必担忧……
It is of little consequence that...	……无关紧要
It suddenly struck me (occurred to me) that...	我突然想到(感觉到)……

四、主语从句不可位于句首的三种情况

除上文讲到的 if 主语从句不可居复合句的句首外，在下列情况下，主语从句亦不可提前：

1. It doesn't matter+how/whether...结构中的主语从句不可提前。例如：

It doesn't matter whether he likes it or not.（正）
Whether he likes it or not doesn't matter.（误）

2. It is said/reported...结构中的主语从句不可提前。例如：

It is said that the highway will be open to traffic next year.（正）
That the highway will be open to traffic next year is said.（误）

3. It happens/occurs...结构中的主语从句不可提前。例如：

It occurred to her that she had forgotten to lock the door.（正）
That she had forgotten to lock the door occurred to her.（误）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 40 Waves

本节重点和难点

先行主语和先行宾语的用法(2)

- 动词+it+that 结构
- 在 would appreciate 后代替作宾语的 if 从句
- 在 owe it to sb. to do sth. 和 leave it to sb. to do sth. 结构中代替动词不定式
- 动词的宾语为带有形容词或名词补足语的动词不定式或名词性从句

本课词汇

signature [ˈsignətʃə] *n.* 签名,标记

infinity [inˈfiniti] *n.* 无穷

【词组】infinity of the universe 宇宙的无穷/to infinity 直到无限/wait for an infinity 无限期等待

ray [rei] *n.* 光线

【辨析】beam、ray 这两个词都有"光线"的意思。严格地说,前者是光束,后者是光线;前者指一束光,后者指一线:A beam of white light is split by prism into rays of light of various colours of the spectrum.(一束白光通过棱镜分解成光谱上各种不同颜色的光线。)

energize [ˈenədʒaiz] *v.* 给予……能量

rhythm [ˈriðəm] *n.* 节奏

transmit [trænzˈmit] *v.* 传送

【辨析】send、transmit 这两个词都有"发送"之意。发电报,英文通常用 send。transmit 是指 operator 通过电报机把电码输送发出。

exquisite [ˈekskwizit] *adj.* 高雅的

phenomena [fiˈnɔminə] *n.* 现象(phenomenon [fiˈnɔminən] 的复数)

crest [krest] *n.* 浪峰

trough [trɔf] *n.* 波谷

vertical [ˈvəːtikəl] *adj.* 垂直的

【辨析】vertical、perpendicular 这两个词都有"垂直"之意。vertical 指与水平成直角的垂直线,perpendicular 特指用于几何的任何与平面成为直角的直线。前者只用于比喻,而后者则多用于具体方面。

horizontal [ˌhɔriˈzɔntl] *adj.* 水平的

【词组】horizontal line 地平线

actuality [ˌæktʃuˈæliti] *n.* 现实

catastrophic [ˌkætəˈstrɔfik] *adj.* 大灾难的

particle [ˈpɑːtikl] *n.* 微粒

maturity [məˈtʃuərəti] *n.* 成熟

undulate [ˈʌndjuleit] *v.* 波动,形成波浪

tremor [ˈtremə] *n.* 震颤

gravitational [ˌgræviˈteiʃənl] *adj.* 地心吸力的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. Waves are the children of the struggle between ocean and atmosphere, the ongoing signatures of infinity.

【译文】海浪是大海和空气相斗的产物，一种象征永恒的生动体现。

【用法】

(1) the ongoing signatures of infinity 是 waves 的同位语，对 waves 作进一步的说明。

(2) the children of 此处用作比喻修辞法，意思是 the result of(……的结果)。

2. Rays from the sun excite and energize the atmosphere of the earth, awakening it to flow, to movement, to rhythm, to life.

【译文】太阳光刺激了地球的大气层，并给予它能量；阳光使空气开始流动，产生节奏，获得生命。

【用法】

(1) awakening it to flow, ... life 为现在分词短语，作状语表示伴随状况。

(2) 短语中的 3 个由介词 to 引导的介词短语为并列成分。

(3) 该句采用拟人手法，将 the atmosphere of the earth 看做有生命的物体，阳光使它流动，产生节奏，获得生命。

3. The wind then speaks the message of the sun to the sea and the sea transmits it on through waves—an ancient, exquisite, powerful message.

【译文】风把太阳的信息带给了大海，海洋用波浪的形式传递这个信息——一个源远流长、高雅而有力的信息。

【用法】

(1) 该句通过使用 speaks the message of the sun 和 transmits it on through waves 这类的词语，将风和海洋都赋予了生命，使文章更为生动形象。破折号后面的部分是 it 的同位语，it 指 the message。

(2) speak... to 向……传递。

(3) transmit... on 断续传送。

4. The basic features include a crest (the highest point of the wave), a trough(...), ... and a period (which is the time it takes a wave crest to travel one wave length).

【译文】它们的基本特征包括浪峰(波浪的最高点)、波谷(最低点)、浪高(从波谷到浪峰的垂直距离)、波长(两个浪峰间的水平距离)和周期(浪峰走过一个波长所需的时间)。

【用法】该句中各括号部分是对该括号前的名词的具体说明。to travel one wave length 作动词 takes 的宾语，a wave crest 的补足语。

5. Although an ocean wave gives the impression of a wall of water moving in your direction, in actuality waves move through the water leaving the water about where it was.

【译文】虽然海浪给人的印象是一堵由水组成的墙向你压过来，而实际上，浪从水中移过，而水则留在原处。

【用法】

(1) Although 引导让步状语从句。moving in your direction 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 a wall of water。in actuality 为介词短语，作状语。leaving the water about where it was 为现在分词短语，作伴随状语。

(2) give the impression of 给人……印象。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. If the water was moving with the wave, the ocean and everything on it would be racing in to the shore with obviously catastrophic results.

【译文】如果水和浪一起移动的话，那么大海和海里所有的东西就会向岸边疾涌而来，带来明显的灾难性后果。

【用法】

(1) 这个句子使用一般现在时态的虚拟语气，这个虚拟语气是由 if 引导的条件状语从句引入的，由于这个条件是与现在事实相反的，所以必须使用与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。

(2) 与现在事实相反的虚拟语气的一般结构为：在 if 引导的条件状语从句中，谓语动词用动词的过去式（系动词 be 采用 were），主句中用 would/should/could/might＋动词原形。例如：

If he cared about me, he would go to the hospital to see me. 如果他关心我，他会到医院去看我的。

(3) with 这里的意思为"随着，跟随"。

(4) everything on it 中介词短语 on it 为 everything 的后置定语，其中 it 指的是 the ocean。

(5) race in to 冲向，如：The angry crowd raced in to the city hall. 愤怒的人群冲进市政厅。

7. An ocean wave passing through deep water causes a particle on the surface to move in a roughly circular orbit, drawing the particle first towards the advancing wave, then up into the wave, then forward with it and then—as the wave leaves the particles behind—back to its starting point again.

【译文】穿过深水的海浪使水面上的一个微粒按照一种近乎圆形的轨道移动，先把微粒拉向前移的海浪，然后推上波浪，随着波浪移动，然后——当波浪把微粒留在身后时——又回到出发点。

【用法】passing through deep water 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 wave。on the surface 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 particle。to move in a roughly circular orbit 为动词不定式短语，作宾语 a particle 的补足语。现在分词 drawing 引导的短语作状语，表示伴随状况。该分词短语中分别用 towards、up into、forward with 和 back to 等介词和副词引导并列成分，生动地将微粒在海浪作用下的运动规律完整地描述出来。破折号之间的部分为时间状语从句，对波浪的运动作具体的说明。

8. From both maturity to death, a wave is subject to the same laws as any other "living" thing.

【译文】从成熟到消亡，波浪和其他任何"活动中"的东西一样，都受制于共同的法则。

【用法】

(1) From both maturity to death 为介词短语，作时间状语。作者在文中一直采用拟人的手法。此处也不例外。将波浪的运动过程比作"从成熟到死亡"的过程。

living 加引号表示这是一种比喻的用法，因为 wave 本身是没有生命的。

(2) be subject to 受……的支配，服从于，如：

We are subject to the rules and regulations in effect. 我们遵守各项已生效的规章制度。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(3) the same... as 与……相同的，如：

I want a shirt that's the same as the one in the window. 我想买一件和橱窗里那件一样的衬衫。

TopSage.com

9. For a time it assumes a miraculous individuality that, in the end, is reabsorbed into the great ocean of life.

【译文】一度它获得非凡的个性，但最终又被重新融进生命的大洋。

【用法】

(1) that 引导一定语从句，修饰 a miraculous individuality。

(2) for a time 一度，曾经。

(3) absorb into 把……吞并，把……融入，如：

The small firms were absorbed into large cartels. 小公司被并入大的联合企业。

All the houses were absorbed into the flood. 所有的房屋都被洪水吞没了。

10. Once waves have been generated, gravity is the force that drives them in a continual attempt to restore the ocean surface to a flat plain.

【译文】一旦波浪形成，地球引力是持续不断企图使海面复原为平面的力量。

【用法】

(1) once 这里意为"一旦"。

(2) that 引导的是定语从句。

(3) in a continual attempt 作方式状语。

(4) to restore the ocean surface to a flat plain 为动词不定式作目的状语。

核心语法

➡先行主语和先行宾语的用法(2)

一、动词+it+that 结构

正如我们常用 it 作形式主语，代替真正的 that 主语从句一样，我们也常用 it 作形式宾语，把作为真正宾语的 that 从句放在句尾，特别是在带复合宾语的句子中。这种结构中的 that 不可省。例如：

I heard it said that she had gone abroad. 听说她到国外去了。

I shall see to it that he is taken good care of when you are absent. 你不在的时候，我负责把他照顾好。

We consider it absolutely necessary that we should open our door to the outside world. 打开国门，实行开放，我们认为这是绝对必要的。

He has made it clear that he won't agree to the plan. 他说得很清楚，他不会同意这个计划的。

I found it strange that he has not come yet. (正)他现在还没有来，我感到很奇怪。
I found it strange he has not come yet. (误)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

二、在 would appreciate 后代替作宾语的 if 从句

I would appreciate it if you would keep me informed. 如果你随时让我知道情况，我会很感激的。

三、在 owe it to sb. to do sth. 和 leave it to sb. to do sth. 结构中代替动词不定式

We owe it to society to make our country a better place. 把国家建设得更美好是我们对社会应尽的责任。

I'll leave it to you to decide. 我让你去决定吧。

四、动词的宾语为带有形容词或名词补足语的动词不定式或名词性从句

I find it difficult to talk to you. 我感到很难同你谈话。

My blister made it a problem to walk. 我脚上的水泡使我走路成了问题。

注意，当没有作补足语的形容词或名词时，通常不使用这种结构，如：

I cannot bear to see people crying. 我不能忍受看人们哭。（不说：I cannot bear it to see...）

I remember that we were very happy. 我记得我们非常高兴。（不说：I remember it that...）

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 41 Training elephants

本节重点和难点

- 修辞疑问句

本课词汇

technique [tek'niːk] *n.* 技术
tough [tʌf] *adj.* 强硬的
resentful [ri'zentfl] *adj.* 忿恨不满的
assign [ə'sain] *v.* 分配，指派
【辨析】assign 分配，分派：派某人去完成某项工作；allot 分配，摊派：按一定原则把东西分给不同的人；apportion 分摊：按公平原则。
mahout [mə'haut] *n.* 驯象的人
calf [kɑːf] *n.* 幼仔
pine [pain] *v.* 消瘦
underline [ˌʌndə'lain] *v.* 着重说明，强调
keep [kiːp] *n.* 生计
subservient [səb'səːviənt] *adj.* 屈从的
tame [teim] *adj.* 养驯服了的
tether ['teðə] *v.* (用绳)拴
ticklish ['tikliʃ] *adj.* 难对付的，棘手的
alarming [ə'lɑːmiŋ] *adj.* 使人惊动的，令人担忧的
accompaniment [ə'kʌmpənimənt] *n.* ①伴随物 ②【音】伴奏
soothe ['suːð] *v.* 镇定
chant [tʃɑːnt] *n.* 单调的歌
endearing [in'diəriŋ] *adj.* 惹人喜爱的
epithet ['epiθet] *n.* 称呼
susceptible [sə'septəbl] *adj.* 易受感动的
blandishment ['blændiʃmənt] *n.* 奉承
lash [læʃ] *v.* 猛烈地甩
curl [kəːl] *v.* 使卷曲

课文详解

1. ... which we may call respectively the tough and the gentle.

【译文】驯象有两种主要的方法，我们分别称之为强硬法和温柔法。

【用法】which 引导的是非限定性定语从句，修饰 techniques。the tough 和 the gentle 后面省略了 techniques。

2. The former method simply consists of setting an elephant to work and beating him until he does what is expected of him.

【译文】前者就是驱使象去干活，把它打到顺从为止。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) until 引导的是时间状语从句，意即"直到它做人们期望它做的事为止"。主句中两个现在分词短语作宾语。

(2) consist of 包括，由……组成，无被动语态。Our state consists of thirty counties. 我们州由 30 个县组成。

(3) set sb. to do sth. 使某人做某事，如：She set them to write reports. 她让他们写报告。

(4) expect sth. of/from sb. 期待某人某事物，如：We expected more of/from him. 我们对他有更大的期待。

3. Apart from any moral considerations this is a stupid method of training, for it produces a resentful animal who at a later stage may well turn man-killer.

【译文】且不说道义问题，这本身就是一种愚蠢的训练方法，因为这种方法训练会使动物反感，在以后某个时期可能会变成伤人的动物。

【用法】

(1) for 引导的是原因状语从句。who 引导的是定语从句，修饰 a resentful animal。

(2) apart from 除……以外，且不说，如：It's a good piece of work, apart from a few faults. 除了几个错误之外，这是一件很不错的作品。/Apart from being too large, this dress just doesn't suit me. 除了太大之外，这件礼裙对我就是不合适。

(3) at a later stage 在以后的某个阶段。

(4) may well 很可能。

(5) turn 在该句中的意思是"成为"，作系动词，其后可以跟名词，但该名词前不用冠词，如：He had turned traitor and told the police where to find his fellow gang members. 他成了叛徒，告诉警察在哪儿能找到他的同伙。

(6) man-killer 的构词法是"名词＋动词＋-er"，前面的名词是后面的动词的宾语，如：screw-driver(螺丝刀)，mouse-eater(食鼠动物)，job-hunter(找工作的人)等。

4. ... is to assign to the animal a single mahout who...

【译文】驯象中至关重要的是指派一名专门的驯象员，全面负责这项工作。

【用法】assign sth. to sb. /assign sb. sth. 给某人分派某物，给某人指定某物，如：

They assigned a very difficult mission to us. /They assigned us a very difficult mission. 他们给我们分配了一项非常困难的任务。

5. Elephants like to have one master just as dogs do, and are capable of a considerable degree of personal affection. There are even stories of half-trained elephant calves who have refused to feed and pined to death when by some unavoidable circumstance they have been deprived of their own trainer.

【译文】大象和狗一样，喜欢有一个专一的主人，而且会对主人产生相当深厚的私人感情。甚至有这样的故事：训练了一半的小象，由于不可避免的情况与他们的主人分离后，竟拒绝吃食，消瘦至死。

【用法】

(1) like to do sth. 意思为"愿意做某事，喜欢做某事"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) as dogs do 为 as 引导的比较状语从句，其中 do 指代的 have one master，以避免重复。

(3) be capable of 固定搭配，意思为"能够……"，后面一般接动名词短语。

(4) who 引导的定语从句修饰 half-trained elephant calves。

(5) refuse to do sth. 意思为"拒绝做某事"。

(6) feed 这里为不及物动词，意思为"进食，吃东西"。

(7) pine 这里为不及物动词，意思为"消瘦，憔悴"，pine to death 消瘦致死。

(8) deprive sb. of sth. 固定搭配，意思为"剥夺某人的……"，与其用法相同的有 rob sb. of sth.，cheat sb. of sth.，注意 of 后接的是被剥夺的东西。例如：

She was robbed of her purse last night. 昨晚她的钱包被抢了。

They have been cheated of the best things that life has to offer.

他们被剥夺了生活所能给予的最美好的东西。

6. Such extreme cases must probably be taken with a grain of salt, but they do underline the general principle that the relationship between elephant and mahout is the key to successful training.

【译文】这种极端的事例虽不可全信，但强调了一项基本原则，象和驯象员之间的关系是驯象成功与否的关键。

【用法】

(1) but they do underline... 中的助动词 do 起强调作用。that 引导的是 principle 的同位语从句。

(2) take sth. with a grain of salt 对某事采取保留的态度。含有 salt 的短语还有：rub salt in one's wounds 加深某人的忧伤或痛苦；the salt of the earth 社会中坚分子；高尚的人；worth one's salt 胜任，称职，不是白吃饭的，值得付给报酬。

7. The most economical age to capture an elephant for training is between fifteen and twenty years, for it is then almost ready to undertake heavy work and can begin to earn its keep straight away.

【译文】捕捉 15 岁至 20 岁之间年龄的大象进行训练最为经济。这个年龄的象差不多已能干重活，可以很快挣回饲养它的开支。

【用法】

(1) 动词不定式短语 to capture an elephant for training 这里用作 age 的后置定语。

(2) for 这里引导的为原因状语从句。

(3) it 这里指的是"an elephant"。

(4) be ready to do sth. 这里的意思为"准备好了做某事"。但是，这个短语经常使用的意思为"乐于做某事"，例如：

He was ready to believe her. 他愿意相信她。

She was ready to help those who are in need. 她乐于帮助那些需要帮助的人。

(5) keep 这里为名词，意思为"饲养费用"。

(6) straight away 习惯短语，意思为"立即，马上"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. ...,and a very firm hand must be employed in the early stages.

【译文】因此开始阶段需要有一位强有力的老手。

【用法】a very firm hand 一个强有力的人。hand 可以指"工人",也可以指"专业人员"、"行家",如:a hired hand(一个雇工),an old hand at sth.(处理某事的能手)。

9. The captive elephant, still roped to a tree, plunges and screams every time a man approaches, and for several days will probably refuse all food through anger and fear.

【译文】捕来拴在树上的大象,每当有人走近它时,就会向前猛冲并发出尖叫,甚至一连几天由于愤怒和恐惧而拒绝进食。

【用法】

(1) still roped to a tree 为 the captive elephant 的定语,相当于非限制性定语从句 which is still roped to a tree。

(2) be roped to＝be tied to 意思为"被拴在……上"。其中 rope 为及物动词,意思为"用绳子捆",to 为介词。

(3) every time 这里相当于连词 when,引导时间状语从句。类似的用法还有 the moment。

(4) through 这里的意思为"因为,由于"。

10. Sometimes a tame elephant is tethered nearby to give the wild one confidence, and in most cases the captive gradually quietens down and begins to accept its food.

【译文】有时,把一头已驯服的象拴在旁边能给野象以信心。在大多数情况下,刚捕来的象会慢慢静下来,接着开始吃食。

【用法】

(1) to give the wild one confidence 作目的状语。the wild one 指尚未被驯服的象。

(2) in most cases 在大多数情况下。

(3) quieten down 安静下来。动词 quieten 的构词法是"形容词＋-en",意思是"使变得……",如:widen(放宽,扩展),quicken(加快,加速),strengthen(加强,巩固)等。

11. The next stage is to get the elephant to the training establishment, a ticklish business which is achieved with the aid of two tame elephants roped to the captive on either side.

【译文】下一步就是把象带到训练场所,这是一件棘手的事,需要在它两侧拴上两头驯服的大象帮忙才能完成。

【用法】

(1) a ticklish business... 是 to get the elephant to the training establishment 的同位语。which is achieved... 为定语从句,修饰 a ticklish business。roped to the captive on either side 为过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 two tame elephants。

(2) the training establishment 训练场所。

(3) get sb. to some place 将某人送到某处,如:We'd better get him to a hospital. 我们最好把他送到一所医院去。

(4) with the aid of 在……帮助下,如:With the aid of the PLA soldiers, the people in the flooded area soon rebuilt their houses. 在解放军的帮助下,水灾地区的人们很快就重新建起了房子。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

12. When several elephants are being trained at one time, it is customary for the new arrival to be placed between the stalls of two captives whose training is already well advanced.

【译文】几只象同时训练时，通常是把新到的安置在两头训练得很好的大象的象厩中间。

【用法】

(1) at one time 这里的意思为"同时，一次"，其中 time 的意思为"次数"。

(2) "it is+形容词+for sb. +to do sth."为一个固定句式，意思为"某人做某事是……的"。

(3) whose training is already well advanced 为 whose 引导的定语从句，修饰 two captives。当先行词与从句的主语具有所有关系时，应该使用关系代词 whose。

13. It is then left completely undisturbed with plenty of food and water so that it can absorb the atmosphere of its new home and see that nothing particularly alarming is happening to its companions.

【译文】然后给它以充足的食物和水，一定不要惊扰它，以便让它能适应新居的气氛，并且看到自己的同伴身上没有发生让自己担惊受怕的事。

【用法】

(1) plenty of 固定词组，意思为"很多"，用于修饰不可数名词。

(2) so that 用于引导目的状语从句，意思为"以便，为了"。注意这里的 so that 同"so... that"的区别，后者 so 和 that 是分开使用的，so 作为程度副词修饰形容词或副词，而 that 引导的从句为结果状语从句。例如：

Take your coat so that you can keep warm when it rains. 带上你的外套，这样下雨的时候你可以保暖。

She runs so fast that I can not catch up with her. 她跑得太快了，我赶不上她。

(3) particularly alarming 为不定代词 nothing 的后置定语，形容词修饰不定代词时，要放在不定代词的后面。

(4) happen to 后面接名词，表示"临到……头上(主要指不幸的事情)"，后面接动词时，意思为"碰巧……"，例如：

She happened to live in my community. 她碰巧住在我所居住的小区里。

Bad things have been always happening to her. 不好的事总是烦扰着她。

除了上面两种用法，happen 还经常用于"it happens that+从句"结构中，意思为"碰巧……，偶然……"，例如：

It happens that she lives in my community. 碰巧她刚好住在我所居住的小区里。

14. This is supposed to induce pleasurable sensations in the elephant, and its effects are reinforced by the use of endearing epithets, such as "ho! my son!", or "ho! my father", or "my mother", according to the age and sex of the captive.

【译文】据说这是为了使象产生愉快的感觉，为了加强这种效果，人们还按象的年龄和性别给以亲切的外号，如"嗬！我的孩子！""嗬！我的爸爸！""嗬！我的妈妈！"

【用法】

(1) This is supposed 据说。

(2) induce... in... 使……产生……，如：The unsuccessful job interview induced a sense of failure in him. 不成功的求职面试使他产生了失败的感觉。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

15. These movements are controlled by the trainer with the metal-pointed stick, and the trunk eventually becomes so sore that the elephant curls it up and seldom afterwards uses it for offensive purposes.

【译文】训练员要用有锋利金属尖的长棒控制它的这种举动，象鼻子最后疼得卷了起来，以后他就很少用鼻子去进攻了。

【用法】动词短语 use sth. for... purpose 的意思是"将某物用作某种目的"，例如：Many students use computer for entertainment purpose. 许多学生用电脑作为消遣。

核心语法

➡修辞疑问句

其特点是：

1. 为了获得一种修辞上的效果而提出的，它实际上相当于陈述句，不需回答；
2. 该种问句的否定结构表示肯定意思，肯定结构表示否定意思；
3. 修辞问句在形式上可以是一般问句，也可是特殊问句。

请看例句：

a. A：What does this word mean?（普通特殊问句）
   B：Don't you have a dictionary?（修辞问句）
   It means：you should look the word up in a dictionary for yourself.

b. A：I don't know which of all these job offers I should take.
   What a decision?
   B：What more could you ask for? It's fantastic.

c. A：Can you tell me your age?
   B：Is it important?

d. Can I see another's woe and not be in sorrow too?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 42 Recording an earthquake

本节重点和难点

- be+不定式结构

本课词汇

earthquake ['ə:θkweik] *n.* 地震

slumber ['slʌmbə] *v.* 睡眠

ninepin ['nainpin] *n.* 九柱戏中的木柱

rigid ['ridʒid] *adj.* 僵硬的

【辨析】stiff、hard、rigid 这组形容词都形容"硬的"。stiff(硬的,僵直的)常用字,描写任何相当硬或结实,受到挤压不太会弯的东西。例:a stiff collar 硬领;stiff cardboard 硬纸板。hard(坚硬的)指东西摸起来非常结实、坚硬,而不是软软的,往往不太容易被弯曲、割断或打破。例:ground made hard by frost 冻硬的土地。rigid(钢硬的)指物质、材料非常硬,不会弯曲、拉伸或变形。例:a rigid piece of plastic 硬塑料;a rigid support for a tent 帐篷的坚固支柱。

delicate ['delikit] *adj.* 灵敏的

seismometer [saiz'mɔmitə] *n.* 地震仪

penholder [pen'həuldə] *n.* 笔杆

legibly ['ledʒəbli] *adv.* 字迹清楚地

drum [drʌm] *n.* 鼓状物

wriggle ['rigəl] *v.* 扭动

bluebottle ['blu:bɔtl] *n.* 绿头苍蝇

graph [græf] *n.* 图表

graphic ['græfik] *adj.* 图示的

longitudinal [ˌlɔndʒi'tju:dinl] *adj.* 纵向的

transverse [trænz'və:s] *adj.* 横向的

课文详解

1. An earthquake comes like a thief in the night, without warning.

【译文】地震就像夜间的小偷,不打招呼就来了。

【用法】此处将地震比喻成深夜偷偷溜进来的小偷。此句采用的是明喻的手法。without warning 是介词短语用作方式状语。

2. It was necessary, therefore, to invent instruments that neither slumbered nor slept.

【译文】因此,有必要发明一种仪器,既不打盹儿,也不睡觉。

【用法】

(1) It 为先行主语,to invent instruments... 为句子的真正主语。

(2) that 引导的是定语从句,修饰 instruments。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. Thus the rods, by falling, and by the direction in which they fell, recorded for the slumbering scientist the strength of a shock that was too weak to waken him, and the direction from which it came.

【译文】由于地震太弱而未惊醒科学家时,木棒倒下的多少和倒下的方向就为科学家记录下了地震的强度和地震方向。

【用法】

(1) by falling, and by the direction... 为并列方式状语,表示"通过跌倒和跌倒的方向"。

(2) in which they fell 为定语从句,修饰 the direction。

(3) the strength of a shock..., and the direction... 为动词 recorded 的并列宾语。

4. But instruments far more delicate than that were needed if... was to be made.

【译文】但是,如果要取得真正重大的进展,需要有比这种装置精细得多的仪器。

【用法】far more delicate than that 作定语,修饰 instruments。be to do sth. 表示"想要做某事"、"计划做某事"。

5. The ideal to be aimed at was to devise an instrument that could record with a pen on paper, the movements of the ground or of the table as the quake passed by.

【译文】理想的目标是设计出这样一种仪器:当地震发生时,它能用笔在纸上记录下大地和桌子的运动情况。

【用法】

(1) to be aimed at 为动词不定式,作定语,修饰 The ideal。to devise an instrument... 为动词不定式短语,作表语。the movements of... 作 record 的宾语。of the ground or of the table 作定语,修饰 the movements。as the quake passed by 为时间状语从句,修饰 that could record...。

(2) 动词词组 aim at 的意思是"对准,瞄准",如:He aimed at accuracy. 他力求准确。[习惯用语] aim high 胸怀大志;力争上游;cry aim 喝彩,助威,予以鼓励;give aim 报告射靶结果,远远站在一旁;take aim (at)瞄准。

6. With practice, no doubt, I could in time learn to write by holding the pen still...

【译文】毫无疑问,经过练习,我最终能够学会笔不动而纸动来写字。

【用法】with practice 作状语,表示"通过练习"。in time 最终,迟早,如:In time everything will be forgotten. 迟早一切都会被忘记的。by holding the pen still... 为方式状语。

7. The key to a solution of that problem lay in an everyday observation. Why does a person standing in a bus or train tend to fall when a sudden start is made? It is because his feet move on, but his head stays still.

【译文】可以从我们的日常生活观察中找到这个问题的答案。一个人站在公共汽车或火车上,当车突然开动时,他为什么会倾倒呢?这是因为他的脚动了,而他的头保持着静止。

【用法】

(1) the key to 固定搭配,意思为"……的关键",其中 to 为介词,表示归属。

(2) standing in a bus or train 为 a person 的后置定语。

(3) tend to do sth. 倾向于做某事。

(4) move on 继续前进。

(5) stay 这里为系动词,意思为"保持",后面可以直接接形容词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. Imagine a pen attached to the weight in such a way that its point rests upon a piece of paper on the floor. Imagine an earthquake shock shaking the floor, the paper, you and your hand.

【译文】假定把一支笔拴在重物上，笔尖落在地板上的一张纸上，假定地震发生了，地板、纸、你和你的手都会动。

【用法】

(1) attached to the weight 为 a pen 的后置定语。其中 be attached to 意思为“被粘在……上，被拴在……上”，to 为介词。

(2) that its point rests upon a piece of paper on the floor 为关系代词 that 引导的定语从句，修饰 way。

(3) rest on/upon 固定词组，意思为“被搁在，停留在”。

(4) shaking the floor, the paper, you and your hand 为 an earthquake shock 的后置定语。

9. In the midst of all this movement, the weight and the pen would be still.

【译文】其中重物和笔却都不运动。

【用法】in the midst of 和 in the middle of 的区别。

介词短语 in the midst of 通常指“在一群物体或一片范围之中”，通常表示方位；而 in the middle of 则是指“在与两端距离相等的中点处”，既可表示方位也可表示时间。如：They were in the middle of dinner when I called. 我给他们打电话时，他们正在吃饭。

10. But as the paper moved from side to side under the pen point, its movement would be recorded in ink upon its surface. It was upon this principle that the first instruments were made, but the paper was wrapped round a drum which rotated slowly.

【译文】由于纸在笔尖下来回运动，纸的表面就会用墨水记录下地板运动的情况。根据这一原理，制造出了最初的地震仪器，但是纸是卷在慢慢旋转的圆筒上的。

【用法】

(1) as 这里为连词，意思为“随着，当……的时候”，引导时间状语从句。

(2) from side to side 固定短语，意思为“从一端到另一端，来来回回地”。

(3) It was upon this principle that the first instruments were made 为典型的强调句，被强调部分为句子的方式状语 upon this principle，这里介词 upon 的意思为“根据，依据”。

(4) which rotated slowly 为定语从句，修饰 a drum。

11. As long as all was still, the pen drew a straight line, but while the drum was being shaken, the line that the pen was drawing wriggled from side to side.

【译文】只要一切都是静止的，笔就会划出一条直线；但是，圆筒受到震动，笔所画出的线就会左右摆动。

【用法】

(1) as long as 连词，意思为“只要”，引导条件状语从句，例如：

I don't care who you are, as long as you love me. 我不管你是谁，只要你爱我。

As long as you are confident, you can overcome all the difficulty ahead. 只要你有信心，就能够克服前面的一切困难。

(2) while 这里的意思为“当……的时候”，引导时间状语从句，从句中一般使用进行时。

(3) that the pen was drawing 为定语从句，修饰 the line。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

12. When the instrument is situated at more than 700 miles from the earthquake centre, the graphic record shows three waves arriving one after the other at short intervals.

【译文】如果把这种仪器安装在距震源700多英里远的地方，曲线记录就能显示出前后相间的这3种地震波。

【用法】

(1) arriving one after the other 作宾语补足语。one after the other 一个接一个地，作方式状语。at short intervals 相隔不久，作状语，修饰 arriving。

(2) interval/'intəvəl/n. ①（可数）间隔；间距：an ～ of 10 feet between posts 电线杆之间10英尺的间隔 ②（可数）间隔时间；间歇：the ～ between supper and bedtime 晚餐与就寝间的时间 ③ 课间（或工间、幕间）休息：1～10Min. 休息十分钟（用于节目单中）at ～s 不时；偶尔；每隔一段距离 at ～s of 每隔……时间（或距离）：Trains leave this station at ～s of half hour. 本站的火车每半个小时发车一次。

(3) ①interval 的近义词有 break，但前者一般指排定间歇时间：an interval between the acts of a play（一出戏的幕间休息）；break 指工作中停下休息或为其他目的：Let's have a coffee break.（咱们停下来喝杯咖啡吧。）②interval 用以指幕间等的休息，是英国英语；美国英语用 intermission。

13. It was from the study of these that so much was learnt about the interior of the earth.

【译文】正是从这两种波的研究中，我们可以了解到地球内部的很多情况。

【用法】

(1) 该句为强调句，被强调部分是 from the study of these。these 指前文提到的两种 waves。该句依正常语序为：So much was learnt about the interior of the earth from the study of these.

(2) 注意区别 internal 和 interior：interior 属于拉丁语词源，本身带有比较级意义，它的意思是 of，relating to，or located on the inside（内部的，内心的，本质的）；internal 不含比较级意义，指 of，relating to，or located within the limits or surface（里面的，体内的，国内的）。如：He dreams of being an interior decorator. 他梦想成为一名室内装饰设计师。/No country has the right to interfere in the internal affairs of another country. 任何一个国家都无权干涉别国内政。它们的反义词分别是 external 和 exterior。

核心语法

➡be+不定式结构

1. 构成谓语，表示按计划、安排即将发生的事或动作

A new skyscraper is to be built in our city. 在我们的城市要新建一座摩天大楼。

There's to be a performance tonight. 今晚有一场演出。

这一结构常见于报纸和广播，用以宣布官方的计划或决定。

2. 表示能够，可以做的事

How are you to convince her? 你如何可以劝说她？

Similar conditions are to be found here. 这里可以找到相似的情况。

3. 表示必须或不得不做的事

You are not to leave the classroom without permission. 没有允许你不得离开教室。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 43 Are there strangers in space?

本节重点和难点

- 强调结构

本课词汇

Mercury ['mə:kjuri] *n.* 水星
hydrogen ['haidrədʒən] *n.* 〈化〉氢气
prevailing [pri'veiliŋ] *adj.* 盛行的，流行的
radio-astronomer *n.* 射电天文学家
uniquely [ju:'ni:kli] *adv.* 唯一地
rational ['ræʃənl] *adj.* 合理的
【词组】 rational knowledge 理性知识/a rational act 合理的行为
【辨析】 rational 合理的，有理性的，指人有评断、推理能力，事情合乎道理；reasonable 有道理的，指人说话做事很公道；sensible 合理的，明智的，指人明白事理，事情符合实际。
radio frequency *n.* 无线电频率
megacycle ['megəsaikl] *n.* 兆周
emission [i'miʃən] *n.* 散发
interstellar [ˌintə'stelə] *adj.* 星际的
rendezvous ['rɔndivu:] *n.* 约会地点
encounter [in'kauntə] *n.* 相遇

课文详解

1. We must conclude from the work of those who have studied the origin of life, that given a planet only approximately like our own, life is almost certain to start.

【译文】 根据研究生命起源的人们所做的工作，我们必然会得出这样的结论：如果设想有一颗行星和我们地球的情况基本相似，那几乎肯定会产生生命。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的是动词 conclude 的宾语从句。从句中的 given 引导的是条件状语，意即"如果与我们所在的行星大致相同的话"。

(2) must 此处表示一种对未发生情况的推测，应译成"一定会"，而不应译成"必须"。

(3) given 相当于 if，如：Given A and B are true, C follows.（=If A and B are true, then so is C.）如果 A 和 B 是正确的，那么 C 也是正确的。

2. Mars is too dry and poor in oxygen, Venus far too hot, and so is Mercury, and outer planets have temperatures near absolutely zero and hydrogen-dominated atmospheres.

【译文】 火星太干燥又缺氧，金星太热，水星也一样。除此以外，太阳系的其他行星的温度都接近绝对零度，并围绕着以氢气为主的大气层。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】太阳系中除地球外的八大行星在英语中都是以希腊或罗马神话中诸神的名字命名的，它们包括：

水星	Mercury	[罗神]墨丘利神(众神的信使)；
金星	Venus	[罗神]维纳斯(司爱和美的女神)；
火星	Mars	[罗神]玛尔斯，战神，军神；
木星	Jupiter	[罗神](主神)朱庇特；
土星	Saturn	[罗神]农神；
天王星	Uranus	[希神]天神；
海王星	Neptune	[罗神](海神)尼普顿；
冥王星	Pluto	[罗神]冥王，阎罗王，普路托

3. Of all the planets in our own solar system, we are now pretty certain the Earth is the only one on which life can survive.

【译文】我们目前可以肯定的是，在我们太阳系的所有行星中，地球是生命能存在的唯一行星。

【用法】

(1) pretty 这里为程度副词，意思为“相当”。

(2) be certain that... 为一个固定句式，意思为“可以确定的是……”，that 可以省略。其中 that 引导的从句从语法功能上是一个状语从句，但是从句子的意思来看，为一个宾语从句。

(3) one 这里指的是 planet。

(4) on which life can survive 为定语从句，修饰 one。这里使用 on which 来引导此定语从句，来源于 on the planet。这里的 on which 还可以用 where 代替。

4. But other suns, stars as the astronomers call them, are bound to have planets like our own, and as the number of stars in the universe is so vast, this possibility becomes virtual certainty.

【译文】但是，其他的太阳，即天文学家所说的恒星，肯定会有像我们地球一样的行星。因为宇宙中恒星的数目极其庞大，所以存在着产生有生命星球的可能性几乎是肯定无疑的。

【用法】

(1) as the astronomers call them 这里为 as 引导定语从句，修饰 stars。其中 as 为关系代词，这里指代的是 stars。

(2) be bound to do sth. 意思为“一定会做某事”。

(3) as the number of stars in the universe is so vast 为 as 引导的原因状语从句，这里 as 为连词，意思为“由于，因为”。

(4) 注意 the number of 和 a number of 的区别：the number of 的意思为“……的数量”，而 a number of 的意思为“大量的”，例如：

The number of girls is larger that of boys in this class. 在这个班里，女生的数量比男生多。

There are a large number of students in this class. 这个班里有很多学生。

5. So the number of stars that we know exist is now estimated at...

【译文】因此，我们所知道的现有恒星数目估计约有 30 亿×1000 亿颗。

【用法】that 引导的是定语从句，从句中的谓语动词是 exist。该定语从句修饰 stars。we know 为插入语。estimate sth. at 估计某物为，如：

His parents estimated the cost at about ＄5,000. 他父母亲估计费用在 5,000 美元左右。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. Although perhaps only 1 percent of the life that has started somewhere will develop into highly complex and intelligent patterns, so vast is the number of planets, that intelligent life is bound to be a natural part of the universe.

【译文】虽然在已经产生生命的某个地方，可能只有1%会发展成高度复杂有智力的生命形态，但是行星的数目是那么庞大，有智力的生命必然是宇宙的自然组成部分。

【用法】Although引导的是让步状语从句。该句的主句是so vast....。so vast is the number of planets为倒装结构，按正常语序为：the number of planets is so vast。这是一个so that句式，为了强调，将so和形容词提前，后面的句子倒装。that intelligent life is bound...为结果状语从句。

7. Professor Ronald Bracewell, a leading American radio astronomer, argued in *Nature* that such a superior civilization, on a visit to our own solar system, may have left an automatic messenger behind to await the possible awakening of an advanced civilization.

【译文】美国一位重要的射电天文学家罗纳德·布雷斯韦尔教授在《自然》杂志上提出了这样的观点：假如有如此高级文明生命访问了我们的太阳系，很可能会在离开太阳系时留下自动化信息装置，等待先进文明的觉醒。

【用法】

(1) a leading American radio astronomer是Professor Ronald Bracewell的同位语。

(2) on a visit to…作状语，意思为“在访问我们太阳系的时候”。

(3) 该处用情态助动词＋现在完成时结构，表示这只是一种对过去情况的推测。

8. Such a messenger, receiving our radio and television signals, might well retransmit them back to its home-planet, although what impression any other civilization would thus get from us is best left unsaid.

【译文】这种自动化信息装置，在接收到我们的无线电和电视信号后，完全有可能把这些信号发回到原来的行星。至于其他文明行星对我们地球会有什么印象，还是不说为好。

【用法】

(1) although引导让步状语从句，从句中还包括一个主语从句，由what引导。动词现在分词短语作定语。them指代分词短语中的signals。

(2) 动词短语“leave sth.＋形容词或分词”比较常用，它的意思是“听任；留置不动”，如：
Let's leave the window open. 我们让窗户开着吧。

(3) is best left unsaid最好不去说。

9. But here we come up against the most difficult of all obstacles to contact with people on other planets—the astronomical distances which separate us.

【译文】然而，在和外星人联系中我们遇到的最大困难是分隔我们的天文距离。

【用法】

(1) come up against固定词组，意思为“碰到，遭遇”。

(2) the most difficult＝the most difficult obstacle。

(3) 动词不定式to contact with people on other planets这里用作为all obstacles的后置定语。

(4) contact with固定词组，意思为“与……联系”。

(5) which separate us为定语从句，修饰the astronomical distances。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. Radio waves also travel at the speed of light, and assuming such an automatic messenger picked up our first broadcasts of the 1920's, the message to its home planet is barely halfway there.

【译文】无线电波也是以光速传播的。假定外星人的这种自动化信息装置收到了我们二十世纪二十年代的第一次广播信号，那么这个信号在发回到原来的行星途中刚刚走了一半路程。

【用法】

(1) 这是一个并列句，由 and 连接两个分句，其中第二个分句中包括一个由现在分词 assuming 引导的条件状语从句。

(2) halfway 此处用作副词，意思是"半路地，在中途，在半途"，如：

You can't go halfway when you're painting the walls. Otherwise, you'll probably make a mess of it. 你油漆墙壁时不能半途而废，否则会把事情弄糟的。

11. Similarly, our own present primitive chemical rockets, though good enough to orbit men, have no chance of transporting us to the nearest other star, four light years away, let alone distances of tens or hundreds of light years.

【译文】同样，我们目前使用的原始化学火箭，虽然可以把人送入轨道，但尚不可能把我们送到离我们最近、相距 4 光年的其他星球上去，更不用说几十光年或几百光年远的地方了。

【用法】

(1) though 引导的是让步状语从句，其后省略了从句中的主语和谓语动词 they are。four light years away 是 the nearest other star 的非限定性定语。

(2) 动词短语 have no chance of doing sth. 的意思是"有……的可能性"，如：

The Ox doesn't seem to have any chance of winning the league basketball matches.
看来"公牛"队没有打赢这次篮球联赛的可能了。

(3) let/leave alone 更不用说，如：

I'm too tired to walk, let alone run. 我累得走都走不动了，更不用说跑了。

12. Once the existence of this wave-length had been discovered, it was not long before its use as the uniquely recognizable broadcasting frequency for interstellar communication was suggested.

【译文】一旦这种波长的实际存在被发现，提出把它作为星际间唯一可辨认的广播频率就为期不远了。

【用法】

(1) once 这里为连词，意思为"一旦"，引导时间状语状语从句。

(2) before 这里为连词，引导时间状语从句。

(3) 注意这里 long 和 before 是分开的，它们不是一个词组。long 这里为形容词。

(4) as the uniquely recognizable broadcasting frequency for interstellar communication 为 its use 的后置定语。正是由于这个很长的后置定语才使得 before 引导的从句的主语很长。

13. Without something of this kind, searching for intelligences on other planets would be like trying to meet a friend in London without a pre-arranged rendezvous and absurdly wandering the streets in the hope of a chance encounter.

【译文】没有这种手段，要想寻觅其他星球上的智力生命，就如同去伦敦见一位朋友，事先未约定地点，而荒唐地在街上游逛，以期碰巧遇上一样。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) searching for... planets 作句子的主语。trying to meet a friend... 和 absurdly wandering the streets... 是介词 like 的并列宾语。in the hope of... 作 wandering the streets 的目的状语。

(2) in the hope of，意即“怀着……希望”，如：

We returned to the park in the hope of finding his wallet. 我们返回公园，指望找到他的钱夹子。

核心语法

➡强调结构

a. It was not until he saw his mother that the little boy smiled.

b. It was not until recently that the exact time of dying was of great importance.

注意：

(1) until 后接的动词常是短暂性动词。

(2) 在 not until 倒装结构中，需部分倒装的是主句中的谓语动词，而非从句中的谓语动词。

(3) 倒装结构演化成强调结构时，则主句谓语不再采用倒装形式。

by the time

by the time 意思是“在……之前”，强调的是“一个动作在另外一个动作之前已经完成 (one event is completed before another event)”，因此，by the time 后边接从句，而与其搭配的主句要用完成时态。

by the time 与两种完成时搭配

a. By the time they arrived, we had already left. 那天他们到的时候，我们已经先走了。

从句中 arrived 表示过去动作，对应的主句用过去完成时。

b. By the time they arrive, we will have already left. 一会儿等他们来的时候，我们就将离开了。

从句中 arrive 表示将来动作，对应的主句用将来完成时。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 44 Patterns of culture

本节重点和难点

- 形容词层叠时的顺序

本课词汇

commonplace ['kɔmənpleis] *adj.* 平凡的 *n.* 平凡
aberrant [æ'berənt] *adj.* 脱离常规的,异常的
trivial ['triviəl] *adj.* 微不足道的,琐细的
predominant [pri'dɔminənt] *adj.* 占优势的,起支配作用的
manifest ['mænifest] *v.* 表明
pristine ['pristi:n] *adj.* 纯洁的,质朴的
stereotype ['steriətaip] *n.* 陈规
vernacular [və'nækjulə] *n.* 方言
accommodation [əˌkɔmə'deiʃən] *n.* 适应
incumbent [in'kʌmbənt] *adj.* 义不容辞的,有责任的
preliminary [pri'liminəri] *adj.* 初步的
proposition [ˌprɔpə'ziʃən] *n.* 主张
preferential [ˌprefə'renʃəl] *adj.* 优先的
controversial [ˌkɔntrə'vəːʃəl] *adj.* 引起争论的
cactus ['kæktəs] *n.* 仙人掌 (*pl.* cacti ['kæktai])
termite ['tə:mait] *n.* 白蚁
variant ['vɛəriənt] *adj.* 不同的
barbarian [bɑ:'bɛəriən] *n.* 野蛮人
pagan ['peigən] *n.* 异教徒
sophistication [səˌfisti'keiʃən] *n.* 老练
premise ['premis] *n.* 前提
supernatural [sju:pə'nætʃrəl] *adj.* 超自然的

课文详解

1. Custom has not commonly been regarded as a subject of any great moment.

【译文】风俗一般未被认为是什么重要的课题。

【用法】名词 moment 此处译作"重要性",如:This is a discovery of great moment. 这是一个重大的发现。[习惯用语] all of a moment 突然之间;of great moment 关系重大的;of little [no] moment 不[大]重要的。

2. The inner workings of our own brains we feel to be uniquely worthy of investigation, but custom, we have a way of thinking, is behaviour at its most commonplace.

【译文】我们觉得,只有我们大脑内部的活动情况才值得研究,至于风俗呢,只是些司空见惯的行为而已。

【用法】

(1) The inner workings of our own brains 是动词 feel 的宾语,为了强调而把其提前。to be

www.TopSage.com

大家网

uniquely worthy of investigation 是该宾语的补足语。we have a way of thinking 是插入语，意即"我们认为"。at its most commonplace 作定语，修饰 behaviour。

(2) 句型"feel sth. to be worthy of+名词或动名词"的意思是"认为做某事有必要，感觉某事值得做"。

TopSage.com

3. As a matter of fact, it is the other way around.

【译文】事实上，情况正好相反。

【用法】

(1) As a matter of fact 习惯短语，意思为"事实上"，相当于 in fact。

(2) the other way around 习惯短语，意思为"正好相反"。

4. Traditional custom, taken the world over, is a mass of detailed behaviour more astonishing than what any one person can ever evolve in individual actions, no matter how aberrant.

【译文】从世界范围来看，传统风俗是由许多细节性的习惯行为组成，它比任何个人养成的行为都更加引人注目，不管个人行为多么异常。

【用法】

(1) taken the world over 是过去分词短语，作 Traditional custom 的定语。taken 前面省略了 it is，意即"被全世界所接受的"。more astonishing than... actions 作 behaviour 的定语。no matter how aberrant 作让步状语，省略了 they may be，这里 they 指 individual actions。

(2) a mass of 一大堆，如：a mass of sand(一大堆沙子)。

5. The fact of first-rate importance is the predominant role that custom plays in experience and in belief, and the very great varieties it may manifest.

【译文】最重要的是，风俗在实践中和信仰上所起的举足轻重的作用，以及它所表现出来的极其丰富多彩的形式。

【用法】

(1) first-rate 形容词，意思为"一流的，第一位的，最重要的"。

(2) that custom plays in experience and in belief 为 that 引导的定语从句，修饰 role。其中 play a role in 为固定词组，意思为"在……中起作用"。

(3) it may manifest 为省略了关系代词的定语从句，修饰 varieties。

(4) the very 意思为"正是，就是"，其中 very 为形容词，意思为"恰好的"。当先行词由 the only, the very 修饰时，关系代词只能用 who 或 that，当先行词为人时，关系代词用 who 和 that 都行；当先行词为物时，关系代词用 that，例如：

You are the very girl who I am loving. 你正是我喜欢的女孩啊。

She is the only girl that I once loved. 她是我曾经爱过的唯一一个女孩。

6. No man ever looks at the world with pristine eyes.

【译文】没有一个人是用纯洁而无偏见的眼光看待世界。

【用法】动词词组 look at sth. with... eyes 的意思是"用某种眼光看待某事"，如：We should look at the recent problems with objective eyes. 我们应该用客观的眼光看待最近的这些问题。

7. Even in his philosophical probings he cannot go behind these stereotypes.

【译文】甚至在哲学领域的探讨中，人们也无法超越这些定型的框框。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) even 引导的是让步状语。

(2) 动词词组 go behind 的本意是 look into“探究”，此处译为 get rid of(摆脱掉)。

8. ...his very concepts of the true and the false will still have reference to his particular traditional customs.

【译文】人们关于真与伪的概念依然和特定的传统风俗有关。

【用法】

(1) very 此处用作形容词，其意思是“正是的，真正的恰好是”，用来强调后面的名词。

(2) 动词词组 have reference to 的意思是 be connected with sth.（与某事物有关），如：

This has no reference to the problem on discussion. 这与我们讨论的问题无关。

9. John Dewey has said in all seriousness that the part played by custom in shaping the behaviour of the individual, as against any way in which he can affect traditional custom, is as the proportion of the total vocabulary of his mother tongue against those words of his own baby talk that are taken up into the vernacular of his family.

【译文】约翰·杜威曾经非常严肃地指出：风俗在形成个人行为方面所起的作用和一个人对风俗的任何影响相比，就好像他本国语言的总词汇量和自己咿呀学语时他家庭所接纳的他的词汇量之比。

【用法】

(1) 这个长句子的结构为“主语＋谓语动词＋that 引导的宾语从句”。

(2) 此句 that 引导宾语从句，the part 是从句的主语，后面是动词过去分词短语充当主语的后置定语，as against 部分是带有一个限制性定语从句的比较状语从句，is as the proportion of... 部分是宾语从句的谓语。

(3) 句中将两对事物做对比，解释了个人性格的塑造受习俗的影响过程就像婴儿在家庭中接受的不规范用语最终会被正规的母语词汇所代替。

10. ...,the figure becomes no more than an exact and matter-of-fact observation.

【译文】这个比喻就是他实事求是观察得来的形象化的说法。

【用法】

(1) no more than 的意思是 only, less than(仅仅；少于，不多于)，如：

The enrolled students are no more than one hundred. 报名的学生还不到一百人。

(2) 合成形容词 matter-of-fact 的意思是“关于或依照事实的，切合实际的；平铺直叙的或不带感情的”，如：The local guides describe the history of the various places in the matter-of-fact tones. 当地导游描述各处历史时的语言平淡无味。

11. The life history of the individual is first and foremost an accommodation to the patterns and standards traditionally handed down in his community.

【译文】个人的生活史首先就是适应他的社会世代相传形成的生活方式和准则。

【用法】副词词组 first and foremost 的意思是 above all(首先，首要地)，如：

You should first and foremost get the first-hand information about the accident. 你首先应该得到有关事故的第一手材料。

[习惯用语] first and last 总的来说，主要地，始终，完全；first off 首先。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

12. From the moment of his birth, the customs into which he is born shape his experience and behaviour. By the time he can talk, he is the little creature of his culture, and by the time he is grown and able to take part in its activities, its habits are his habits, its beliefs his beliefs, its impossibilities his impossibilities.

【译文】从他呱呱坠地的时刻起,他所生于其中的风俗就开始塑造他的经历和行为规范。到他会说话时,他就是传统文化塑造的一个小孩子了;等他长大了,能做各种事了,他的社会的习惯就是他的习惯,他的社会的信仰就是他的信仰,他的社会不能做的事就是他不能做的事。

【用法】

(1) into which he is born＝which he is born into 为定语从句,修饰 the customs。

(2) shape 这里为及物动词,意思为"塑造,定型"。

(3) By the time he can talk 中 he can talk 为 the time 的定语从句。by the time 固定短语,意思为"到……时",其中介词 by 的意思为"到……为止,直到……"。

(4) take part in 固定词组,意思为"参加,参与"。

(5) its 这里指的是 his culture's。

(6) its beliefs his beliefs＝its beliefs are his beliefs, its impossibilities his impossibilities＝its impossibilities are his impossibilities.

13. Every child that is born into his group will share them with him, and no child born into one on the opposite side of the globe can ever achieve the thousandth part.

【译文】每一个和他诞生在同一个社会中的孩子和他一样具有相同的风俗;而在地球的另一边,诞生在另一个社会的孩子与他就很少有相同的风俗。

【用法】

(1) that is born into his group 为定语从句,修饰 every child。

(2) share sth. with sb. 固定搭配,意思为"与某人共享某物"。

(3) born into one on the opposite side of the globe 为 child 的后置定语。one 这里指的是 culture,而 one 后面的介词短语 on the opposite side of the globe 为 one 的后置定语。

(4) thousandth 这里的意思为"千分之一",也就是非常小。

14. There is no social problem it is more incumbent upon us to understand than this of the role of custom.

【译文】没有任何一个社会问题比得上风俗的作用问题更要求我们对它理解。

【用法】

(1) it is... custom 作 problem 的定语从句,it 前面省略了关系代词 that。定语从句中的 it 是先行主语,而真正的主语是 to understand。this 代替 problem。

(2) indecent/inˈdiːsənt/*adj*.

①不体面的;举止粗鄙的;下流的;猥亵的:～ language 下流话 ②(非正式)不适宜的;不合适的;不礼貌的。

(3) indecent 常可用于 it 作形式主语的句型中:It was indecent of him not to apologize for coming late. 他迟到了而不表示抱歉,是不礼貌。

15. In the first place, any scientific study requires that there be no preferential weighting of one or another of the items in the series it selects for its consideration.

【译文】首先,任何科学研究都要求人们对可供考虑的诸多因素不能厚此薄彼,偏向某一方面。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) in the first place 习惯短语，意思为“首先”。

(2) require 意思为“要求”，当其后接宾语从句时，从句中的谓语动词应该使用虚拟语气形式，即 should＋动词原形，其中 should 可以省略。类似用法的动词还有 suggest（建议），insist（坚持），demand（命令），order（命令）等。例如：

He suggested that we (should) go to the park. 他提出我们去公园。

I suggested that the skirt (should) be washed in the laundry. 我建议到洗衣房洗这件裙子。

(3) it selects for its consideration 为省略了关系代词的定语从句，修饰 the items。

16. Anthropology was by definition impossible, as long as these distinctions between ourselves and the primitive, ourselves and the barbarian, ourselves and the pagan, held sway over people's minds.

【译文】只要我们同原始人、野蛮人、异教徒之间存在的区别在人的思想中占主导地位，那么人类学按其定义来说就无法存在。

【用法】

(1) as long as 引导的是条件状语从句。

(2) 动词词组 hold sway (over sth.)的意思是“统治，控制；占统治地位”，如：

Among English playwrights, few would deny that Shakespeare holds sway. 在英国的戏剧作家中没有谁能否认莎士比亚文学泰斗的地位。

[习惯用语] under the sway of 受着……的支配，在……的支配[影响]下。

17. It was necessary to recognize that these institutions which are based on the same premises, let us say the supernatural, must be considered together, our own among the rest.

【译文】必须认识到，这些建立在相同前提基础上的风俗，暂且可以说是超自然的东西，必须放在一起加以考虑，我们自己的风俗和其他民族的风俗都在其中。

【用法】that 引导的从句作动词 recognize 的宾语。which 引导的定语从句修饰 these institutions，意即“这些建立在相同前提下的风俗”。let us say the supernatural 作插入语，表示举例，说明 premises。must be considered together 是 that 引导的宾语从句的谓语部分。our own among the rest 作方式状语，our own 和 the rest 后面省略了 institutions。

核心语法

➡形容词层叠时的顺序

几个属于不同层次的形容词作修饰语时，其词序一般按下列的顺序排列：限定词——数词——表示说话人评价的形容词——表示大小、形状、新旧的形容词——表示颜色的形容词——表示国别、来源、材料的形容词——表示用途或目的的形容词——名词中心词。

a weak small spare little man 一个瘦弱的小老头儿

a well-known German medical school 一所著名的德国医学校

the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge 第一座漂亮的中式小白石桥

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 45 Of men and galaxies

本节重点和难点

- if only 用于感叹句中

本课词汇

dispute [dis'pjuːt] *v.* 争夺
mosquito [məs'kiːtəu] *n.* 蚊子
subdue [səb'djuː] *v.* 征服
drainage ['dreinidʒ] *n.* 下水系统
envision [in'viʒən] *v.* 预想
Morocco [mə'rɔkəu] (地名)摩洛哥
latitude ['lætitjuːd] *n.* 纬度
heretic ['herətik] *n.* 异教徒
conceive [kən'siːv] *v.* 想象
suffice [sə'fais] *v.* 足够
nuclear ['njuːkliə] *adj.* 原子弹的
original [ə'ridʒinl] *adj.* 有独到见解的

课文详解

1. In man's early days, competition with other creatures must have been critical.

【译文】在人类早期,人类与其他生物的竞争一定是必不可少的。

【用法】must have been 为典型的情态助动词 must+动词的现在完成时形式,表示对过去情况的推测,如:

—We went to Rome last month. 上个月我们去了罗马。

—That must have been nice. 那一定很有意思。

2. Indeed, we lack practice and experience nowadays in dealing with primitive conditions.

【译文】确实,我们今天缺乏对付原始环境的实践和经验。

【用法】

(1) in dealing with primitive conditions 该介词短语作状语,意即"在对付原始环境方面"。

(2) nowadays 为副词,意即"现如今",如:Nowadays I hardly ever see her. 现在我几乎见不到她。

nowadays 还可以作名词,如:

The kitchens of nowadays are more efficient than those of yesterday. 现在的厨房比过去的方便多了。

(3) lack 缺乏,如:

You lack common sense. 你缺乏常识。

He lacks three votes to win. 他距获胜只差 3 票。

lack 还可以作不及物动词,后面跟介词 for,表示"缺少",如:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She will never lack for friends. 她永远不会缺少朋友。

此外，lack 还可以作名词，意即“缺乏”，如：

For lack of fuel, their planes were grounded. 他们的飞机因缺乏燃料而被迫停飞。

3. I am sure that, without modern weapons, I would make a very poor show of disputing the ownership of a cave with a bear...

【译文】我断定，如果没有现代化的武器，要我和一只熊去争洞穴，我会出洋相的；我也相信，出洋相者并非我一人。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的是宾语从句。without modern weapons 作该从句中的条件状语，意即“如果没有现代化武器”。

(2) make a show of 的意思是“展示，显示”，课文中可译作“出洋相，出丑”。包括名词 show 的习惯用语还有：get this show on the road 开始工作，着手进行；Good show! 好极了！做得漂亮！steal the show 抢镜头，出风头。

【辨析】注意区分 show 和 display：show 的使用范围很广，是非正式用语，所表示的“展示”可以是有意的或无意的，甚至是由于疏忽而露出的。display 强调“摆出来给人家看，或者把要给人家看的东西精心陈列出来，以期收到好的展示效果”。

4. The last creature to compete with man was the mosquito. But even the mosquito has been subdued by attention to drainage and by chemical sprays.

【译文】能与人竞争的生物最后只有蚊子了，然而即使蚊子，也由于我们注意清理污水和喷洒化学药品而被制服了。

【用法】

(1) to compete with man 为 the last creature 的后置定语。

(2) compete with 固定词组，意思为“与……竞争”。

(3) subdue 及物动词，意思为“征服”。

(4) attention to 固定搭配。意思为“对……的注意”。

5. Competition between ourselves, person against person, community against community, still persists,...

【译文】然而人类之间的竞争，人与人，团体与团体，依然在进行着，而且和以前一样激烈。

【用法】person against person 和 community against community 为并列短语，作定语，修饰 Competition，意即“人与人、团体与团体的竞争”。persist 坚持，如：

People persist in thinking that standards are going down. 人们坚持认为水准在下降。

6. But the competition of man against man is not the simple process envisioned in biology. It is not a simple competition for a fixed amount of food determined by the physical environment, because the environment that determines our evolution is no longer essentially physical.

【译文】但是，人与人的竞争并不像生物学中想象的那样是一个简单过程。它已不是为了争得物质环境所决定的有限食物而进行的简单竞争了，因为决定我们进化环境的主要方面已不再是物质。

【用法】

(1) envisioned in biology 为 the simple process 的后置定语，其中 envision 为及物动词，意思为“想象”。

(2) determined by the physical environment 为 food 的后置定语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

(3) a large amount of 固定词组，意思为“大量的”，尤与不可数名词连用。
(4) that determines our evolution 为定语从句，修饰 the environment。
(5) no longer 不再。

7. Our environment is chiefly conditioned by the things we believe.

【译文】我们的环境由我们信仰的东西所决定。

【用法】condition 此处用作动词，意思是“以……为条件，使达到要求的情况”，如：The gift to the boy was conditioned on his good behavior. 给孩子的礼物是以他的表现好坏为条件的。

8. Yet their present development is wholly different, not so much because of different people even, but because of the different thoughts that exist in the minds of their inhabitants.

【译文】然而它们目前的发展程度完全不一样。这倒不是因为人民不同，而是由于居民头脑中的思想不同。

【用法】

(1) that exist... 为定语从句，修饰 thoughts。not so much... 为该句的原因状语。该句包含由连词短语 not... but(不是……而是……)连接的两个原因状语。
(2) 副词 wholly 应译作“完全地，全然地”，如：
They don't wholly agree with you. 他们不完全同意你的意见。
(3) even 作副词，表示“更确切地”，如：
I find some of his habits rather unpleasant, disgusting even. 我觉得他的一些习惯十分不好，甚至令人讨厌。

9. This is the point I wish to emphasize.

【译文】这就是我要强调的论点。

【用法】

(1) I wish to emphasize 为省略了关系代词的定语从句，修饰 the point。先行词在定语从句中充当 emphasize 的宾语，所以可以省略关系代词。
(2) wish to do sth. 意思为“希望做某事”，这时候这个结构相当于 hope to do sth.。另外，wish 还可用于 wish sb. to do sth.，意思为“希望某人做某事”，而 hope 不能用在此结构中。

10. The Holy Office knew this full well when it caused heretics to be burned in days gone by.

【译文】宗教法庭对此是非常清楚，因此从前它总是把异教徒烧死。

【用法】

(1) the Holy Office 指罗马天主教的宗教法庭。this 指前一句 Ideas are dangerous。it 指 The Holy Office。gone by 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 days，意即“逝去的日子”。
(2) 动词词组 know... full well 的意思是“完全知道”，如：
They knew full well that he would certainly break his promise. 他们完全知道他肯定会违背诺言的。
(3) 动词词组 cause sth. to be done 的意思是“造成……，促使……”，如：
The moderator invoked a rule causing the debate to be ended. 仲裁人引用了一项规则使辩论终止。

11. It is only someone looking on from outside that can inject the dangerous thoughts. I do not doubt that it would be possible to inject ideas into the modern world that would utterly destroy us.

【译文】只有外部的旁观者才能灌输危险的思想，向现代世界灌输一种思想以便摧毁我们人类的可能的事，对此我并不怀疑。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 前一句是一个强调句。被强调部分为"only someone looking on from outside"。

(2) 后一句是个复合句。doubt 后面的 that 引导宾语从句。

(3) 在这个宾语从句里,it 为形式主语,真正的主语是后面的不定式 to inject... modern world。

(4) that would utterly destroy us 为修饰 ideas 的定语从句。

12. Twenty or thirty pages of information handed to any of the major world powers around the year 1925 would have been sufficient to change the course of world history.

【译文】如果把二三十页的情报交给 1925 年前后的任何一个世界强国,就足以改变世界历史的进程。

【用法】

(1) 这个句子使用了与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。其基本结构是:if 引导的条件句中谓语动词用"had+过去分词",而主句谓语动词用"would/should/could/might+have+过去分词",例如:

If I had known that a bit earlier, there wouldn't have been such a quarrel between us.

如果我早一点知道的话,我们之间就不会吵架了。

If there hadn't had such a fierce storm, we might have lived a happy life here.

如果没有发生这么凶猛的暴风雨,我们在这里应该过得很幸福。

上面的结构中可以省略 if,这时与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的结构可以写成:条件句中谓语动词用"had+过去分词"并且前置,而主句谓语动词用"would/should/could/might+have+过去分词",本句就是使用的这种形式,例如:

Had I known that a bit earlier, there wouldn't have been such a quarrel between us.

如果我早一点知道的话,我们之间就不会吵架了。

(2) be sufficient to do sth. 足够做某事。

(3) course 这里是"进程,路线"的意思。

13. It is a strange thought, but I believe a correct one, that twenty or thirty pages of ideas and information would be capable of turning the present-day world upside down, or even destroying it.

【译文】这是个离奇的想法,不过我认为这个想法是正确的。二三十页材料中的思想和情报会使当今的世界天翻地覆,甚至毁灭这个世界。

【用法】

(1) 在 believe 和 correct one 中间省略了 it is。that 引导的是 a strange thought 的同位语从句。

(2) 动词词组 turn sth. upside down 的意思是"使得倒装过来,弄得天翻地覆",如:In the tale, Monkey King turned the heaven upside down. 在这个故事里,美猴王把天宫弄得天翻地覆。

14. We cannot think outside the particular patterns that our brains are conditioned to, or, to be more accurate, we can think only a very little way outside, and then only if we are very original.

【译文】我们不能脱离大脑所限定的模式去思考,或者,更准确地说,我们只能稍微离开一点儿,这也需要我们有独创的思想。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 这个并列句结构比较松散，由连词 or 连词的两个分句都是复合句。

(2) 第一个分句带有一个介词短语充当状语 outside the particular patterns，状语里的名词 patterns 带有一个 that 引导的定语从句。

(3) 第二个分句包含一个条件状语从句 only if we are very original。

(4) to be more accurate 作插入语，意为"更确切地说"。

核心语法

➡if only 用于感叹句中

if only 表示"但愿"、"要是……就好了"，它的用法和 wish 基本相同，可表示对现在、过去、将来的虚拟，只是比 wish 更具有强烈的感情色彩。

其特点是：

(1) 主要由 what 和 how 来引导

(2) what 结构主要有三种：

① What a(n) ＋形容词＋可数名词单数＋主谓部分！

② What ＋ 形容词＋不可数名词或可数名词复数＋主谓部分！

③ What ＋ a(n) ＋可数名词单数！

(3) how 结构主要有三种：

① How ＋ 形容词或副词＋主谓部分！

② How ＋ 形容词 ＋ a(n) ＋可数名词单数＋主谓部分！

③ How ＋ 主谓部分(实意动词作谓语)！

请看例句：

a. What a lovely boy he is!

b. How lovely a boy he is! (注意冠词的位置)

c. How lovely the boy is!

d. What foolish mistakes you have made!

e. What nice weather (it is)!

f. How fast time flies!

g. How clever you are!

h. How he snores! (how 修饰动词)

当我们用"what ＋a(n) ＋名词"这样的结构来表示感叹时，根据名词的不同，又有两种情况：一种是不具有感情色彩的普通名词〔i,j 句〕；一种是具有感情色彩的名词〔k,l 句〕。

i. What a day!

j. What a night!

以上两句中的名词 day、night 不具有感情色彩，此时句子可有两种理解方式，既可以理解为褒义："今天天气多好啊！"和"今晚真美！"也可以理解为贬义："今天天气真糟糕！"和"今晚真差劲或真倒霉！"

k. What a moron!

l. What a mess!

以上两句中的名词 moron，mess 已具有感情色彩，即已经把说话人的感情表达出来。我们则按名词的原意翻译："真是白痴！"和"多乱啊！"

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 46 Hobbies

本节重点和难点

倒装结构(1)

- 倒装概述

本课词汇

gifted ['giftid] *adj.* 有天才的
psychologist [sai'kɔlədʒist] *n.* 心理学家
spasm ['spæzəm] *n.* 一阵(感情)发作
futile ['fju:tail] *adj.* 无用的
insinuate [in'sinjueit] *v.* 使潜入,暗示
convulsive [kən'vʌlsiv] *adj.* 起痉挛的
illumination [iˌlu:mi'neiʃən] *n.* 启发,照明
undue [ˌʌn'dju:] *adj.* 不适当的,过度的
grip [grip] *n.* 紧张
recuperation [riˌkju:pə'reiʃən] *n.* 休息
improvise ['imprəˌvaiz] *v.* 临时作成
sedulously ['sedjuləsli] *adv.* 孜孜不倦地
vivify ['vivifai] *v.* 使生气勃勃
aggravate ['ægrəveit] *v.* 加剧
trifling ['traifliŋ] *adj.* 微小的
gratify ['grætifai] *v.* 使满意
caprice [kə'pri:s] *n.* 任性
satiation [ˌseiʃi'eiʃən] *n.* 满足
frantically ['fræntikli] *adv.* 狂乱地
avenge [ə'vendʒ] *v.* 替……报复
boredom ['bɔ:dəm] *n.* 厌烦
clatter ['klætə] *n.* 喧闹的谈话
sustenance ['sʌstənəns] *n.* 生计
appetite ['æpitait] *n.* 欲望
【用法】an appetite for ……的欲望
【辨析】appetite 则主要指对食物的欲求。desire 所指的范围较广,可以指人们有欲望的任何事情。而 lust 是一个贬义词,指邪恶的欲念。
grudge [grʌdʒ] *v.* 怨恨
absorbing [əb'sɔ:biŋ] *adj.* 引人入胜的
banish ['bæniʃ] *v.* 排除,放弃

课文详解

1. ... the mind catches hold of something and will not let it go.

【译文】……脑子纠缠住了某种东西又不肯松手。

【用法】

(1) catch/get/take hold of 抓住,如:At last the policeman caught hold of the thief. 警察最终逮住了那个小偷。

(2) let... go 放掉,让……走,如:We cannot let them go. 我们不能让他们走。
[习惯用语] let alone 更不用提,更别说;let down 扫(某人的)兴;失约;let one's hair down 无拘无束;尽情享乐;let in 让……进来,放……进来,宽恕,赦免,从宽处理;let on 泄漏(秘密)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. The stronger the will, the more futile the task.

【译文】这种意志越是强烈，这种尝试越是徒劳。

【用法】该句使用的是 the more...,the more... 比较结构。the will 后面省略了 is，the task 后面省略了 will be。the task 指 to argue with the mind。

3. One can only gently insinuate something else into its convulsive grasp. And if this something else is rightly chosen, if it is really attended by the illumination of another field of interest, gradually, and often quite swiftly, the old undue grip relaxes and the process of recuperation and repair begins.

【译文】你只能缓和而巧妙地让另一种东西进入痉挛僵持的头脑中。如果选得合适，而且的确受到别的领域的情趣的启迪，那么渐渐地，往往也是很顺利地，原先过度的紧张就会松弛下来，恢复和修整的过程就会开始。

【用法】

(1) insinuate into 固定词组，意思为"使逐渐而巧妙地进入，使潜入"。

(2) and 后面是一个长句子，这个句子使用了两个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

(3) be attended by 意思为"由……伴随着，具有……"。

(4) undue 不恰当的，不应该的，过度的。

(5) one 这里为人称代词，意思为"一个人"。

4. The seeds must be carefully chosen; they must fall on good ground; they must be sedulously tended, if the vivifying fruits are to be at hand when needed.

【译文】要想在需要的时候可随手摘取充满生机的果实，那就必然从精选良种做起，然后将其植入肥沃的土地，还需要勉强地护理。

【用法】

(1) 该句将精神上多种情趣的培养过程比作植物的生长过程，即从选种、种植到护理的过程。if 引导的是该句的条件状语从句。the vivifying fruits 比喻培养成熟的情趣。when needed 作该条件状语从句中的时间状语，when 后面省略了 they are。

(2) are to be at hand 中的 be to do sth. 结构表示"计划或安排的"，如：

The President is to visit Japan next month. 总统下月将访问日本。

We are to get a 10 per cent wage rise in June. 6 月份我们的工资将提高 10%。

(3) at hand 在手边，如：When I read, I want my dictionary near at hand. 我读书时，希望词典近在眼前。

5. To be really happy and really safe, one ought to have at least two or three hobbies, and they must all be real.

【译文】一个人要想真正感到幸福和平安，至少应有两三种爱好，而且都比较实际。

【用法】

(1) To be really happy and really safe 这里用作为目的状语。

(2) ought to 相当于一个情态动词，意思为"应该"，后面跟动词原形。

6. It is no use starting late in life to say: "I will take an interest in this or that."

【译文】到了晚年才开始说："我会对这个或那个感兴趣"，已经没有用了。

【用法】

(1) It 作先行主语，而真正的主语是动名词短语 starting late in life to say。其中 late in life 作状语，修饰动名词 starting。动词不定式 to say 作动名词 starting 的宾语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2) 句式"it is no use+动名词"的意思是"做某事没有收益/好处",类似用法的还有 it is no good doing sth.。

(3) take an interest in sth. 对某事感兴趣,如:

She took a keen interest in the project. 她对这个项目极感兴趣。

7. Broadly speaking, human beings may be divided into three classes: those who are toiled to death, those who are worried to death, and those who are bored to death.

【译文】泛泛地说,人可以分为三类:劳累至死的人,忧虑至死的人,无聊至死的人。

【用法】

(1) Broadly speaking 作插入语,意即"泛泛地说"。句子中的 3 个 those 指前面提到的 3 类人,作 three classes 的同位语。3 个 those 后面跟随的是定语从句。

(2) broadly speaking(一般而言,笼统地讲),如:

Broadly speaking, human is a kind of animal. 笼统地讲,人是一种动物。

(3) "be+过去分词+to death"是一个夸张表示法,可大致翻译成"被……得要命",过去分词还可用形容词代替。如:I am hungry to death. 我要饿死了。

8. It is no use offering the manual labourer, tired out with a hard week's sweat and effort, the chance of playing a game of football or baseball on Saturday afternoon. It is no use inviting the politician or the professional or business man, who has been working or worrying about serious things for six days, to work or worry about trifling things at the weekend.

【译文】对于流汗出力干了一周苦活的体力劳动者来说,让他们在星期六下午再踢足球或打垒球是不合适的;同样,对于为严肃的公务操劳或烦恼了 6 天的政界人士、专业技术人员、商人来说,在周末再让他们为琐事而动脑子和忧虑也是无益的。

【用法】

(1) tired out with a hard week's sweat and effort 为 the manual labourer 的定语。其中 be tired out 意思为"非常疲倦"。

(2) offer 后面为双宾语结构,其中间接宾语为 the manual labourer,而直接宾语为 the chance of playing a game of football or baseball on Saturday afternoon。

(3) chance of 固定搭配,意思为"……的机会"。

(4) professional 这里为名词,意思为"专业人员"。

(5) who has been working or worrying about serious things for six days 为非限制性定语从句,修饰 the politician or the professional or business man。另外,这里使用了现在完成进行时,表示已经部分完成现在仍在进行的动作。现在完成进行时的一般形式为:主语+have/has+been+动词 ing 形式。如:

I have been working for 3 hours today. 我今天已经工作三个小时了。(表示还要继续工作)

She has been studying in this university for 3 years. 她已经在这所大学生活了 3 年。(还要在这所大学生活)

(6) invite sb. to do sth. 意思为"邀请某人做某事"。

9. As for the unfortunate people who can command everything they want, who can gratify every caprice and lay their hands on almost every object of desire—for them a new pleasure, a new excitement is only an additional satiation.

【译文】至于那些能任意支配一切的"可怜的人",他们能够恣意妄为,能染指一切追求的目标。对他们来说,多一种新的乐趣,多一种新的刺激只是增加一分厌腻而已。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) as for 固定词组,意思为"对于"。

(2) 这个句子这么长是因为在 people 后面使用了两个都比较长的 who 引导的定语从句。

(3) they want 为省略了关系代词的定语从句,修饰不定代词 everything。

(4) lay their hands on 固定短语,意思为"得到"。

10. In vain they rush frantically round from place to place, trying to escape from avenging boredom by mere clatter and motion.

【译文】他们到处狂奔乱跑,企图以闲聊和乱窜来摆脱无聊对他们的报复,但这是徒劳的。

【用法】

(1) in vain 徒劳地,作状语。trying to escape from... 为现在分词短语,作目的状语。by mere clatter and motion 作方式状语,修饰 escape,意即"仅以闲聊和乱窜来摆脱"。

(2) 动词词组 rush round 的意思是"到处跑",round 可以与许多动词搭配表示"在……各处;向……四周",意思与 around 相似。如:have a look round 转一转。

11. The long hours in the office or the factory bring with them as their reward, not only the means of sustenance, but a keen appetite for pleasure even in its simplest and most modest forms.

【译文】在办公室或工厂里长时间的工作给他们带来了酬劳,这不仅是谋生的手段,而且还带来了寻找乐趣的强烈欲望,哪怕是最简单的、最低等的乐趣。

【用法】

(1) in the office or the factory 与 hours 的后置定语。

(2) 这句话中将 bring 的宾语进行了后置,其宾语其实为 not only... but(also)连接的两个名词。

(3) not only... but(also)... 固定结构,用于连接两个并列的结构或句子,意思为"不仅……而且……",其中 also 可以省略。

(4) for pleasure even in its simplest and most modest forms 是 appetite 的后置定语。

【辨析】means, instrument 和 instrumentality

means(单复数同形)可以指人或物,其含义为"手段"或"工具",这个词不仅用于具体的东西,也可以用于抽象的意念。如:means of production 生产资料,means of living 生活资料。instrument 主要用于表示按别人的意志行事的人,在用于表示事物时,其含义由 musical instrument(乐器)引申而来,因此 instrument 在表示"工具"或"仪器"时的内涵是操作灵敏,一触即应。instrumentality 可以与 means 换用,但不能与 instrument 换用,因为这个词的含义是对手段的"有效利用"。

12. Yet to both classes, the need of an alternative outlook, of a change of atmosphere, of a diversion of effort, is essential.

【译文】然而,对这两种人来说,都需要换一换脑子,改变一下气氛,转移一下注意力,这是不可缺少的。

【用法】

(1) 3 个 of 介词短语作定语,修饰 the need。to both classes 被提前了,该句按正常语序为:Yet the need of...,of...,of...,is essential to both classes。

(2) be essential to/for 对……非常重要的,如:

Right timing is essential for our project. 时间选得恰当对我们的方案来说是很重要的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

13. Indeed, it may well be that those whose work is their pleasure are those who most need the means of banishing it at intervals from their minds.

【译文】说实在的，把工作当作享受的那些人可能最需要每隔一段时间把工作从头脑中撇开。

【用法】

(1) that 引导的是表语从句。whose 引导的是定语从句，修饰 those。who 引导定语从句，修饰 those。of banishing it... 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 the means，其中的 it 指 work。

(2) may well be 非常可能。

(3) banish... from... 把……逐出……，如：

She was banished from the country. 她被驱逐出境。

(4) at intervals 每隔一段时间，如：

They visit us at regular intervals. 他们每隔一定的时间就来看我们。

核心语法

➡倒装结构(1)

倒装概述

倒装在英文中是一种较常见的语法现象，就其原因来讲主要有以下四方面：

1. 语法上的需要
2. 修辞的需要
3. 句子结构上的需要
4. 强调句子中某一部分的需要

从结构上来讲，倒装句可分为：全部倒装和部分倒装。

全部倒装：将整个谓语部分全部放在主语之前。

部分倒装：只将谓语的一部分（如助动词或系动词）放在主语前面，其余部分仍在主语之后。

a. Now comes your turn.（全部倒装）

b. Could you show me that book?（部分倒装）

本章重点不是探究引起句子倒装的原因，而是着重研究总结各类倒装句型本身。故本章主要内容分两大部分：

1. 倒装结构中的主谓一致

在倒装结构中，一般来说，谓语单复数一定与真正的主语保持一致。

Such is my future house.

Such are my dreams for the future.

2. 较特殊的是：there be 结构

a. There is a book, a ruler and two pens on the desk.

b. There are two pens, a ruler and a book on the desk.

c. There is one or two words misused in the sentence.

(One or two words are misused in the sentence.)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 47 The great escape

本节重点和难点

倒装结构(2)

- 部分倒装
- 全部倒装

本课词汇

assumption [ə'sʌmpʃən] *n.* 假定
manoeuvre [mə'nu:və] *v.* (驱车)移动
myriad ['miriəd] *adj.* 无数的
paradox ['pærədɔks] *n.* 自相矛盾的事
cynic ['sinik] *n.* 愤世嫉俗者
sociologist [ˌsəusi'ɔlədʒist] *n.* 社会学家
shun [ʃʌn] *v.* 避开
affluent ['æfluənt] *adj.* 富有的
chambermaid ['tʃæmbəmeid] *n.* 女招待员
boo [bu:] *n.* 呸的一声
maître d'hotel [ˌmetrə dəu'tel] *n.* (法)总管
snobbery ['snɔbəri] *n.* 势利
hierarchy ['haiərɑ:ki] *n.* 等级制度
entail [in'teil] *v.* 使成为必要
inclement [in'klemənt] *adj.* 险恶的
package tour 由旅行社安排一切的一揽子旅游
insularity [ˌinsju'læriti] *n.* 偏狭
cater ['keitə] *v.* 迎合
exclusively [iks'klu:sivli] *adv.* 排他地
cosmopolitan [ˌkɔzmə'pɔlitən] *adj.* 世界的
preponderance [pri'pɔndərəns] *n.* 优势
overwhelmingly [ˌəuvə'hwelmiŋli] *adv.* 以压倒之势地,清一色地
patronage ['pætrənidʒ] *n.* 恩惠,惠顾
sauerkraut ['sauəkraut] *n.* 泡菜
vie [vai] *vi.* 竞争
municipality [mju:ˌnisi'pæliti] *n.* 市政当局
itinerant [ai'tinərənt] *n.* 巡回者
heath [hi:θ] *n.* 荒地
alienate ['eiliəneit] *vt.* 使疏远
eternal [i'tə:nl] *adj.* 永久的

课文详解

1. Economy is one powerful motive for camping, . . .

【译文】图省钱是露营的一个主要动机,……

【用法】motive 名词,"动机、目的",通常搭配"motive for + v-ing"。如:His motive for working so hard is to earn more money. 他那么努力地工作的目的是挣多些钱。

【辨析】motive, incentive 和 spur

这组词都指促使某人采取行动的"刺激"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(1) motive(*n.*)动机、目的，指某人内在的一种活动，如爱、恨、复仇或野心驱使某人坚决采取行动，如：The police knew that the murderer's motive was jealousy. 警察知道，嫉妒是他犯罪的动机。

(2) incentive(*n.*)刺激、动机、鼓励，指努力做事情的原因，几乎总是暗示这种努力能得到的回报、报偿。如：The fun of playing the game Competition is the strongest incentive to industry. 竞争是勤勉最强的动机。

(3) spur(*n.*)刺激，推动力，是促使努力、热诚做事的原因，更强烈地指一种外在刺激以增加活动的速度和频率。如：To him, difficulties were simply spurs to endeavor. 对他来说，困难只是促使他努力的推动力。

2. But, contrary to a popular assumption, it is far from being the only one, or even the greatest.

【译文】但是，和一般的看法相反，这绝非是仅有的，甚至不是最主要的动机。

【用法】

(1) contrary to a popular assumption 作插入语，意即"和一般的看法相反"。此处，contrary 为形容词，但该形容词不能单独使用，一般和介词 to 连用，表示"相反的"、"对抗的"，如：His actions are contrary to the rules. 他的行为是违背规章的。

(2) 动词词组 be far from 的意思是 not at all sth., almost the opposite of sth.（毫不；一点也不；远非），通常与名词或动名词搭配。如：She is far from good at dancing. 她根本不擅长跳舞。

3. The man who manoeuvres carelessly into his twenty pounds' worth of space at one of Europe's myriad permanent sites may find himself bumping a Bentley. More likely, Ford Escort will be hub to hub with Renault or Mercedes, but rarely with bicycles made for two.

【译文】如果一位游客漫不经心地驾车驶入欧洲无数常年营地之一，花 20 镑租用一个空位，那么他可能会碰见一辆本特利汽车，更可能会望见一辆福特·康索尔和一辆雷诺或一辆梅塞迪斯并排停放着，不过双人自行车则不容易看到。

【用法】

(1) who manoeuvres carelessly into his twenty pounds' worth of space at one of Europe's myriad permanent sites 为定语从句，修饰句子的主语 the man。

(2) find himself bumping a Bentley 为一个典型的"动词＋宾语＋宾语补足语"结构，其中现在分词短语 bumping a Bentley 这里用来充当宾语补足语。"find＋宾语＋宾语补足语"中，充当宾语补足语的可以是名词、形容词、动词的现在分词短语、动词的过去分词短语和介词短语，例如：

I found myself a sheer idiot in the end. 最后我发现自己是一个纯粹的白痴。（名词作宾语补足语）

I find Russian grammar very difficult. 我发现俄语语法很难学。（形容词作宾语补足语）

I found him at home. 我发现他在家。（介词短语作宾语补足语）

Finally, we found him sleeping in his bed. 最终，我们发现他还在被窝里睡觉。（现在分词短语作宾语补足语）

They found their house broken into that night. 那天晚上，他们发现自家的房子被撬了。（过去分词短语作宾语补足语）

(3) be hub to hub with 意思为"紧靠着……"。

(4) made for two 为 bicycles 的后置定语，相当于定语从句 that are made for two persons。

www.TopSage.com

4. That the equipment of modern camping becomes yearly more sophisticated is an entertaining paradox for the cynic, a brighter promise for the hopeful traveller who has sworn to get away from it all.

【译文】现代露营装备一年比一年讲究，这对那些厌世嫉俗者来说是一件有趣的自相矛盾的事情。而对于发誓用露营来摆脱烦恼的人来说，却带来了更光明的前景。

【用法】

(1) That 引导的是一个主语从句，该句的谓语动词是 becomes。is 是整个句子的谓语动词。an entertaining... 和 a brighter promise... 是该句的表语。who 引导定语从句，修饰 traveller。

(2) yearly 是副词，意即"一年比一年地"。

(3) 动词词组 swear to do 的意思是"发誓要……"，如：We have sworn to be faithful to each other. 我们已立誓彼此忠实。

(4) get away from it all 是个固定词组，意即"用出走的方法来摆脱烦恼"。

5. It also provides—and some student sociologist might care to base his thesis upon the phenomenon—an escape of another kind.

【译文】学社会学的大学生来露营是另一种形式的摆脱现实，他们的目的很可能是根据观察到的露营现象去写论文。

【用法】

(1) care to do sth. 意思为"想要做某事，关心做某事"。

(2) base sth. on/upon 固定搭配，意思为"将……建立在……的基础上"，其中 base 为及物动词，意思为"以……作为基础"。

(3) thesis 意思为"论文"，是指攻读硕士或博士学位要撰写的大论文，篇幅较长。而 paper 指的是较短的学术论文，发表在学术期刊上篇幅较短的论文。

6. Affluent he may be, but he is by no means sure...

【译文】他们可能很富有，但给看门人和房间女服务员多少小费，心中却根本没有数……

【用法】

(1) Affluent he may be 作让步状语从句，该从句省略了 however，意即"不管他有多么富有"。

(2) by no means 与 in no way 同义，意即"绝不"、"绝非"，如：
It is by no means certain. 还不能肯定。

7. Master in his own house, he has little idea of when to say boo to a maître d' hôtel.

【译文】他们在家可能是主人，但不知什么时候才能对酒店的经理表示不满。

【用法】

(1) Master in his own house 为让步状语，该句省略了 Although he is a，意即"虽然他在自己家里是主人"。When to say... 为介词 of 的宾语。

(2) have little idea of 不知道。

(3) say boo to a maître d' hôtel 对酒店的经理表示不满。say boo to a maître d' hôtel 是从 not say boo to a goose（非常胆小，不敢得罪）演变而来的。在这个成语中，a goose 常被人们幽默地换成其他字眼。boo 为名词，意即"不满"、"不赞成"。

8. From all such fears camping releases him.

【译文】露营使人们免除了这些忧虑。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】

(1) 该句为倒装句。状语 From all such fears 置于句首，用以起强调作用。

(2) release... from 从……释放，从……解放出来，如：He has been released from prison. 他被释放出狱了。

9. Granted, a snobbery of camping itself, based upon equipment and techniques, already exists; but it is of a kind that, if he meets it, he can readily understand and deal with.

【译文】诚然，露营地本身也存在以露营装备和方式取人的势利现象，但是如果有这种情况，露营者也容易理解，知道如何对付。

【用法】整个句子的主体结构是 Granted..., but...，表示"虽然……，但是……"。这种句型中 granted 总放在句首，意思是"是的"、"诚然"，相当于连接副词，引导让步状语从句。a snobbery of camping itself 作主语，谓语动词是 exists。based upon equipment and techniques 为过去分词短语，作定语，修饰 a snobbery of camping itself。that 引导的是 kind 的同位语从句。if he meets it 作该同位语从句中的条件状语从句。he 指 modern traveller。it 指 a snobbery of camping。

10. There is no superior "they" in the shape of managements and hotel hierarchies to darken his holiday days.

【译文】但在露营地里根本不会有管人的"人上人"和酒店里的等级制度来使露营者的假日过得阴郁低沉。

【用法】they 用引号特指酒店中的管理阶层的那些"趾高气昂"的人。in the shape of... 以……形式出现的，作定语，修饰 they。darken 使……沮丧，如：

Those setbacks darkened his mood. 那些挫折使他十分沮丧。

11. The contemporary phenomenon of car worship is to be explained not least by the sense of independence and freedom that ownership entails.

【译文】当前崇拜汽车现象可以用与所有权相伴的独立和自由意识来解释。

【用法】

(1) is to be explained 可以得到解释。to be 后面跟动词不定式表示可能性。

(2) not least 重要地，主要地，如：They refused to admit her, not least because she hadn't got her membership card with her. 他们拒绝让她进入，主要是因为她没带会员卡。

(3) entail 需要，必然伴有，如：This job would entail your learning how to use a computer. 这项工作需要你学会使用电脑。

12. Not only are the means of arriving at the holiday paradise entirely within one's own command and keeping, but the means of escape from holiday hell (if the beach proves too crowded, the local weather too inclement) are there, outside—or, as likely, part of—the tent.

【译文】完全在自己掌握中的私人汽车不仅是到达假日天堂的工具，而且也是逃离假日地狱（如海滩太挤，当地天气恶劣）的方便工具，因为汽车就停在帐篷外面，或者汽车本身可能就是露营帐篷的一个组成部分。

【用法】

(1) 该句的主体结构是 not only..., but...。该句的第 1 个分句为倒装句。分句按正常语序为：The means of arriving at the holiday paradise are not only entirely within one's own command and keeping...

为了形成鲜明的对比，作者采用了对照的手法，即同时采用两个相反的词组，the

www.TopSage.com

holiday paradise 和 holiday hell 形成反差，分别形容给游客带来快乐的假日和给游客带来烦恼的假日。括号中的内容是对 holiday hell 的具体说明。the local weather 后面省略了 proves。outside... the tent 作 there 的同位语，破折号中间的部分为补充说明。

(2) 在英语中，以否定词开头的句子要倒装。这类的否定词有：no，neither，not only，hardly，rarely，barely 等。keeping 为不可数名词，意即"看管"、"照管"，如：The papers are in my keeping. 文件由我保管。

13. Idealists have objected to the practice of camping, as to the package tour, that the traveller abroad thereby denies himself the opportunity of getting to know the people of the country visited. Insularity and self-containment, it is argued, go hand in hand.

【译文】理想主义者像反对旅行社安排一切的一揽子旅游一样反对露营的做法，说这种封闭的做法使到国外旅游者失去了了解所去国家人民的机会。他们争论说，心胸狭窄和自我封闭是并存的。

【用法】

(1) object 因……而反对，之后的 that 引导的是宾语从句，如：

She objected that the accusation was based on hearsay. 她提出反对，说指控是根据道听途说而做出的。

Our offer was $3 million, but they objected that they had paid $4 million for the property in the first place. 我们出 300 万美元，但是他们反对说首先他们已经为这个产业支付了 400 万美元。

(2) deny oneself sth. 使自己得不到某物，如：

He denies himself nothing. 他从不克制自己的欲求。

(3) go hand in hand 同时进行。

14. Notices forbidding the open-air drying of clothes, or the use of water points for car washing, or those inviting "our camping friends" to a dance or a boat trip are printed not only in French or Italian or Spanish, but also in English, German and Dutch.

【译文】禁止露天晒衣服，禁止用水龙头冲洗汽车的布告和邀请露营朋友参加舞会、乘船观光的招贴不仅印成法语、意大利语、西班牙语，而且也印成英语、德语、荷兰语。

【用法】这是一个简单句。主语是 Notices，带着一个现在分词短语充当的后置定语，分词后面带着三个宾语 the open-air drying of clothes，the use of water points for car washing 和 those inviting "our camping friends" to a dance or a boat trip。谓语动词是 are printed，后面是两组介词短语充当的方式状语 in French or Italian or Spanish 和 in English，German and Dutch，用 not only... but also 连接。

15. Whether the remarkable growth of organized camping means the eventual death of the more independent kind is hard to say.

【译文】有组织的露营活动的明显发展是否意味着较独立的自我封闭式露营的最终消失，还很难说。

【用法】

(1) Whether the remarkable growth of organized camping means the eventual death of the more independent kind 为 whether 引导的名词性从句，这里充当句子的主语。

(2) means 这里为动词 mean 的单数第三人称形式，注意和名词 means 区分开来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

16. Police are wary of itinerants who cannot be traced to a recognized camp boundary or to four walls.

【译文】警察对那些查不出有固定营地或住处的游荡者保持警惕。

【用法】

(1) who 引导定语从句，修饰 itinerants，意即"查不出有固定营地或住处的游荡者"。

(2) be wary of 提防，如：Be wary of strangers. 提防陌生人。

(3) four walls 在这里指"住所"、"房子"。

(4) trace to 追踪到，如：The letter was traced to its sender. 查到了那封信的寄信人。

17. ... how many heath fires they cause; how much litter they leave; in short, whether or not they wholly alienate landowners and those who live in the countryside.

【译文】即他们引起了多少场野火，留下了多少垃圾。总之，他们是否弄得土地的主人和乡间的居民同他们反目。

【用法】该句为 3 个并列成分，列举具体事例，说明为什么重要的是露营者自己。alienate 使疏远，如：

She was alienated from her family. 她与家庭疏远了。those who live in the countryside 中的 those 与 landowners 都是动词 alienate 的宾语。who 引导定语从句，修饰 those。

18. Only good scouting is likely to preserve the freedoms so dear to the heart of the eternal Boy Scout.

【译文】只有优良的童子军活动才能保持不朽的童子军所衷心热爱的各项自由。

【用法】good scouting 指童子军进行的露营，也即"纪律良好的露营"。so dear to... Boy Scout 作定语，修饰 freedoms，意即"不朽的童子军所衷心热爱的各项自由"。Boy Scout 童子军，英国军官贝登堡在 1908 年创建的一种对儿童进行军事化训练的组织。露营是童子军训练的一个项目。

核心语法

➡倒装结构(2)

(一)部分倒装

1. 第一大类情况就是句首有否定词或否定短语时，句子要倒装。

(1) 常见的否定词有：never、hardly、scarcely、little、seldom、not、not until、rarely、no sooner... than，nowhere 等。

a. Nowhere in the world can you find a man who is more foolish than John.

b. Nowhere in the world can you find a man who loves you so much!

c. No sooner had I taken a bath than the bell rang.

d. Not a word did he say at the meeting.

e. Never before have I heard such a story.

f. Not until he came back did I leave.（注意：主句中主谓结构部分倒装）

g. Not only did we lose all our money, but also we came close to losing our lives.

(2) 常见的否定短语有：in no way，in no case，at no time，by no means，in no sense，on no account，under no circumstances。这些否定短语常放在句首，表示强调，译为"绝

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

不……”。大家一定要记住它们的介词搭配。

In no way do I blame you for what happened.

(3) 如果否定词不是修饰整个句子，而只是限定句子主语，则句子不用倒装。

a. Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats mice/cats.

b. Not only I but also he has been there.

2. 在 not until 倒装结构中，需部分倒装的是主句中的谓语动词，而非从句中的谓语动词。倒装结构演化成强调结构时，则主句谓语不再采用倒装形式。

a. Not until she had arrived home did she remember her appointment with the doctor.

b. It was not until she had arrived home that she remembered her appointment with the doctor.

3. “so ＋ 形容词或副词”及“to the extent/degree”放在句首，表示程度，句子要倒装。

a. To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.

b. So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep.

4. in vain, often 置于句首。

a. In vain did we try to persuade her to give up her plan.

b. Often have I warned him not to go swimming alone.(也可不倒装)

5. 在含有 were, had, should 的虚拟语气中，省去 if，需倒装。

6. as 引导的让步状语从句需倒装。

a. Look as I would up and down, I could see no men at all.

b. Change your mind as you will, you won't gain his support.

7. “only ＋状语”置于句首。

(1) only ＋表示时间或方式的短语置于句首，句子要倒装。

a. Only then did she realize she was wrong.

b. Only by working hard can you achieve your goal.

c. An intimate relationship does not banish loneliness. Only when we are comfortable with who we are and can function independently in a healthy way, can we truly function within a relationship. Two halves do not make a whole when it comes to a healthy relationship: it takes two wholes.

(2) only＋各类状语从句置于句首，则主句中的主谓需倒装，而不是从句中的主谓倒装，这一点与 not until 同。例：

Only when he had failed three times did he turn to me for advice.

(3) 若 only 修饰的是句子主语，而非状语时，句子不用倒装。例：

Only she knew how to deal with this problem.

8. 代词 so, neither, nor, no more 置于句首。

a. I can't speak French, nor can he.

b. He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.

c. A: Meal price has gone up.

B: So has tuition.

此外，要注意：这些词也可用来表达对别人讲的情况有同感，此时不用倒装。

A: It's a very nice day.

B: So it is.(可不是嘛!)

9. 在 as 之后引导的定语从句。例：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She traveled a great deal, as did most of her friends.

10. 在"not a / many a + 名词"位于句首时。

a. Many a time has the manager emphasized this point.

b. Not a word did I hear at the meeting.

当然,若 many a + 名词置于句首作主语,则不用倒装。例:

Many a student has finished the paper.

11. be 的倒装句表示让步。

a. The business of each day, be it selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.

b. Be he ever so tired, he continued to go farther.

(二)全部倒装

1. 以介词开头的地点状语置于句首。

a. From the window came sound of music.

b. On the ground lies a man whose leg is broken.

c. By his side sat his faithful dog.

d. Just remember, in the winter far beneath the bitter snow, lies the seed that with the sun's love in the spring, becomes the rose.

2. 副词 out、in、along、then、now、up、down、away、here、there 等位于句首时。

a. In came the teacher, books under arm.

b. Just then along came Tom.

c. When Greek meets Greek, then comes the tug of war. 两雄相遇,其斗必烈。

d. There goes the bell.

e. Down came the hammer and out flew the sparks. 铁锤一落,火星四射。

3. such 位于句首。

a. Such will be my future dreams.

b. Such is my whole story.

c. Such were his dreams as a boy.

4. 表语置于句首。

a. Blessed is the person who is too busy to worry in the daytime and too sleepy to worry at night.

b. Gone are the days when we had no food to eat.

c. Every one of us has in him a continent of undiscovered character.

d. Blessed is he who acts the Columbus to his own soul. 每个人的个性中都有尚未发现的大陆,能够像哥伦布探索新大陆那样探索自己灵魂的人,是幸运的。

5. 其他各种为了使句子平衡,而将较长的主语放在句末的情况。例:

Among the uses of Xenon can be mentioned its use in flash lights for high speed photography.

6. 谓语动词置于句首。

a. I'll be bringing you the book next time I come, believe you me. (You believe me.)

b. Yield he would not.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 48 Planning a share portfolio

本节重点和难点

- 现在完成进行时
- 过去完成进行时
- 将来完成进行时
- 现在进行时
- 过去进行时
- 将来进行时
- 过去将来进行时

本课词汇

portfolio [ˌpɔːtˈfəuliəu] *n.* 投资组合

tipster [ˈtipstə] *n.* (以提供证券投机等内部消息为生的)情报贩子

Las Vegas [ˌlɑːsˈveigəs] *n.* 拉斯维加斯

fritter [ˈfritə] *v.* 挥霍,浪费

reputable [ˈrepjutəbl] *adj.* 享有声望的

broker [ˈbrəukə] *n.* 经纪人

finance [faiˈnæns] *n.* 资金,财源

【词组】finance agent 财务代理/finance a student through college 给学生提供费用读完大学/finance company(house)信贷公司/finance market 金融市场/financed by the government 政府资助的/minister of finance 财政部长

mortgage [ˈmɔːgidʒ] *n.* 抵押贷款

【词组】in mortgage 在抵押中/on mortgage 以抵押的方式/place a mortgage on... 以……作抵押

gilt [gilt] *n.* 金边证券(高度可靠的证券)

convertible [kənˈvəːtəbl] *n.* 可换证券

sanguine [ˈsæŋgwin] *adj.* 乐观的

heady [ˈhedi] *adj.* 令人陶醉的

alongside [əˌlɔŋˈsaid] *prep.* 在……旁边,沿着……的边,和……在一起

pedestrian [piˈdestriən] *adj.* 平淡无奇的,乏味的

课文详解

1. There is no shortage of tipsters around offering "get-rich-quick" opportunities. But if you are a serious private investor, leave the Las Vegas mentality to those with money to fritter.

【译文】我们周围不乏情报贩子,向人们提供迅速发财致富的机遇。但是,如果你是一个认真的私人投资者,就把拉斯韦加斯的心态留给那些有钱可供挥霍的人。

【用法】

(1) shortage of 固定搭配,意思为"……的不足,缺少……"。

(2) offering "get-rich-quick" opportunities 为 tipsters 的后置定语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(3) those 指代"一些人",介词短语 with money to fritter 充当的后置定语,意思是"有钱可供挥霍的"。Las Vegas(拉斯维加斯)是美国内华达州东南部一城市,以其赌场而著名。

(4) 动词词组 leave sth. to sb. 意思是"把……留给某人处理或解决",如:You can go to attend the party and leave the baby to me. 你们去参加晚会吧,我来照顾孩子。

(5) 名词 mentality 此处意思是"心理状态",如:
It's very difficult to understand the mentality of people who say such things. 很难理解讲这种话的人的心理状态。

2. The serious investor needs a proper "portfolio"—a well-planned selection of investments, with a definite structure and a clear aim.

【译文】认真的投资者需要一份正规的投资组合表——一种计划很周密的投资选择,结构明确,目标清晰。

【用法】

(1) 破折号后面的部分是 portfolio 的同位语,对其作进一步的说明。

(2) with a definite structure and a clear aim 作定语修饰 portfolio。

3. But exactly how does a newcomer to the stock market go about achieving that?

【译文】但是,一个股票市场的新手又如何能做到这一点呢?

【用法】

(1) achieving that 为动名词短语,作介词 about 的宾语。

(2) go about 从事,做,如:It's time you went about your business. 你该干自己的事了。

4. Well, if you go to five reputable stock brokers and ask them what you should do with your money, you're likely to get five different answers—even if you give all the relevant information about your age, family, finances and what you want from your investments.

【译文】如果你去向5位有威望的股票经纪人咨询,询问你应该如何使用你的资金,你可能得到5种不同的答复,即便你提供了有关于你的年龄、家庭、财源和你想从投资中获得好处的信息。

【用法】

(1) 这个长句子的结构为"if 引导的条件状语从句+主句+even if 引导的让步状语从句"。

(2) ask them what you should do with your money 为双宾语结构,其中 them 为间接宾语,而 what 引导的名词性从句 what you should do with your money 为直接宾语。

(3) do with 固定词组,意思为"利用,处置"。

(4) even if 意思为"即使",引导让步状语从句。

(5) be likely to do sth. 意思为"很可能做某事",其中 likely 为形容词。

(6) 名词性从句 what you want from your investments 这里充当介词 about 的宾语。

5. We'll assume that you have sorted out the basics—like mortgages, pensions, insurance and access to sufficient cash reserves.

【译文】我们假定你已把基本情况弄清楚了,如抵押贷款、养老金、保险金和动用现金储备的机会。

【用法】

(1) sort out 整理,分选,如:
She is trying to sort things out at home. 她在家里正竭力整理东西。

www.TopSage.com

(2) access to 有接近，进入，使用……的机会或权利，如：

We gained access to the files. 我们获得了查阅档案的权利。

We got access to the building. 我们获准进入这幢大楼。

此外，access 还可用作名词，意思是"通路，入门；接触[使用]的机会[方法]，捷径"。

[习惯用语] be easy [hard, difficult] of access(容易/难接近)；give access to(接见，准许出入)；open access([图书馆]开架阅览)

6. These are partly a matter of personal circumstances, partly a matter of psychology.

【译文】这一方面是个人所处的环境，另一方面是个心理学的问题。

【用法】

(1) a matter of... ……的事情，如：

a matter of great importance 一件至关重要的事情。

a matter of a few minutes 在几分钟内就可以解决的事情。

a matter of personal opinion 个人看法的问题。

(2) 名词 circumstance 的意思是"详情，细节；经济状况或收入"，如：

George prior came of a good family, but now in reduced circumstances. 乔治出身于良好家庭，现在境况不佳。

[习惯用语] in bad [needy, reduced] circumstances 拮据的境遇，穷困；in easy [good, flourishing] circumstances 生活富裕，安乐的境况，小康的生活；under no circumstances 无论如何不，决不；in the circumstances 在这些情况下，情况既然如此。

7. If you are younger, and in a solid financial position, you may decide to take an aggressive approach—but only if you're blessed with a sanguine disposition and won't suffer sleepless nights over share prices.

【译文】如果你年轻一些，并且经济状况可靠，你可能会采取一种积极进取的方法——你必须性格开朗，不会因股票价格的浮动而夜不能眠。

【用法】

(1) decide to do sth. 意思为"决定做某事"。

(2) aggressive 这里的意思为"激进的"。

(3) only if 这里的意思为"只有……"，用于引导条件状语从句。注意 only 和 if only 的区别：if only 意思为"要是……就好了"，其后的从句也要使用虚拟语气，即句子的时态采用过去时态，系动词采用 were。例如：

If only I were a bird! 我要是一只小鸟就好了！

If only I had passed the exam. 要是我已经通过了考试多好啊！

(4) be blessed with 固定词组，意思为"幸运地享有……"。

(5) disposition 这里的意思为"性情，素质，脾气"。

8. If you recognize yourself in this description, you might include a couple of heady growth stocks in your portfolio, alongside your more pedestrian investments.

【译文】如果你觉得你的情况是这样的话，你可以在投资组合中包括几项有令人陶醉的增值前景的增长股，和其他比较平淡的投资项目放在一起。

【用法】

(1) include sth. in 固定搭配，意思为"将……包括在内"。

(2) alongside 这里为介词，意思为"在……旁边，与……一起"。

(3) a couple of 固定词组，意思为"几个"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

9. Once you have decided on your investment aims, you can then decide where to put your money.

【译文】一旦你的投资目标确立以后，你就可以决定你的钱投向何处。

【用法】

(1) Once 引导的是时间状语从句。where to put your money 作动词 decide 的宾语。

(2) 动词不定式可以置于疑问词，如 who、what、where、when、whether 等后面（除 why 外），作动词宾语，如：

I wonder who to invite. 我不知道该邀请谁。

Can you tell me how to get to the airport? 你能告诉我怎么去机场吗？

I don't know where to park the car. 我不知道该把车停在哪儿。

Tell me when to pay. 告诉我什么时候付款。

10. The golden rule here is spread your risk—if you put all of your money into Periwigs International, you're setting yourself up as a hostage to fortune.

【译文】这里的指导原则是：分散你的投资风险。如果你把所有资金全投入佩里威格斯国际公司，你就把自己当成了命运的人质。

【用法】

(1) spread your risk 为动词不定式，作表语，省略了动词不定式的标志 to。破折号后面的部分从反面说明为什么要分散投资风险。if 引导条件状语从句。

(2) 形容词 golden 此处应译为"贵重的，极好的，难得的"。[习惯用语] a golden dusk 金色的黄昏；golden hours 幸福的时刻。

(3) set... up as 使……成为，如：His father lent him some money to set him up as a shoemaker. 他父亲借给他一些钱使他成为一个鞋匠。

核心语法

一、现在完成进行时

(一)完成进行动作

现在完成进行 (have/has been doing)

过去完成进行 (had been doing)

将来完成进行 (will have been doing)

(二)完成进行时态概述

形式：have been doing

意义：具有完成和进行两方面的特点；表示一个动作在现在、过去或将来的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在进行，强调动作的持续性。

1. 现在完成进行时

在现在之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。

It has been raining all day. It is still raining right now.

raining 是在现在 right now 之前的一段时间里(all day)一直在持续的动作。

2. 过去完成进行时

在过去的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。

I had been waiting for her for two hours when she finally turned up.

turned up 是过去的一个活动，waiting 则是在 turned up 之前的一段时间里(two hours)一直在持续的动作。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. 将来完成进行时

在将来的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。这个动作开始的时间可能是过去。

Professor Smith will have been teaching for 50 years when he retires next month.

retire 是将来的一活动，teaching 则是在 retire 之前的一段时间里(50 years)一直在持续的动作。

(三)现在完成进行时用法(1):到现在仍然在延续的动作

1. 与一段时间连用，强调动作的持续性，表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在，并且活动还没有结束，还将继续持续下去(注意：现在完成时则表示"动作可能只延续到说话时为止")。

(1) 此时的完成进行时常与 for ＋时间段、since ＋时间点、all morning、all day、all week 这样的表示一段时间的时间状语连用，以强调在这一期间，某项活动正在持续。

请看例句：

a. It began raining two hours ago and it's still raining. It has been raining for two hours.

b. It began raining at 8 o'clock. Now it's still raining. It has been raining since 8 o'clock. It has been raining all day.

c. It has been snowing all day. I wonder when it will stop.

d. Clint is chatting on OICQ now. He has been chatting on OICQ for five straight hours. He must be tired.

e. These pop fans have been waiting for the famous singer for nearly three hours in the cold, but he still hasn't shown up.

(2) 可以不与一段时间连用

上述例句均含有"一段时间"的时间状语，表示到说话时刻动作仍在持续。现在完成进行时还可以不带具体的表示一段时间的时间状语。此时它一般表示最近一段时期内正在持续的一般性活动。(这与现在进行时态表示一般性活动的用法类似。)

请看例句：

a. I have been thinking about changing my job. 我最近一直在考虑换工作。

b. I have been thinking about what you said and I've decided to take your advice. 我一直思考你说过的话，我已决定听从你的建议。

c. All the students have been studying hard, for final exams will start next week. 学生们都在用功学习，因为下星期就要期末考试了。

2. 与现在完成时比较(1)

上述现在完成进行时的用法和现在完成时的第一种用法非常接近。

二者之间有相同点，也有不同点。

(1) 相同点：

①谓语动作都是表示延续性的。如：live, learn, study, sleep, snow, wait, work, teach, stay 等等。

②都与"一段时间"连用。

这时，用两种时态几乎没有多大区别。例如：

a. I have been learning/have learned English for ten years. 我学习英文有十年了。

b. I have been living/have lived here since 3 years ago. 自从三年前开始，我就一直住在这里。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

c. He has been sleeping/has slept for three hours.

d. I have been working/have worked in this company for 3 years.

e. It has been snowing/has snowed for a long time.

(2) 不同点：

即使此时两种时态所表达的意思相同，但现在完成时只有与 for three years、since three years ago 等这样的表示一段时间的时间状语连用才能表示这类动作。没有这样的时间状语，用现在完成时指的是一个完成了的动作。例如：

a. I have worked/have been working in this company for 3 years.

b. I have worked in this company. 我在这家公司工作过。(现在不在了，表示过去的经历)

c. I have been working in this company. 我一直就在这家公司工作。(现在还在这家公司)

d. He has been sleeping/has slept for three hours. (他已睡了 3 小时，也可能还继续睡。)

e. He has slept. (他睡过了，所以现在不困了。)

f. He has been sleeping. (他一直在睡觉，现在还在睡。)

g. "Have you ever worked in a foreign-funded company?" "No, never." ("你在外企工作过吗?""从来没有。"问过去的经历，动作已结束。)

h. You look tired. Have you been working hard? (你看起来很累，工作一直很辛苦吧？问是否一直是这样辛苦。)

从上面 c，f，h 三句，我们看出，现在完成进行时既可与一段时间状语连用，也可不连用，同样可表达"一直在持续的动作"这一含义。

3. 与现在完成时比较(2)

现在完成进行时强调动作过程，完成时强调动作的结果。

现在完成进行时所强调的是在一段时期内某项活动的持续性，因此强调的是动作本身。现在完成时则是强调动作的结果，而不是动作本身。

a. My hands are very dirty. I've been painting the house. 我的手很脏，我一直在给房子刷漆。

b. I have painted the house green. The house was white, but now it's green. 我把房子刷成了绿色。

c. Sorry about the mess—I've been painting the house.
painting 活动还没有结束，房子还没有收拾，所以屋子很乱。

d. I've painted two rooms since lunchtime.
painted 的结果是"两间房子都已粉刷完毕"。

e. I have been reading your grammar book. After I finish it, I'll discuss some problems with you.

f. I have read your grammar book and I have questions to ask you.

g. I have been reading the book you lent me but I haven't finished it yet.

h. I have read the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

i. — Oh, I have been sitting in the same position too long. My legs have fallen asleep.
(噢，一个姿势我坐得太久了，我两条腿都麻木了。)
— Shake it a little before you get up. (站起来之前，你先把腿甩甩。)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

从这一句我们可看出：由于长时间持续地 sit，即 have been sitting，造成的结果是"I have fallen asleep"。因此，完成进行时表示活动的延续性；完成时强调动作的结果。

(四)现在完成进行时用法(2)：刚刚结束的动作

表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在为止不再继续或表示不久前刚刚结束的动作。

请看例句：

1. 动作持续到说话时为止：

a. I'm trying to study. I've been trying to study for the last hour, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I'd better go to the library.

b. Where have you been? I've been looking for you for the last half hour. 你去哪里？我一直找了你半个小时。(不再持续)

c. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you. You ask, "Have you been waiting long?"

d. I'm so sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?

e. Thank you so much for the binoculars. I've been wanting a pair for ages. 非常感谢你送我这副望远镜，我一直想要一副。

2. 不久前刚刚结束的动作：(这是完成时没有的用法)

a. Your friend is out of breath. You ask, "Have you been running?" 你刚才是不是一直在跑步？

b. Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?

c. The little boy is dirty from head to foot because he has been playing in the mud.

d. You meet a friend in the street, whose face and hands are very dirty.
You ask, "What have you been doing?"

(五)现在完成进行用法(3)：重复发生的动作

现在完成进行时可表示重复发生的动作。具体来说，就是表示说话时刻以前的一段时间内重复发生的动作。

a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They've been going there for years.

b. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States have been joining with neighboring communities to share the costs of government. (96-1-29) 在近几年中，美国许多城镇不断合并，以降低政府费用开支。

c. We've been writing to each other for years. (Years ago we started writing to a pen pal. We still write to each other regularly now.) 我们互相通信有多年了。

d. I've been getting up early since I entered the college. 自从上大学以来，我一直坚持早起。

e. The price has been going up recently. I wonder whether it will remain so. 最近物价一直看涨，不知是否会一直这样。

f. You've been staying up late again? 最近又在熬夜？

g. Koreans have been marrying U. S. soldiers stationed here since the 1950s. The peak years were during the 1970s, when more than 4,000 Koreans married U. S. soldiers each year. 自 50 年代以来，就不断有韩国人与当地的美国驻军成婚，70 年代达到了高峰，每年有 4000 多人嫁给美国大兵。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

1. 与现在完成时比较(3)

① 用短暂动词的完成进行时表示重复

短暂动词的完成时不能与"一段时间"的时间状语连用，但是短暂动词的完成进行时可与"一段时间"的时间状语连用，这时表示重复动作。如上述例句：

a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They've been going there for years.

不能说：

b. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They've gone there for years.

c. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States have been joining with neighboring communities to share the costs of government. (96-1-29) 在近几年中，美国许多城镇不断合并，以降低政府费用开支。

不能说：

d. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States have joined with neighboring communities...

e. I've been getting up early since I entered the college. 自从上大学以来，我一直坚持早起。

不能说：

f. I've got up early since I entered the college.

②重复动作的分割性

现在完成进行时强调动作的持续性，因此它是表示一种看起来不间断的动作。如果要表达做一件事的次数(即把动作分割为一次一次的动作)，或一共做了多少件事情时，则不能用现在完成进行时。请比较：

a. I have been sitting in class since 8 o'clock this morning. 从早上 8 点钟到现在我一直在上课。

b. I have had three classes since 8 o'clock this morning. 从早上 8 点钟到现在我上了三节课。

c. It has been snowing all day. I wonder when it will stop. 下了一整天的雪，不知什么时候能停。

d. We have had three major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have. 今年冬天已经下了三场大雪了，不知还会不会再下雪。

e. The phone has been ringing for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?

f. The phone has rung four times this morning, and each time it has been for Clint.

g. I've been writing the letter this morning and won't finish until noon.

h. I've written three letters so far this morning.

i. I've written them three times, but I still haven't received a reply.

j. I've been chatting (完成进行时表示重复动作，没有说明具体聊天次数)online for a little over three years and have met (完成时表示重复，这里动作已被分割，因为下文提到了 hundreds of people) hundreds of people. One common thing of those who have met (动作同样被分割，所以用完成时表示重复) others in real life is: "Don't base the rest of your life on a week or two", meaning don't spend a week or two with your online lover, then move in with them and get married. 我泡在网上和人瞎聊天已经有三年多了，也遇到了很多人。那些已经和生活中的真人见过面的人总要说："别因为一两个星期的感情就送上你一辈子。"就是说，别仅仅和你的网上情人相恋一两个星期就谈婚论嫁。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. 与现在完成时比较（4）

不能用于进行时态的动词，同样不能用于现在完成进行时。

a. How long have you known Jane?

b. How long have you been knowing Jane?

解释：像 know 这样的表示心理活动的动词是没有进行时态的。

二、过去完成进行时

过去完成进行时(had been doing)

过去完成进行时与过去完成时之间的关系，同现在完成进行时与现在完成时之间的关系一样。它的用法与现在完成进行时基本相同，只是将“坐标时间”移到过去。同样是强调动作的持续性，表示开始于过去某个时刻之前的动作持续到过去这一时刻，并继续持续下去。

1. 强调在过去的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动，可能继续持续下去。

请看例句：

a. When I arrived in Inner Mongolia, it had been snowing for half a month.

b. She had been studying French for one year before she went to France.

2. 强调在过去的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动。持续到过去这一活动或这一时间为止，或者是在过去这一时间之前刚刚结束。

请看例句：

a. The police had been looking for the murderer for two years before they caught him.

b. He finally showed up at nine o'clock. I had been waiting for him since six o'clock.

c. When she arrived, I had been waiting in the cold for three hours.

d. I had been looking for jobs for nearly half a year before I finally got a position in this dot-com company.

e. When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. I knew they had been fighting.

f. There was nobody in the room but there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody had been smoking in the room.

g. The plane, which had been waiting on the runway for hours, finally got clearance for take-off.

3. 过去完成进行时可表示重复发生的动作。具体来说，就是表示过去某一活动或时间之前的一段时间内重复发生的动作。

a. He had been gambling for two years before his wife found out.

b. I had been trying to get her on the phone. Finally she gave me a call.（我当时一直试着打电话找她，最后她给我打了个电话。）

同样，这里的重复动作不能说出具体次数。例如：

I had tried five times to get her on the phone before she finally gave me a call. 我曾打了五次电话去找她，最后她终于给我回了电话。

而不能说：I had been trying five times...

三、将来完成进行时

将来完成进行时(will have been doing)

将来完成进行时的用法与现在完成进行时基本相同，只是将“坐标时间”移到将来。同

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

样是强调动作的持续性，表示开始于将来某个时刻之前的动作持续到将来这一时刻，并可能继续持续下去。

1. 强调在将来的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动。

请看例句：

a. My brother has promised to help me study for my exam tomorrow. I get home from school at 3：00 and he gets home from school at 5：00. I will have been studying for two hours by the time he gets home.（到5：00，studying活动仍将持续。）

b. I'm retiring this fall. By then I'll have been teaching for 30 years.（到今年秋天，teaching活动不再持续。）

c. She will have been taking care of her blind husband for 20 years by then.（taking活动可能还会持续。）

d. I'm getting tired of sitting in the car. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Beijing, we will have been driving for twenty straight hours?

2. 表示在将来某个时间之前经常重复的动作。

a. I will have been attending Professor Smith's lectures for half a year by next week.

b. By tomorrow I will have been doing morning exercises for 100 days.

c. The old man will have been getting up at 4：00 for ten years by next month.（到下个月，这老头坚持早晨4：00起床就将长达10年的时间了。）

对于完成进行时态，重点是理解现在完成进行时的三种用法：

1. 到现在仍在持续的动作；

2. 刚刚结束的动作；

3. 重复发生的动作。

四、现在进行时

The Present Continuous Tense is used to express action that the subject is currently in the process of or in the middle of doing. The present continuous conveys a temporary sense; the action is expected to cease within a few minutes, a few hours, a week, a month, or a longer period.

1. 表示说话时刻正在进行。

a. What programs are you watching?（说话一段时期内在进行）

b. These days I'm translating a book.（今昔对比）

c. He is speaking English more fluently than he used to.

2. 表示将来动作。

现在进行时常用在go、come、leave等动作动词上，表示最近将要发生的事。

a. The flight is taking off at 2 o'clock in the afternoon.

b. I'm leaving tomorrow.

此时常含有“意图”、“计划”、“安排做”等意。

例：What are you doing tomorrow evening?

3. 一般不用进行时态的动词。

这些一般是表示人们心理活动、所有关系或感觉的动词。一般都是静态动词，故不能表示动作的短暂性或进行的意味。常见的这类动词有：

1) state of mind: know, understand, believe, remember, think, love, hate, like, prefer, appreciate, need, want 等；

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2）ownership：own，have，possess，belong，cost，owe，bear（具有）等；

3）senses：see，notice，recognize，perceive，seem，appear，seem，look，like，resemble，hear，smell，taste 等。

a. Are you believing what he says?（×）

但上述有些词，不同词义时态用法不一样：

I am thinking of asking him to do me a favor.

（考虑……，相当于 considering）

I think you're right.（认为……）

I'm feeling fine.（感觉到……，相当于 be conscious of...）

I feel we shouldn't do it.（认为……，相当于 think or believe）

b. He is smelling（正在闻）the chicken and it smells（闻起来）nice.

c. He is appearing（正出现在）on the stage and appears（显得）nervous.

4. 表示动态的形容词可有进行时态。如：careful、silly、patient、foolish 等，这些是表明行为态度特征的词。

a. At this moment，she is being careful / patient...

b. Don't you think they're being foolish to worry about it at this time?

5. 现在进行时常与 always、forever、continually、constantly 连用，往往表示意想不到或使人不愉快的事。

a. Jack is always borrowing money and forgetting to pay you back.

b. He's continually asking me for money.

c. My wife is forever looking for her keys.

d. How come Joe is always groaning about things?

五、过去进行时

The Past Continuous Tense is used in sentences with two past actions to show that，while one action was going on，the other action occurred.

1. 过去进行时最普通的用法，就是用来描述一个过去特定的时刻正在发生的事情。例：

I was discussing my thesis with my director at this time last night.（特定时刻）

2. 过去进行时常常用在带有两个动作的句子里。此时，过去进行时通常表示一个历时较长的体现"背景"的动作或状态；而过去时则表示此"背景"下发生的、短暂的动作或状态。

a. The phone rang while I was having my bath，as usual.（在 having my bath 这样一个较长动作过程中，发生 the phone rang 的短暂动作）

试比较：

b. I was telephoning Harry when she arrived.（在打电话的过程中，她到了）

c. I telephoned Harry when she arrived.（她回来之后，我才打电话）

3. 与现在进行时不同：谈论过去多次重复或者习惯的动作不用过去进行时，而用一般过去时。

a. I rang the bell six times.

b. I was ringing the bell six times.（×）

4. 表示委婉的请求或提建议。

a. I was wondering if you'd like to lend me your car.

b. I was hoping that you'd like to lend me your car.

c. I was thinking that you'd like to lend me your car.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

六、将来进行时

The Future Continuous Tense is used to describe an action that will be in process at a particular time in the future, often in relation to another action.

1. 最常见的用法是，在将来某一特定时刻正在进行(类似于过去进行时)。

a. I'll be lying on a beach in Sanya this time tomorrow.

b. Don't telephone after eight tomorrow. — I'll be having a meeting.

c. Wait until seven o'clock so that they won't still be eating.

2. 两个前后相关的动作。

a. If we don't hurry, the concert will be starting by the time we arrive.

b. He can't play golf next Sunday because he will be working.

3. 用于客气地询问别人的打算、计划，以表明我们并不想去影响别人的决定。

a. Will you be using the car tomorrow? If not, can I borrow it?

b. Will you be needing anything else?

七、过去将来进行时

常用在从句中，表示过去将来某一时间正在发生的事情。例：

John told me that he would be taking ten days off to Hainan next Monday.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

《新概念英语》(第四册)课后习题答案

TopSage.com

Lesson 1 Finding fossil man

Key to Comprehension

1 Anthropologists can learn something about the history of ancient peoples who have not left written records by studying the sagas that have been handed down from one generation of storytellers to another.

2 Ancient men preferred to use flint for making tools because it is easier to shape than other kinds of stone.

Key to Vocabulary

In most countries, the money to *preserve* ancient buildings and works of art comes from tourism, but tourism can also destroy the things we seek to *preserve*.

The children sat in a circle while the actor *recounted* the story of the beginning of the world.

These days, scientists can test their theories about the *migrations* of early peoples by looking at the geographical distribution of particular genetic types within modern populations.

Recently, *anthropologists* at the British Museum presented an exhibition about the ceremonies and traditions of the Mexican Day of the Dead.

Rock and cave paintings made in the *remote* past have now been found in most parts of the world.

Left where they fall, dead trees gradually *decay*, providing a home for mushrooms and insects, so that the cycle of life begins again.

The painting was missing, and whoever had taken it had simply vanished *without trace*.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B An *archaeologist* studies the remains left by people who lived long ago, such as their dwellings, their tools, their burials, so as to learn how and where they lived.

C

1 The earliest *written records* we have come from the Near East, and are about 5,000 years old.

2 For the period before written records began, we have to rely on *sagas*, stories handed down orally from one generation to another.

3 *Stone tools* which, unlike wood and skins, do not decay, also provide evidence of our remote ancestors.

Key to KS Exercises

A *Tools (which were) made of stone* were used for scraping and cutting.

Legends (which have been) recorded in the form of sagas provide some information about the migrations of ancient peoples.

The remains (which were) found at the back of the cave were dated to about 20,000 years before the present.

B 1 say 2 told 3 say 4 tell

C Do you mind my asking where you *got* it *from*?

I *bought* it *from* a second-hand shop in South London.

D Would you mind *helping me to lift* this box, please?

The children *helped me make* the tree decorations.

E See text.

F

1 Your mother *may have called* when you were out.

2 You *may have left* your umbrella in the waiting room.

3 He *may have changed* his mind.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 d 6 b 7 d 8 a 9 a 10 c 11 a 12 b

Lesson 2 Spare that spider

Key to Comprehension

1 We have reason to be grateful to insect-eating animals because insects include some of the greatest enemies of the human race.

2 We can tell the difference between a spider and an insect because a spider has eight legs, and an insect never has more than six.

3 "One authority on spiders made a census in a grass field..." means that an expert on spiders form ally counted how many spiders there were on a piece of ground covered with grass.

Key to Vocabulary

No matter how hard people work to *destroy* rat-populations, no human habitation is ever very far from a rat.

Brown locusts swarming at harvest time in Southern Africa can *devour* an entire nation's cereal crop in less than a week.

It was just the briefest possible hesitation, only a *fraction* of second, but it was enough to show that he was lying.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The refugees abandoned their homes and all their *belongings* and *fled* for their lives.

The pilot *estimated* that the flight would take four hours and twenty minutes.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B See text.

C

1 I dislike finding spiders in the house because, unless I can pick them up and put them outside, I imagine them coming and walking across my face in the dark.

2 I like watching spiders spinning their webs because it always seems miraculous that anything so very small should be able to make such a large and complex structure so quickly.

3 I like the way that spiders will go on repairing their webs when these have been damaged by wind or by a large insect.

Key to KS Exercises

1 *Why should he be* so disappointed?

2 *Why should you be* so unwilling to change your mind?

3 *Why should there be* so many traffic accidents?

B 1 were 2 were 3 were

C The basic rules here are:

the for specifying in a limited context: *tell the difference*, *the south of England*;

zero article for plural countables in general statements: *Spiders are not insects*;

a/an with singular countables mentioned as an example of their class: *a spider has eight legs*; or for the first time: *a grass field*; *an acre*.

See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 a 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 c

Lesson 3 Matterhorn man

Key to Comprehension

1 The modern climber's attitude differs from that of the pioneer, in that the modern climber wants a route that will give him good sport, whereas the pioneer was only interested in getting to the top by the easiest route.

2 The three factors that made most Alpine villages inhospitable places were poverty, dirt and discomfort.

Key to Vocabulary

Chris Bonnington was the first person ever to reach the summit of the Eiger by a *route* that included the sheer North Face.

The chance to become well-educated is widely *regarded* as being the best opportunity a person can have.

Sir Edmund Hilary and Tenzing Norgay reached the *summit* of Mount Everest on May 29, 1952.

Various experts have *sought* an explanation for the strange lights seen occasionally in the sky in Western Scotland, but so far without success.

The prisoner *faced* her accusers in court with confidence.

Without her engines, and drifting towards the rocky shore, the ship was in an increasingly *perilous* situation.

How is it that one nation will delight in eating delicacies that make another nation *shudder*?

Using a chain-saw without proper training and protective clothing is *courting* disaster.

This cup is the *solitary* survivor of my grandmother's set of twelve.

The wool from Herdwick sheep, a hardy mountain breed, is so *coarse*, it is mainly used for carpet-making.

The village had once *boasted* a school and a small general shop, but these had disappeared when the new road was built.

Friday is *invariably* the busiest day of the week on the roads.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B

I like mountaineering because I enjoy the space, the fresh air and the exercise.

One problem with so many people taking up mountaineering is that the paths up popular mountains are becoming as wide as roads, and erosion is scarring the mountainsides.

The experience of reaching the top of a high mountain and looking at the view for miles around is one of the best sensations in the world.

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 The more *expensive petrol becomes*, the less *people drive*.

2 The more *you try to explain*, the worse *your situation becomes*.

3 The sooner *I finish this job*, the better *I shall feel*.

www.TopSage.com

B See text.

C

1 (*Often*) I am (*often*) in such a hurry (*often*), I (*often*) don't (*often*) have time for breakfast (*often*).

2 We (*often*) buy things we (*often*) don't really need (*often*).

3 He is (*often*) sent abroad (*often*) by his firm (*often*).

D

1 It was impossible for them *to avoid getting wet*.

2 It is difficult to *say the right thing when people are grieving*.

3 It is easy for you *to be cheerful about it, but it was my money*.

E

1 I always find it impossible to refuse *such requests*.

2 *Such freedom* must be balanced by personal responsibility.

3 I had not expected to encounter *such difficulty*.

4 *Such films* as were completed at that time were interesting only in terms of photographic technique.

F

1 I am used to *the baby's waking me in the middle of the night*.

2 Do you object to my *opening the window for a little while*?

3 I am looking forward to *seeing you on the 23rd*.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 a 6 c 7 d 8 a 9 b 10 a 11 c 12 d

Lesson 4 Seeing hands

Key to Comprehension

1 Vera's father discovered his daughter's curious talent when she showed she could tell what was inside a locked safe in his office by putting her hands on the door.

2 She was unable to perceive objects with her skin unless she was blindfold.

3 She lost the ability to perceive objects with her fingers as soon as her hands were wet.

Key to Vocabulary

I have spoken to her on *several* occasions.

You can buy an electronic device that will *detect* electric cables hidden in walls through the plaster.

My father's *vision* was remarkably good until he was 88, when he developed cataracts.

She was one of those people who pretend to *perceive* the innermost soul of everyone they meet.

This is a *curious* business, and I have no more idea than you do how it will end.

There had been a *series* of wet days, and it felt as if it would go on raining for ever.

At the top of the hill, there was a row of trees, their winter *outlines* dark against the sky.

We had already met once before at a neighbour's house on a *similar* occasion.

Erica had *ceased* to worry about her appearance when she moved to the country.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B See text.

C

1 Vera Petrova has the unusual ability of being able to use her hands to perceive things through solid walls and in locked containers.

2 During a series of tests, she showed that she could detect printed shapes and colours on a Lotto board with her elbow.

3 She also managed to make out with her foot the outline of a picture hidden underneath a carpet.

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 I asked him *when he bought that car*.

2 I asked him *where he found that book*.

3 I asked him *why he sent a fax*.

4 I asked him *how he knew I was here*.

5 I asked him *which one he liked best*.

C 1 getting 2 arriving 3 trying 4 persuading

D 1 could 2 could 3 was able to 4 was able to 5 was able to

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 c 8 d 9 a 10 a 11 b 12 d

Lesson 5 Youth

Key to Comprehension

1 The writer says that the one difference between an old man and a young man is that a young man can look forward to a glorious future, and an old man can only remember his splendid past.

2 The writer would have been pleased to have been regarded as a problem when he was young because it would have given him a more interesting identity, which was one thing he felt he lacked.

3 The author particularly admires the air of freedom

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

that young people have, their unconcern about being successful and comfortable, and their lack of anxiety about status and possessions.

Key to Vocabulary

When a literary genius *creates* a great novel, one cannot explain it by looking at the writer's life.

In some ways, modern *teenagers* need more protection than we did when we were in our teens.

After the old lady became ill, her daughter cared for her with real *devotion* until her death.

There is plenty of evidence to *link* this particular person with the scene of the crime.

Scientists hope that new telescopes in space will finally reveal the *origins* of the universe.

We had *dreary* weather on the trip — grey skies and plenty of drizzly rain.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B See text.

C

1 Adolescents are often loud and rough, especially when they are in groups.

2 Their behaviour can be so unpredictable that other people sometimes feel threatened.

3 Most adolescents think they know all the answers to everything, and they think their elders are stupid not to see things their way.

D

1 Adults think they always know best, even about things that they have no experience of.

2 They're always critical or disapproving of whatever we do or say, and they don't take us seriously.

3 They're quite hypocritical, because they forbid us to do things that they do all the time.

Key to KS Exercises

A He's *always changing* his mind. He *always changes* his arrangements at the last minute.

I'm *always making* mistakes like this. I *always make* a point of asking after his family.

People *are always telling* us about things that are bad for our health. We *always tell* our children to come straight home from school.

Everybody's *always asking* about you. My father *always asks* how you're getting on.

B Only *the rich* can afford to live in that part of town. He must be *a rich man* to live in that part of town.

Caring for *the sick* requires a special kind of temperament. He had been *a sick man* for years.

Uneven pavements and illegal parking make it difficult for *the blind* to go around safely in our city. *A blind man* will often carry a white stick to warn others that he can't see.

They say you should never speak ill of *the dead*. Responding to an anonymous call, the police found *a dead man* in the park.

C

1 You would not like *to be accused* of theft.

2 I was astonished *to be told* that all the tickets had been sold.

3 I expect *to be informed* about it tomorrow.

D

1 It is not very pleasant *having* to write so many letters.

2 *Expecting* others to help you and then *not helping* them in return is hardly commendable.

3 It is very enjoyable *teaching* young children.

E

1 He *delighted* in music/in that/in playing the piano.

2 Can I *interest* you in this idea/in this/in joining us?

3 I wish he wouldn't *persist* in such folly/in this/in misbehaving in class.

4 Do you *believe* in such things/in them/in trying to change the system?

F

1 He doesn'know. There is*n't any* point in asking him.

2 You'll pass your driving test if you do*n't* make *any* mistakes.

3 I do*n't* have *any* faith in him.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 d 7 a 8 c 9 b 10 b 11 d 12 d

Lesson 6 The sporting spirit

Key to Comprehension

1 International sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred because nearly all sports nowadays are competitive: you must do your utmost to win.

2 When they watch international sporting contests, spectators believe that the different sports are tests of national virtue.

Key to Vocabulary

I was *amazed* when she told me she was 15; I thought she was about 20.

If there's enough *goodwill* on both sides, we should be able to solve the dispute.

I have no *inclination* to spend my holidays at home doing nothing.

From all the clues, the detective was able to

www.TopSage.com

deduce who had committed the murder.

You must do your *utmost* to make sure that everyone has all the details of the conference weekend.

Whatever you may think, there is still a lot of *prestige* attached to being a doctor or a lawyer.

The man felt completely *disgraced* when his teenage son was arrested.

What was *significant* about the man's behaviour was that it was out of character.

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B See text.

C See text.

D The author clearly thinks that competitive sports, especially at an international level, are little more than mock warfare and that they are dangerous to both players and spectators.

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 you will probably play with a lot of aggression

2 go out every evening, we would go to our favourite restaurant

3 had more time

4 practise every day

B 1 makes 2 stop 3 arrives 4 stops 5 move

C See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 a 8 a 9 d 10 b 11 a 12 a

Lesson 7 Bats

Key to Comprehension

1 The echo-location principle is applied to measure the depth of the sea by measuring the time interval between sounds on the surface and their echoes from the sea bottom.

2 The sounds reflected by solid objects vary according to the size and nature of the object.

3 Bats make use of the principle of echo-location to locate and steer clear of obstacles and to locate flying insects for food.

Key to Vocabulary

A lot of furniture made during the last war was *strictly utilitarian*; chairs were made to be sat on and tables to be sat at, but there was not much design in them and they weren't attractive.

There aren't many shops in this *vicinity*, so most people go shopping in the city.

John promised to contact us when he reached home, but three hours have *elapsed* and he still hasn't rung.

I know there is a woodpecker in the woods near us because I often hear one *tapping* on the trunk of one of the big trees.

Many archaeologists today employ special pieces of *apparatus* (rather like sophisticated metal detectors) to help them find objects under the ground.

In our local aquarium there is one large tank which has a *shoal* of fish consisting of hundreds of beautiful blue fish.

Although we have a lot of bats in Britain, some kinds are still *comparatively* rare.

His car has an alarm so that if anyone breaks into it, it will *emit* a terrible whistling sound.

If I were you, I would *steer clear* of that man; he is always in trouble with the police.

Key to Sentence structure

A see text.

B Perhaps the first use of the principle of echo-location is in instruments designed to calculate the depth of the sea.

Another use that the principle is applied to is locating shoals of fish, and it is even possible now to tell what kind of fish a shoal consists of.

Radar is also similar to echo-location since it helps aircraft and ships to locate objects in the dark by bouncing sound off them.

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 To understand *the play thoroughly, you should really read it first.*

2 To enjoy *a good film, you really need to sit back in comfort in a big armchair.*

3 To succeed *in business, many people think you have to be utterly ruthless.*

B See text.

C

1 The old man was deaf, so I managed to make him understand *by shouting*.

2 *By saving* a small amount of money every week for two years, I was able to buy my first computer.

3 In the small village where I was born, they still tell people when there's a fire *by ringing* the church bell.

D

1 with 2 with 3 for 4 with 5 for 6 for 7 to 8 with

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 a 11 a 12 c

www.TopSage.com

大家网

Lesson 8 Trading standards

Key to Comprehension

1 The phrase means something like: "make it difficult for rich countries to trade with each other". We usually "oil the wheels" to make something work better; obviously the opposite will happen if you "put sand in the wheels" instead.

2 A European electric razor must be approved by American testers before it can be sold in the States, and in the same way an American dialysis machine must receive EU approval before it can be sold in Europe.

3 They may be hard-pressed to get a deal because the details are so complex.

Key to Vocabulary

slaughtered(l. 1):	killed for food
grace European tables(l. 1):	be good enough to be served on European dinner tables
the EU's okay(l. 6):	the permission of the European Union
hits(l. 6):	is launched on
eliminate the need(l. 9):	get rid of the necessity
summit(l. 10):	high level meeting, usually between heads of government
complex(l. 11):	difficult to deal with
they may be hard-pressed(l. 11):	they may find it very difficult
construct (l. 13):	draw up, formulate, write
accord(l. 13):	agreement
hammer out(l. 14):	discuss the details of
products(l. 16):	items or things

Key to Sentence structure

A See text.

B

The author's main argument in this text is that it would be good if rich countries like the USA and the countries or Europe could agree on and standardize their regulations regarding the standard, quality and safety of items that they grow or manufacture.

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 Our fowl are fine, we simply clean them *differently*/ *with a different method*.

2 It is not *only* farmers *that* are complaining.

3 They hope to finish *ahead of* a trade summit.

C 1 say 2 say

D 1 who 2 that 3 that 4 which 5 which

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 b 7 a 8 a 9 b 10 c 11 b 12 c

Lesson 9 Royal espionage

Key to Comprehension

1 It was easy for Alfred the Great to penetrate the Danish camp because at the time minstrels were welcome everywhere and because the Danes' security precautions were so casual.

2 Alfred defeated the Danes, not by engaging them in open battle, but by harrying them, halting raiding parties and leading skirmishes against them over the period of a month until they finally surrendered.

Key to Vocabulary

The robber entered the bank *disguished* as a security guard.

I watched the ants as they ran hither and *thither* in the garden.

The supervision of the children seemed to be very *slack*: they could all do whatever they wanted.

If the *security precautions* at the theatre had been better, the pop star would not have been attacked.

The singer promised to give all the *proceeds* from his biggest concert to charity.

The amount of money he earns is *trivial* compared with the large number of debts he has.

The troops *harried* the enemy's positions for a week.

The man was constantly *assailed* by worries.

Apart from the main battle, there were lots of *skirmishes* between small groups of soldiers in the nearby hills.

Everyone has his or her own *unique* fingerprints.

Key to The paragraph

A "The king who was a spy" *or* "The first royal spy".

B 1 True 2 False 3 False 4 True

2 is false because Guthrum was the name of the Danish leader, not a place.

3 is false because Alfred had a small army, not a large army.

C See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A 1 many 2 many 3 much 4 Much of 5 Many of

www.TopSage.com

B See text.

C He broke his right arm *as well as* his right leg.
As well as writing novels, she also writes plays for television.

D 1 No one/Nobody 2 anywhere 3 anything 4 nothing 5 anyone/anybody

E See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 b 9 a 10 c 11 a 12 d

Lesson 10 Silicon Valley

Key to Comprehension

1 Chip engineers will be able to "let their imaginations soar" in future because they will not have to worry about making expensive mistakes.

2 The phrase "garage start-ups" refers to the way enterprising individuals have developed computer hardware and software without the support of big business; i. e. in their own garages.

3 As well as their computer skills, Asian computer engineering staffs can provide a knowledge of customs and languages that will help to establish connections in Pacific Rim markets.

Key to Vocabulary

It's hard to know what direction fashion is taking this year as there are so many *trends*.

One month last year the temperature suddenly, and unusually, *soared* to 32℃.

Although the girl got all the questions correct, she was *penalized* for her untidy handwriting.

The information they had obtained gave their company a *jump* on their competitors in the same business.

They have been *rivals* in business ever since they opened shops next door to each other ten years ago.

Most plants will *thrive* on water and plenty of sunshine.

Our town has recently twinned with a town in France and there is going to be a meeting soon to create closer *links* between the two communities.

They have just finished a most *crucial* meeting which will decide the future of the company.

My wife and I *set up* this company together exactly a year ago.

Shell and Exxon have a *near lock* on the oil industry in the West.

Many scientists are now extremely concerned about the effects of *global* warming on our climate.

Key to The paragraph

A 1 best expresses the main idea of the first paragraph. Although the three other statements are true, they do not summarize the main idea of the first paragraph as statement 1 does.

B 2 best expresses the main idea of the second paragraph. Statement 1 is only partly correct since they are a majority at many Valley firms. Statement 3 is true, but does not summarize the main idea, while statement 4 is actually false.

C The examples (Alex Au and N. Damodar Reddy) both illustrate how Asians are now getting to the top in the computer chip business and helping to inject new energy into it.

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B 1 speaking 2 telling 3 driving 4 buying 5 smoking

C 1 arrives 2 gets 3 arrives 4 collect

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 d 10 c 11 a 12 a

Lesson 11 How to grow old

Key to Comprehension

1 It is justifiable for a young man to fear death because he might feel that he will be cheated of the best things that life has to offer.

2 The author regards the fear of death in old people as something abject and ignoble.

3 The best way for an old person to overcome the fear of death is for him or her to make their interests gradually wider and more impersonal.

Key to Vocabulary

The ordinary people were *oppressed* for years after the country was beaten in the war.

She really had no *justification* for speaking to him as rudely as she did.

When father left his money to his younger daughter, the elder daughter felt that she had been *cheated*.

As it got warmer, the waters began to *recede* from the flooded fields.

As the rainbow slowly faded, the different colours *merged* into one another.

A lot of middle-aged people worry that, with signs of the *decay of vitality*, their relatives will put them into an old people's home.

After a journey of about 18 hours, it's not

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

surprising that I was suffering from *weariness*.

Key to The paragraph

A Statement 2 best expresses the main idea of the passage because it compares the attitudes of a young man and an old man to death.

B See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B 1 finds 2 arrives 3 changes

C 1 ought to/should 2 must 3 ought to /should 4 must

D See text.

E See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 d 6 d 7 a 8 d 9 d 10 b 11 d 12 b

Lesson 12 Banks and their customers

Key to Comprehension

1 It means that one (the customer) lends to the other and the other (the bank) borrows from the customer.

2 One sentence which illustrates the statement is: "He gives the bank specimens of his signature... on which its customer's signature has been forged. "(11. 10-12)

3 He gives the bank specimens of his signature so that they know *he* has signed a cheque, and not someone else.

Key to Vocabulary

The things at the shop didn't cost very much, so I paid in *cash*, not with a cheque or credit card.

My parents sent me to the local church school, *primarily* because it was near our home.

Years ago in Britain people were sent to a *debtors'* prison if they owed money and could not pay it.

When the man died owing a lot of money, his *creditors* were paid before his wife received anything.

My current account often goes overdrawn, but this month it is still £50 *in credit*.

If you just think about the idea of a hovercraft, you'll realize that the *concept* is a relatively simple one.

When my aunt changed her signature recently, it *gave rise* to quite a lot of problems — until she gave new specimens to the bank and other authorities.

The doctor took *specimens* of blood from all the students.

The boy *forged* his father's signature on his school report acceptance form.

The computer *facilitates* the whole business of standard letters in many offices.

Key to The paragraph

A In the first paragraph, the writer makes it clear that the relationship between a bank and its customer is a two-sided arrangement, both with obligations to each other and with neither more important than the other.

B Statement 1 expresses the main idea of the second paragraph because it mentions a customer's instructions, not simply cheques and signatures.

C See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 The bank has no right or authority to pay out a customer's money on a cheque *on which* its customer's signature has been forged.

2 The source *from which* I obtained this information is very reliable.

3 We have certain principles *on which* we should act.

B

1 I am not referring to our policy but to *that of* our opponents.

2 The only system I know which will help you to remember what you have heard at a lecture is *that of* keeping notes.

C

1 The exhibition consists entirely of *pictures painted* by young children.

2 *The report* on education *prepared* by a government committee will soon be published.

3 According to the regulations, *income earned* overseas will be taxed.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 d 8 a 9 c 10 a 11 a 12 b

Lesson 13 The search for oil

Key to Comprehension

1 An oil derrick is designed to support the drill pipe as it is lowered into and raised from the hole or well.

2 Oilmen prevent oil from gushing to the surface by means of mud which they circulate down the drill pipe.

Key to Vocabulary

An English £1 piece is quite small, only about 2.2cm *in diameter*.

We could hardly sleep in the night because of the sound of *drilling* in the road outside our house.

An elephant can *haul* extremely heavy loads behind it with no problem.

www.TopSage.com

The scenery in the theatre was painted on both sides so that it could be *rotated* for use in different scenes.

For most of the concert the children sat quietly listening, but *every so often* one of them would turn and whisper to a friend.

I will *endeavour* to pay the account as soon as possible.

Key to The paragraph

A The author would agree with statement 1. Statement 2 is untrue: it is easy to obtain samples of the rocks the drill has been cutting through. (ll. 8-10) Statement 3 is also untrue, since oilmen can control the pressure that forces the oil to gush. (ll. 11-13)

B See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A — *Must* suggests inescapable obligation or urgency, and in the speaker's opinion there is no choice: *You must phone home at once. The contract must be signed today.*

— *Have to* also suggests inescapable obligation and can refer to an external authority when used in the first person: *We have to send these tax forms back before the end of next month.*

— *Need to* expresses the idea that "it is necessary (for...) to", as in *I need to know now.*

See text.

B See text.

C 1 are going to 2 will 3 will be 4 will 5 is going to

D

1 Tell me where *he lives*. (Direct question: Where does he live?)

2 I don't know why *he went there*. (Direct question: Why did he go there?)

3 Ask him how *he knows so much about the town*. (Direct question: How do you know so much...?)

4 Dis he tell you when *he was born*? (Direct question: When was he born?)

E She *allowed* me to have the day off.

Can you *ask* him to go shopping for me?

Can you *teach* me to write Chinese?

The police still don't know what *caused* the driver to swerve off the road.

They *warned* me not to stay too long.

I *advise* you to leave as soon as possible.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 d 8 a 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 d

Lesson 14 The Butterfly Effect

Key to Comprehension

1 By "small pieces of weather" the author means almost any weather events, including thunderstorms and blizzards (which may not seem "small" to the average man).

2 Modern weather models work on a grid of points roughly sixty miles apart.

3 In this passage, the phrase "the butterfly effect" probably means the effect that minor changes have on the weather which makes it impossible to forecast weather accurately.

Key to Vocabulary

Many financial forecasts are highly *speculative* because no one really knows what might happen tomorrow to affect the money markets.

Air pollution is a *global* problem, not one which affects just a few industrialized countries.

There is one main road to the south, and the farther south you travel, the more it *deteriorates*.

The patient recovered very *rapidly* after her operation.

Insects seem to *multiply* in hot weather.

The early twentieth century was a *turbulent* period in the history of that country.

Suppose it rains, what shall we do then?

This old clock is so *accurate* that I can even set my computer clock by it.

The time is now 11.05 and 20 seconds *precisely*.

At this time of year there are quite wide *fluctuations* in the price of vegetables.

The *average* salary for an office worker is £8,000 a year.

An accountant nearly always has to take account of *errors* in his clients' calculations.

Key to The paragraph

A The author would agree with statement 2 because right at the start of the text the author states that weather forecasts are at best "speculative" and over a long period "worthless".

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 There's a fault in the earth's crust *running* (= and it runs) along the west coast of the USA.

2 The hurricane hit Florida, *sweeping away* (= and it swept away) everything in its path.

3 I noticed the lights were on, *assuming* (= and I assumed) they were at home.

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

4 The President emerged from the airport *waving* (= and he waved) to the reporters.

B

1 You can go home early, providing (that) *you finish your work*.

2 We can offer you a job on condition (that) *you start next Monday*.

3 You can come in any time you like tomorrow morning so long as *you come in on Saturday as well*.

4 I won't phone you unless *I need some help*.

5 He'll definitely win even if *he gets a slow start*.

C

1 a He will not get the fax tomorrow morning.

b He will have the fax tomorrow morning. In fact, it will reach him sometime between now and then.

2 a He will wait in Beijing. The message will arrive. Then he will leave.

b He will leave Beijing. Then this message will arrive. But he won't be there to receive it.

3 a When next June comes, the new motorway will be ready. (We don't know exactly when they will complete it, but it will be sometime between now and next June.)

b This sentence stresses the fact that next June is the earliest date for the completion of the new motorway.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 d 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 c 9 b 10 d 11 b 12 d

Lesson 15 Secrecy in industry

Key to Comprehension

1 The atmosphere of secrecy in which research is carried out, and the lack of freedom which an individual research worker has.

2 Some processes in chemical industries are never patented at all because they are kept as secret processes.

3 Some firms are reluctant to borrow books from libraries because they are afraid that agents of other firms will be able to find out what research they are undertaking.

Key to Vocabulary

The fact that she cannot use a word processor may *weigh heavily against* her when she tries to get an office job.

All the office plants have died through *lack* of water.

There is very little *effective contact* between the staff of the two universities.

If we make any changes that will have any effect at all, they must be *fundamental* changes.

The metal goes through a number of *separate processes* before it can be shaped into window frames.

This section of the questionnaire only *applies* to married men.

Government scientists have been unable to *trace* the source of the epidemic.

The singer is *likely* to be going on a tour of Asia later this year.

Key to The paragraph

A Statement 1 best expresses the main idea of the passage because the rest of the text follows from the ideas expressed in the first two sentences.

B See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A They often keep inventions secret. → *Inventions are often kept secret.*

Something flooded their house last year. → *Their house was flooded last year.*

People built the bridge in 1856. → *The bridge was built in* 1856.

See text.

1 in which it is carried out. etc.

B 1 carrying 2 obtaining

C

1 He was engaged in *looking for a cure for the common cold*.

2 He was prevented from *publishing the results of his research*.

3 He insisted on *telling his colleagues what he had discovered*.

4 If you persist in *consulting with your old colleagues, we shall have to take action*.

D

1 He told me *not to mention* it to you.

2 Please tell him *not to call* in the morning.

3 Didn't I beg you *not to write* to him?

E

1 We are going to *have* this room *decorated* soon.

2 I *had* this watch *repaired* last year.

3 Will you *have* the television *installed* in this room?

F

1 *Lest* anyone should worry that this will lead to price increases, let me reassure them that it will not.

2 Mother bought a lot of milk *for fear* we wouldn't be able to get any for a few more days.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 c 5 d 6 d 7 b 8 a 9 c 10 a
11 c 12 a

Lesson 16 The modern city

Key to Comprehension

1 A modern factory is similar to a large city because it has been designed and built to make money and with no regard for the humans who have to work in it.
2 The construction of huge skyscrapers was the direct result of the need to earn the largest amount of money from each square foot of ground.
3 They fail to realize that they are deprived of the necessities of life.

Key to Vocabulary

The doctors could find no *physiological* cause for his illness, and decided it must be psychosomatic.

The authorities spent so much money decorating the hospital that they *neglected* many of the real needs of patients.

The company has *expanded* its operations in Scotland by building a new factory there.

Living in a monastery in the mountains always seems to me to be a rather *artificial mode of existence*.

She has no *regard* at all for anyone else's feelings.

During the summer the hotel prices all its rooms differently to earn *the maximum income* according to size and quality of decor.

Even though the bridge was not large, the *construction* still took something like three years.

He annoys me because, although he isn't very successful, he's always making *banal* remarks about other people's achievements.

Many old European cities contain beautiful large buildings which might be described as "edifices", but not necessarily "*monstrous edifices*".

After the accident in the chemical laboratories, the building was filled with *toxic* fumes for twelve hours.

Just before Christmas the streets of London are *thronged ceaselessly* by great crowds.

Key to The paragraph

A Statement 1 best expresses the main idea of the passage because, from the first sentence which points out that workers have effectively been ignored in the construction and organization of a factory, the text builds up to the statement that the modern city "has not been planned for the good of its inhabitants".

B See text.

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 He is attending English classes in order that *he may make himself understood in Australia*.
2 She works very hard in order that *she may gain promotion soon*.
3 The prime Minister has gone abroad in order that *he may consult directly with the leaders of other countries*.

C

1 I didn't know how many mushrooms my mother wanted, so I collected *as many as possible*.
2 *As far as possible* the company tries to deal with each individual complaint on its merits.
3 She didn't want everyone to know she was leaving, so she told *as few people as possible*.
4 She always wants to pay *as little as possible* for anything she buys.

D

1 Most teachers exert considerable *influence upon* their students.
2 All of his judgments are *based on* a lifetime of experience in the profession.
3 You might think that the students are noisy and badly-behaved but that's not *the true nature of* most of them.
4 When he became rich, he changed his whole *mode of* life.
5 I have very little *regard for* people who live on state benefits.
6 His answers to your requests will *depend on* how he's feeling.
7 They are faced with *the necessity of* buying a new car because their old one breaks down so often now.
8 The public transport system is *deprived of* the money needed for modernization.
9 What does the United Kingdom *consist of*? It consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
10 The office was *full of* people all talking at the same time.

E

1 While we are less concerned *with large profits than we were, we have still not forgotten what we are in business for*.
2 While modern cities have grown in size, *they haven't improved their transport systems*.
3 While factory conditions have improved, *the same cannot be said for conditions in farming*.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 d 7 d 8 b 9 a 10 b 11 a 12 c

Lesson 17 A man-made disease

Key to Comprehension

1 The rabbit is regarded as a serious pest in Australia because it causes devastation by burrowing and by eating food which sheep and cattle should live on.

2 It proved impossible to exterminate rabbits completely from Australia because they developed a certain degree of resistance to the disease.

3 *Myxomatosis* was introduced into Europe through a French physician who introduced it on his estate in order to get rid of the wild rabbits.

Key to Vocabulary

It was very *enterprising* of the boys to see a gap in the market and set up a business like that.

When the police and fire brigade finally arrived at the fire, they found a scene of complete *devastation*.

We watched a line of soil moving in front of our eyes and realized that a mole was *burrowing* under the grass.

In the past, deserts have been created by animals *devouring the herbage* until nothing can grow.

My niece is rather *susceptible* to colds and flu.

The doctors were amazed the man survived because the injuries that he sustained in the accident are usually *fatal*.

There have been a number of quite serious flu *epidemics* in Britain in recent years.

When the lake was poisoned with waste chemicals, the fish population was *drastically reduced*.

A large number of animals and birds have been *completely exterminated* during the course of this century.

The old man *bequeathed* most of his estate to his only grandson.

Within *the confines of his estate* the local lord of the manor believes he can do just about whatever he likes.

Cows, pigs and sheep are *domesticated* animals.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 When introduced into Australia — no natural enemies; multiplied.

2 Overran continent; caused terrible damage — burrowing and devouring plants.

3 However, susceptible to *myxomatosis*, fatal virus disease.

4 Animals infected and let loose; caused epidemic.

5 Disease also carried by type of mosquito.

6 Both methods helped reduce population — though impossible to exterminate rabbits completely.

B

When Australia acquired the rabbit from Europe, it became a pest. When Europe acquired *myxomatosis* from Australia, it acquired a pestilence. A French physician introduced the disease on his estate and it spread from there to the rest of the country and then to Britain. In France, the rabbit is not a pest, but a sport and a valuable food supply. In Britain, on the other hand, the wild rabbit is a pest, while tame rabbits form the basis of the fur industry. The question was: Could man control this artificial disease?

C

The balance of nature.

The balance of nature is very delicate and we have only begun to realize in this past century just how delicate it is. Let us take the case of forests. People in the past cut down trees to use as fuel or to use for the construction of houses, ships and so on — apparently with little regard for the damage they may have been doing to the environment. Often they replanted the area, but was that because they instinctively recognized the need to replace what they had taken away or damaged, or simply because they knew that they would need more wood later? In other words, were our forefathers concerned about the balance of nature? Or were they simply concerned that they might run out of things that Nature could provide? People in the past probably *were* more in touch with Nature and they knew how important the balance of nature was. We seem to have lost that instinct in the twentieth century. But natural disasters (like the extinction of certain species of animals and birds) have begun to make us realize the effect of cutting down forests with no regard for the wild life or for the planet as a whole.

(202 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 In the early days of the settlement of Australia, enterprising settlers (unwisely) introduced the European rabbit. (11. 1-2)

2 (Later) it was found (later) that there was a type of mosquito which acted as the carrier of this disease and passed it on to the rabbits. (11. 7-8)

3 (Effectively) it (effectively) spread the disease all over the continent and (drastically) reduced (drastically) the rabbit population (drastically). (11. 9-10)

www.TopSage.com

4 (Later) it (later) became apparent (later) that rabbits were developing a degree of resistance to the disease, so that the rabbit population was unlikely to be (completely) exterminated (completely). (11. 10-11)
5 (Ironically,) Europe, which had (ironically) bequeathed the rabbit as a pest to Australia, (ironically) acquired this manmade disease as a pestilence. (11. 13-14)

B

1 He could not drive very well, *so that* he had an accident the second time he went out on the roads.
2 She learned a little Italian *so that* she could ask for things when she went there on holiday.

C

1 While Tom was doing his homework, his sister *was watching a video*.
2 While my wife was seeing to the evening meal, I *was writing some letters*.

D See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 d 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 d 9 c 10 d
11 c 12 a

Lesson 18 Porpoises

Key to Comprehension

Porpoises possess a curiosity with anything that is alive(*or* with anything living).

Key to Vocabulary

In the UK it's a common *superstition* that walking under a ladder is unlucky.

Certain land animals have been known to stand *in defensive formation* in order to protect their young or their territory.

"I know *how* she committed the murder," said the detective, "but if her *motive* wasn't greed or jealousy, I still can't understand *why*."

The football pitch was *waterlogged*, so the match had to be called off.

Someone threw a bottle and then a mass fight *ensued* between the rival fans.

I just couldn't put the book down because I was *intrigued* to know what happened in the end.

Those people are *constantly* having arguments.

There was a lot of pushing and *shoving* to get on the bus.

The pig kept *sticking his snout* through the wire fence.

As the boy bent over to tie his shoelaces, the goat lowered its head, charged and *butted* him where it hurt!

The moment he *recovers his equilibrium* on the beam, he falls off again.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Bird, fish or beast — porpoise intrigued.
2 Constantly chasing, playing with turtles; example — turtle across tank.
3 Young porpoises enjoy turning over large turtles.
4 Porpoises often in pairs; knock turtle to bottom. Finally gives up.

B

There is a superstition among mariners that porpoises will save drowning men or even protect them from sharks. Marine Studio biologists have suggested that, however intelligent porpoises might be, this is probably not true. When porpoises have pushed men ashore, the biologists say, they have probably done it out of curiosity or simply for sport. Porpoises were once photographed pushing a waterlogged mattress to the shore. And as for saving men from sharks, curiosity may have attracted them because the smell of food (a man) attracted sharks. Porpoises and sharks are natural enemies and it is possible that they fought on such an occasion.

C

Intelligence in animals.

Animal lovers often say things like this: "Our dog/cat/parrot/pony... is very intelligent, you know. He can ask for food/balance a ball on his nose/come when you call his name..." Animal lovers, then, like to think that animals and birds are endowed with intelligence, but are they? Many animals, even wild carnivores like lions and tigers, can be trained to perform "tricks" of various kinds. In the same way, certain animals in the wild can "do tricks" such as lifting logs or picking off bark to find insects, or "disguising" themselves to deceive their prey. Certain animals and birds, then, might be "clever", but are they "intelligent"? And what about creatures which have a reputation for being intelligent, such as owls, which in the UK are often described as "wise"? In this instance, it has been proved that the owl is in fact a particularly stupid bird, and far from "intelligent"! The problem really is with the meaning of intelligence and intelligent. One dictionary definition of "intelligent" is "having or showing powers of learning, reasoning or understanding, especially to a high degree". Perhaps, however, intelligence should include showing signs of original thought or problem-

www.TopSage.com

solving, and it seems that few, if any, animals are capable of that. (217 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 I can't remember *posting that letter last week, although I'm sure I did.*

2 You should avoid *speaking to those girls if you don't get on with them.*

3 Will you stop *asking me so many questions*?

4 Fancy *meeting you here*!

5 I can't *imagine him going to a disco.*

6 Pardon my *asking, but are you related to John*?

C We commonly use the conjunction *no sooner... than* with the past perfect: I had *no sooner* put the phone down from ringing her *than* she rang me back.

(The same idea can also be expressed with *hardly... when*: He has *hardly* recovered his equilibrium *when* the next porpoise comes along...)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 d 8 c 9 c 10 c 11 b 12 a

Lesson 19 The stuff of dreams

Key to Comprehension

1 The author disproves the idea that we sleep in order to rest our muscles because the body's tissues repair and restore themselves to a degree and they function best when active.

2 Eye-movements during sleep indicate that a person is dreaming.

Key to Vocabulary

The brain performs a very important *function*: it controls the nervous system of the body.

The minister's remarks have led to all kinds of wild *speculations* about the possibility of tax cuts.

The book was written *specifically* for young teenagers.

While this might seem a *plausible hypothesis* no one really thinks that it will work in practice.

There was not enough *evidence* for the court to convict the man of murder.

There is a *fundamental* difference between the policies of the two parties.

The silence of the forest was *punctuated* by occasional bursts of gunfire.

I didn't recognize the animal at all, but it was black and white, and its behaviour was characterized by *jerky* and *rapid* movements.

The most recent report on the nuclear accident ten years ago has finally concentrated on the wider *implications* of the incident for the environment.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Brain needs resting? Two factors against:

2 Change in pattern of activity during sleep — total amount of activity same.

3 Second factor more fundamental: Dement's experiments recording eye-movements.

4 Sleep cycle punctuated by bursts of eye-movements: dreaming.

5 People woken during eye-movement sleep — personality disorders.

6 Disturbance of dreaming important. So main function of sleep is to dream?

B

Since we all sleep a great deal, it is fairly clear that sleep must have a function, and this is a problem which has puzzled mankind for thousands of years. We are fairly sure now that the purpose of sleep is not to give the body a rest since we do not have to sleep in order to relax our muscles. This can be done at any time simply by lying or sitting down for short periods. And anyway, body tissues function best when our muscles are active. During sleep itself, the body moves simply in order to prevent muscle inactivity which would, as we know, result in numbness and cramp.

C

A dream.

About a month ago I had a dream which I can still remember very vividly. I don't often remember dreams, but this is one which made a deep impression on me. In the dream I was running along the top of a very high cliff with the beach and sea hundreds of feet below me. As I ran, I kept turning round to see whether I was still being followed, and I was. In fact I was being chased by lots of man-sized dolphins on legs! I know it sounds mad and a little like a cartoon. The dolphins didn't catch me and I just kept running, but I never got to the end of the dream because I woke up thrashing about in bed and sweating. Since I had the dream, I've been wondering what it meant. I know that people who interpret dreams say that they are rarely obvious, that all the images are mixed up and nothing is what it seems. But this dream seemed to reflect the holiday I had just had and the fact that I had to go back to work soon. On my holiday I had seen some dolphins — and I did not want to go back to work. I think the dream reflected my worry

www.TopSage.com

— but of course the dream could have meant something completely different. (224 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B 1 since 2 for 3 since 4 since

C Your car *needs cleaning*. (= Your car needs to be cleaned.)

Do these shoes *need mending*? (= Do these shoes need to be mended?)

The house *wants decorating*, I think. (= The house wants to be decorated, I think.)

D

1 *If it were* possible, I would leave tomorrow.

2 I would take action at once *if it were not* too late.

3 *If this allegation were* true, he would be arrested.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 d 6 a 7 a 8 b 9 d 10 d 11 b 12 c

Lesson 20 Snake poison

Key to Comprehension

1 The author finds it odd that snakes should be capable of manufacturing poison because they could have caught and lived on prey without it.

2 Neurotoxic poison acts on the nerves (or nervous system) while haemolytic poison acts on the blood.

Key to Vocabulary

The doctor said that the patient had a fever, but it was only a *mild* fever.

During the process, oil is *converted* into petrol and other products.

This small rock, which came to earth as part of a meteorite, is so strange that it *defies analysis*.

In *the survival competition*, the strongest creatures often come out as winners.

Lions, tigers and leopards are all *carnivores*; rabbits, cows and goats are not.

Knowledge is in some ways *a two-edged weapon* because it can be used for good or evil.

The three students *concocted* a meal from lots of different things that they found in the cupboard and fridge.

Some alcoholic drinks which are made by people in the country are known for their *extreme potency*.

Although the snake had certain *viperine* markings, it wasn't a viper and was quite harmless.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Reason why snakes manufactured poison: mystery.

2 Over a period saliva converted to poison: defies analysis.

3 Didn't develop through competition to survive: other non-poisonous snakes have survived.

4 Snake poison — merely luxury. One bite — food!

5 Other animals (e. g. cats, carnivores) would benefit from a poisonous bite. Although two-edged sword.

6 But Nature only selected snakes. Why? And why poisons of such potency?

B

The snakes which produce nerve poison include mambas and cobras and the poison is described as neurotoxic. Snakes which produce the blood poison known as haemolytic include vipers and rattlesnakes. Of the two, blood poison is the more unpleasant. While the nerve poison is possibly the earlier and more primitive, the blood poison was a later development. Strangely, it is the nerve poison which acts more quickly on man, but that doesn't tell us much since the purpose of snake poison was clearly not for use against man but for use against prey such as rats and mice.

C

Our fear of snakes.

Fear of snakes is probably one of the most common fears among humans. Even though there are thousands of species of snake which are non-poisonous and which offer no threat to man, we nevertheless automatically think that any snake we find could bite us and inject us with some dreadful poison. Is this fear of snakes then an irrational fear? Not at all. Some people think that it is a very rational fear. In other words, it is right to be afraid of all snakes — or at least to be extremely wary of all snakes. It is wise to work on the assumption that, if many snakes can bite you and inject venom which could kill, then avoid all of them. It is known that many snakes, both poisonous and non-poisonous, possess physiological features which are designed (by Nature) to frighten a prospective enemy: some have a brilliant colour, some a rattle in the tail, most have a hiss and a flickering tongue, and some rear up and spread a hood. The snake may not have a venomous bite, but any of these features says "Leave me alone". In the end, even the fact that most snakes look slippery and slimy is enough to make many people afraid of them. (210 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A If my parents had given me some encouragement, I think *I could have succeeded* as a professional musician.

www.TopSage.com

大家网

If they hadn't had to catch the 6. 30 train back, they *could have stayed* an hour or two longer.

If she had taken more money with her, she *could have bought* some new clothes.

B They are not going to *force* the new changes *on/upon* us.

Vegetarians *live on* a diet that does not contain meat.

There are a number of important processes in the *conversion* of coal *into* gas.

Studying at a college or university is very *different from* attending school.

As soon as the police get the information they want, they will *act on* it and surround the house.

The *effect on* the audience of the composer's first symphony was indescribable.

C Even though he has retired, he still gets up early just as he always *did*. (did=got up early)

He certainly enjoys music as much as you *do*. (do=enjoy music)

If you act as he *does*, you won't be very popular. (does=acts)

D

1 Of the two books, I found the horror novel *the more* entertaining.

2 Janet was *the most* intelligent girl in the class.

E

1 The concert tickets were *much more expensive* than I had been told.

2 The test was *far more difficult* than I thought it was going to be.

3 The game was *far less exciting* than John told me to expect.

4 The computer course this year is *much less interesting* than the one last year.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 c 7 c 8 b 9 d 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 21 William S. Hart and the early "Western" film

Key to Comprehension

1 The basic formula of the Western film is the individual in conflict with himself and with his frontier environment.

2 The arrival of politicians, bankers and businessmen bewildered and confused the men who were used to struggling for survival against the elements.

3 Western films have appealed to twentieth-century audiences because they offer an escape to a time when life, though hard, was relatively simple.

Key to Vocabulary

I had to make a *supreme* effort to stop myself from laughing.

People often wonder who the dramatist was thinking of when he *devised the protagonist* in his last play.

It looked as if the man had committed the crime, but he hadn't; he had been *framed* by two rivals who wanted him put into prison.

The two parties have been *in conflict* about education since the election.

Children need a happy and secure home *environment* if they are to develop normally.

All the man's *contemporaries* were beginning to retire while he was still working hard to make a living.

The woman's novels are *firmly rooted* in her own upbringing in Ireland.

The new housing estate is now *encroaching* on part of the forest.

When the boy first arrived in England from Asia, he was completely *bewildered* by the different way of life.

The nuclear arms race caused the entire world to feel threatened by *impending immolation*.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 William S. Hart was the greatest of all Western stars — appeared only in Westerns.

2 He created basic Western film formula and devised protagonist: individual in conflict with self and environment.

3 Had experience of the old West: brought up in it. Understood conflict between individual and encroaching civilization.

4 Men in old West bewildered by politicians, bankers, etc.

5 Audiences always sympathized with Hart's good-bad man as the outsider, one of the disinherited.

B

Audiences in the second decade of the twentieth century found it pleasant to escape to a time when life was hard but simple. And we still do: in a world which is still full of aggression, hypocrisy and anarchy, we still want to escape and look for a code to live by.

C

Westerns.

The "Western", or "cowboy film", has become a

TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

classic in the twentieth century. And although few are made today, those that are made are still popular. Why? What is it in a Western that people all over the world enjoy watching? It isn't the scenery, although that may help. Those wide open spaces, the prairies and the rocky hills always put the cowboys into perspective. It isn't the accompanying music, because it is sometimes excellent and sometimes dreadful. Nor is it the violence — and there is often a lot of violence in a Western. Quite a number of people, cowboys and Indians, "goodies" and "baddies", are killed along the way. It must be that the Western is characterized by a simple plot and characters that are universal in their appeal. The good man (our hero, perhaps an unwilling sheriff) finds himself in conflict with the "bad guy", the professional "gunslinger" or even a gang of them, the "baddies" — and although he faces lots of challenging situations (sometimes even becoming a "bad guy" for a while), we know he will be victorious in the end and either get the woman or ride off into the sunset with his faithful horse. (199 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A She's the woman. I met her yesterday. = She's the woman (*that/whom*) I met yesterday.

See text.

B I promise to tell the truth, the whole truth, and *nothing but* the truth.

That boy has been *nothing but* trouble ever since he came to the school.

I've just looked through that box and there is *nothing but* rubbish in it.

C See text.

D

1 I *did mention* it to him, but he wasn't impressed.

2 You *did post* my letter, didn't you?

3 We *did enjoy* ourselves at the party.

E

1 Her speech, *though* quite short, was excellent and very entertaining.

2 There wasn't really time to visit the old castle. I wish we had found time *though*.

F

1 They all thought that it was a good cause *to fight for*. (=for which to fight)

2 The story gave them all something *to talk about*. (= about which to talk)

3 The police couldn't arrest the man because they didn't have quite enough information *to act on*. (=on which to act)

4 He keeps changing his mind so he's an impossible man *to work with*. (=with whom to work)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 d 8 d 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 22 Knowledge and progress

Key to Comprehension

1 The author seems to define the word "progress" as the ever-increasing accumulation of knowledge.

2 With the coming of science the tempo of the spread of knowledge was increased, and knowledge began to be accumulated systematically.

3 The spread of knowledge has given rise to the question of what we are going to do with it all.

Key to Vocabulary

Few people thought that the problems of crime and poverty would *loom so large* as they do now in so many countries.

Fear was *manifest* on the man's face.

The *accumulation* of antiques of all kinds has taken all our spare money over the past few years.

Her chances of getting the job were *enhanced* by excellent secretarial skills.

The boss treated his workers *indifferently* because he was only interested in how fast they could work.

We watched the curious *spectacle* of government troops attacking government buildings.

One of the most *grimly whimsical* paintings that I have ever seen is a medieval picture of Death and the Peasant.

A window has a *twofold* purpose: it allows light into a room and it lets people see out.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Knowledge increased with communication — speech.

2 When writing was invented, another great step: knowledge now stored.

3 Written knowledge made education possible: libraries increased.

4 Growth, communication and storage of knowledge — enhanced by printing.

5 The advent of science imposed system on accumulation of knowledge.

6 Trickle became stream, stream has become torrent.

7 New knowledge now applied immediately to practical life.

B

The problem facing humanity now is what to do with all the knowledge we have accumulated. Knowledge is

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a two-edged weapon which can be used equally for good or evil. It is now used for both. It is ironical, for instance, that science can be used on the one hand to help a gunner shoot people and, at the same time, help a surgeon to heal wounded men. We should ask ourselves now where this twofold use of knowledge will end.

C

Knowledge is a two-edged weapon.

Knowledge, as the author rightly points out, is a two-edged weapon that can be used for good or evil. He quotes the example of science being used in two completely different ways — firstly to give a gunner the weapon with which to shoot someone and then to provide a surgeon with the necessary equipment, skills and medication to restore to health the person that the gunner has shot. Politicians, religious leaders and scientists, it seems, provide us with good examples of what people can do with the same information and the same knowledge. With the same facts, often twisted a certain way, one politician will try to persuade you that a new highway past your village is a good thing, while another politician, his opponent, will use the same information or knowledge to persuade you that the highway is a bad idea. Or imagine that an archaeologist finds a human footprint in a layer of rock millions of years old. What does he do with that information, that knowledge? He will use it to support an argument that man is millions of years older that we ever thought, while another archaeologist will either express serious doubt about the discovery, or will at least interpret the same knowledge to support a different argument. (212 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B The fact that the girl suddenly returned made the search for her *unnecessary*.

All the different features of this house make it very *desirable*.

By the time the people in the workshop had finished, they made my old car *unrecognizable*.

C

1 *People emigrating* this year will benefit from a special payment from the government.

2 *All aeroplanes arriving* after 16.00 will be required to pay an additional landing fee.

3 *Ships sailing* from this port must register their port of destination before they sail.

D

1 *Photographs taken* inside the building must be authorized by the Manager.

2 *Passports issued* from this office will be valid for all parts of the world.

3 *Passengers delayed* overnight are always given free accommodation.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 d 8 b 9 c 10 d 11 a 12 b

Lesson 23 Bird flight

Key to Comprehension

1 The albatross is described as "the king of the gliders" because it can fly for hours with its wings outstretched over currents of air and without hardly ever moving its wings.

2 The author singles out the swallow for special praise because the bird shares the virtues of both kinds of flight, the "glider" and the "power flier".

Key to Vocabulary

The number of stars (or suns) in the universe is *infinite*.

"This should give you *sufficient sustenance* to last the rest of the race," the woman said rather pompously, as she handed us each a small bar of chocolate.

In order to reduce the use of fossil fuels, we have now begun to *harness* energy from the wind and tides.

The Prime Minister finally had to *yield* to criticism about his private life and resign.

A tortoise is *endowed* with a thick shell which protects it against many dangers.

The massive waves beat the cliff with such *irresistible power* that some enormous rocks broke off and crashed into the sea.

The crowd was very dense, but I managed to *bore* my way through to the front.

We all get on very well because we have *like* attitudes to many things.

When the police finally found the woman, she was in a state of *utter* terror.

The climb was bound to fail because they set off in *adverse* conditions.

She took all the little things that happened that day as *omens* for their future married life.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Two major recognizable kinds of flight.

2 Albatross — examle of a "glider", follow ship for

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

hours without moving wings.

3 "Gliders" harness air to their purpose.

4 Ducks, on the other hand, are like engines.

5 Power in ducks and pigeons supplied by steel-like muscles; they power short wings.

6 Bore their way through winds and gales for long distances.

B

The swallow is an example of a bird that possesses good qualities of both schools of flight. On the one hand, it does not tire, and on the other it has great power. It can fly as much as six thousand miles to and from its nesting home, even feeding its young in flight and making good progress in adverse conditions. Such birds do us good, maintains the author, even though few people nowadays, not even superstitious villagers, believe in them as omens.

C

Birds.

Birds cover the globe in vast quantities and in a vast variety. You will find birds wherever you go in the world. They are found in all climates, in all kinds of terrain, on land, over the sea, on mountains, over lakes. Indeed there are very few places in the world where you will not see or hear a bird. All have wings and the vast majority can fly, although some have lost the power of flight. All birds lay eggs, although not all build "pretty" nests to lay them in. Birds are found in all kinds of colours and come in all sizes from the smallest humming-bird to immensely large eagles, vultures and albatrosses; and of course there are even larger flightless birds such as ostriches and emus. Birds seem to have adapted to all kinds of environments and all kinds of needs; penguins in the Antarctic have developed flippers (from wings) for "flying" underwater; albatrosses have developed huge wings which allow them to live for days on the wing over water; humming-birds feed on nectar from flowers (like bees) and their wings beat so fast you can't see them with the naked eye; pelicans have huge beaks with "bags" under them to hold fish,... The list is endless. Birds are beautiful creatures and a constant source of amazement.

(221 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 If you have ever driven at a hundred miles an hour, *you may understand why I would like to drive a racing car*.

2 If you have never been to New Zealand, *you may like to know that it is well worth a visit*.

3 If you have finished your work, *you may like to read this magazine article*.

C See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 c 5 c 6 d 7 c 8 a 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 c

Lesson 24 Beauty

Key to Comprehension

1 According to the author, great art and certain moods of nature have one thing in common: they both suggest a world beyond this one.

2 The author feels that it is unwise to attempt to interpret beauty because it is meaningless in terms of ordinary human meanings.

Key to Vocabulary

The noise *roused* me from a deep sleep.

From an *aesthetic* point of view, it's a very good design.

In the *realm* of science, he has an excellent reputation.

He gave a very *moving* speech at his brother's funeral.

Whenever I try to describe a country landscape, I find it almost impossible to *convey* the beauty in words.

Many adults, in times of stress and worry, experience an almost *indefinable longing* for their childhood.

Some film actresses seem to possess a certain *radiance* which shines out whenever they are in front of the camera.

We were woken every morning by the donkeys *braying* in the nearby field.

Your ideas for solving all the world's problems are just fanciful *whimsies*.

To *glimpse the unutterable* is to see, for a brief moment, something or someone that cannot be described.

As humans, we are constantly trying to *invest with significance* the minor events in our lives.

Key to The paragraph

A

1 Great art and nature — power to suggest world beyond.

2 Effect of blue sky or sunset on viewer: a vision of something better.

3 If beauty does mean something, we must not attempt

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

interpretation.

4 We should not try to describe the indescribable; we haven't the language.

5 In terms of human meanings, beauty is meaningless.

B

The effect that the sunset has on a young man, since he cannot express his feelings, is like a vision of another world. Aesthetic experiences like watching a beautiful sunset somehow suggest the existence of a world in some way higher than our own. We seem to glimpse, through the bright light, a hint of beauty and serenity that we have never known. It is impossible to describe because language is ill-equipped and only designed to describe things of this world.

C

What is beautiful to one individual is ugly to another.

There is a saying in English: "Beauty is in the eye of the beholder." It is perfectly true. You only need to look at the men and women who attract each other, or the vast, strange differences between people who come together as friends. Short people find tall people attractive, and beautiful people find ugly people attractive. Remember the story of "Beauty and the Beast". Beauty comes from within. If this were not true, we would all like and hate the same paintings and other works of art. As it is, we have different tastes, and each one of us finds differerent things "beautiful". Beyond that, beauty is not only "in the eye of the beholder"; a piece of music can be described as "beautiful" if it has a spine-tingling effect on the listener. So "beauty is also in the ear of the listener". And can it therefore be in the "hand of the toucher"? Blind people can surely "feel beauty" in the same way that sighted people can "see beauty" and in the same way that we who can hear, can in fact "hear beauty". It is most certainly true: beauty is in the eye, the ear or the hand of the beholder, the listener or the toucher. (208 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

Must could be replaced by *has to* in items 2 and 3 (where *must* expresses an obligation).

Must in items 1 and 4 expresses an assumption or deduction.

B

1 *It* must have been after one o'clock when I arrived home.

2 *There* must have been a large number of accidents over the Christmas holidays.

3 You might be asked to make a speech, but I think *it* is highly unlikely.

4 *It* will be difficult to dissuade him now that he has made up his mind.

5 *There* will be difficult times ahead.

C

1 *That he wrote this story himself* is unbelievable.

2 *That you should believe this to be true* is astonishing to me.

3 *That we all feel depressed sometimes* is quite true.

D If we glimpse the unutterable, *we should not attempt to utter (or describe) what we have seen.*

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 d 9 d 10 a 11 c 12 d

Lesson 25 Non-auditory effects of noise

Key to Comprehension

1 He means: The whole idea of reducing or getting rid or noise (in the modern world) is a good aim which is likely to lose people's support if the arguments for it become associated with inexact or unsupported scientific argument.

2 A modern navy is a good place to study noise because the noise of jet aircraft on an aircraft carrier must be one of the most unpleasant environments you could think of in which to work — for noise, that is.

Key to Vocabulary

The police immediately began an *investigation* into the murder of the old man.

Even when they thought they had the right man, they realized they had *inadequate evidence* on which to charge him.

The noise has increased so much near their local airport that they are starting a noise *abatement* society.

The prisoner made a serious *allegation* of cruelty against the men who arrested him.

It's a beautiful sweater; the only *snag* is, I can't afford it.

I am always extremely *cautious* about what I read in that particular newspaper.

At this time of the year, ice on the roads is a real *hazard*.

Key to Summary

A

1 Many people do not believe noise affects health.

2 Noise abatement campaigners — inadequate evidence to support case.

www.TopSage.com

3 Often alleged — noise produces mental illness.

4 Woman claimed — noise of office typewriters — mental hospital.

5 Problem with argument: difficult to distinguish cause and effect. Noise cause mental illness? Or complaints about noise merely a symptom?

B

Although many people do not believe that noise affects people's health, those that campaign for noise abatement unfortunately sometimes use inadequate evidence to support their case. It is often alleged that noise produces mental illness, and a woman has actually claimed that the noise of office typewriters eventually sent her into a mental hospital. The problem with this argument is that it is extremely difficult to distinguish between cause and effect: in other words, did the noise *cause* her mental illness, or were her complaints about noise merely a *symptom*? (90 *words*)

Key to Composition

Noise in modern life.

Most people in this modern world have grown accustomed to living and working against a background of noise, almost constant noise. In the street there is the noise of traffic — engine noises, car alarms, the screeching of tyres and brakes, in factories there is the continual drumming of machines of all kinds, and in the office there is the noise of office equipment — the tap-tap-tap of computer keyboard keys, the ringing of telephones, fax machines and so on. Even in the home, where labour-saving devices have made life so much easier for many people, some of the comfort has been at the expense of noise — vacuum cleaners, washing machines, dishwashers and air extractors; they all make a noise, even if manufacturers try to tell us sometimes that their machines are "silent"! And even in the countryside, or in your own back garden in the city, there are always aeroplanes overhead — large passenger jet aircraft, helicopters, and even, sometimes, military jet aircraft.

In our modern industrial society, hardly anywhere is free from noise. In towns and cities, particularly, the problem has become acute. And yet people have learned to live against this background and do not seem to be affected. Indeed, some people even seem to require noise as a necessary environment in which to work: "muzak" in the workplace, in shops, in hotels is a perfect example of the need for "noise", for that is all "muzak" is.

We seem to be helpless to do anything about reducing noise in this modern world and many have come to accept it as one of the more unpleasant features of modern civilization. And although few of us complain about it, this is one of the main reasons that people give for going to an island, the countryside, the hills or the mountains for the weekend, or for their annual holiday — "To get away from everything, especially the noise." (316 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 *Many roads which we use* were not built for such heavy traffic.

2 *The heavy snow which fell last week* has now begun to melt.

3 *The party of tourists which we had in our hotel at the weekend* left this morning.

4 *The clerk who took the original telephone call apologized* for the mistake.

B

1 A large animal *frequently seen* near our village has proved to be a black panther.

2 One ridiculous argument *sometimes heard* is that failure is a necessary part of progress.

3 One sight *generally considered* worth visiting is the old church on the cliffs.

C

1 Have you written back to your penfriend *yet*?

2 I haven't told them about the concert *yet*.

3 I don't know how many old girlfriends he has, but Gail is *yet another* in a long line.

D

1 *On opening* the door, I got a surprise.

2 *On seeing* me approaching, he ran towards me.

3 *On being asked* to leave the meeting, he got very angry.

4 *On arriving* at the station, she bought a ticket.

E

At the sight of the bank robbers with their guns, the girl was *reduced to* a quivering jelly.

The police are still trying to establish the *cause of* the accident.

The local Health Officer has received lots of *complaints about* the standard of hygiene in that café.

Most spokesmen for government departments are extremely *cautious about* saying anything which can be understood too easily.

At the youth hostel, Karla had to *share* a room *with* a girl she had never met.

It's been said that such horrific sights on television news can have dreadful *effects upon* young children.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Modern *methods of* tracing the source of a disease do not always seem to be very effective.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 d 5 d 6 c 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 26 The past life of the earth

Key to Comprehension

1 Animals or plants which lived in or near water are most likely to be preserved because they will be covered over quickly by mud and silt.

2 Dead bodies of animals usually decompose or are quickly destroyed by the weather or eaten by other creatures.

3 The remains of the Beresovka mammoth were accidentally preserved because it fell into an ice crevasse and was immediately frozen, as in a freezer.

Key to Vocabulary

Except for the wooden floors, the old building is in a good state of *preservation*.

They found lots of old cups and saucers and *the like* in a small rubbish tip in the grounds of the large house.

When the factory closed down, the machinery was sold off for a *small fraction* of its true value.

We describe vultures as *scavengers* because they feed on dead animals.

We have made *innumerable* attempts to interview the Minister about this question, but with no success.

We discovered that the terrible smell in the cellar came from a *decomposing* rat.

Eagles will often build their nests in totally *inaccessible* places, for example on a ledge on a cliff face.

The painting found in the attic was in a dreadful state, but it has now been *restored* and looks fine.

As the man drove his car into the field, it became *promptly bogged* down in the mud.

Key to Summary

A

1 Extinct animals near water — likely to be preserved-covered with mud and silt.

2 If animals not preserved quickly, will decompose or be eaten.

3 Land animals and birds — rarely preserved — not covered by anything.

4 They die, decompose, destroyed by weather, eaten by creatures.

B

Extinct animals which lived in or near water were most likely to be preserved because they were quickly covered with mud and silt. If animals are not preserved quickly in this way, they will decay, decompose or be eaten by scavengers. Animals that lived on land, and birds of course, are much more rarely preserved because there is seldom anything to cover them. When they die, they decompose and are quickly destroyed by the weather or eaten by other creatures.

Key to Composition

Extinct forms of animal life.

People find it difficult to resist the fascination of a natural history museum where the skeletons and fossils of extinct forms of life are on display. It is this fascination, too, felt by so many people, that attracts them to adventure stories like *The Lost World* or films like *Jurassic Park*.

What sorts of things can one see in a natural history museum? The remains of animals that existed in prehistoric times. Sometimes we can see just parts of a creature, sometimes the whole skeleton. There are reptiles, dinosaurs and tyrannosaurs. There are pterodactyls, the horrific-looking creatures with long, tooth-filled beaks, which were the ancestors of our present-day birds. There are the remains of fish, small and large, especially early sharks, and there are fossilized crustaceans. There are the remains of early mammals, too, and what is for most people perhaps the most fascinating, the remains of our own ancestors, early man such as Neanderthal man.

Museums also display the remains of animals which have become extinct relatively recently, like the flightless bird called the dodo. It is sad to think that the dodo only became extinct about three hundred years ago, and would probably not have become extinct if Europeans had not hunted it on its native island of Mauritius in the Indian Ocean. How many more forms of animal life are in danger of becoming extinct today that our children will only see in museums?

And then of course there are those creatures which have been called "living fossils" -primitive forms of life which came into being millions of years ago and which have surprisingly survived, apparently without developing greatly. Examples are the coelacanth(the fish that was first discovered earlier in the twentieth century) and the duck-billed platypus in Australia.

Key to KS Exercises

1 The archaeologists are waiting *until* the weather improves before they continue digging.

2 *After* they die, most land animals decompose or they

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

are eaten by other creatures.

3 I will telephone you *as soon as* I get to London.

4 They have promised to phone us *when* they have some definite news.

B

1 The old lady does not go out in the winter, *for* she feels the cold a great deal.

2 I've got a present *for* you.

C See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 d 8 d 9 a 10 b 11 a 12 c

Lesson 27 The "Vasa"

Key to Comprehension

1 The *Vasa* was regarded as an important ship when she was built because she had been designed by Gustavus Adolphus and she had been decorated more richly than any other ship.

2 It took three years (to build the *Vasa*).

3 She is described as a "floating work of art" because she was almost covered with carvings and ornament.

Key to Vocabulary

The *galleon* they made for the film was an exact replica of one of the large wooden sailing ships that came from Spain in the seventeenth century.

The woman didn't do any of the cooking herself, but she *dictated* the kinds of menu that she wanted the chef to prepare.

Very few countries could resist the *might* of the Roman army at the height of the Roman Empire.

Like the *Vasa*, the English ship, the *Mary Rose*, also sank on her *maiden voyage*.

The week before the coronation, the whole city was *in a ferment* of excitement.

Modern cartoons make great use of *zoomorphic* animal figures — pigs that can speak, lions that wear royal clothes, snakes that are evil robbers, and so on.

As we came up the road, we recognized the house we were looking for: it was *ablaze* with lights.

In British history, King Richard Ⅲ is usually *portrayed* as a wicked man.

The large wheels of the ferry-boat *churned* up the water so much that small boats were in danger of being swamped.

As we sailed out of the enclosed harbour into the open sea, the wind *freshened* a great deal.

The weather had been beautiful, so we were surprised when a *sudden squall* blew up from the south bringing some rain with it.

The men unloaded the *ballast* of rock from the boat before filling it with grain.

As they threw open the large doors, there was a great *inrush* of bitterly cold air.

The cruiser had already been hit badly by two torpedoes, but a third torpedo which hit her right in the engine room *sealed the ship's fate*.

Key to Summary

A

1 People of Stockholm watched *Vasa* — magnificent — high stern castle carved.

2 Cannon thundered salute — *Vasa*'s guns answered.

3 Emerged from gun smoke — more majestic.

4 Ship hit by squall — listed to port.

5 Watchers heard noise — cargo, ballast, people crashed to port.

6 Lower gun-ports below water — ship sank.

B

As the people of Stockholm watched the *Vasa* spread her sails, she looked magnificent, her high stern castle carved with figures and animal shapes in bright colours. The cannon of anchored warships thundered a salute which the *Vasa*'s guns answered, and as she emerged from the gun smoke, she looked even more majestic. Suddenly the ship was hit by a squall and listed to port. As she did, the watchers on shore heard the noise as cargo, ballast and people crashed to the port side. The moment the lower gun-ports went below water, the sea rushed in and she sank. (100 *words*)

Key to Composition

Recovering lost treasure from the sea.

When a ship sank in the past, there were extreme difficulties in salvaging the wreck. Quite clearly that was true of a ship that sank in very deep water — and indeed it still is. But even if a ship sank in relatively shallow water, in a harbour, for example, there was very little hope of recovering any lost treasure or indeed of recovering anything else from the wreck. In most cases, even bodies of men who went down with the ship would remain in it.

Modern diving techniques, of course, have made salvaging far less difficult. A shipwreck can be discovered and investigated by sonar, and skin divers can go down and investigate the wreck before any serious salvage work is begun. The same modern diving techniques have also meant that hunting for treasure can be carried out not only by experts but also by amateurs. So quite a lot of amateur divers spend their weekends and holidays diving

www.TopSage.com

大家网

for "treasure".

What kinds of treasure can be recovered? And where from? Not surprisingly there are shipwrecks all around the coast of Great Britain and other islands in the world. The Mediterranean Sea, too, is an excellent hunting ground for salvagers and treasure hunters. Many of the Roman and Greek ships at the bottom of the Sea are full of works of art. The sea off the coast of Florida and around the Bahamas is another hunting ground, this time for gold from Spanish galleons.

Many shipwrecks, of course, do not contain treasure in terms of gold, silver, jewels or works of art. But they all contain another kind of "treasure": they contain the weapons used on ships (the cannon, swords, and so on), everyday articles of clothing (shoes, leather belts, etc.) and items of everyday use (plates, bottles, etc.). All of these "treasures" teach us a great deal about the history of the time. (314 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 I heard him *open the door and step into the room*.

2 I noticed *someone turn away from the crowd and take out a mobile phone*.

3 Did you see *anyone leave by the back door*?

C

1 They had laboured *for* three years...

2 *Since* 1628 few attempts had been made to salvage the *Vasa*.

3 *For* nearly three and a half centuries she lay...

D

1 In the deep dark forest *there lived* an old man who was said to be a hundred years old.

2 *There seemed* little point in speaking to him because he was obviously not going to change his mind.

E

We all *went shopping* last Saturday.

Shall we *go swimming* this afternoon?

We won't *go sailing* again until next July.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 d 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 c 9 d 10 d 11 d 12 a

Lesson 28 Patients and doctors

Key to Comprehension

1 Doctors readily provide their patients with medicines because it is the easiest way to get rid of them.

2 The anecdote about Thomas Carlyle illustrates the author's argument because it shows the absolute trust patients place in tangible remedies like medicine.

Key to Vocabulary

Everyone says our team will win, but personally I'm extremely *sceptical* about it.

TopSage.com

Throughout his career, my grandfather *fervently* believed in the right of workers to strike for better conditions.

It is said that the water from this particular spring possesses powerful *curative properties*.

When I first went to Turkey and used "lire", I just couldn't get used to the *astronomical figures* they deal in.

Sculpture is a *tangible* form of art.

The murderer was caught in the act of *disposing* of the body.

The man's request for leave of absence to visit his family was finally *granted*.

"I am afraid Mr. White is suffering from a slight *indisposition*," the man's secretary said rather pompously.

I am tired of *putting up with* his general bad behaviour.

They apologized for any *inconvenience* caused by the roadworks.

Key to Summary

A

1 Lost faith in many things — still great confidence in power of medicine.

2 Proof: astronomical rise of drug bill.

3 Patients expect to take home remedy.

4 Easiest way to get rid of patients — doctors happy to oblige.

5 Advice valuable, but time-consuming and not appreciated.

B

We may have lost our faith in many things in this modern world, but we still have great confidence in the power of medicine. The proof of this is in the astronomical rise of the drug bill of the British Health Services. Further, most patients expect to take home some tangible remedy and, since this is the easiest way of getting rid of patients, those in charge are happy to oblige. After all, giving advice is both time-consuming and little-appreciated. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A public health service is an essential part of social welfare.

Everyone in society should have the right to a full and free health service and no one should have the right to buy good health care. If all working adults pay taxes, then

www.TopSage.com

they, their children and their parents should expect free medical service, at a doctor's surgery or at a hospital, a free emergency ambulance service, and at least free dental treatment.

It has often been said that a public health service is expensive to run and that it is often abused. While it is expensive to run, and it is, like many social services, open to abuse, it seems nevertheless to be one of the things that a modern society must offer its citizens.

There is of course one major problem, and that is the cost of the people who work in it — the doctors, nurses, surgeons, dentists and administrative staff. Such people often complain that they do not receive the wages or salaries that they could earn in the world of private medical care or in a totally different profession. And because a health service, like other public services, is run on government lines, bureaucracy often creeps in so that the administration can cost more than the medical services and treatment.

Does a public health service work in all countries? No, it doesn't. There are countries where a public health service seems to be an impossibility; America is a perfect example. On the other hand, there are a number of countries in the world which have successful, or moderately successful public health services, for example Sweden, Britain and Israel. Even in a country like Britain, however, there is also a world of private medicine that people can join if they can afford it. A public health service is an excellent idea, but no one should be forced to join it. (303 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 These two words are spelled differently, but they are pronounced *the same as* each other.

2 John and James are twins, but in character they are quite *different from* each other.

B See text.

C See text.

D

1 *Not only* was he handsome, but he was also extremely intelligent.

2 *Never* have I been so embarrassed as I was that evening.

3 *Only now* is she beginning to realize how lucky she was not to be seriously injured in the accident.

E

1 There are a lot of people who don't *believe in* wasting a doctor's time.

2 They told me that they had every *confidence in* my ability to do the job.

3 The person *in charge of* our department is a very young man.

4 The Smiths have sold their shop and are now *disposing of* the contents.

5 We have asked our teacher to give us some *advice on* careers.

6 When John told me his news, he impressed on me *the need for* complete secrecy.

7 Aspirin is still *prescribed for* the relief of pain.

8 He was *ignorant of* even the basics of operating a computer.

9 A lot of British people *suffer from* colds in the autumn and winter.

10 Come on, get up; there's nothing *wrong with you*!

11 The scientist was sure that his invention would be of great *benefit in* lots of situations.

12 Expeditions of this nature *demand* a great deal *of* those that take part in them.

13 It won't cause any *inconvenience to* me if they cancel the meeting.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 d

Lesson 29 The hovercraft

Key to Comprehension

1 A hovercraft works by riding on a cushion of air. The craft is in fact supported on a cushion of lowpressure air which is ringed by a curtain of higher pressure air.

2 Large hovercraft liners could be developed, and "hovertrains" could replace conventional railways.

Key to Vocabulary

When the company decided to appoint a new IT Manager, they chose *a former* university lecturer.

All the spelling mistakes in my composition are *ringed with* red ink.

The shop owner *ranged* her goods neatly in the shop window.

We spent hours trying to find *a solution to the problem* of how to cross the river.

The singer *caused a sensation* when he gave a concert in a small village.

The jet-skier was *riding smoothly* over the water when he suddenly hit a small rock and flipped over.

Some bridges that have been built in recent years *span* very wide rivers and estuaries.

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Key to Summary

A

1 Hovercraft: strangest means of transport this century.

2 1953, Christopher Cockerell put idea to Government.

3 Solution to problem of ship's loss of power and speed.

4 Create vehicle (between boat and aircraft) on cushion of air.

5 Vehicle rises out of water, rides on cushion.

6 Tests proved — effective on water and land.

B

The hovercraft is perhaps the strangest means of transport developed this century. In 1953, Christopher Cockerell put an idea to the British Government. The idea, Cockerell's solution to the problem of a ship's loss of power and speed due to wave resistance, was to support a craft on a cushion of air, so that it was something in between a boat and an aircraft. The vehicle rose out of the water and rode on a cushion of air, and tests proved that it could travel over water and land. (89 *words*)

Key to Composition

Modern means of transport.

The twentieth century has seen greater developments in forms of transport than at any other time in the history of this planet. Because of modern methods of transport, the world has become a smaller place and people can now travel from one place to another almost anywhere in the world with speed and in comfort.

For many people in the world, the best way to travel long distances is by air. Air travel by jet aeroplane is no longer a luxury. Even helicopters, once almost exclusively used by the armed services, are now being used more and more commercially, especially for short internal flights. And we can look forward to rocket travel in the next century — or flying in a craft like the space shuttle that will circumnavigate the earth almost in minutes.

For those who travel by sea, too, there has been progress. Ocean liners are popular, especially for luxury holidays, but so too are the hydrofoil and the hovercraft for use over comparatively short distances.

On land, we can now travel by car, by coach or by train. The building of motorway networks has meant that we can get to our destination by car or coach much faster than we have ever done. And the development of electric trains and new railway networks has also improved rail travel in many countries. (Will these, and motorway networks, become redundant with the development of new forms of transport?)

Sadly, of all the modern means of transport, the car is creating the most problems as it is causing serious congestion in cities. No satisfactory solution to this problem has yet been found, although, if the car is replaced by a different form of personal transport, perhaps the problem will simply go away. (291 *words*)

Key so KS Exercises

A

1 Many international exhibitions have been held, the most recent (one) *being in Tokyo*.

2 New York is full of skyscrapers, the tallest (one) *being the World Trade Center*.

B See text.

C 1 among 2 between 3 between 4 between

D

1 *A great deal of* the information she gave me is incorrect.

2 She knows *a great many* famous people.

3 He's flown *a good many* times, but never really enjoyed it.

4 She has had *a good few* different jobs in the past ten years.

E

1 I made him *write a short letter of apology*.

2 The teacher made the class *do their homework again*.

3 He trained the team by making them *repeat the performance dozens of times*.

F

1 She *might well find* the accounts course too difficult.

2 The teacher *may well be* quite angry with a number of the students.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 d 6 c 7 c 8 a 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 c

Lesson 30 Exploring the sea-floor

Key to Comprehension

1 He means that we were simply aware of the distances forwards and sideways (that is, as far as we can see), not the third dimension, the depth of the sea.

2 The sentence which begins: "The open sea was deep..."

3 Immediately between the continental slope and the true ocean floor lies a long "tailing-off" of material transported out to deep water after being eroded from the continents.

Key to Vocabulary

Shallow channels and surface rocks are just two of

www.TopSage.com

the hazards of navigation in this small harbour.

They are *dredging* the harbour channels to make them deeper.

In order to make underwater exploration easier, it might soon be possible to build *submarine* research stations.

It is thought that the crater was formed by a meteorite of *considerable magnitude* hitting the earth at some time in the distant past.

If you're going walking or climbing in the mountains, a *relief* map is absolutely essential.

Compared with the size of our planet, the earth's *crust* is really not very thick.

The artist painted a country scene first in oils and then *superimposed* on it a photo negative of a woman's face.

The effect was quite surprising.

The northern face of the mountain is to steep that it is almost *vertical*.

The performance was finally over with the sound of applause *tailing off* as the actors left the stage.

Many of the stones are so *eroded* that it is impossible to read the hieroglyphs carved on them.

Key to Summary

A

1 100 years ago people assumed seabed flat.
2 Sounding of 2,400 fathoms obtained 1839.
3 1869, deep soundings obtained from H. M. S. *Porcupine*.
4 Legitimate study of sea-bed established by *Challenger* expedition.
5 Parts of ocean 2-3 miles deep, with large underwater features.
6 Now we have relief map of Atlantic.
7 Sea-bed is basic crust of earth, with continents above.

B

A hundred years ago people simply assumed the seabed was flat. A sounding of 2,400 fathoms was obtained in 1839, but it wasn't until 1869 that deep soundings were obtained in the Atlantic by the Royal Society from H. M. S. *Porcupine* and samples of the seabed were collected. The legitimate study of the seabed was established shortly after that by the H. M. S. *Challenger* expedition, which observed that parts of the ocean were 2-3 miles deep and that there were large underwater features. Today we have a relief map of the Atlantic and know about the topography of the seabed. We can regard the seabed as the basic crust of the earth, with continents standing nearly three miles above the floor. (119 *words*)

Key to Composition

Man has done relatively little to exploit the wealth of the sea.

The twentieth century has seen greater progress in many fields than in any other period in history. While we have certainly exploited a lot of land, we have still not explored all the land above sea level, however, so it is not surprising that very little of the seabed has been explored. Indeed, the intensive study of the sea and the sea-bed is comparatively recent. And since the sea accounts for a very large percentage of the earth's surface, perhaps we should be spending much more time and money on studying it in detail.

The sea itself is a tremendous source of power. We have only just begun harnessing the tides to provide electricity, but the energy is there just waiting to be used. The tides and waves contain vast amounts of energy which we must be able to use.

The sea is a source of food, too, of course. Men have taken fish from the sea for thousands of years, but it is only now that plankton is being seen as a source of protein to feed the growing world population. And the whole idea of "cultivating" the seabed is actively being investigated.

As a source of wealth, the sea has already begun to be exploited, but only in the past few years. We can now obtain minerals from the sea, and take fossil fuels from it, as in the North Sea, where oil and gas are both being extracted from under the sea.

Following the pioneer work of the French underwater explorer and marine bilogist, Jacques Cousteau, perhaps the time will come when we will set up permanent villages under the sea, or even towns and cities that people can live in. If that ever happens, we will certainly be using the sea to its greatest potential.

(302 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 I didn't understand what had happened until I read the report in the newspaper.
 or: It was not until I read the report in the newspaper that I understood what had happened.
2 The plane will not take off again until the engine has been checked.
3 Tom didn't get home until four o'clock this morning.
4 I shan't return this book to the library until I have read it.

TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

5 It wasn't until I had paid for the goods that the man agreed to deliver them.

C

1 *Since* the sun's shining, I think I'll go for a walk.

2 We've been waiting for them *since* six o'clock, and they still haven't arrived.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 d 6 b 7 c 8 c 9 a 10 c 11 d 12 c

Lesson 31 The sculptor speaks

Key to Comprehension

1 When the author says that many people are "form-blind", he means that they cannot appreciate three-dimensional form.

2 This means that the person looking at a sculpture has to appreciate shapes as shapes, not as reproductions or representations of real things — objects, creatures, fruit, vegetables and so on.

Key to Vocabulary

A hologram is a representation of something *in three dimensions* — or at least it looks like it; it has height, width, and seems to have depth.

Many games and sports *involve* two or more people playing against each other.

A football fan *distinguishes* the different teams by the colours they wear.

Their garden is *roughly* six metres by ten.

Even though some artists are still very young, *they may attain considerable accuracy in the perception* of shape and form.

We should all *strive* to make this world a better place.

I have never understood how that artist *visualizes* the things she paints.

The three possible *combinations* of two letters chosen from A, B, C are AB, BC and AC.

Key to Summary

A

1 Sculpture — most difficult of arts; demands ability to respond to form in three dimensions.

2 Children distinguish things in two dimensions.

3 Later they develop ability to judge things in three dimensions.

4 Most people achieve appreciation of flat form; rarely appreciate three-dimensional form.

5 Sculptor does this; form in full spatial completeness — sees sculpture from all sides.

B

Sculpture is probably the most difficult of all arts because it demands an ability to respond to form in three dimensions. Children learn to distinguish things in two dimensions, only later developing the ability to judge things in three dimensions. Most people achieve considerable accuracy in appreciating flat form, but rarely make the necessary effort to appreciate full three-dimensional form. This, however, is what the sculptor does; he thinks of and uses form in its full spatial completeness, and can see, in his mind, the three-dimensional sculpture from all sides. (90 *words*)

Key to Composition

The arts cannot be enjoyed unless one has a specialized knowledge of them.

To say that one cannot enjoy the arts without possessing specialized knowledge is a little like saying that one cannot enjoy driving a sports car without understanding exactly what goes on under the bonnet, or enjoy playing a computer game without understanding how it has been programmed. Large numbers of people enjoy listening to music, reading novels and poetry, watching stage plays and admiring pictures or sculpture without knowing anything at all about the technical difficulties involved in creating works of art.

It has been pointed out that there is a difference between "appreciation" and "enjoyment": in order to appreciate fully a work of art, one probably needs to have a great deal of specialized knowledge, one needs to have some insight into the creative process; on the other hand, in order simply to enjoy a work of art, no such knowledge is necessary. Nevertheless, it should not be forgotten that a certain amount of specialized knowledge can certainly increase one's enjoyment since a trained mind knows what to look for.

On the other hand, of course, specialized knowledge can have a negative effect: it can diminish a listener's, reader's or viewer's enjoyment since it may make that person hypercritical and interfere with a natural response.

Artists, sculptors, composers, poets, novelists and playwrights rarely create works of art only for those who have specialized knowledge. Most of them create their art in order to communicate with large numbers of people, not just an elite group, or even their own fellow artists. If it were necessary to possess specialized knowledge to enjoy the arts, and all artists created just for them, then only those people directly involved in the arts would be able to enjoy them — and that is clearly untrue. (290 *words*)

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 *Having asked her* to call me, I've decided not to call her.

2 *Having reached* a certain level in English, many students give up.

3 *Having read* his letter three times, I decided not to answer it.

C See text.

D

1 He acted as if *he were the manager*. (Note: he wasn't the manager!)

2 He talked as if *he had a plum in his mouth*. (Note: He didn't have a plum in his mouth!)

3 It looked as if *it were snowing outside*. (Note: It might have looked like it, but it wasn't snowing!)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 b 7 a 8 d 9 d 10 c 11 b 12 d

Lesson 32 Galileo reborn

Key to Comprehension

1 The old view of Galileo was of a man who drew conclusions about nature and the laws of physics from experiments, while the modern view of Galileo is more sophisticated.

2 He justifies Galileo's contemporaries' failure to see what he saw because his views and methods were so revolutionary that his contemporaries could not appreciate them.

Key to Vocabulary

Lie detector tests have been the subject of quite *violent controversy* over the years.

They are both very determined women, so there is rather a *clash* of personalities.

When you are very young, it is sometimes difficult to see events in their *proper perspective*.

Martin Luther King was a man who *despised the prejudices* of racist American politicians.

We all experienced the same *consciousness* of danger when we entered the room.

The information I have read this week has *profoundly modified* my opinion of the man.

Do you think that for once you could consider the *consequences* of your actions?

That new invention quite clearly has *potentialities* for either good or evil.

Because the soldier left his post and wandered away for a short time, he was accused of *culpable* negligence.

He showed me a weird-looking *contrivance* designed to shear sheep.

We laughed when we looked at ourselves in those strange wavy mirrors that *distort* everything.

Key to Summary

A

1 Closer study has modified old view of the man.

2 New picture of man has emerged.

3 Sympathy for opponents has grown.

4 Remembered for telescopic observations.

5 Can hardly blame those who could not see: they did not have experience.

6 Perhaps also forgive those — thought discoveries products of distortion of curved glass.

B

A closer study of Galileo and his life has modified the old view of the man and his work. A new, more sophisticated picture of the man has emerged and our sympathy for his opponents has grown. Of course he is remembered for his telescopic observations, but we can hardly blame those who could not see what he saw: they did not have his experience with the apparatus. And we should perhaps also forgive those who thought that his discoveries were the products of the distortion of curved glass. (89 *words*)

Key to Composition

New ideas can never be readily accepted by those who cling to old beliefs.

It alway takes time for any new idea to be accepted by people in general, often longer for it to be accepted by those who insist on clinging to old beliefs. (There are still a few people even now, for example, who believe that the world is flat.) New ideas have always been, and will always be, resisted for a number of reasons. Some people express the concern that what is new may not necessarily be better, while others reject a new idea from pure prejudice or from a simple fear of the unknown. In the past, the views of Aristotle and Ptolemy lasted for centuries before they were replaced by other ideas.

Many new ideas which are resisted when they first make their appearance are gradually assimilated until they finally become commonplace. In the twentieth century alone, the whole concept of manned flight took many years to be accepted. And in the past, the observation by Copernicus that the earth goes round the sun (and not the sun round the earth), the views of Galileo, Kepler's ideas on planetary motions, Darwin's

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

idea of evolution and Freud's ideas on psychology all took time to be accepted — and even now there are those who argue against the ideas put forward by Darwin and Freud.

There are, however, exceptions to the fact that new ideas are not readily accepted. Some great ideas have been accepted almost without question from the time they made their appearance; as examples, Newton's ideas on gravitation were acclaimed in the 18th century just as Einstein's ideas on relativity were acclaimed in the twentieth. Perhaps twenty-first century man will be much more open to new ideas, but there will always be those who cling to their old beliefs and will never be convinced by new ideas. (298 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

C *Reading* is one of the most important skills a young child must master.

To eat meat with your fingers is considered bad-mannered in that country.

Smoking is completely forbidden in many restaurants in Britain now.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 b 8 d 9 c 10 a 11 b 12 c

Lesson 33 Education

Key to Comprehension

1 Education can be said to be an "investment" since the state (or people) in the future will be able to use the skills educated people have been taught.

2 The author appears to be opposed to formal education because it ignores our spiritual side.

3 According to the author, a primitive society is superior to a civilized society because it gives every one of its members an equal start.

Key to Vocabulary

The Foreign Secretary was a *key* figure in the negotiations about the borders.

Adverse circumstances forced the family to sell their large home and buy a small flat.

Young people today are a lot more *enlightened* than they were even fifty years ago.

He's still weighing up the *potential* benefits and disadvantages of investing in the company.

Certain modern education systems *lay less stress* on exam results than many did years ago.

Once the four people sign this contract, the conditions in it are *binding* on all of them.

Illiterates are people who have not learned to read and write, and who are regarded as badly educated.

In Britain, as in most other countries, Income Tax is *compulsory* for people who work and earn money.

Has that young man got the (*monetary*) *means* to support a family? (Note: In a sentence like this, the word *means* already implies "monetary", so the word "monetary" is redundant.)

Is everyone *entitled* to an Old Age Pension in this country?

Damage to property, graffiti and other acts of vandalism are often the result of *juvenile delinquency*.

Key to Summary

Without formal education and without books, our spiritual outlook would be different and we could lay more stress on memory, applied psychology and love for our fellow-citizens than on the acquisition of factual information. Among tribal people all traditionally acquired knowledge is shared among all and there is a situation in which all have an "equal start". The introduction of compulsory school attendance has been fairly recent in European countries, which tends to suggests that compulsory education might be slightly unnatural. In a primitive society, all receive an education at their own pace and under the attention of parents.

(99 *words*)

Key to Composition

"A man without an education, many of us believe, is an unfortunate victim of adverse circumstances deprived of one of the greatest twentieth-century opportunities." Discuss.

A

1 Modern society — based on a system of formal education.

2 Compulsory education (from e. g. 5-16) — gives opportunities to all.

3 Pupils/Students need to learn basic skills — reading, writing, maths — and now computer skills.

4 Other "subjects" — art, music, dance, sport, etc. — give further opportunities for enjoyment and careers.

5 Careers now not always for life; people already change professions 2 or 3 times.

6 Basic education essential for people to undertake retraining for new professions.

B

Modern society in many countries is based on a system of formal education whereby young people expect to spend the first part of their lives in education

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

before entering the world of work for the rest of it. There are very few places in the world where education is not now compulsory, usually from about the age of five to about the age of fifteen or sixteen, and beyond that, of course, is the world of higher education — colleges and universities. The concept of compulsory schooling is to provide a whole population with basic education, and anyone that misses this education will almost certainly be at a disadvantage later in life.

Pupils in Infant Schools and Junior Schools (as schools in primary education are called in Britain) need to learn basic literacy skills; they must learn to read and write. They also need to begin to learn basic mathematics, or arithmetic. And they need to acquire social skills in order to get on with each other in our everyday lives. And further, young children nowadays are also beginning to acquire basic computer skills.

Pupils in secondary schools continue to build on the education that they have acquired early on, and broaden their interests and abilities in art, music, dance, sports and so on. Indeed, these "subjects" give many pupils further opportunities for careers as well as for enjoyment both in school and in later life. Again, anyone who misses these opportunities misses a great deal.

There was a time not very long ago when a young man needed no more education than that which his father needed in order to carry on the same profession. And young women, of course, apparently needed no education at all. In the second half of the twentieth century, education was vital since it opened the doors of opportunity to a wide variety of professions for both young men and women — and many entered a profession *for life*. Now, however, a profession or a career is not always for life; indeed, young people are already finding that they have to or want to change profession after a few years. In fact, with the introduction of new industrial practices and more and more computerisation, some professions are beginning to disappear. In the face of this social movement, then, basic education is more and more essential for people to be able to undertake retraining for new professions. Anyone who does not have a basic education is at a distinct disadvantage. (413 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

The verb "invest" (l. 3), for example, is in inverted commas to indicate that the word is not being used in its normally defined meaning.

The phrase "facts and figures" (l. 8) is in inverted commas because again the author has extended the normal use of the phrase to suit his own purpose and to mean something like "factual information".

The phrase "happy fen" (l. 18) is a direct quotation from Shakespeare (*Henry V*, Act 4, Sc. 3). There it refers to the small number of English soldiers that faced the French army. In the text it refers to the fortunate small number of extremely privileged people who received education in the past.

C 1 less 2 fewer 3 Fewer 4 less 5 fewer

D See text.

E

1 Most people would *consider* Chinese very difficult.

2 I *find* it incredible that he still can't read at his age.

3 He *thought* it funny that I had taken up chess.

4 She *felt* it necessary to tell her best friend her news.

5 I *believed* her incapable of doing any job properly.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 b 7 c 8 c 9 d 10 c 11 b 12 a

Lesson 34 Adolescence

Key to Comprehension

1 The author characterizes as "childish" the behaviour that parents exhibit when they accuse their children of disloyalty or make spiteful remarks about their children's friends' parents.

2 According to the author, it is inevitable that adolescents should become disillusioned with their parents because their ideal parents can't stand up to realistic evaluation.

3 Our attitude towards adolescents differs from that of the Victorians in that they treated their children with an "unreasoning authoritarian attitude" while we "tend to go to the other extreme".

Key to Vocabulary

When he described me as a "part-time artist", I regarded it as a *slur* on my profession.

She is an unpleasant person who often makes *spiteful remarks* about her neighbours.

The accident made me *resolve* to be a lot more careful in future.

Many young people suffer a certain amount of *disillusionment* when they have been in their first job for a while.

The tragic end to the whole story was *to some degree inevitable*.

www.TopSage.com

We are waiting for a full *evaluation* before we can go ahead with the project.

I was deeply *touched* to receive the present you sent.

Catholics are required to believe in the *infallibility* of the Pope.

While *resenting* the need to obtain their permission, I realized that it was necessary.

The man faced three *charges* of burglary and one of receiving stolen property.

Many teachers in the past have been accused of *retreating behind an unreasoning authoritarian attitude*.

Key to Summary

When children praise their friends' homes, parents are often upset and might show that they are annoyed by accusing the children of disloyalty. This behaviour makes children decide not to talk to their parents about things in future, which in turn makes the parents complain about their children's secretiveness. Thus disillusionment with parents is inevitable. Children have a high opinion of their parents which can hardly stand up to realistic evaluation. If parents realized how high this opinion was, and if they understood adolescence, they would not be so hurt by adolescent reactions.

(93 *words*)

Key to Composition

Children seem to grow up more quickly today than they did in the past.

A

1 Something that all older generations say about younger generations? More true now.

2 Influence of television and other media.

3 Influence of modern technology.

4 Computers, PCs, games, the Internet.

5 Human relationships: more adult attitude — result of more enlightened education, exposure to films, etc.

6 Greater sense of responsibility. Not protected quite as much as in the past.

B

Do all older generations say that children seem to grow up more quickly nowadays than they did in the past? Almost certainly. Parents in 1900 would have said it, parents in 1950 would have said it. The only difference is that it seems to be truer now, going into the twenty-first century, than it ever was before. And if it *is* true, if children really *are* growing up more quickly than they used to, what can account for it?

The Industrial Revolution which took place in Europe in the middle of the nineteenth century had a profound effect on society. Changes brought about by the computer and advances in technology have had further profound effects in the past fifty years, not least on television and other media and in education. Children today are born into, and grow up in, a world in which you could, if you wanted to, watch television twenty-four hours a day in many languages from a variety of satellite and other channels from all over the world. Communications and transport are such now that most of us can go out today and buy a newspaper published in a country halfway across the world only yesterday.

In many homes and schools, PCs are more than machines: they are part of the furniture. Pupils learn from them, they play games on them, and they communicate through them. For many children, "pen and ink" letters to "penfriends" in other countries are being replaced by notes and letters on the Internet. Many have parents who understand the new technology: all have (or had) grandparents for whom PCs are "magic boxes". And it is this generation gap, this technology gap, which makes us see why children grow up more quickly.

Children nowadays, however, also seem to have a more adult attitude to human relationships, especially those between the sexes. Is this the result of more enlightened education in schools and in the media, or is it the result of greater exposure to films, adult literature, and so on? If this is true, is it good that children "grow up" more quickly now in this respect?

Growing up should involve acquiring a sense of responsibility and it does seem that young people in general nowadays have a greater sense of responsibility than people of the same age a few years ago. Is this a good thing? Who knows? In later life they may regret that they were not allowed to remain children longer.

(412 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 (Often) parents are (often) upset when their children (often) praise the homes of their friends.

2 Such a loss of dignity and descent into childish behaviour on the part of the adults (deeply) shocks the adolescents (deeply).

3 They (seldom) realize that they have brought this on themselves.

4 (Usually) parents would (usually) be (greatly) surprised and (deeply) touched if they realized how much belief their children (usually) have in their character and infallibility.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

B

1 He's old *enough* to go on holiday on his own.

2 Have you got *enough* money for your bus fare?

C

1 They let us *use their bicycles for the weekend*.

2 We made them *wait for us*.

3 Will you let him *borrow your tennis racket*?

4 Why make me *address those letters when you could do them yourself*?

D See text.

E

1 *What* I most wanted to ask him was how he felt when his team won the championship.

2 *What* annoys me about him is the way he always knows the answers to questions in class.

3 *What* the girl wanted most for her birthday was a new computer.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 35 Space odyssey

Key to Comprehension

1 A rocket would leave the surface of the Moon more rapidly than it leaves the surface of the Earth because of its gravity; it has only one eightieth of the Earth's mass.

2 Space travel would be cheaper from the Moon because a) the Moon's gravity is less than the earth's so less fuel is needed to take off, and b) liquid oxygen is easily obtainable from lunar rocks.

3 People will begin seriously to consider the possibility of colonising Mars when enough people are living in space.

Key to Vocabulary

London is the cultural *hub* of the UK.

This town is the centre of the steel industry, *supplying* steel to the whole of the rest of the country.

The first Apollo expedition to land on the Moon brought back lots of *lunar* rock samples.

A battery-driven car *requires* far less fuel than a petrol-driven car.

If necessary, *one* can always consult a dictionary.

A *comparable* car would be considerably cheaper abroad.

Most *terrestrial* plants require sunshine, oxygen and water in order to survive.

There has been a *significant* change in the attitude of ordinary people towards the Royal family since the death of Diana.

This is the only place I have visited that is anything *like* my home village.

When Europeans first set foot on American soil, the continent was quite clearly *ideal for settlement*.

Key to Summary

The Moon could become the industrial hub of the solar system and supply spaceships. As the Moon has only one eightieth of the Earth's mass, it needs 97 per cent less energy to travel from the Moon to the Earth than to get from the Earth's surface into orbit. To escape the Earth's gravity, you must travel at seven miles per second; to escape from the Moon is 1.5 miles per second. Because of the low gravity on the Moon, it will need far less energy to reach that speed.

(90 *words*)

Key to Composition

The future of space travel.

A

1 What might space travel be like in 50 years' time?

2 Moon base?

3 Orbiting space stations?

4 Long voyages to Mars and other planets?

5 Day trips round the Earth from orbiting space station or even from shuttle?

B

Looking back, it seems almost incredible that man only began to fly in mechanical flying machines about a hundred years ago. Since the first experimental flights in small, frail, home-made aircraft, the science has developed to a point where millions regularly fly around the earth in large jet-propelled aircraft which will carry hundreds of people. But not only has man flown around the earth, in earth's atmosphere, he has taken the first steps towards travel in space. Men have walked on the Moon, and men have set up space stations and hundreds of satellites in orbit around the Earth.

If this incredible development has taken place in such a short time, what might space travel be like in fifty years' time? It is almost impossible to say. Even at this moment (early in 1999), the Americans and Russians are co-operating in the construction of the largest space station to date in Earth orbit. From there, and once it is operating properly, who knows what the future might hold? It will act as the launch pad for flights to other planets, and then the Moon must surely be the site for the first human colony in space.

Men have always been pioneers and for many years space has been regarded as "the last frontier". Escaping

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Earth's gravity was the first challenge, setting up orbiting space stations the next, and colonising the Moon will be the next. But after that? Surely we must aim for Mars, the "Red Planet", the planet which we are told is most like ours in so many ways. After that, other planets beckon in our own Solar System, and then beyond that, millions of light years away, are thousands and thousands of other worlds.

Bus let's just "come back down to earth" again for a moment. For many people, the next fifty years could well bring the Ultimate Holiday. How would you like to travel round the earth in an orbiting space station or even in a shuttle in a few hours? If you can afford it, you will almost certainly be able to in a few years' time. The question is: will you want to? Or would you rather leave Earth completely, become a space pioneer and emigrate to a different planet? (376 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 It *feels* very hot today.

2 This chocolate *seems/tastes* very bitter.

3 You can see from her face that she *doesn't feel* well. (She *looks* unwell.)

4 The price *sounds/seems* about right, but I hope they can offer us a bigger discount.

5 How much did you say? That *sounds/seems* expensive!

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 b 9 d 10 c 11 c 12 d

Lesson 36 The cost of government

Key to Comprehension

1 The expense of government is increased if a nation is disunited because money has to be spent on watching, checking and controlling people.

2 The phrase "administrative overheads" means the cost of paying people to undertake jobs in administration in order to manage and administer a business.

Key to Vocabulary

The increase in traffic increases the amount we have to spend on maintaining the roads and *reduces correspondingly the amount of economic resources* we have for building new roads.

If the children misbehave again, they will *incur* the teacher's anger.

The way light travels is *analogous* to the way water moves in waves.

The Advertising Manager *promotes* the company and its products whenever and wherever he can.

The company *can distribute as dividends* quite a large amount of money this year because business has been so good.

She said *precisely* what I was going to say.

There's no need for you to worry *unduly* about booking the theatre seats: I'll do that.

Key to Summary

To stay in business, a business enterprise must incur costs and expenses, one of which is the cost of managing and administering the business, commonly called the administrative overheads. These can be compared to the cost of government in a nation. Administrative overheads can be kept low in a business by trusting employees to be responsible and to show initiative, without needing anyone to check on them. In the same way, the cost of government can be kept low if people behave loyally and responsibly. If they do not and the nation becomes disunited, however, the government will have to watch, check and control the people and will incur unduly high costs. (112 *words*)

Key to Composition

Ideally, a civil service should consist of a permanently appointed body of men and women who are not necessarily affiliated to the political party that is in power at any particular time.

A

1 A country needs a professional body of people to run it, regardless of political party in power.

2 Part of necessary administrative overheads — but no need for armies of civil servants.

3 These people must be trained for the job and be rigorously managed.

4 These people should serve any government in power loyally, regardless of personal political beliefs.

5 Compare systems where civil service consists of political appointments — open to bribery and corruption.

B

In *The Backward Society*, Raymond Frost compares managing and administering a nation with managing and administering a private business enterprise. Essentially, of course, the operations are the same: after all, even if they are on a totally different scale, each has necessary administrative overheads, and each must constantly review the situation to ensure that those overheads are kept as low as possible. The major difference between the two, however, apart from the size, is that the country's "bosses" might change quite frequently.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Change can be disruptive, particularly when a nation elects a new government, so a country needs a professional body of people to run it, regardless of the political party which is in power. Like a private enterprise, the administration of a country needs stability. A civil service provides that permanence and stability. When things need changing, or when politicians pass laws to change things, it seems sensible that people who have been appointed to permanent positions should be allowed to implement those changes with as little disruption or direct political pressure as possible.

A civil service must be seen as part of the necessary administrative overheads. A country needs people to administer its finance, education, health service, police and public order, and so on. While the heads (or Ministers) or those departments will change, the civil servants required to run these departments should be more or less permanent. There should be no need for armies of civil servants, however, the number of administrators must itself be carefully controlled, or administration can become its own aim.

In the same way that the numbers should be controlled, civil servants must be trained for the job and be rigorously managed. It has been argued, although it is debatable, that a clear career structure in the civil service helps not only to maintain the professionalism of those working in it but also to reduce the risk of corruption. The majority of civil servants will have their own political ideas, of course, but they should serve any government in power loyally, regardless of any such political beliefs.

In a system where the civil service contains many whose positions are primarily political appointments, where there is little or no career structure, and where there is little control over the increase in the numbers of civil servants, that system is open to bribery and corruption. (390 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

C See text.

D

1 The book that *best illustrates* what I mean is *A Tale of Two Cities* by Charles Dickens.

2 "Selfish" is the word that *best describes* my uncle: he thinks of no one but himself.

3 The option that *best explains* what the sentence means is option "A".

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 c 9 d 10 b
11 a 12 c

Lesson 37 The process of ageing

Key to Comprehension

1 The likelihood of death is least when we are twelve because that is the age when the human body is at its most vigorous.

2 There are heavy odds in favour of our dying between the ages of sixty-five and eighty because that is the age range in which most people die of old age.

3 Between the ages of twelve and eighty we gradually lose the power to repair ourselves, to fight illnesses and win.

Key to Vocabulary

There's very little *likelihood* of rain in the next few days.

Very young birds are extremely *vulnerable* to attack from other birds and animals.

There was an almost *imperceptible* change in the patient's breathing, but enough to tell the nurse that he was improving.

Most people begin to experience a certain *decline in vigour* between the ages of sixty and seventy.

The rocket rose slowly, but soon accelerated at an incredible *rate*.

The old man was already 85, but he was extremely *robust* and walked three or four kilometres every day.

It's *self-evident* that she won't pass the exam, so why are they letting her enter?

It is a *moot* point whether the Prime Minister's latest speech about the situation will really make much difference.

The swimmer was involved in a *fatal* accident: as he dived in, he hit the bottom, lost consciousness and drowned.

Key to Summary

Not only have we assumed for years that the process of ageing is self-evident, we have also assumed that all other living things, animals, trees and so on "wear out" in the same way. Mechanical systems also wear out, but they are different from us because they cannot repair themselves. Early in life, human bodies can repair themselves except of course for fatal illnesses and accidents, but we gradually lose this power between the ages of twelve and eighty, so that a non-fatal illness at twelve can kill us at the age of eighty. (94 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Composition

Suggest reasons why we in the twentieth century can expect to live longer than people who lived in bygone times.

A

1 Few people in the past died of old age.
2 Life is now easier and less barbaric.
3 Most people now eat a better diet.
4 Many people lead a more healthy life.
5 In many countries, we have better health care.
6 We have a better life style — heating and/or air-conditioning in homes, vaccination against diseases that used to be fatal, etc.
7 *But* a) Nature — still dangerous; insects, reptiles, animals; earthquakes, floods, etc.; and b) we can't stop the process of ageing.

B

In the past it was quite unusual for a person to live a long life and die of old age in his own bed. People generally tended to die young, or at least well before they were middle-aged; they died of some terrible disease, in battle, of starvation, in childbirth — and many were executed for petty crimes (since death was the penalty for many crimes which we would not even regard as crimes now). People aged, of course, but it was not so noticeable as it is now, since that ageing process was cut short by sudden death in one form or another.

In many countries today life is much easier and far less barbaric than it was in, say, medieval England. People expect to, and indeed *do* live much longer. So, what are some of the reasons?

One very important reason is that many people now eat a much better, more varied diet than they used to; many eat a good balance of meat, fish, vegetables and dairy products, while others eat an equally good vegetarian diet. Perhaps the important thing is that people tend to *think* about what they eat, how much, and when.

At the same time, many lead a more healthy life. Whatever they do, and many lead a sedentary life at work, lots of people make an effort to exercise in order to keep fit and healthy. In many countries, of course — and this is another very important reason why we live longer nowadays — we have better health care than we have ever had in the past. Years ago people died from illnesses and diseases which we can now cure and from accidents which would not now be fatal.

We enjoy a better lifestyle in many countries now too. Just to mention three things: we have central heating or air-conditioning in our homes; children are vaccinated against diseases that used to be fatal; and most of us work in much better conditions than our ancestors did. And just as important, of course, we know so much more about the way the human body works, what can go wrong, and how to cure it.

However, while we can expect to live longer than our ancestors, we must remember that there are two things we can still do nothing about. Nature is still dangerous and can kill. Not only are there dangerous insects, reptiles and animals which can kill humans, there are also natural disasters — earthquakes, storms, fire and floods — which still kill thousands of people every year and which we can do nothing about. And then, of course, there is the process of ageing which we cannot stop. (442 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A 1 the 2 — 3 — 4 the 5 —

B

1 *However* rich you may be, it doesn't mean that you will be happy.
2 Living in the country has a lot of advantages. There are also, *however*, quite a few disadvantages.

C See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 d 7 b 8 c 9 d 10 c 11 b 12 d

Lesson 38 Water and the traveller

Key to Comprehension

1 Piped water from an intermittent supply could be dangerous to health.
2 The author recommends that travellers on short trips should drink canned drinks of well-known brand names because international standards of water treatment are usually followed at bottling plants.
3 Ice in drinks could be dangerous to the health because ice is only as safe as the water from which it is made.
4 You wouldn't be safe if you added 95 proof alcohol to contaminated water because it cannot be relied on to sterilize water.
5 In the absence of other sources, tap-water that is too hot to touch is generally safe to drink when it has been left to cool.

Key to Vocabulary

They blamed the situation at the factory on *poor* management.

People living near the nuclear reactor are afraid of radioactive *contamination*.

www.TopSage.com

The action that the manager wanted to take was *regarded as extremely unwise*.

We visited some *areas* in the north of the country where people have still never seen a car or a television.

When you drive through that part of the country, all you can smell are the fumes from the dozens of chemical *plants* that operate there.

When you're travelling abroad, always make sure that your passort and other documents are inspected *in your presence*, and not taken away to be looked at.

Some swimming pools *supply* fresh clean towels for their customers.

"Hot towels available *on request*," said the notice outside the sauna.

He has stopped buying cigarettes for himself, but he never *refuses* the offer of a cigarette from someone else.

Taking travellers to *remote* parts of the world has become a major part of the modern travel industry.

There has been heavy rain today in *various* parts of the country.

Key to Summary

1 Always avoid intermittent tap-water supplies.

2 Always avoid drinking untreated water from any source.

3 Always drink hot drinks or bottled or canned drinks of well-known brands.

4 Always ensure bottles are opened in front of you and that the rims are clean and dry.

5 Always boil water yourself or ask for boiled water.

6 Always refuse any cold drink from an unknown source.

7 Always avoid putting ice into drinks unless you know it is safe. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A foreigner is going to travel to some of the remote regions of your country. Write some notes giving him/her good advice under each of these headings: the people, accommodation, food, water.

A

1 The people

- Rather reserved — a little wary — very friendly.
- Lead simple lives — but full of hospitality.

2 Accommodation

- No hotels or guesthouses.
- Only available accommodation — stay with families.
- Possibly stay in monastery.

3 Food

- No restaurants or cafés.
- Eat with guides and families.

4 Water

- Most water from mountain streams — very clean.
- No hot running water, all water boiled.

B

If you are planning to visit some of the remoter regions of the country, there are a number of things you should know, and almost the first thing you will want to know is what the people are like. You should be aware right from the start that they are rather reserved and more than a little wary of visitors. They are even more wary of foreigners. But in spite of that, they are very friendly, and if you give them time, they will treat you with a great deal of hospitality. They lead simple lives, of course, but once they have befriended you, everything that they have is yours to share.

And what about accommodation? Where can you stay? Well, to begin with, there are no hotels and no guesthouses. In such remote areas, the only accommodation available is with families — and this means of course sharing everything with them. Sometimes this means even sharing their home with the animals. There is one other possibility in some parts of the country, however, and that is to stay in a local monastery. While this is not always possible, if you get the chance, don't refuse it. The monks are always extremely hospitable and ask for nothing in return for their kindness.

For most people, the things that they are most concerned about when travelling in remote areas is food and drink, especially the availability of fresh water. Looking at food, first of all, there are of course no restaurants or cafés, so you will eat with guides or with families. The diet is very good in that part of the country and people eat lamb, beef, rabbit and other animals that they shoot, and they grow an incredibly large variety of vegetables. They even grow corn and wheat in some parts, so that they can make their own bread. As they are so remote, the people have developed some very special dishes of their own which all visitors enjoy.

The greatest worry of all travellers to remote places is quite simple: Is there fresh water, and can you drink it? The answer to both questions here is "Yes". Yes, there is fresh water. Most of it is from fast-running mountain streams and it is very clean. And yes, you can drink it, but you can boil it if you want to. And anyway, since there is no hot running water from taps, you have to heat it to wash or bath in.

(412 *words*)

TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 Drinking tap-water should be avoided.

2 Well-known brand names of bottled drinks should be preferred.

3 All bottles should be opened in your presence.

4 Boiled water should be requested in hotels.

5 Water should be boiled before drinking/before being drunk.

B

1 Tap-water shouldn't be drunk.

2 Bottles of water that haven't been opened in your presence shouldn't be accepted.

3 Ice shouldn't be put in drinks.

4 Alcohol shouldn't be relied on to sterilize water.

5 Methylated alcohol shouldn't be added to drinking water.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 d 10 d 11 a 12 b

Lesson 39 What every writer wants

Key to Comprehension

1 "All admit radical changes of destination once the journey has begun." = All writers admit that they make major changes in a story line even after they have begun writing.

2 "This organic process" means something like a "living process" — a process which is not planned, but which grows as the writer writes.

3 A sentence from the passage from which you could deduce that writer must be a lonely person: 11. 12-14 — "For the same reason, writers talk... begging response from those around them."

Key to Vocabulary

I waited with *eager discomfort*, like a young child waiting to go on stage for the first time to receive an award or a certificate — keen, but slightly worried and uncomfortable.

I can't imagine how this place *passes for* a five-star hotel! The service is dreadful!

He's written the *skeleton* of his report, but he still has to fill in most of the details.

As they didn't do very well in our town, the Smiths are *beginning afresh* in the city fifty miles away.

It was difficult to *discern* which of the students was telling the truth.

When the man dropped his thick glasses, all he could see was a *blurred image* of the nurse in front of him.

I've been trying to *fathom out* how to do this for an hour, and even the instructions don't really help.

She was a lovely old lady, but she used to talk *interminably* to anyone about her childhood in Africa.

The teacher was very good at *winkling out* the truth from children.

Without laws, society would sink into total *anarchy*.

You have to be completely *ruthless* to be successful in politics.

She seems to be *taking time off* work for something or other almost every week.

Key to Summary

Few writers know where they are going when they start writing. They may have a character or two, and full of inspiration (or something that passes for inspiration); all admit radical changes of destination during the writing process. Instead of making a "skeleton", a writer rewrites and changes according to what the author calls an "organic process". Sometimes the energy that is in a writer when writing a book continues afterwards. Some writers, for example, read nothing but their own books, and some talk interminably about their own books. They are of course misunderstood.

(95 *words*)

Key to Composition

Which do you prefer reading: novels, plays, poetry or non-fiction? Give reasons for your choice.

A

1 Don't enjoy reading plays. Plays written to be acted on stage.

2 I enjoy reading poetry. But like collections of poetry by a number of poets.

3 Non-fiction — history, biographies and autobiographies, "How to..." books, "popular science" books. Not my first choice of reading matter.

4 Prefer fiction — novels and short stories. Particularly enjoy thrillers and science fiction. But also often go back to read "literary" novels first read a few years ago.

B

Reading is one of the most restful, most enjoyable activities I know. It is quiet, it does not disturb others and is a pleasure you can enjoy on your own almost anywhere. We live in a world which communicates through the written word and through images. Words and images entertain, and both advertising and propaganda, while different in aim, rely on the effective combination of visual images with words. Computers,

www.TopSage.com

too, although programmed mathematically, draw words and images together to educate and to entertain, but even a plain text on a computer screen is not quite the same as the same text in a book. I read a great deal every day — but what do I really prefer reading for pleasure?

Although I have read plays (dramas, comedies and tragedies) in the past, I must confess that I do not particularly enjoy reading them. The vast majority were written to be performed by actors on stage before a live audience, and that's just how I enjoy them. Reading a play sitting in an armchair, it seems, is more an academic exercise than pleasure.

Non — fiction includes just what it says: any books that are not fiction, any books with factual content about a variety of subjects. Books about history and "popular science" books are non-fiction, but they don't interest me at all. Biographies and autobiographies are non-fiction, but I have never been particularly interested in reading about other people's lives; "How to..." books are non-fiction, too, but they are not for me — or at least they are not "reading matter"; I use such books as they meant to be used, as instruction handbooks.

No, of all the books in our local library, it's those that are labelled "Fiction" which attract me and which I enjoy reading most. Again, like "non-fiction", "fiction" is a large category, but mainly it consists of novels and short stories. I like reading both, and by a whole host of different authors, English and American, this century and earlier... I particularly enjoy thrillers and science fiction, and unlike many people, I can re-read a thriller or a science fiction book again and still gain as much enjoyment from it as the first time. You see, unlike many people who speed-read fiction, I read every word, I enjoy the style a book is written in, I enjoy seeing how the writer has constructed the story. Nowadays I even go back to read "literary" novels that I first read a few years ago. In a well-written work of fiction there is always something new to enjoy. (429 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B

1 He had *little expectation* of passing the exam.

2 They seem to have *little appreciation* of the good things in life.

3 There has been *little improvement* in the school since I left over ten years ago.

C

1 This organic process, *often leading* to moments...

2 I have often heard of writers *reading* nothing but...

3 A writer *doing* this is misunderstood.

D

1 There's no point in trying to persuade him; you *might as well* shout at the moon.

2 If you've got nothing better to do, you *may as well* mend that electric lamp.

E

1 We went to Scotland for a short holiday a month or so *back*.

2 I was in London a little while *back* when I met a very old friend of mine from university.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 d 9 b 10 d 11 b 12 c

Lesson 40 Waves

Key to Comprehension

1 A wave isn't "a wall of moving water" because, quite simply, a wave moves *through* the water leaving the water about where it was.

2 If the water were actually moving with a wave, the ocean would race in to the shore and cause catastrophic damage.

3 The effect of gravity on the ocean is to attempt continually to restore the surface to a flat plain.

Key to Vocabulary

For many people, life is a constant *struggle* against circumstances over which they have no control.

The modem *transmits* the information from one computer to another.

The main *features* of the new model are its revolutionary design and its relatively low cost.

The surfers came *racing in to the shore* on a row of waves.

Although the earthquake was only a minor one, it had *catastrophic results*.

There were *roughly* fifty people at the meeting.

In this story the devil *assumes* the form of a young woman to attract the young man to a life of crime.

Between the coast and the mountains in the distance, there was a series of *undulating* hills.

Last year the tourist industry *generated* nearly £50 million for the country.

The *force* of gravity makes things fall to earth.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Summary

An ocean wave, while looking like a wall of water, in fact moves through the water. As it moves through the water, it moves particles around in a roughly circular orbit; it does not take them with it. It is subject to natural laws as other things since it lives and dies in the "great ocean of life". Waves are born of wind, earth movements and the gravitational pulls of sun and moon, with gravity continually attempting to calm them. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

The ocean

A Notes for a "poetic" composition:

1 Massive living beast. Covers three-quarters of the surface of the earth.

2 Moody, unpredictable.

3 Parts of the ocean that are always "angry" — e. g. the "Roaring Forties": parts almost always complete calm — e. g. the "Doldrums".

4 Constantly beating at the land — trying to overcome it.

5 Man has always been fascinated by the ocean — adventure, art (paintings, literature).

B

How often have you stood on the beach, on a pier or on a clifftop and just looked out to sea? Many of us have done it; we have just stood and wondered about the ocean.

The ocean is like a massive living beast. It has age and it has youth. It covers three-quarters of the surface of the earth. It gives life and it takes life: it saves men by throwing them up on land when they have been shipwrecked; it kills men by smashing their boats and dragging them under the waves.

The ocean has no feelings, but it has moods: it is angry and it is calm. It is moody and completely unpredictable, as all experienced sailors know. The sea must never be taken for granted. Sailors who forget this do so at their peril. The sea does not forget, nor does it forgive. There are parts of the ocean that are always "angry", like the "Roaring Forties" in the Atlantic, or the area around the Cape, and there are parts that are almost always completely calm, like the "Doldrums". Both areas can kill, as many sailors in the great days of sailing ships discovered, and as ocean-going yachtsmen are still aware.

The ocean is jealous, too — jealous of the land — and is constantly beating at its shores, trying to overcome it. Indeed, the ocean will only rest when it has recaptured all of the dry land on earth, and even then it may not rest. The ocean is also patient. Look at the way it slowly and gently wears away the shoreline and the cliffs year by year, decade by decade. It has all the time in the world, and if men build concrete defences against its waves, so what? The ocean knows it is stronger than man's defences and that it is only a matter of time before, hammering endlessly on the shore, it will be let in again.

Man has always been fascinated by the ocean — afraid of it, yes, but fascinated by it, as we are fascinated by a cobra. Dangerous things will always hold a fascination for man. And it is this fascination that has led to man building boats and going to sea. It has also led to the creation of great art — paintings and literature inspired by the sea. (389 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 c 6 a 7 d 8 d 9 d 10 a 11 d 12 b

Lesson 41 Training elephants

Key to Comprehension

1 The author considers the "tough" method of training to be stupid because it produces resentful animals that could later become man-killers.

2 Elephants can be compared with dogs because like them they are capable of a considerable degree of personal affection.

3 According to the author, the key to successful elephant training is the close relationship between an elephant and his mahout.

4 The main advantage of training an elephant that is between fifteen and twenty years old is that it is almost ready to undertake heavy work and earn its keep straight away.

5 The main disadvantage of training an elephant between fifteen and twenty years old is that elephants of this age are not tamed very easily.

6 Tame elephants can be used to help in the training of wild elephants by giving the wild animals confidence. Tame elephants are also used to get the wild elephant to the training establishment.

Key to Vocabulary

Apart from any *moral considerations*, I just couldn't kill an animal; the sight of blood makes me sick.

The king's tursted minister *turned* traitor and poisoned him.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

It is such an exclusive school that they *assign* one teacher to each pupil.

Like dogs, cats are clearly *capable of a considerable degree of personal affection* towards their owners.

When the old lady died, her pet cat *pined to death*: she refused to eat until she too died a fortnight later.

In order to *underline* what he had just said, the speaker said it again and wrote the key phrase on the board.

If you find it impossible to be or to act in a *subservient* manner to other people, don't become a waiter!

The man *tethered* his dog to a post while he went into the shop.

The rise in the number of very young children who have started smoking is *particularly alarming*.

As I knelt in the temple, the monks began a *monotonous and soothing chant* which made me feel rather sleepy.

The heroine refused the hero's *blandishments*, but with great difficulty: he was handsome and very persuasive.

The tiger *lashes fiercely* at anyone who gets anywhere near the bars of its cage.

Key to Summary

A newly-arrived elephant is placed with two partly trained captives and left undisturbed, with plenty of food and water. Training begins when it is eating normally. The trainer stands in front of the elephant while two assistants on tame elephants control the captive from either side and others chant and rub their hands over him. Although the elephant usually lashes out with his trunk, the movements are controlled by the trainer and the elephant usually finishes with a sore trunk. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

It is cruel to train animals to perform tricks for our amusement.

Whenever people have travelled in the past to distant and foreign lands, they have returned not only with stories of their adventures and what they found, but also with samples: They have brought back people as slaves; they have brought back animals, birds and plants, and the flora and fauna that they could not physically bring back with them; they have drawn, painted or photographed.

Many of the zoos in the world were built originally to accommodate the elephants, lions, tigers, bears, chimpanzees, camels, vultures, eagles, zebras and so on that adventurers brought back with them, particularly in the nineteenth century. In the past, people were curious about animals and birds from other lands around the world. Their curiosity was natural. Seeing wild animals in zoos was part of education, and people saw nothing wrong in training some of those same animals and birds to entertain.

The world has changed, however, and we are far more aware of man's responsibility for the planet, the environment and the creatures who live on it. Yet there are still animals in zoos, and animals are still trained to perform tricks for our amusement and entertainment. Over the last few decades we have become much more conscious that zoos can actually help to keep species alive. In fact most zoos now proclaim to exist almost solely to care for and help breed endangered species whatever they may be — tigers or monkeys, mice or bats, birds or insects, and particularly pandas.

We don't *own* the other species on this planet. Far from it. But are we even the guardians? In the belief that we should at least take responsibility, many devote their lives now to the preservation of endangered species both in the wild and in captivity. And if most believe that all animals have a right to be protected, surely they also have a right not to be treated as inferior to man. We have no right to abuse or mistreat wild animals by training them to "do tricks" for us. The lion in a circus who is made to jump through a burning hoop is not the same proud carnivore that roams wild in Africa. The sea lions and seals that are trained to clap their flippers and balance balls on their noses in return for fish rewards are not the same creatures that swim free in many oceans in the world. And the chimpanzees who are dressed in ridiculous human clothes and are trained to do tricks for people to laugh at are not the creatures who should be allowed to live their lives naturally in social groups in their native habitat. By training animals to "do tricks" — and the training methods are often more cruel physically than the mental cruelty of the public act of unnatural performance — trainers have robbed them of any pride they had.

There is an increasing awareness of this problem in many countries now, but the battle has not been won. While some films now highlight (or at least make an effort to highlight) the problems of "man and the animals" (for example, *Free Willy*, or the film *Born*

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Free made a few years ago), others still simply *use* animals, almost as "objects". And indeed trained animals are still used in advertising: there is one tea company that advertises its products on British television using trained chimpanzees in spite of considerable public objection.

It is not only cruel to train animals to entertain us, it is immoral. It is degrading to animals, but perhaps just as much, it lowers our dignity as human beings.

(597 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 That's the famous cross-eyed lion *who* was in all those films.

2 The couple just did not know how to thank the dog *who* had pulled their daughter out of the water and saved her life.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 b 10 d 11 b 12 c

Lesson 42 Recording an earthquake

Key to Comprehension

1 The rods of various lengths and thicknesses stood up on end like ninepins on a rigid table. If there was a gentle earthquake shock, only the unstable rods fell over, but a severe shock would make them all fall over. The direction in which they fell would also tell the scientist the direction from which the shock came.

2 This simple seismometer worked by rods was unsatisfactory because it was not delicate enough.

3 The observation that a person falls down if a bus he is standing on starts suddenly. This is because his feet move on, but his head stays still.

4 The three "elements" are movement up and down, to and fro, and from side to side.

5 The third wave of an earthquake is the last to be recorded because it has travelled round the earth through the surface rocks.

Key to Vocabulary

The tent was supported on a *rigid* metal framework, but it still blew over.

The nurse left when all the babies were *slumbering* peacefully in their cots.

She served us tea in *delicate* bone-china teacups.

"Invite all the family to stay with us for the holidays?!" he exclaimed. "What a *silly suggestion*!"

He signed his name *legibly* so that anyone could read it.

Heavy rains are an *everyday* occurrence here at this time of the year.

Apples generally *tend* to ripen earlier in this part of the country.

She walked slowly *to and fro* in front of the window as she talked to her husband on her mobile.

I've only hurt my hand *slightly*; I won't have to go to hospital or anything.

The pilot switched on the motor and the helicopter blades *rotated* slowly, before gradually picking up speed.

The woman screamed as the worm that her daughter gave her *wriggled* in the palm of her hand.

We now have scientific instruments that can record *the path described by a particle* of energy.

There was a huge *bluebottle* flying round my bedroom and I knew I would never get to sleep.

Key to Summary

The seismometer used for recording the horizontal component of earthquake wave movements works on a fairly simple principle. Someone standing on a bus will fall over if the bus starts suddenly; that't because his feet move while his head stays still. To illustrate this, a weight tied to a long piece of string and nearly touching the ground will not move even though the hand holding the string moves to and fro. Attach a pen to the weight, its point resting on a piece of paper(flat or round a rotating drum) and you have a seismometer. When the drum is still, the pen draws a straight line; when it is shaken, the pen draws a wriggly line. (118 *words*)

Key to Composition

An earthquake.

The day was hot, unusually hot for the time of year. My family and I had gone to the island for our annual holiday for the third time in three years and my parents had chosen early June because the weather was normally just right then. We could all swim in the sea and sunbathe, but we did not have to stay indoors for an hour or so at midday as we would have to if we went to the island in July or August.

We were having breakfast outside on the patio, all in shorts, T-shirts and sandals, ready to rush away to the beach straight afterwards. "I think it's going to be very hot today," my father said, "so I suggest we all come back to the villa for lunch. That way, if the sun's too hot to sit outside, we can have lunch indoors."

We all nodded agreement and began to help mother clear the table.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Suddenly there was one of these strange pauses when everyone stops talking or doing things. It was odd, but what was even odder was the fact that there was silence.

"Listen," my mother said slowly, "the birds have stopped singing, and I haven't heard any cicadas for a few minutes, either." Usually, there was an almost constant noise of cicadas chirping in the background.

We all stopped and listened. Everything did seem unusually quiet. Then we all felt something. We weren't sure what it was. My father, who had his elbows on the table at the time, said later that something had slid along the table and gently rubbed his elbows. I felt someone move the seat of my chair very slightly. My brother and sister, who were sitting on a bench seat, both felt the seat move a little. We all looked at each other. No one said anything. Then the silence was broken by the sound of the bell in the local village church tower. It rang just once, as if on its own — and the table began to move, and the patio under our feet, and the sensation was horrifying. Suddenly it felt as if the patio was a boat on water and we were passengers with no way of steering it. And as the ground began to shudder beneath us, the bell from the church began to ring almost regularly, and we heard the noise of stone against stone, concrete against concrete, and the sound of smashing glass, as walls collapsed in nearby buildings. By now there was a general angry rumbling all around, as if some prehistoric monster was beginning to wake up. There was a loud crack, and from where I was lying — we were all lying on the ground now — I looked over the edge of our heaving patio to see the small donkey path below crack open like an egg. Suddenly, with a splintering crash, all the tiles on the roof of our villa flew and slid off onto the roof of the villa below.

Then, just as suddenly, the ground stopped moving.

There was a pause of about fifteen seconds, a pause of almost absolute silence, before we heard the first cries of people from the nearby streets and villas. We all looked at each other again, as we had done when the first tremors had hit us, but this time with relief.

"My God, an earthquake," said my brother. (One of us had to say it.)

"Yes," said my father, "and we're all alive. But let't go and see what damage has been done in the villa. After that we'll see how we can help in the village."

(607 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 b 7 d 8 a 9 d 10 c 11 a 12 c

Lesson 43 Are there strangers in space?

Key to Comprehension

1 The word "galaxy" describes a Milky Way or a collection of stars(of which there are about three thousand million in the universe).

2 According to the author, it is highly probable that life exists in other parts of the universe because there are so many stars with planets that "intelligent life is bound to be a natural part of the universe".

3 Even if one were travelling at 186,000 miles per second, it would be extremely difficult to visit another planet because most of them would take an average of a hundred years to reach.

4 It might be possible to accomplish interstellar communication using the radio frequency of the 21-centimetre wavelength, or 1,420 megacycles per second, which is the natural frequency of emission of hydrogen atoms in space.

Key to Vocabulary

This lamp is broken, and we want to buy another one *approximately* the same … if we can find one.

It was too early for life to develop four billion years ago, given the *prevailing primitive state* of the earth.

I have an *automatic messenger* on my PC: I can programme it to display a message on screen at a certain time in the future.

Man has already overcome some of the *obstacles* to space flight, but there are many more.

There are now lots of pieces of machinery (old satellites and so on) *orbiting* the earth.

At the moment, *interstellar* space travel is only possible in science fiction.

His present job was all the result of a *chance encounter* with the company's Human Resources Manager at a party.

Key to Summary

The first obstacle to communication with other planets is the vast distance between star systems. On average, stars can be 100 light years away, which means that, if anyone left an automatic messenger here in the past, a broadcast from the 1920s would only be halfway home. Although chemical rockets have no

www.TopSage.com

chance of reaching other stars, there is nevertheless one way to communicate with other intelligent beings and that is to use the natural frequency of the emission of hydrogen atoms in space. Although only discovered in 1951, this now seems to be our best chance of interstellar communication. (100 *words*)

Key to Composition

Flying saucers.

Flying saucers, or UFOs, as they are usually called now (Unidentified Flying Objects), are the names given to unexplained phenomena which have been seen in our skies for apparently as long as history has been recorded. Ancient texts from many parts of the world have mentioned "flying chariots" with fire coming from them and many have come down to earth carrying "gods". Many of these phenomena in the past were clearly reports of planets (Venus, for example), meteors, meteorites, ball lightening and other natural, physical events which are still mistaken for UFOs. Some, however, might well have been simplified reports of visits by extraterrestrials. Professor Ronald Bracewell has suggested that our earth may have been visited in the distant past by a superior civilisation. If he were correct and visitors from such a civilisation left an "automatic messenger", might they also not have visited different parts of the world and shown themselves to certain people?

In recent years, and certainly since the 1940s, there seem to have been more reports of UFOs than ever before. Various explanations have been given for this. One suggestion is that there are extraterrestrials who have become more interested in our planet since we began to "play" with the atmosphere of the world on a global scale, to detonate nuclear bombs and since we have begun to escape from our own gravity into orbit and to the moon. Another explanation is that most reports of UFOs are false reports from people who simply want their "moment of fame and glory" in the media; and the media do seem to rule the lives of many people in the world. Other sightings can, and have been explained as weather balloons, the planet Venus, ordinary aircraft seen at unusual angles in unusual light, special weather clouds, reflections of light on low cloud, and so on. But even official government investigators in many countries have had to admit there are certain cases of UFO sightings which defy rational scientific explanation: and these are the ones that are worrying.

Whatever UFOs may be, very few governments will admit that they know anything about them — or even that they are interested in them. And yet strangely, in spite of regular reports of sightings and contact with UFOs in the press, radio and on television, governments maintain an almost ominous silence. During the Cold War, it was suggested that UFOs were possibly new kind of craft developed by the other side. But little has been said. It is known that both the Russians and the Americans have built and flown circular aircraft that might be described as "flying saucers", but again little has been said about their development or how successful they may have been.

There are almost dozens of theories about UFOs. They could be advanced aircraft developed by nations on earth, especially the USA or Russia. They could be extraterrestrial — from somewhere else in our solar system or from another star system. Could they perhaps be from another dimension, as has been suggested? Could most instances of UFOs be the result of mass hysteria or psychological disturbances? Whatever they may be, one thing is certain: there are just too many completely unexplained occurrences for them to be ignored for very much longer.

Does art imitate life? Or does life imitate art? Are films like *ET*, *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, *Men in Black and Independence Day* previews of what might really happen on earth sometime soon? Or are they just like the science fiction novels of Jules Verne and H. G. Wells, visions of a purely fictional future? (598 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 It's an excellent film — you're *sure to* enjoy it.

2 I was just *about to leave* the house when the telephone rang.

3 The concert was *due to* begin at 7. 30, but it was delayed for half an hour.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 c 7 d 8 d 9 a 10 c 11 b 12 b

Lesson 44 Patterns of culture

Key to Comprehension

1 The statement "No man ever looks at the world with pristine eyes" means that no one can view the world completely objectively.

2 The study of man has differed from the study of less controversial subjects in that it has only studied one

www.TopSage.com

variation, Western civilization, instead of all possible variations.

3 Before he can undertake the study of man objectively, the anthropologist must accept the criterion that there is no preferential weighting between one human society and another.

Key to Vocabulary

The president will speak to the nation on a matter of great *moment*.

They suggested that the man's *aberrant* behaviour was the result of taking drugs.

The President of the United Nations played a *predominant role* in restoring peace to that part of the world.

The disease typically *manifests* itself in a high fever and chest pains.

The *probings* of the police into the man's finances eventually uncovered connections with organised crime.

When he spoke to the locals, he lapsed into the *vernacular*.

If the group of islands had been allowed to develop *autonomously* (instead of being governed from the mainland), things might have been a lot better for them.

"It is *incumbent* upon us all," said the chairman rather pompously, "to report all incidents of criminal activity, however minor, to the police."

The vast majority of people are not *intelligent* as to the inner workings of the Civil Service.

The engineer's explanation was completely *unintelligible* to most of us because it was highly technical.

The first part of the exam, the oral interview, has always been given *preferential weighting* over the other two parts.

Although the proposal was extremely *controversial*, they managed to get it passed by the committee.

In medieval times the Church *held sway* over many countries in Europe.

Key to Summary

From the moment we are born, our attitude to life is shaped by custom. It manifests itself in many varieties and plays a predominant role in experience and belief. It is impossible to view the world objectively because we are all influenced by a set of customs, institutions and ways of thinking. Even an individual's concepts of true and false are conditioned by the customs of his community. By the time he can talk, a child is already the creation of his culture, and by the time he is grown up, he has actually become part of that culture.

(99 *words*)

Key to Composition

There can be no absolute standards of right and wrong since our moral attitudes are conditioned by the society in which we live.

While our moral attitudes may be conditioned by the society in which we live and by its customs and laws, this does not mean that there can be no absolute standards of right and wrong, standards which we can all aim at and which we somehow know to be right.

Perhaps we should first consider the proposition that our moral attitudes are conditioned by the society in which we live. It would be difficult to disagree with the commonly held view that our moral attitudes are to a large extent shaped by our parents, other members of our family and the circle of friends with whom the members of our family associate. For most of us, our concepts of right and wrong are taught to us, or instilled into us, by our parents. Pulling your sister's hair for no reason is wrong; picking her up when she has fallen down is right; picking fruit from your father's trees is fine since the trees belong to the family; picking fruit from a neighbour's trees without asking is wrong. In Western cultures at least, saying "Please" and "Thank you" is right; demanding and receiving without saying anything is wrong.

Such simple and basic standards of right and wrong are reinforced by other parent figures in our own society by praise or punishment — by our teachers at school, by the religious leaders in our community, and reinforced, too, by our peers who are being taught the same right and wrong. Even families in the same society have slightly different standards, but they all aim towards a common standard.

However, in this modern world of mass communication — radio, television, magazines and newspapers, e-mail and the Internet — there are many more influences on us and on our thinking than was ever the case in the past. The world *is* smaller, it is true, even though it is still composed of peoples with widely different cultures. International figures condemn criminal acts committed against the international community as a whole, or acts which eventually *involve* the international community as a whole, such as the hijacking of aircraft or oil tankers, or terrorist threats to international events like the Olympic Games. In condemning such acts, world leaders seem to be demonstrating that there

TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

are absolute standards of right and wrong, and in condemning, they rarely wave any particular religious or political banners.

In the same way, we deplore the circumstances in the modern world which allow thousands and thousands to die through lack of food and water or from diseases which we ought to be able to cure. Such situations are surely "wrong" and the majority of us are horrified. Organised international aid again would seem to argue that there are standards which all communities and nationalities acknowledge, which are not related to any one particular political or religious creed, but which are, quite simply, "humanitarian".

There are absolute standards of right and wrong too when it comes to stealing, murder, rape, selling drugs, child abuse and abduction, and such crimes are utterly abhorrent to all decent, moral people in the world, regardless of their own religious or political beliefs. Eating people is wrong, wherever you come from. It is a pity that the laws and cultures of certain communities do not always reflect the standards of right and wrong which most promise in public to uphold.

(559 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 b 8 b 9 d 10 c 11 b 12 a

Lesson 45 Of men and galaxies

Key to Comprehension

1 The idea that we lack practice and experience nowadays in dealing with primitive conditions.

2 The inhabitants of Morocco differ from those of California because they have different thoughts.

3 "When you are inside a community you are conditioned by the conventions of the community" means that everything you do and think is conditioned by your immediate environment.

4 Just twenty or thirty pages of ideas and information beyond our present thinking could change the course of world history.

5 A person with original ideas must be capable of thinking outside or beyond the particular patterns that our brains have been conditioned to.

Key to Vocabulary

The men have just reached a *critical* stage in their negotiations.

The building project is now entering its third *phase*.

If I were asked to play in a tennis tournament, *I would make a very poor show* as I haven't played for years.

In the relatively short time he was in power, Napoleon *subdued* much of Europe.

The environment that determines our evolution is now acknowledged to be intellectual as well as physical.

She felt that she was *wholly* justified in asking for her money back.

Finance must clearly be an important *factor* in deciding the future of the project.

When the woman heard the news of her husband's death, she was *utterly* devastated.

The plane changed *course* in order to avoid a storm.

With the instruments at our disposal, I'm afraid it's impossible to be more *accurate*.

Key to Summary

When white men invaded a primitive culture, the most destructive effects always came from ideas, and ideas are dangerous. Free speech only exists because dangerous thoughts can only be injected from outside. There must be ideas that would destroy the modern world, argues the author, but he cannot give an example. Instead, he takes the idea of giving a reasonably advanced technological society the instructions on how to make a nuclear bomb. Had this information been given to the world in 1925, it would have changed the course of history. Twenty-odd pages of advanced ideas and information could still destroy the modern world, or at least turn it upside down. (110 *words*)

Key to Composition

The evolution of man.

By its very definition, evolution is an extremely slow, gradual process of development. In the course of evolution over millions of years, some birds, for example, have gained, enjoyed and then lost the power of flight. Indeed the history of the ostrich begs the question: are evolution and progress one and the same?

Evolutionary changes are usually conditioned by the physical environment, and often, in the case of living creatures, the need to adapt to changes in the physical environment in order to survive.

For hundreds of thousands of years man's evolution took the form of development of physical features. To take just one example, man's early ape ancestors developed fingers in order to be able to handle things —

www.TopSage.com

food, stones, pieces of wood, and eventually tools and weapons. We can't use tools (to build and mend things) and weapons (to kill for food) without fingers — and for a long time we couldn't communicate in writing without using our fingers to hold a pen.

With the gradual loss of body hair and the need for warmth, man developed the concept of clothes in its simplest form — wearing a dead animal's skin — and he discovered fire. And with the need to kill animals for food and clothing (meat and skin), he began to devise simple weapons.

The social need to co-operate and form groups or tribes was probably the result of the need to hunt together with purpose, together with a need to protect the group members from external dangers. The development of reasoning and tool-making eventually produced mechanical inventions such as the wheel, and the skills needed to construct buildings of all kinds, from the simplest stone shelter to the greatest Egyptian pyramid. And somewhere along the line, curiosity led to astronomy, religion and the production and appreciation of art.

It has been suggested that the arrival of a sense of religion, a sense of a god, was the greatest event in the evolution of man. It may, however, be that the development of speech and finally writing were probably the two most important factors in man's evolution to that of a thinking, communicating animal. Through speech he could express facts and opinions, he could make demands, he could describe past events to another, and express hopes and plans for the future. More importantly, speech and writing gave man the ability not only to be able to write down or record what he had done or was doing, but also to express thoughts about the future — to predict and to plan.

Fred Hoyle has suggested that the most important factor in man's evolution now and in the future is not physical, but mental. The changes in the world's climate, the world's weather patterns, might be of interest — floods, famine, fire, earthquakes and other natural disasters may affect hundreds of thousands of people — but they will probably not affect man's evolution any more. Men and women are not physically going to start sprouting fins because we are experiencing more floods. Ideas are what will now drive the course of man's evolution.

Physical evolutionary change is a very slow process indeed. Man has changed very little physically since he began walking perfectly upright, but he seems to have grown in knowledge in an amazingly short time. His evolution seems to be mental and social (though not necessarily moral), but whether his future evolution is in his own hands, as some believe, is another question.

(572 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A

1 She *must have been* brilliant to get that job so easily.

2 A few years ago, you *had to be* academically brilliant or simply rich to go to university.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 c 11 d 12 c

Lesson 46 Hobbies

Key to Comprehension

1 The definition of worry is relevant to the author's argument because it places in context the need for hobbies and other interests.

2 The author describes as unfortunate those people who can command everything they want because what they really need to balance their lives are not hobbies, other pleasures or excitement, but discipline.

3 People who have everything they want can find relief from boredom in discipline in one form or another.

4 The essential difference between the two classes of human beings defined by the author is that for one group, the smaller group, work and pleasure are the same thing.

5 It is particularly important for people whose work is their pleasure to cultivate a hobby because they need an alternative outlook or a change of atmosphere so that they can banish their work from their minds for a short while.

Key to Vocabulary

I had a sudden *spasm* in my leg and could hardly walk for a few minutes.

It's *futile* writing a letter of complaint because the company never answers.

They had ways of *insinuating* their ideas into the brains of sleepers.

After his operation, he was advised to go to the country for a period of *recuperation*.

If you want a change from work, I suggest you take on some *alternative mental interests*.

The patient began to breathe more easily following a *vivifying* intake of oxygen through an oxygen mask.

In the past, slaves were often quite literally *toiled to death*.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She wasn't too worried when she lost the necklace because it only cost a *trifling* amount of money.

Rich parents often give in to every *caprice* of their children by giving them whatever they want.

The *satiation* of my curiosity is what drives me to read incessantly for information.

Our local priest was so devoted to his work that he regarded any days away from the church as *enforced interruptions in an absorbing vocation*.

Key to Summary

While a hobby or a new form of interest is important, it is not something that can be chosen quickly. Indeed the growth of a hobby is a long-term business. It must be chosen well and nurtured. The author maintains that, to be really happy, you should have two or three hobbies and that you must like what you do. It is no good taking up a hobby late in life as it can cause aggravation. He stresses that different kinds of people need completely different kinds of hobbies.

(89 *words*)

Key to Composition

My favourite hobby.

Is a hobby some activity which you enjoy doing, but which does not earn any money? No, it isn't. I know a number of people who in fact earn a small income from their hobbies while they still have a full-time job. Is a hobby some kind of activity which you have chosen to do, which takes you away from the routine and worries of everyday life and helps you to relax? Yes, it is all of these things.

I have a small number of hobbies or pastimes — I play the piano, I sing in a choir, I collect antiques, I play chess, I enjoy sailing, I read a lot and I like gardening.

I imagine that the vast majority of people's favourite hobbies are completely incomprehensible and boring to others, even to their friends and relatives. "What do you want to do *that* for?" they say with contempt. "What a total waste of time!" There are many hobbies that I myself find impossible to understand, but usualy my judgment is based on the question "How creative is it?" You will no doubt think me wrong, but I have this feeling that a hobby or pastime which is totally passive, even though it gives the person pleasure, is nevertheless selfish and wasteful.

My own favourite hobby, I must confess, is collecting old wine glasses, and by "old" I mean glasses from the 19th century. They are not hard to find; there are still a lot that have survived and they can be found in old secondhand shops and at the bottom of boxes of rubbish in auction sales.

What do you do *that* for? you might ask. What's the attraction? First of all, there is the Hunt. Just looking for kinds of glasses that you haven't got has provided me with hours of enjoyment. Whenever I am in a different town and can find five minutes, I go into one or two secondhand shops, just to see if I can find something. And quite often I view auction sales to see if there are any in the "rubbish lots" that I might buy cheaply.

Then there is finding out about them; call it Information-gathering and Learning. Since I started collecting old wine glasses, I have also acquired quite a large library, so I have managed to teach myself quite a lot about the subject — by reading, looking at photos, and handling the real things.

At first, when I had just a small number of glasses, I used to put them on shelves. After a while, however, I realized that I was beginning to assemble a representative selection of glasses right through the 19th century and felt that I should display them better. Displaying them, then, involved constructing a special cabinet — something I had never done before.

Socializing and Exchanging Information is another aspect of many hobbies, and in my own case I joined a glass collectors' club.

Like many collectors, I try to acquire items for my collection very cheaply so that I can sell them later — not to make a profit, you understand, but in order to buy another better, or rarer glass.

For me, the productive part of such a hobby comes in doing research and then writing about the subject. It seems that, if someone has spent some considerable time acquiring knowledge, he or she should pass on that knowledge, either in the form of a physical collection or in the form of a written record — magazine articles or even a book. Perhaps one day I will write that book.

(596 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 d 4 b 5 d 6 a 7 b 8 c 9 d 10 a 11 b 12 d

Lesson 47 The great escape

Key to Comprehension

1 Three factors which induce people to go camping are:

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a) cost; b) it's an escape from hotels and the fear of how to behave in them; and c) you can take your car right into the camp site.

2 "To this pleasure camping gives an exquisite refinement" refers to the sense of independence and freedom you get from a car.

3 Idealists have objected to the practice of camping because they say campers do not get to know the residents of the country. They have been proved wrong since, while hotels might tend to cater for one nationality, camp sites are very cosmopolitan.

4 The factors which may lead to the death of the more independent kind of camping are how many heath fires campers cause, how much litter they leave behind, and whether campers alienate landowners and others who live in the country.

Key to Vocabulary

The need for money is a powerful *motive* for crime.

After only a small *initial outlay upon equipment*, window cleaning can be quite a lucrative business.

Cars of all makes stood in a neat row in the car sales yard, *hub to hub* and wheel to wheel.

That man's too timid *to say boo to* a goose.

Granted, I haven't got any qualifications yet, but by this time next year I will have gained my diploma.

"The weather was rather *inclement*," said my friend's old aunt, rather pompously.

The *package tour* that we went on included absolutely everything from the time we left to the time we got back.

It has been said that British attitudes to Europe in the past have been the result of their *insularity*.

There is one hotel in the town that caters *exclusively* for disabled people.

London is one of the most *cosmopolitan* cities in the world.

At certain times of the year there was a *preponderance* of students from South America in our language school.

People are often *wary of itinerants* and although they would like to help them, they regard them, often wrongly, as troublesome tramps.

After the open-air pop concert the organisers picked up hundreds of bags of *litter* from the field.

Key to Summary

Every year modern camping equipment becomes more sophisticated. Perhaps this is a necessary development to supply the material comforts that people would expect in hotels if only they were not afraid to go to them, for camping releases people from the fears, for example, of how to deal with hotel staff, from doorman to management. There may be a certain snobbery in camping, too, but most people understand that and can deal with it. The other thing that camping does is to allow car worshippers to take the car on holiday with them. They drive to the site in it, some actually make it part of the tent, and they use it to drive away when the beach is too crowded or the local weather too bad to go to the beach. Unlike some holiday hotels, many of which tend to cater exclusively for one nationality of visitors, European camp sites are highly cosmopolitan. (154 *words*)

Key to Composition

What, in your opinion, are the requirements of an ideal holiday?

When I think back to the different holidays that I have experienced in my past, some with my parents when I was a child, and some with my own family now that I am a father, I have to confess that the essence of an ideal holiday is hard to grasp.

An ideal holiday seems to depend on so many things. It depends on where you go and for how long; it depends on what time of year you go and what the weather is like; it depends on how much you have paid for the holiday — very little or an enormous amount of money; it depends on exactly what kind of holiday it is meant to be — an activity holiday or a lazy holiday; it depends on what the journey to the holiday destination was like and how, if you are going to a completely new destination, you have envisaged it; it depends on whether you organized it yourself or if it was a package holiday. In short, it depends on so much. And yet, in spite of all, most of us enjoy our holidays.

For me personally, the first requirement of a holiday is that it must be *a complete change* from my everyday life. A computer programmer, for example, would be well advised to do all those things that he cannot do at work and which take little mental effort, like swimming, snorkelling, walking and reading.

Like my everyday life, however, a holiday must also contain *variety*. I need periods of activity and periods of total relaxation, and I need both mental and physical periods of relaxation and activity. There is no point in exchanging a completely physical job for a holiday full of physical activity: you need physical relaxation with some mental stimulation as well.

For me, too, a holiday must, at least in part, be

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

novel, interesting and stimulating. The criticism that I have heard from people returning from their annual holiday, even spent in a new destination, is that "there was nothing to do". What they usually mean, I gather, is that, after the initial sigh of relief at being able to relax in the sunshine on the beach or by the hotel swimming pool, they quite quickly become bored. This is just what they have dreamed of for months, but this is not what they want. What they have dreamed of is the settling-down period before their holiday proper begins.

Another thing that I would like a holiday to do for me is to *open a new chapter* in my life. Let me explain. Imagine you are on a "beach holiday" and that one evening you are invited to a village to join in some local dancing. You go; you are not very keen, but you go. During the evening, however, someone says that you can play the guitar a little and you are asked to join the band. You do, and you enjoy it very much — and the locals say that you did very well. What happens after that is, quite simply, that when you get back home, you go on playing in a Greek/Spanish/Japanese band. The holiday has opened a new chapter for you, a new sphere of interest.

What churchill wrote about hobbies, it seems, it equally applicable to holidays. For him, hobbies answer "the need for an alternative outlook, of a change of atmosphere, of a diversion of effort", and these are also qualities that should be looked for in an ideal holiday. After all, hobbies and holidays have one thing in common: the object of both is to take you away from the humdrum of everyday life. (609 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 b 11 b 12 c

Lesson 48 Planning a share portfolio

Key to Comprehension

1 A serious investor should have a proper portfolio with a well-planned selection of investments, a definite structure and a clear aim.

2 We know that there is no "right way" to invest money because no five reputable stockbrokers will give you the same advice.

3 If you're investing money, one of the worst things you can do is to sink all of your money into one company.

4 You should sort out the basics — mortgage, pension, insurance and access to sufficient cash reserves.

5 If you were an older investor you would probably want to preserve your capital and generate extra income.

6 If you are a younger investor, you can afford to take an aggressive approach.

7 Whatever your age, the main thing you have to do when investing money is to spread the risk.

Key to Vocabulary

They blamed the *shortage* of water on the lack of rainfall in the previous six months.

The racecourse was full of *tipsters* telling us which horses to gamble on.

The young man was left $500,000 by his father, but he *frittered* it all away on wine, women and song.

If you want to *structure a portfolio*, my advice to you is to discuss it with a stockbroker.

She is *undoubtedly* an excellent singer, but she's not a very good dancer.

He's been *sinking* all his extra cash into his weekend business, so he is praying it will succeed.

I sincerely hope we have *sufficient cash reserves* to pay for any out-of-pocket expenses.

Before the bank would lend me any money, they wanted to know all my *personal circumstances*.

When you have saved money throughout your life, the thing you want most is a way of *preserving your capital* so that you can draw on it when you get older.

A lot of older people live a pretty *pedestrian* life compared with younger people.

Key to Summary

If you are a serious private investor, what you need is a portfolio with a selection of investments, a definite structure and a clear aim. There are some wrong ways to structure a portfolio, but one thing is certain: never put all your money into one company or investment. As an older person, you should have sorted out your mortgage, pension, insurance and access to cash reserves, so you need to preserve your capital and generate extra income. The best way to do that is to construct a portfolio with some shares, some gilts, cash deposits and convertibles. (98 *words*)

Key to Composition

Saving and spending.

It was Mr. Micawber in Charles Dickens's novel *David copperfield*, who said (and this has been brought up to date and changed from old English pounds to dollars!): "Annual income $20, 000, annual expenditure $19,950, result happiness. Annual income $20, 000, annual expenditure $20. 050, result

www.TopSage.com

misery." Although this was written in the nineteenth century, it is as true today as it ever was. It is a warning about earning, spending and saving money.

Why do we work? Why do we spend a large proportion of our lives, that period between youth and old age, in fact, working? And why do most of us have to spend something like three-quarters of every week "at work"? For one simple reason: to earn money so that we can at least feed ourselves and our family and survive. Beyond that, everything else is a bonus.

Granted, there are some of us who do not work at all. Some avoid work, they choose not to work, and manage to live on the State or the generosity of others. Some cannot work because of mental or physical disability and are looked after by the rest of us. And there are others, like farmers, potters and other craftsmen, writers and other artists, who work for themselves. But the rest, the vast majority, work for someone else — they work for an employer, a company or the government.

We all earn money and spend it. We spend most of the money we earn primarily on food and drink and other necessities, especially clothes and shelter — and not only necessities for ourselves. Many work as the "breadwinners" to provide their children and parents with those same necessities.

There is a "chain of spending" that many people are only too aware of. Buying some chickens to lay eggs and to provide food from time to time seems a good idea, but the chickens themselves must be fed and looked after, and you may have to spend more money before you see any returns. In the same way, in order to make our clothes look good, we buy a simple washing machine and an iron; the former needs washing powder or soap and both need electricity, so that you have to spend money in order to use them.

Wherever we live in the world and whatever kind of society we live in, shelter is something that we all need in some form, shelter from the weather, shelter from others. Many people in the world spend money on their "shelter", be it a flat or a house, however small. Not only do they pay for it (in the form of rent or in mortgage payments), they also have to maintain it. Some can do all the maintenance jobs themselves while others pay professionals, especially if repairs are needed to doors, windows or floors, for example. There is often the cost of heating their home (with coal, wood, gas or electricity) or cooling it (with air-conditioning). Water is rarely "free", and even cooking, to produce anything more than the most basic of meals, costs money. After all, you need utensils in a kitchen.

Many people now know what they need to spend on themselves and their family in order to survive, often in order to maintain their present lifestyle, and therefore how much they need to earn. But most acknowledge that they really need to earn more. And why? Mainly in order to save at least a small amount for the future, and particularly to pay for unforeseen events.

So, having spent money on all of the necessities of life, and having managed perhaps to save a small amount for the future, they are in Mr. Micawber's happy land. And what about any extra which might be needed for leisure, for entertainment, for travel? For many, there is quite simply no "extra" for leisure, because if they are even tempted to overspend, they will enter Mr. Micawber's world of misery. (610 *words*)

Key to KS Exercises

A See text.

B See text.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 c 8 d 9 b 10 a 11 a 12 b

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com



本书读者对象：

★准备参加高考或者大学四、六级、考研考试的学生；

★已经学完《新概念英语》第二册、第三册或任何中高级英语教程的英语学习者；

★计划参加雅思、托福、GRE、GMAT等考试，希望做好充分准备者；

★高级英语培训班的学员；

★参加PETS4级、5级考试的考生；

★希望将自己的英语水平再提高一个水平，美化英语语言的学习者；

★希望全方位提高文章阅读理解水平和翻译写作能力的高级英语学习者。

http://www.cp.com.cn
ISBN 978-7-100-07050-8
9 787100 070508 >
定价：29.80元

更多学习资料请登录WWW.KAOTIANXIA.COM

www.TopSage.com